

Interactional Variation in English and Persian: A
Comparative Analysis of Metadiscourse Features in
Magazine Editorials

Leila Khabbazi Oskouei

Thesis submitted for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy
School of Language and Communication Studies
University of East Anglia
Norwich
England

July 2011

This copy of the thesis has been supplied on condition that anyone who consults it is understood to recognise that its copyright rests with the author and that no quotation from this thesis, nor any information derived therefrom, may be published without the author's prior, written consent.

Abstract

This thesis uses both qualitative and quantitative methods in order to study the use of ‘interactional metadiscourse’ (devices which writers use to express their attitude towards the text and evaluate the propositional content) in a corpus of British and Iranian news magazine editorials.

On the qualitative basis, after discussing the existing typologies and observing the overlaps and fuzziness in their categorizations, this study presents a categorization of the ‘interactional metadiscourse’ markers applicable to news magazine editorials. Its aim is to reduce the overlaps between the sub-categories and to present a clear definition of each main group and sub-group. One of the main issues in this regard is the distinction between propositional and non-propositional material, this being the essential factor in metadiscourse studies. The study attempts to suggest a set of criteria in order to distinguish propositional and non-propositional content and to propose a firmer approach in this area. The proposed typology consists of the four main groups of uncertainty, certainty, attitudinal and engagement markers. Each main group is further divided into sub-groups for a finer distinction. In this regard, two new sub-categories, ‘repetition’ and ‘we’, referring to third parties’ are observed in the Iranian corpus.

Based on the typology proposed in the qualitative part of this study, on the quantitative basis a comparative analysis of ‘interactional metadiscourse’ in the corpus of British and Iranian news magazine editorials is carried out. This sets out to find the similarities and differences between the two sets of editorials in the ‘interactional metadiscourse’ devices they use to communicate with their readers. The study uses a quantitative approach in order to compare the frequency of each main group and the sub-groups in the two sets of data. The results reveal that both British and Iranian editorialists make wide use of ‘interactional metadiscourse’ to communicate with their readers, but that frequencies in use vary between the two corpora. The results indicate that, in general, Iranian editorialists seem to make wide use of ‘certainty markers’, particularly ‘repetition’, and ‘engagement markers’, especially ‘expressions of inclusive we’, ‘expressions of reader-address’ and ‘questions’. Meanwhile, the British editorialists seem to favour the use of ‘uncertainty markers’. The similarities and differences are explained and interpreted referring to the

respective cultural backgrounds, with particular reference to the role of the editorials in British and Iranian political settings. The study recommends more research based on a larger corpus and different types of journalistic texts as well as making other suggestions for further research.

Table of Contents

Abstract	2
List of Tables	8
List of Figures	14
List of Abbreviations	15
Acknowledgements	16
Chapter 1: Introduction	17
1. Background to the study	17
2. A preliminary definition of metadiscourse	19
3. Research questions and aims of the study	22
4. The nature of the corpus	23
5. Methodology	25
6. Organization of the study	26
Chapter 2: Rhetoric, textuality and discourse	28
1. Rhetoric	28
1.1. Background	28
1.2. Classical rhetoric	29
1.3. Contemporary rhetoric	31
1.4. Rhetoric and metadiscourse	33
2. Traditional approaches to language	34
3. Textuality	35
3.1. Background	35
3.2. Main approaches to textuality	37
3.3. The development of cohesion and coherence	39
3.3.1. Formal – functional approach	39
3.3.2. Cognitive approach	42
3.3.3. Social approach	44
3.4. Summary	47
3.5. The notion of discourse	47
4. Studies on discourse signalling	48
5. Conclusion	52
Chapter 3: Metadiscourse and its categorizations	53
1. Earlier reference to metadiscourse	54

2. Some parallel concepts of metadiscourse	54
2.1. Metacommunication	54
2.2. Signalling words	55
2.3. Non-topical material	56
2.4. Meta-talk	57
2.5. Summary	59
3. Discourse markers	60
4. Development of metadiscourse	62
4.1. Content and non- content distinction	62
4.2. Writer-reader relationship	65
5. Metadiscourse categorizations	66
5.1. Textual and interpersonal	66
5.2. Sub-categories of textual and interpersonal metadiscourse	72
5.2.1. Vande Kopple	72
5.2.2. Crismore et al.	74
5.2.3. Milne	75
5.2.4. Hyland	77
5.2.5. Summary	78
6. Conclusion	80
Chapter 4: Interactional metadiscourse in editorials	82
Part One: Discussion of the corpus	83
1.1. Iranian and British political contexts and the press	83
1.1.1. The Iranian setting	83
1.1.2. The British setting	84
1.2. Editorials	85
1.3. The selected magazines	87
1.4. The corpus of this thesis	88
Part Two: Methodology for categorization	92
2.1. Research questions	92
2.2. The main characteristics of the methodology of categorization.....	92
2.2.1. Local framework	92
2.2.2. Functional analysis	93
Part Three: Theoretical clarification	93
3.1. Hedges and modality	95
3.2. Attribution and authorial material	102

3.3. Attitudinal adjectives and attitudinal adverbs	104
3.4. Personal pronouns	107
Part Four: Interactional metadiscourse markers in editorials	109
4.1. Uncertainty markers	110
4.1.1. Expressions of uncertainty	110
4.1.2. Conditional clauses	112
4.1.3. Impersonal expressions and reported speech	114
4.2. Certainty markers	115
4.2.1. Expressions of certainty	115
4.2.2. Repetition	117
4.2.3. Attribution	118
4.3. Attitudinal markers	120
4.3.1. Expressions of obligation	121
4.3.2. Expressions of attitude	122
4.3.3. Negation expressing counter-expectancy	123
4.4. Engagement markers	124
4.4.1. Inclusive expressions	125
4.4.2. Personalization	125
4.4.3. Expressions of reader-address	126
4.4.4. Questions	127
4.4.5. Asides	128
4.4.6. Anecdotes and sayings	129
Summary and conclusion	130
Chapter 5: Data analysis and discussion	134
1. Methodology for quantitative analysis	134
1.1. Research questions	134
1.2. Non-automated analysis	135
1.3. Units of analysis	135
1.4. Quantitative procedures	135
2. Examples of the analysis	136
2.1. An example of English text analysis	137
2.2. An example of Persian text analysis	141
3. Findings and discussion	145
3.1. Uncertainty markers in the British and Iranian corpora	150
3.2. Certainty markers in the British and Iranian corpora	153

3.3. Attitudinal markers in the British and Iranian corpora	157
3.4. Engagement markers in British and Iranian corpora	158
3.5. 'we' referring to third parties	161
3.6. A cross-magazine examination of the corpora	162
4. Summary and conclusion	163
Chapter 6: Conclusion	167
1. Theoretical contribution	167
2. Empirical contribution	169
3. Recommendations and suggestions for further research	171
4. Limitations of the study	173
References	174
Appendix 1	183
Appendix 2	232

List of Tables

Table 3.1	Summary of Meyer, Lautamatti and Schiffrin's markers	59
Table 3.2	Vande Kopple's (2002) metadiscourse model	74
Table 3.3	Crismore et al.'s (1993) metadiscourse model	75
Table 3.4	Milne's (2003) metadiscourse model	76
Table 3.5	Hyland's (2005) metadiscourse model	78
Table 3.6	Summary of metadiscourse classifications	79
Table 5.1	'Uncertainty markers' in the English example	140
Table 5.2	'Certainty markers' in the English example	140
Table 5.3	'Attitudinal markers' in the English example	140
Table 5.4	'Engagement markers' in the English example	140
Table 5.5	'we' expressing third parties in the English example	141
Table 5.6	'Uncertainty markers' in the Persian example	144
Table 5.7	'Certainty markers' in the Persian example	144
Table 5.8	'Attitudinal markers' in the Persian example	145
Table 5.9	'Engagement markers' in the Persian example	145
Table 5.10	'we' expressing third parties in the Persian example	145
Table 5.11	Summary of occurrences of 'interactional metadiscourse' in the English editorials	146
Table 5.12	Summary of occurrences of 'interactional metadiscourse' in the Persian editorials	146
Table 5.13	Summary of the occurrences of the main categories of IM in the corpora	149
Table 5.14	Summary of the occurrences of the sub-categories of UM in the corpora	151
Table 5.15	Summary of the occurrences of the sub-categories of CM in the corpora	153
Table 5.16	Summary of the occurrences of the sub-categories of AM in the corpora	157
Table 5.17	Summary of the occurrences of the sub-categories of EM in the corpora	159
Table 5.18	Summary of 'inclusive 'we' referring to third parties' in the corpora	161
Table A1.1	Uncertainty markers in text No. 1	185
Table A1.2	Certainty markers in text No. 1	185
Table A1.3	Attitudinal markers in text No. 1	185

Table A1.4	Engagement markers in text No. 1	185
Table A1.5	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 1	186
Table A1.6	Uncertainty markers in text No. 2	188
Table A1.7	Certainty markers in text No. 2	188
Table A1.8	Attitudinal markers in text No. 2	188
Table A1.9	Engagement markers in text No. 2	188
Table A1.10	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 2	188
Table A1.11	Uncertainty markers in text No. 3	191
Table A1.12	Certainty markers in text No. 3	191
Table A1.13	Attitudinal markers in text No. 3	191
Table A1.14	Engagement markers in text No. 3	192
Table A1.15	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 3	192
Table A1.16	Uncertainty markers in text No. 4	193
Table A1.17	Certainty markers in text No. 4	194
Table A1.18	Attitudinal markers in text No. 4	194
Table A1.19	Engagement markers in text No. 4	194
Table A1.20	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 4	194
Table A1.21	Uncertainty markers in text No. 5	197
Table A1.22	Certainty markers in text No. 5	197
Table A1.23	Attitudinal markers in text No. 5	197
Table A1.24	Engagement markers in text No. 5	197
Table A1.25	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 5	197
Table A1.26	Uncertainty markers in text No 6	199
Table A1.27	Certainty markers in text No. 6	199
Table A1.28	Attitudinal markers in text No. 6	200
Table A1.29	Engagement markers in text No. 6	200
Table A1.30	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 6	200
Table A1.31	Uncertainty markers in text No. 7	202
Table A1.32	Certainty markers in text No. 7	202
Table A1.33	Attitudinal markers in text No. 7	202
Table A1.34	Engagement markers in text No. 7	203
Table A1.35	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 7	203
Table A1.36	Uncertainty markers in text No. 8	204
Table A1.37	Certainty markers in text No. 8	205
Table A1.38	Attitudinal markers in text No. 8	205

Table A1.39	Engagement markers in text No. 8	205
Table A1.40	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 8	205
Table A1.41	Uncertainty markers in text No. 9	206
Table A1.42	Certainty markers in text No. 9	206
Table A1.43	Attitudinal markers in text No. 9	206
Table A1.44	Engagement markers in text No. 9	207
Table A1.45	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 9	207
Table A1.46	Uncertainty markers in text No. 10	208
Table A1.47	Certainty markers in text No. 10	208
Table A1.48	Attitudinal markers in text No. 10	209
Table A1.49	Engagement markers in text No. 10	209
Table A1.50	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 10	209
Table A1.51	Uncertainty markers in text No. 11	210
Table A1.52	Certainty markers in text No. 11	210
Table A1.53	Attitudinal markers in text No. 11	210
Table A1.54	Engagement markers in text No. 11	210
Table A.1.55	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 11	211
Table A1.56	Uncertainty markers in text No. 12	212
Table A1.57	Certainty markers in text No. 12	212
Table A1.58	Attitudinal markers in text No. 12	212
Table A1.59	Engagement markers in text No. 12	212
Table A1.60	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 12	212
Table A1.61	Uncertainty markers in text No. 13	213
Table A1.62	Certainty markers in text No. 13	213
Table A1.63	Attitudinal markers in text No. 13	214
Table A.1.64	Engagement markers in text No. 13	214
Table A.1.65	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 13	214
Table A1.66	Uncertainty markers in text No. 14	215
Table A1.67	Certainty markers in text No. 14	215
Table A1.68	Attitudinal markers in text No. 14	215
Table A1.69	Engagement markers in text No. 14	216
Table A1.70	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 14	216
Table A1.71	Uncertainty markers in text No. 15	217
Table A1.72	Certainty markers in text No. 15	217
Table A1.73	Attitudinal markers in text No. 15	217

Table A1.74	Engagement markers in text No. 15	218
Table A1.75	‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 15	218
Table A1.76	Uncertainty markers in text No. 16	220
Table A1.77	Certainty markers in text No. 16	220
Table A1.78	Attitudinal markers in text No. 16	220
Table A1.79	Engagement markers in text No. 16	220
Table A1.80	‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 16	221
Table A1.81	Uncertainty markers in text No. 17	222
Table A1.82	Certainty markers in text No. 17	223
Table A1.83	Attitudinal markers in text No. 17	223
Table A1.84	Engagement markers in text No. 17	223
Table A1.85	‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 17	223
Table A1.86	Uncertainty markers in text No. 18	225
Table A1.87	Certainty markers in text No. 18	225
Table A1.88	Attitudinal markers in text No. 18	225
Table A1.89	Engagement markers in text No. 18	225
Table A1.90	‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 18	225
Table A1.91	Uncertainty markers in text No. 19	227
Table A1.92	Certainty markers in text No. 19	227
Table A1.93	Attitudinal markers in text No. 19	228
Table A1.94	Engagement markers in text No. 19	228
Table A1.95	‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 19	228
Table A1.96	Uncertainty markers in text No. 20	230
Table A1.97	Certainty markers in text No. 20	230
Table A1.98	Attitudinal markers in text No. 20	230
Table A1.99	Engagement markers in text No. 20	231
Table A1.100	‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 20	231
Table A2.1	Uncertainty markers in text No. 21	242
Table A2.2	Certainty markers in text No. 21	242
Table A2.3	Attitudinal markers in text No. 21	243
Table A2.4	Engagement markers in text No. 21	243
Table A2.5	‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 21	244
Table A2.6	Uncertainty markers in text No. 22	254
Table A2.7	Certainty markers in text No. 22	255
Table A2.8	Attitudinal markers in text No. 22	255

Table A2.9	Engagement markers in text No. 22	255
Table A2.10	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 22	256
Table A2.11	Uncertainty markers in text No. 23	288
Table A2.12	Certainty markers in text No. 23	289
Table A2.13	Attitudinal markers in text No. 23	290
Table A2.14	Engagement markers in text No. 23	291
Table A2.15	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 23	292
Table A2.16	Uncertainty markers in text No. 24	301
Table A2.17	Certainty markers in text No. 24	301
Table A2.18	Attitudinal markers in text No. 24	301
Table A2.19	Engagement markers in text No. 24	302
Table A2.20	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 24	302
Table A2.21	Uncertainty markers in text No. 25	309
Table A2.22	Certainty markers in text No. 25	309
Table A2.23	Attitudinal markers in text No. 25	309
Table A2.24	Engagement markers in text No. 25	310
Table A2.25	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 25	310
Table A2.26	Uncertainty markers in text No. 26	317
Table A2.27	Certainty markers in text No. 26	318
Table A2.28	Attitudinal markers in text No. 26	318
Table A2.29	Engagement markers in text No. 26	318
Table A2.30	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 26	318
Table A2.31	Uncertainty markers in text No. 27	329
Table A2.32	Certainty markers in text No. 27	329
Table A2.33	Attitudinal markers in text No. 27	330
Table A2.34	Engagement markers in text No. 27	331
Table A2.35	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 27	331
Table A2.36	Uncertainty markers in text No. 28	341
Table A2.37	Certainty markers in text No. 28	342
Table A2.38	Attitudinal markers in text No. 28	342
Table A2.39	Engagement markers in text No. 28	343
Table A2.40	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 28	343
Table A2.41	Uncertainty markers in text No. 29	348
Table A2.42	Certainty markers in text No. 29	348
Table A2.43	Attitudinal markers in text No. 29	348

Table A2.44	Engagement markers in text No. 29	349
Table A2.45	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 29	349
Table A2.46	Uncertainty markers in text No. 30	353
Table A2.47	Certainty markers in text No. 30	354
Table A2.48	Attitudinal markers in text No. 30	354
Table A2.49	Engagement markers in text No. 30	354
Table A2.50	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 30	354
Table A2.51	Uncertainty markers in text No. 31	358
Table A2.52	Certainty markers in text No. 31	358
Table A2.53	Attitudinal markers in text No. 31	358
Table A2.54	Engagement markers in text No. 31	359
Table A2.55	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 31	359
Table A2.56	Uncertainty markers in text No. 32	372
Table A2.57	Certainty markers in text No. 32	372
Table A2.58	Attitudinal markers in text No. 32	372
Table A2.59	Engagement markers in text No. 32	373
Table A2.60	'we' expressing third parties in text No. 32	373

List of Figures

Fig. 2.1	Halliday's textual metafunction	38
Fig. 2.2	Van Dijk's concept of textuality	43
Fig. 3.1	Martin and Rose's (2003) appraisal system	70
Fig. 4.1	Summary of the propositional and non-propositional Continuum	131
Fig. 4.2	A model of 'interactional metadiscourse' in editorials	133
Fig. 5.1	Overall frequency of IM sub-categories in the corpora per thousand words	147
Fig. 5.2	Results of the use of IM in the British and Iranian corpora in Percentages	148
Fig. 5.3	Results of the use of the main categories of IM in the corpora per thousand words	150
Fig. 5.4	Results of the use of the sub-categories of UM in the corpora	151
Fig. 5.5	Results of the Use of the sub-categories of CM in the corpora	154
Fig. 5.6	Results of the use of the sub-categories of AM in the corpora per thousand words	157
Fig. 5.7	Results of the use of the sub-categories of EM in the corpora	159
Fig. 5.8	Results of the use of "we' referring to third parties' in the corpora	162

List of Abbreviations

A	Asides
A&S	Anecdotes and Sayings
ACC	Accusative
AM	Attitudinal Markers
Att	Attribution
Con	Conditionals
CM	Certainty Markers
DM	Discourse Markers
DUR	Durative
EA	Expressions of Attitude
EC	Expressions of Certainty
EM	Engagement Markers
EO	Expressions of Obligation
EU	Expressions of Uncertainty
EZ	Ezâfe ¹
I&RS	Impersonals and Reported Speech
IE	Inclusive Expressions
IM	Interactional Metadiscourse
N	Negation Expressing Counter-Expectancy
P	Personalization
PART	Participle
PAST	Past
PLU	Plural
Q	Questions
R	Repetition
RA	Expressions of Reader-Address
SG	Singular
SUBJ	Subjunctive
TM	Textual Metadiscourse
UM	Uncertainty Markers
WTP	'We' Referring to Third Parties

¹ Ezâfe refers to the particle 'e' that is structurally utilized as a link between the head and its modifier and the possessor 'noun phrase' (Taleghani 2008).

Acknowledgements

This PhD program and research would not have been possible without the support of my family and friends in Iran and England. I am deeply indebted to my husband Saeid Razy who gave me all kinds of support and encouragement without which I could have never started and completed this research.

I would like to express my sincere thanks to my supervisor Dr. Gabrina Pounds for her invaluable comments, patience and support throughout my study.

Thanks are due to the School of Language and Communication Studies at the University Of East Anglia, for their valuable support throughout this PhD journey.

My respect and thanks go to my parents and my father-in-law in Iran for their continuous support and encouragement.

Last but not least, I would like to thank my children Armin and Yasamin, for helping me take my mind off this project, and cheering me up in the most difficult moments of my research.

.

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

This thesis is a comparative study with a focus on ‘interactional metadiscourse’ in British and Iranian news magazine editorials. ‘Metadiscourse’ refers to those non-propositional devices used in written and spoken language which reflect the relationship between writers and readers. Studies on metadiscourse generally distinguish between two types of markers: textual and interpersonal (interactional). Textual metadiscourse (TM) is used to organize a text and adds to its cohesion and coherence. Interactional metadiscourse (IM), which is the focus of the present research, refers to the ways authors express their attitudes towards the text and evaluate the propositional content.

1. Background to the Study

The experience of teaching reading and writing to the Iranian students of English and noticing the students’ problems in understanding and organising English texts was the start of the present study. My experience of teaching English as a Foreign Language in Iran suggests that most Iranian students fail to produce acceptable texts in English and have problems in fully understanding English texts, this being largely due to the transference of the metadiscourse conventions normally used in Persian into English. Apart from the lexical and grammatical problems in the English texts produced by students, the texts seem not to be successful in terms of relating the ideas together and establishing a relationship with the reader. These texts consist of unrelated and seemingly out of context sentences placed one after another. This is also the case in the reading of English texts. Students brought up in an Iranian culture have problems understanding the arrangement of ideas in English texts.

Languages differ in many respects, but noticing that rhetorical differences in language use can be a barrier in communicating between two cultures was another trigger for starting this research. According to Johnstone (1986: 171), “studies of cross-cultural communication arise from observations of cross-cultural miscommunication”. Assuming that miscommunication is partly due to the rhetorical conventions the two cultures choose in constructing their

arguments in writing and speech, the present research focuses on the rhetorical conventions associated with interactional metadiscourse in the Iranian and British cultures. Metadiscourse is one of the components that influence the rhetorical development of a text, and cultural differences in the use of metadiscourse can cause problems in the comprehension and production of the non-native language.

As mentioned above, the present study focuses on IM in Iranian and British discourse in order to shed light on how the writers in the two cultures interact with their readers in the process of writing an argumentative text, and what different conventions they use to persuade their readers to share their ideas. For this purpose a text-driven and discourse-specific categorization of IM which is applicable to both British and Iranian editorials is proposed in this study. The categorization aims to address the existing problems in metadiscourse typologies. One of the major problems is the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content, this being the key issue in metadiscourse studies. The fuzzy nature of this distinction makes analysing texts problematic. Although all previous studies of metadiscourse have emphasised the importance of this distinction, they do not mention how they have resolved it in their analyses. This study proposes a set of criteria for distinguishing propositional from non-propositional content in order to create a more consistent approach in interactional metadiscourse analyses. One of the other problems in metadiscourse studies is the overlap in the existing typologies. The categorization proposed in this study addresses this problem and provides a clear definition of each main group and sub-group using examples from British and Iranian editorials. The proposed categorization is then applied to the full corpus of British and Iranian editorials (31296 words overall, 15745 in English and 15551 in Persian). The present study intends to explore how the writers in the two seemingly different cultures organise their texts in order to communicate with their audience using metadiscourse devices, and how they persuade their readers to share their argument. The results of this study will shed more light on the manifestation of culture in the respective languages and will pave the way for a better understanding of the use of rhetorical devices in them.

2. A Preliminary Definition of Metadiscourse

In the past few decades we have witnessed a growing interest in the analysis of written discourse. Many attempts have been made to show the processes by which a text is produced or received (for example, Halliday and Hasan 1976, 1985; Beaugrande and Dressler 1981). According to Charney (2002: 305), in producing a text, the “effectiveness” of a text, that is, the extent to which writers transfer their ideas “smoothly, accurately and quickly to any reader”, was emphasised, leading to many investigations on the structure of texts. Later on researchers broadened their definition of “effectiveness” by carrying out research on different aspects of reading and writing, including the rhetorical nature of texts (for example, Connor and Kaplan 1987). Metadiscourse, one of the rhetorical features of texts, has received a lot of attention in the past few decades.

The concept of metadiscourse was first introduced by Harris in 1959 “to offer a way of understanding language in use, representing a writer’s or speaker’s attempts to guide a receiver’s perception of a text” (cited in Hyland 2005: 3). However, it was in the 1980s that metadiscourse received more attention, and studies on metadiscourse features were developed by researchers such as Vande Kopple (1985, 2002), Crismore (1989), Crismore and Farnsworth (1989, 1990), Hyland (1994, 1996, 1998, 2005) and Hyland and Tse (2004).

All research on metadiscourse distinguishes it from the propositional content of the message and defines it as a set of devices used to reflect the relationship between writer and reader. The writer is seen “as a social being immersed in the activities of a community and attempting to shape textual meanings to interact effectively with that community” (Hyland, 2005: 37). Regarding it as a rhetorical act, Crismore (1989: 7) maintains that metadiscourse is “writing used to guide and direct the reader, to signal the presence of the author, and to call attention to the speech act itself”.

Structural features of this kind have been further studied within the framework of Systemic Functional Linguistics in the works of Halliday and Hasan (1976), Halliday (1977, 1994) and Halliday and Matthiessen (2004). According to this functional approach, three main dimensions or “metafunctions” of meaning can be identified: ideational, interpersonal and textual. Halliday and Matthiessen (2004: 29-30) describe the ideational

metafunction as “language as reflection” and as a means of ‘construing’ human experience, and maintain that “language provides a **theory** of human experience” (original emphasis). They define the interpersonal metafunction as “language in action” and maintain that, as well as a ‘construing’ function, language also has an ‘enacting’ function reflecting personal and social relationships. Apart from the ideational and interpersonal metafunctions of language which ‘construe’ experience and ‘enact’ interpersonal relations, they identify a third component, the textual metafunction, which relates to the construction of text. Halliday and Matthiessen (2004: 30) regard it as an enabling or facilitating function and state that both the other functions depend on it in order to be able to build up sequences of discourse, organize the discursive flow and create cohesion and continuity.

Influenced by the Systemic Functional approach to language, researchers studying ‘metadiscourse’ separate it from the propositional content of the message which Halliday and Hasan call ‘ideational metafunction’, and divide metadiscourse into the two main sub-categories of ‘textual’ and ‘interpersonal’.

They argue that TM is used to organize a text and adds to its coherence and cohesion. TM has been broken down into various sub-categories (TM and its sub-categories will be discussed in Chapter 3). The following contains examples of ‘sequencers’.

- (1) India's linguistic, ethnic, social and religious diversity, compounded by the caste system, is one reason for this. ... Another reason for the introverted world of the Indian middle class, argues Chakravarthi Ram-Prasad in our cover story, arises from the great achievement of India: democracy.
(*Prospect*, No. 138, Sep.2007)

In this example the phrases *one reason* and *another reason* may be considered ‘metadiscourse markers’ in the sense that they do not add to the propositional content of the message, and they are ‘textual’ because in using them the author signals to the reader that s/he wants to discuss the two reasons that make middle-class Indians less politically engaged than their equivalents in many other parts of the world. In this way the writer helps the readers to anticipate the framework of the text.

On the other hand, ‘interpersonal metadiscourse’ refers to the ways authors express their attitudes towards the text and evaluate the propositional content. As with TM, different types of ‘interpersonal metadiscourse’ features have been

identified. (The sub-categories will be discussed in Chapter 3). In the following example the author uses the word *importantly* to express his/her attitude towards the degree of importance of nuclear disarmament.

- (2) These included a watertight ban to ensure no proliferation; a balance of responsibilities and obligations that applied equally to the "five" powers and to the rest; and, importantly, that "the treaty should be a step towards the achievement of general and complete disarmament, and, more particularly, nuclear disarmament". (*New Statesman*, 14 February 2008)

Many studies of metadiscourse attempt to compare the use of metadiscourse markers in different genres. The academic genre has received a lot of attention in this regard. For example Hyland (1994) studies hedging, one of the sub-categories of metadiscourse, in English for Academic Purposes (EAP) textbooks. Other studies to be mentioned in this connection are Hyland (1998) and Hyland and Tse (2004) which both focus on metadiscourse in academic writing. There are also studies on the use of metadiscourse in the writings of ESL students (Intaraprawat 1988, Intaraprawat and Steffensen 1995). The presence and function of metadiscourse have also been studied in different types of text, for example in textbooks (Crismore 1984; Hyland 1999, 2000), student writings (Crismore et al. 1993), science popularizations (Crismore and Farnsworth 1990), and research articles (Mauranen 1993; Hyland 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001; Abdollahzadeh 2003).

Some cross-cultural studies on metadiscourse have also been carried out. For example, Milne (2003) studies metadiscourse in English and Spanish persuasive texts. She compares the Spanish newspaper *El país* with the British *The Times* in terms of how both textual and interpersonal metadiscourse devices are used in the two languages. Milne (2008) focuses on newspaper discourse, particularly opinion columns in English and Spanish. Alkaff (2000) carries out cross-cultural analysis of 'Letters to the Editor' in texts produced in English written by Yemeni/Arab writers in order to find out the extent to which metadiscourse used by Yemeni writers meet the expectations of English language speakers. Abdollahzadeh (2003) investigates research articles written in English by Iranian and Anglo-American scholars. He compares the use of 'hedges', 'emphatics', and 'attitude markers' in the two sets of data and concludes that in order to own their audience and reinforce their sense of belonging to their disciplinary community, non-native writers should develop

their sensitivity and skill in the use of these markers. Abdollahzadeh's comparison is based on the texts written in English by the two groups of native Anglo-American and Iranian scholars. But no attention, to the best of my knowledge, has been paid to cross-cultural study between British and Iranian argumentative texts. According to Hyland (1998: 438) "metadiscourse is not an independent stylistic device which authors can vary at will. It is integral to the context in which it occurs and is intimately linked to the norms and expectations of particular cultural and professional communities". This study is an attempt to discover the impact that these culturally based "norms and expectations" make on the use of IM.

3. Research Questions and the Aims of the Study

Two main questions are addressed in this research. First, how can a new categorization of 'interactional metadiscourse' be introduced for the comparative study of metadiscourse features in editorials? This question relates to two major issues: the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content, and the overlapping categorizations in the existent studies. The principal aim here is to set a boundary for distinguishing between propositional and non-propositional content. This distinction is at present controversial and fuzzy. Researchers hold different opinions in distinguishing between propositional and non-propositional material depending on the point of view they hold. In order to be consistent throughout the analysis of the texts both in English and Persian some parameters will be set. The study will, therefore, propose a set of categories of 'interactional metadiscourse' devices applicable to analyzing editorials. The aim here is to reduce the overlap in the previous categorizations and provide a clear definition of each main group and sub-group. Following Hyland (2005), a distinction will be made between 'interactive' and 'interactional' metadiscourse, 'interactive' being similar to textual metadiscourse and 'interactional' being roughly the same as interpersonal metadiscourse. The focus of the study will be on the 'interactional metadiscourse' (IM). IM refers to the ways in which editorialists interact with their readers, which is essentially evaluative and influences "the degree of intimacy, the expression of attitude, epistemic judgements, and commitments, and the degree of reader involvement" (Hyland and Tse 2004: 168). The categorization proposed is both theory-driven and text-

driven. On the theory-driven basis, previous studies will be examined and the problems identified. On the text-driven basis, a corpus of British and Iranian editorials will be analysed and a categorization proposed which is applicable to editorials. In this study the following IM devices will be discussed: ‘uncertainty markers’, ‘certainty markers’, ‘attitudinal markers’ and ‘engagement markers’. (A full discussion will be provided in Chapter 4).

The second question addressed in this study is whether there are any significant differences between the types and frequency of the IM devices used by British and Iranian editorialists in expressing their reactions to and evaluations of the propositional content. This study aims to examine and describe the patterns of metadiscourse used by Iranian and British editorialists. The research studies the similarities and differences in the use of the above mentioned ‘interactional markers’ in Iranian and British news magazine editorials. For this purpose, 32 editorials (20 in English and 12 in Persian) from different British and Iranian news magazines will be analysed and the frequency of occurrence of different metadiscourse devices in the two corpora will be compared and discussed. Whilst addressing the second question, suggestions will be made about which *cultural* differences, if any, may be responsible for any differences observed in the use of IM devices. In this connection, the different political settings influencing the writing of editorials will also be addressed.

4. The Nature of the Corpus

The data for the study was selected from British and Iranian news magazine editorials. The rationale for the focus on news magazines was that they discuss current issues affecting society while expressing informed views on these issues, and that they are aimed at an educated audience. Unlike news reports, which perform the basic social function of informing and reporting the news, news magazines can be seen as multifunctional. Their ‘news reporting’ component is weaker, while their ‘opinion’ component is stronger. They discuss the daily news and include examples of short, persuasive and argumentative texts. News magazines normally provide analysis of and commentary on current affairs, and their purpose is “to inform, entertain, persuade, and consolidate daily news reports” (Moore 2006: 253). News magazines are not usually

“records of account” but are “selective in what they report and how they report” (ibid).

The data for the study comes from editorials which, by definition, have an argumentative focus. Argumentative texts focus on the “evaluation of relations between concepts” (Hatim and Mason 1990: 155) and their main purpose is to persuade their readers of the correctness of their claims and gain acceptance for their ideas. According to Lakoff (1990: 216) persuasiveness is based on the two notions of emotional appeal and intellectual argument. In order to create emotional appeal it is necessary for the writer to establish a proper interaction with the reader using appropriate persuasive devices including interactional metadiscourse. News magazine editorials were used in the study to explore how the two cultures, British and Iranian, utilise metadiscourse as an argumentative device to win over their audience for the following reasons: they are a rich source of interactional metadiscourse due to their persuasive and argumentative nature; they discuss the current issues affecting their specific societies, and they are mainly aimed at an educated readership.

According to Reynolds (2000), editorials are not composed simply of an argument, but rather a blend of narrative, description, and argument, in which argument dominates. These qualities make them suitable for this research because they are a rich source for metadiscourse analysis.

There are several studies on the discourse of editorials. For example, Bolivar (1994) analyses the structure of editorials using a unit called ‘a triad’ or ‘three-part structure’ and shows how editorials are made of three fundamental ‘turns’: the ‘lead’, the ‘follow’ and the ‘valuate’. Van Dijk (1995) studies the content of editorials. He investigates discourse and socially shared mental representations with special attention to the discursive manifestation of ideologies. Le (2004) also analyses the language of editorials and identifies three sets of participants: the editorialist, the audience, and the people linked to the issue discussed. She focuses on the identification of participants in editorials and the effects of participants on the persuasive process. The above studies focus on the structure, content and language of editorials. The present study focuses on the interactional language of editorials, this being one aspect of the rhetorical devices used in English and Persian. It discusses whether or not, and if so to what extent, editorialists use different linguistic means to relate to their readers in order to make their texts persuasive. It further explores whether or not these

differences may be linked to a variation in cultural backgrounds, with particular reference to journalistic conventions and the role of the press in Britain and Iran.

5. Methodology

The study has two main components: the IM component and the contrastive component. The former requires a qualitative approach in order to propose a classification of IM applicable to both British and Iranian editorials. A quantitative approach is then taken to compare the frequency of occurrence of IM in editorials from the two countries.

The qualitative aspect of the study is both theory- and text-driven. It is theory-driven in that it focuses on the existing studies of metadiscourse and attempts to highlight the problems in this area. Research in metadiscourse, and particularly 'interactional metadiscourse', involves some difficulty because of the fuzzy nature of the notion and the diversity of items that can be considered as falling under this category. The present study examines previous studies and addresses two main problems: the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content, which is the key issue in metadiscourse studies; and the overlapping categories of IM. The study attempts to provide a clearer picture of propositional and non-propositional material by setting some parameters in order to distinguish the two. The approach is text-driven in that it proposes a revised categorization that takes into account the forms of IM identified in the corpus. The new or modified categories are discussed and illustrated with examples from British and Iranian news magazine editorials.

The quantitative aspect of the study consists of comparisons and contrasts in the frequency of the use of IM in British and Iranian editorials. To this end, 32 editorials (20 British and 12 Iranian editorials) were selected. Since the Iranian editorials were longer than the British ones, more British editorials were analysed so that there were a similar number of words in both sets of data. In order to reduce stylistic influences of the writers and magazines in the analysis, a variety of writers and news magazines with a variety of political coverage were chosen. The British editorials were selected from *the Economist*, *New Statesman*, *Prospect* and *Spectator*. The Iranian editorials were selected from *Cheshmandaze Iran*, *Ettela'at Weekly* and *Gozaresh*. For the sake of equivalence, editorials dealing with the serious dominant issues in the related

societies were selected. A full discussion of the corpus, including the nature of editorials in British and Iranian news magazines will be provided in Chapter 4, and the methodology used to develop the quantitative aspects of the study will be provided in Chapter 5.

6. Organization of the Study

In addition to the present chapter (Chapter 1) which introduces the main elements of the thesis, there are five more chapters organised as follows:

Chapter 2 will include a brief overview of classical and contemporary rhetoric and a discussion of the relationship between rhetoric and metadiscourse. The second part of this chapter will analyse the major works carried out on written text analysis. The purpose of this chapter is to clarify how studies on cohesion and coherence, which were basically text-bound, led to further investigations on how a text is related to its context, which finally led to a clearer understanding of how the communication between writer and reader is organized through the use of metadiscourse.

Chapter 3 will first discuss the earlier references to 'metadiscourse' referring to a number of parallel notions, e.g. metacommunication (Rossiter 1974), signalling words (Meyer 1975); non-topical material (Lautamatti 1978) and meta-talk (Schiffrin 1980). It will then outline the development of the notion of 'metadiscourse', its definition and the different classifications proposed by scholars on metadiscourse markers. The aim of this chapter is to provide a background for the categorization proposed in Chapter 4 by examining the shortcomings of the existing studies.

Chapter 4 will focus on the qualitative aspect of the research and aims to provide a framework for the analysis of 'interactional metadiscourse' in English and Persian. The chapter will start with a clarification of the corpus and methodology used. In this connection, the processes of data selection and data analysis, with some reference to the role of the press media in the Iranian and British political background, will be discussed. The second part of the chapter will proceed to the discussion of the key issue of propositional and non-propositional content. An attempt will be made to suggest a solution for their distinction. The third part of the chapter will provide a categorization of the IM

based on the previous models, and its application to British and Iranian editorials will be discussed.

Chapter 5 will focus on the quantitative aspect of the study. Its aim is to compare and contrast the use of IM in British and Iranian editorials. The chapter will start with the methodology used to compare the two samples. Then, the analysis of two samples (a British and a Persian editorial) will be provided for illustration. The purpose here is to describe the processes involved in analysing the whole corpus. A discussion will follow comparing the two sets of British and Iranian editorials in terms of the frequency and use of each main and sub-category of IM. In relation to this, the use of IM in the respective editorials will be discussed and the similarities and differences will be clarified referring to the cultural influences.

Chapter 6 will provide a conclusion to the main contributions of the research, and suggestions for some further applications of the study in future.

CHAPTER 2

Rhetoric, Textuality and Discourse

The purpose of this study is to explore how ‘interactional metadiscourse’ is used in British and Iranian news magazine editorials. Since metadiscourse can be considered one of the sub-components of rhetoric, first classical and modern rhetoric will be discussed and the relationship between rhetoric and metadiscourse will be clarified. Then some traditional approaches to text will be reviewed. The principal purpose is to demonstrate how studies of text in the past have led to studies on signalling and finally on metadiscourse in the last three decades. The discussion will lead to a review of more recent studies on textuality from the late 1970s onwards. The focus of the review will be on the manifestation of textuality through ‘coherence’ and ‘cohesion’. Having been used widely by Halliday first, these concepts have been approached from different perspectives. In this chapter a brief review of three major approaches will be discussed: formal-functional, cognitive and social approaches. As it will be observed, the term ‘discourse’ is used instead of ‘text’ in later studies of textuality. Therefore, the concept of ‘discourse’ will also be briefly discussed in this relation. The final section of this discussion will be devoted to the studies on signalling.

1. Rhetoric

1.1. Background

Studies of language probably started in ancient Greece where early attempts were made to study discourse and to establish precepts for its use. These studies were transmitted to Rome² and then to medieval Europe³.

Traditionally, there are three main disciplines which have been concerned with language: Grammar, Logic, and Rhetoric (Beaugrande 1997: 22). *Grammar* has centred on written language and “has sought to expound the organization of a language in terms of form, pattern, and rules” (ibid: 22). Early grammarians claimed to know the language and therefore prescribed the

² The works of Cicero and Quintilian are the major writings in ancient Rome.

³ For more information about the history of classical rhetoric in Greece, Rome and the Middle Ages see Kennedy 1963, 1972, and Murphy 1974.

correct usage of it. The main purpose of *grammar* was to enlist standards by making *prescriptions* for correct usage and *proscriptions* against incorrect usage (ibid: 22). *Logic* has dealt with “the search for a universal system of knowing in the discipline of ‘philosophy’” (Beaugrande 1997: 24). The main concern of logicians for early Greeks was finding a system of principles by means of which statements and arguments could be constructed and proven true or false without considering text type and context, or speaker and hearer (ibid: 24). *Rhetoric*, unlike grammar which focused on written language, has centred on speaking skills. It has dealt with teaching “active and public skills, especially for oratory” (Beaugrande 1997: 23). Thus, the main concern of rhetoricians has been persuading particular audiences. Therefore, it had a social function and emphasised effectiveness rather than truth and correctness. According to Beaugrande (1997: 23), the use of discourse strategies for practical goals was important for rhetoricians. They emphasised the richer factors of context, for example how to persuade particular audiences.

Aristotle’s book *Rhetoric* is probably the oldest and most respected book contributing to rhetorical theory and analysing and discussing the art of persuasion.⁴

1.2. Classical Rhetoric

Classical rhetoric mainly derived from Aristotle’s book *Rhetoric*, was concerned with the art of public speaking by orators and their attempt to win over the hearers by making effective arguments. Its main concern was “making a point and winning over an audience through a coherent, convincing presentation” (Connor 1996: 6).

Aristotle’s *Rhetoric* is divided into three books, discussing the stages of preparing a rhetorical speech. Book I focuses on the speaker and his role in the process of persuasion. Book II focuses on the audience and the relationship between human nature, emotions and moral considerations. Book III discusses the language to be used in preparing the rhetorical speech. In Book I Aristotle defines rhetoric as

⁴ Plato has contributed to rhetorical theories, as well. In his book *Phaedrus* he relates rhetoric to philosophy and argues that rhetoric “is no art, but a knack that has nothing to do with art” (Plato, translated by Hackforth 1972: 120). He believes, “Clarity, consistency, and “naturalness” [are] the only features necessary for effective presentation of ideas.” (Young, et al. 1970: 3). Whereas truth or falsity of expression is important for Plato, for Aristotle the manner of expression is important.

the faculty of observing in any given case the available means of persuasion. This is not the function of any other art. Every other art can instruct or persuade about its own particular subject-matter [...] But rhetoric we look upon as the power of observing the means of persuasion on almost any subject presented to us; and that is why we say that, in its technical character, it is not concerned with any special or definite class of subjects. (Aristotle, translated by Barnes 1984: 2155)

For Aristotle rhetoric is a method or art to structure speech for the purpose of persuasion. Therefore, he emphasises the manner in which a speech is organised and delivered over the content. He refers to three modes of persuasion: *ethos*, *pathos* and *logos*. *Ethos* refers to “the personal character of the speaker”. It is “the most effective means of persuasion” and makes us think the speaker “credible” (ibid: 2155). *Pathos* refers to the arousal of emotion in the hearers and “putting the audience in a certain frame of mind” (ibid: 2155). *Logos* refers to the structure and form of the address. It deals with devising a persuasive argument suitable to the case and depends on “the proof, or apparent proof, provided by the words of the speech itself” (ibid: 2155). According to Aristotle, “persuasion is effected through the speech itself when we have proved a truth or an apparent truth by means of the persuasive arguments suitable to the case in question” (ibid: 2155).

According to Connor (1996: 64-65), in Aristotelian rhetoric three elements must be observed in making an argument: first, the means or sources of persuasion. This is achieved by a judicious use of proofs. These proofs furnished by speech are founded upon *ethos*, *pathos* and *logos* (discussed above). The second element important in making an argument is the language, in which word choice is very important. *Topoi*, or themes, and *tropes*, or metaphors must be used appropriately. The third element to be observed in making an argument is the arrangement of the various parts of the treatment. This is important in the sense that a case is stated and then must be proved. A properly arranged speech has three parts: an introduction, where subjects are stated, an argument and counterargument, where the subjects are judged, and an epilogue, where the argument is summarised.

The Latin division of Aristotelian Rhetoric has five parts representing the successive stages of preparing a rhetorical speech:

- a. *inventio* or invention (the finding of argumentative matter),
- b. *dispositio* or arrangement (the structural arrangement of arguments),

- c. *elocutio* or style (the verbal adornment of the matter),
 - d. *memoria* or memory (the memorizing of the structured and verbally adorned text),
 - e. *actio* and *pronuntiatio* or action and pronunciation (the visual and auditory realization of the speech)
- (Plett 1985: 60).

It can be observed from the above discussion that in classical rhetoric the audience were largely passive and the communication was one-sided; that is orator to hearer. The main aim of the orator was to influence the audience by an effective arrangement of the argument, clever choice of words and influential delivery of speech in public. The orator put a lot of effort into using rhetorical techniques to make the speech persuasive to the people on the assumption that they “lack[ed] knowledge and the ability to follow a lengthy chain of argument” (Perelman 1982: 5).

Unlike classical rhetoric which is concerned with people who lacked knowledge, contemporary rhetoric “is concerned with discourse addressed to *any sort of audience* – a crowd in a public square or a gathering of specialists , a single being or all humanity” (Perelman 1982: 5, italics in original). It will be shown that contemporary rhetoric has greatly been influenced by classical rhetoric, especially Aristotle’s work. However, changes have been made to adapt it to the requirements of the present situation.

1.3. Contemporary Rhetoric

The meaning of ‘rhetoric’ has changed from age to age and from school to school. It has meant different things to different people. Contemporary rhetoric is a reinterpretation of classical rhetoric. Plett (1985: 59) mentions four differences between contemporary and classical rhetoric. First, contemporary rhetoric is reader/hearer based rather than fully reliant on text production. Second, it is generative and aims at comprehending rhetorical phenomena, rather than being normative and therefore prescriptive. Third, it follows logical coherence rather than the traditional one. Fourth, contemporary rhetoric is practically more useful than the classical one. Plett (ibid: 60) replaces the five stages of preparing for a rhetorical speech mentioned in section 1.2 above with the following: argumentative competence instead of ‘inventio’, structural competence instead of ‘dispositio’, stylistic competence instead of ‘elocutio’,

mnemonic competence instead of 'memoria', medial competence instead of 'actio'. All these stages are similar to the classical rhetoric except for the emphasis that contemporary rhetoric puts on the two-sided communication between the speaker/writer and the audience, and that it studies written language as well as spoken language.

Aristotelian rhetoric has been modified and applied to the teaching of writing (e.g. Corbett 1965, Young et al. 1970, Williams 1981, 1990). According to Connor (1996: 65), since the important concern of Aristotelian rhetoric is "the need to develop arts or strategies to guide phases of writing ..., major components of Aristotle's rhetoric have been applied in composition instruction and textbooks". However, in modern rhetoric, unlike classical rhetoric where communication was one-sided, a two-way communication between writer/speaker and audience is emphasised. The main purpose here is "to gain a meeting of minds instead of imposing its [the argumentation's] will through constraint or conditioning" (Perelman 1982: 11). Modern rhetoric is broader than the classical rhetoric in the sense that it focuses on both spoken and written language and emphasises effective communication between speaker/writer and the audience.

Contrastive rhetoric is a research area influenced by classical rhetoric. It was initiated by Kaplan about forty years ago. Realising that essays written by ESL learners were not successful in creating a two-way communication, he modified and applied Aristotelian rhetoric to the essays written by ESL learners.

Generally, contrastive rhetoric is based on the conception that language and writing are cultural phenomena which lead to unique rhetorical conventions in every language (Connor 1996). Contrastive rhetoric investigates conventions of discourse and rhetorical structure as well as cognitive and cultural dimensions at the level of discourse and text. According to Connor (1996: 70) there are two major strands of studies on contrastive rhetoric. First those studies that have focused on different types of texts, for example, expository student essays, narrative student essays or persuasive student essays (e.g. Söter 1988, Connor 1987, Connor and Lauer 1988). Second, those studies that emphasise the presence of audience e.g. Hinds's (1987) research on reader-responsible vs. writer-responsible prose in different cultures.

Some contrastive studies on editorials have been carried out, too. For example, Dantas-Whitney and Grabe (1989) compared the presentation of

information in English and Portuguese editorials. Tirkkonen-Condit and Liefländer-Koistinen (1989) studied the strength and placement of the main claim of editorials in Finnish, English and German editorials. The focus of the present study is to compare the use of 'interactional metadiscourse' in English and Persian editorials. The relationship between metadiscourse and rhetoric will be discussed in the next section.

1.4. Rhetoric and Metadiscourse

This study is a contrastive analysis of the way English and Persian writers use the rhetorical device of metadiscourse. It aims to be a cross-cultural study on the use of 'interactional (interpersonal) metadiscourse' and to discuss the organization of texts in the two languages to produce effective and persuasive discourse.

As can be observed from the discussion on classical and modern rhetoric, both rhetoric and metadiscourse are concerned with effective ways of producing a spoken/written text to persuade the audience to share the speaker/author's ideas and beliefs. Both target the audience as an important component in the act of communication. Similarly, metadiscourse also emphasizes a two-way relationship between the speaker/author and audience.

Another similarity can be in the taxonomy of rhetoric and metadiscourse. In classical rhetoric, oratory is divided into the two components of 'taxis' and 'lexis'. According to Nash (1992: 100), taxis referred to "the structure of a speech, its programme or running order of 'here beginneth' and 'firstly' and 'consequently' and 'on the other hand' and 'in conclusion'". Lexis, on the other hand "signified the diction and style of the piece, as adapted to the orator's perception of the formality of his topic and the status of the audience" (ibid). Similarly, metadiscourse is of two major types: 'textual' and 'interpersonal'. 'Textual metadiscourse' refers to the organisation of a text and its cohesion and coherence. Using textual metadiscourse, writers direct their readers through the text using signalling devices like 'first', 'therefore', 'on the other hand'. 'Interpersonal metadiscourse', like modern rhetoric, emphasises the importance of communication with audience. It refers to the devices authors use to interact with their readers.

Classical rhetoric has had a major influence over traditional approaches to language, particularly textuality. In the next section some traditional approaches

to language will be examined. The purpose is to show how studies of textuality led to the studies of signalling and then metadiscourse.

2. Traditional Approaches to Language

Beaugrande and Dressler (1981:15) state that the oldest form of studies of texts can actually be found in rhetoric, dating back to Ancient Greece and Rome and the Middle Ages. They maintain that rhetoric and text linguistics have the following features in common:

1. ideas are arranged in a systematic order
2. ideas can change into expressions by training
3. some texts are better than others in the way they express ideas
4. texts can be judged by the effect they have on an audience
5. texts are vehicles of purposeful action

A scientific study of language or 'modern linguistics' started with the field of philology in the nineteenth century. Philology, a fore-runner of modern linguistics, dealt with the organization and evolution of language sounds and forms in historic time (Beaugrande and Dressler, 1981: 20). The main concerns of philology were historical, comparative and geographical connections among languages and dialects (Beaugrande, 1997: 26). Unlike the early grammarians who prescribed rules, philologists worked with authentic data and described what people said. This scientific approach to language continued to the twentieth century and paved the way for modern linguistics by "*framing explicit theories of language and implementing disciplined practices*" (Beaugrande, 1997: 28, italics in original). Early modern linguistics mainly focused on spoken language and the work done on written language was "cheap explanatory work' in identifying units and their boundaries" (Beaugrande, 1997: 28). In early modern linguistics the study of texts was limited to "the framework of the sentence as the largest unit with an inherent structure" (Beaugrande and Dressler, 1981: 16-17).

The descriptive structuralist approach to texts was developed in the 20th century, especially in the USA. Language was broken down into its minimal units and the proponents of this approach maintained that studying these pieces of language can lead to a complete description of a language. Descriptive structuralists ignored text and only defined it as a unit above the sentence.

Beaugrande and Dressler (1981: 32; see also Beaugrande, 1980: 8) state that structuralist linguistics developed a modular model of language in which the components of language are viewed as independent of each other. This modular model of language is contrasted with the interactional model of language in which the components of language are understood “to interlock and control each other” (ibid: 32). Beaugrande and Dressler argue that the structuralists’ modular model of language was proved to be inefficient because of producing an endless number of structures and failing to explain how syntax and grammar interact with meaning. Therefore, in order to provide a model of language in social interaction, linguists considered other approaches that would take real text and context into account.

3. Textuality

3.1. Background

Feeling that traditional syntactic tools were not adequate to explain texts, linguists approached language in its context and the concept of textuality was discussed among scholars. Some anthropological studies were carried out in the 20th century. Anthropologists examined language in its social context. Malinowsky, one of the most important 20th century anthropologists, emphasised the importance of participant observation and of being in daily contact with the speakers of the language in order to have a better understanding of the culture. Sapir and Whorf, two American anthropologist-linguists proposed the principle of Linguistic Relativity in the early 20th century. They believed that the varying cultural concepts and categories inherent in different languages affect the cognitive classification of the experienced world in such a way that speakers of different languages think and behave differently because of this.

One of the most important schools of thought on text linguistics is the Prague school. It was initiated in the 1920s by Mathesius and was developed by a group of Czech linguists, including Firbas and Daneš, in the 1950s and 1960s. “They were the first to show how presentation of information in whole texts needed to be studied along with the formal structures of sentences” (Connor 1996: 81). According to Connor (1996), the Prague school’s greatest contribution to text linguistics was the concepts of “theme” and “rheme”. “Theme” and “rheme” or “old” and “new” information refer to the information flow

in sentences. They indicate which part of the sentence is presented to the reader as new information and which part is presented as information the reader is already aware of.

The studies of anthropologists and the scholars in the Prague school led to the formation of Systemic Functional Linguistics (SFL) developed mainly by Halliday in the 1960s. The emphasis of SFL is on the function of specific linguistic structures in context rather than on their forms only. Adopting a social-semiotic perspective, Halliday and Hasan (1985: 11) see text “in its process aspect as an interactive event, a social exchange of events. Text is a form of exchange; and the fundamental form of a text is that of dialogue, of interaction between speakers”.

Another major approach to the study of text is discourse analysis which has developed since 1970s. Contrary to the Prague school and the early SFL school where the focus is primarily linguistic, discourse analysis “is characterised by an interdisciplinary emphasis in which psychological and educational theories have equal status with linguistic theories” (Connor 1996: 82). SFL-based discourse analysis also places greater emphasis on the social and cultural context in the study of linguistic structures and their meanings. According to Halliday and Hasan (1985: 5), knowledge is transmitted in social contexts and through relationships that are defined in the value systems and ideology of the culture and “the words that are exchanged in these contexts get their meaning from activities in which they are embedded, which again are social activities with social agencies and goals”. The principles of SFL were later applied to many other studies including ‘metadiscourse’. This will be fully discussed in Chapter 3.

Since textuality is the key concept in analysing texts, it is important to provide an overview of how this concept developed and how studies in this area turned scholars’ attention to the use of signalling and metadiscourse in texts. In the next section the views of textuality which evolved from the late 1970s onwards will be discussed first. The two basic components of textuality, i.e. cohesion and coherence, will be examined in the light of formalist, cognitive and social theories. Discourse analytical approaches that developed from or alongside these studies will be discussed later in this chapter.

3.2. Main Approaches to Textuality

Textuality has mainly been approached from formalist, cognitive and social perspectives. Halliday and Hasan (1976, 1985), Halliday (1985/1994) and Halliday and Matthiessen (2004) focus on text from a formal-functional perspective. Van Dijk (1980, 1985), and Kintsch and Van Dijk (1978, 1983) take a cognitive-psychological approach to textuality while Beaugrande (1980, 1997, 2004) and Beaugrande and Dressler (1981) adopt a social functional approach to textuality. These approaches are discussed below.

Halliday and Hasan (1978) take a formal-functional approach in analysing texts and identify three main 'metafunctions': ideational, interpersonal and textual. In a more recent work, Halliday and Matthiessen (2004: 29) take advances in discourse analysis into account and define the *ideational metafunction* as a means of 'construing' human experience through the use of lexicogrammar in every language. They define *interpersonal metafunction* as a means of 'enacting' our personal and social relationships with the other people around us through the use of language. Since the purpose of this research is studying 'interactional metadiscourse' markers which carry out an interpersonal function, the topic will be brought up later in the discussion of metadiscourse. The term *textual metafunction* relates to the construction of text. Halliday and Matthiessen (2004: 30) regard it as an enabling or facilitating function and state that both the other functions depend on it in order to be able to build up sequences of discourse, organize the discursive flow and create cohesion and continuity. Halliday and Matthiessen (ibid) identify two main levels of the textual metafunction: the structural and the lexico-grammatical features. They discuss the structural features under the headings of *thematic structure* (Theme and Rheme) (The significance of thematic structure will be discussed in Chapter 4 in relation to the differentiation between propositional and non-propositional content.), and *information structure* and the notion of *focus* (Given and New information). Lexico-grammatical features are discussed under the main heading of *cohesion* and the sub-headings of *grammatical cohesion* (conjunction, reference, ellipsis and substitution), and *lexical cohesion* (ibid. 579). Figure 2.1 is a summary of Halliday's textual metafunction.

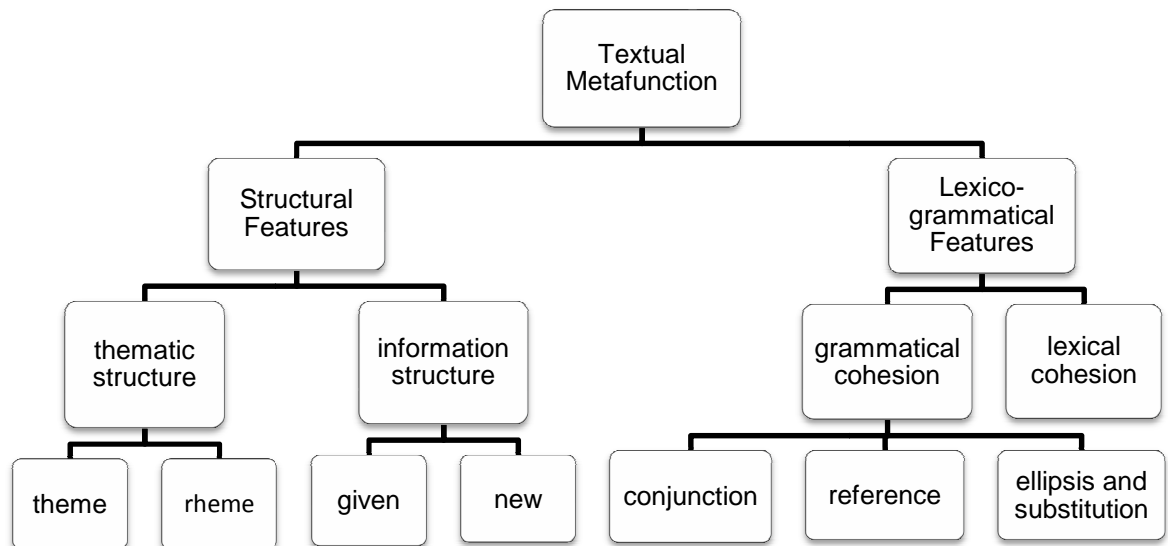


Fig. 2.1. Halliday's textual metafunction

While Halliday takes a formal approach to textuality, Kintsch and Van Dijk (1978, 1983) approach textuality from the comprehension side and propose the Process Model in order to “describe the system of mental operations that underlie the process occurring in text comprehension and in the production of recall and summarization protocols” (Kintsch and Van Dijk 1978: 363). In their Process Model, Kintsch and Van Dijk outline three sets of operations. In the first set of operations the meaning elements of a text become organized into a coherent whole. In the second set the full meaning of the text is condensed into its gist and the third set generates new texts from the memorial consequences of the comprehension processes (Kintsch and Van Dijk 1978: 363). They conclude that the “meaning and reference” of sentences depend not only on the “meaning and reference” of their constituent components but also on the interpretation of the other sentences in the text. In this process the language user relates new incoming information to his/her previous information. This previous information may include the information coming from the “mostly previous” text, the context or from the language user’s general knowledge system (Kintsch and Van Dijk 1978: 389). This relation to previous information may or may not be signalled using discourse markers. On occasion, the writer signals the relation using discourse markers, e.g. *as discussed earlier*, *as you*

know. On other occasions, the relation is only signalled by proposition *ordering* without using markers.

Beaugrande approaches textuality from a social perspective and maintains that “textuality is not just a *linguistic property* or *feature* or a set of these, but a *multiple mode of connectedness* activated wherever communicative events occur” (1997: 61, italics in original). He states that in adopting textuality, we emphasize the global aspects of texts, not the isolated entities that comprise a text:

The actual processes whereby a text is produced and received are invested not in gluing element to element but in controlling the connectedness among these choices. Since the connectedness is *intended* by the text producer and *accepted* by the receiver(s), our task is not to formally ‘derive’ or ‘prove’ the unity of the ‘theoretical text’, but to functionally describe and model the unifying economy and agenda of real texts [...] (ibid: 61, italics in original).

Beaugrande adopts a procedural approach to studying texts in which units and structural patterns interact with each other to produce a text. He maintains that the discovery of units and structural patterns cannot be a goal in itself; rather “we are concerned with the operations which manipulate units and patterns during the utilization of language systems in application” (Beaugrande and Dressler, 1981: 33).

Beaugrande introduces the seven standards of textuality: cohesion, coherence, intentionality, acceptability, informativity, situationality, and intertextuality. (These seven concepts will be defined later in section 3.3.3.)

Cohesion and coherence are the two most important concepts in defining textuality and form the basis of the studies on metadiscourse carried out later. These two concepts will be discussed in the light of the three above- mentioned approaches to textuality in the following sections.

3.3. The Development of Cohesion and Coherence

3.3.1. Formal – Functional Approach

For Halliday ‘cohesion’ refers to the use of linguistic devices to signal relations between sentences and parts of texts. Cohesion is realised through the “linguistic means whereby a text is enabled to function as a single meaningful unit” (Halliday and Hasan 1976: 30). It is realised in English by *conjunction*, *reference*, *ellipsis* and *substitution* and *lexical cohesion*. Halliday and Matthiessen (2004: 535) state that conjunction, reference, substitution and

ellipsis are cohesive devices within the grammatical zone of lexicogrammar, whilst lexical cohesion operates within the lexis and is achieved through the choice of lexical items.

According to Halliday and Matthiessen (2004: 537), “conjunction is concerned with rhetorical transitions - transition between whole ‘messages’, or even message complexes. Conjunction indicates the relation through which such textual transitions are created”. For example, *meanwhile* in example 1 below (quoted from Halliday and Matthiessen 2004: 536) operates as a conjunctive relation in the text.

- (1) Kate: Well I think that’s the thing. But you’ve tried the patches once before, haven’t you?
Craig: Oh, once before it did work. Look: there’ve been plenty of periods when I don’t smoke- big blocks of time. And I don’t smoke during the day, and it’s usually with a drink and all that sort of thing. But, you know, I smoke and I hate it. I hate that I do it. And I’m at the point where I have to make the decision. I can’t go on go on any longer with it.
Kate: Meanwhile go and have fag. [laughs]

In this example, *meanwhile* acts as a conjunction and creates a logical relationship between the first and second part of the text when there is no other structural relationship between the two parts.

By using *reference* writers and speakers create links between elements. That is, the identity of an item can be found by looking at the immediate context in which it occurs. For example, we use pronouns in subsequent references to the same person in a text. Consider another example taken from Halliday and Matthiessen (ibid: 556).

- (2) Here, I’ll help you with this one.

In example 2 the reference of *this one* can be understood from the context in which it occurs.

Ellipsis and *substitution* are particular forms of wording that are usually confined to closely contiguous passages and as Halliday and Matthiessen state are characteristic of question and answer or similar ‘adjacency pairs’ in dialogue (ibid: 537).

- (3) Oh, the pan’s been washed, has it?
It hasn’t [*been washed*].

In this example, *been washed* has been omitted from the second part (the answer) and this omission does not cause any problem in the course of information exchange. In example 4 below the phrase *this fish is cooked beautifully* has been substituted by the item *so*, which “gives more prominence to the expression of gratitude” (ibid: 535).

- (4) Kate, I must say this fish is cooked beautifully.
Thank you, Craig, so much for saying so.

Lexical cohesion refers to the semantic relationships between lexical items. Halliday and Hasan (1976) introduce the concept of cohesive ties by which they mean the semantic relations within the text. These cohesive ties form cohesive chains and contribute to creating a cohesive text. For example, Halliday and Matthiessen (2004: 537) mention the following words and phrases when used in a passage as those lexical items that contribute to the lexical cohesion of a text.

- (5) locomotive, steam engine, in steam, steam up, get up steam

As discussed earlier, cohesion is part of the textual metafunction of language. In his study, Halliday deals with both propositional and non-propositional elements in discourse and does not discriminate between them. For example, *meanwhile* in example 1 is non-propositional and acts as a metadiscourse marker while all the lexical items in example 5 are examples of propositional content.

Halliday and Hasan (1976: 9) define coherence as ‘texture’ and believe that coherence is the combination of register (appropriateness to a particular context of situation) and cohesion. Arguing that cohesion is the basis for coherence, they maintain that “cohesive ties between sentences stand out more clearly because they are the **ONLY** source of texture” [original emphasis]. They have, however, been criticised for considering cohesion as the only basis of texture. In an attempt to overcome the problems of the earlier work, Hasan in her 1984 paper discusses the shortcomings of Halliday and Hasan’s 1976 model of analysis and attempts to relate the two concepts of cohesion (or cohesive harmony) and coherence together. She maintains that cohesion is created when two elements in the textual environment are linked together using conjunction, reference, substitution, ellipsis or lexical cohesion and form a cohesive tie and these cohesive ties combine to make cohesive chains. The

chains must permit the chain's valid relation to the system and at the same time to the text as a process. Hasan identifies two types of chains: the identity chain and the similarity chain. 'Identity chains' are text bound and are created through the semantic bond of co-referentiality, e.g. *a girl ... a boy* later referred to as *the children*. 'Similarity chains' are not text bound and the bond between the members of such chains are that of co-classification or coextension; that is, they might be realised through repetition, synonymy, antonymy, hyponymy and meronymy. She also identifies two types of 'tokens' or cohesive elements: 'peripheral tokens', that is, tokens which are not part of chains and are not crucial to the text organization; and 'relevant tokens', that is, tokens which are part of chains and contribute to cohesion and the topical development of the text. Hasan claims that all individual chains interact with each other and add to the coherence of the text. In sum, instead of analysing a text clause by clause, she approaches it as a whole and attempts to find out the functional relations between chains in a text, but she still essentially considers cohesion as the basis of coherence in her 1984 work.

The main problem in Hasan's work is that although she claims to study meaning in 'context', practically she only focuses on 'co-text' in her analysis ignoring the relationship between text and the outside world. For example she does not include text reference items such as *from now on*, or interactive items such as *you* which perform both an interpersonal and a cohesive function.

Lautamatti's (1978, 1987) "topical structure analysis" is one of the major attempts to describe coherence at the level of discourse. She describes coherence in texts by focusing on the semantic relationships between sentence topics and the overall discourse topic. Her model will be discussed in detail in the next chapter in relation to metadiscourse studies.

3.3.2. Cognitive Approach

Instead of using the terms cohesion and coherence, Van Dijk uses the terms 'local' and 'global' coherence'. He is concerned with what makes discourse meaningful and how discourse is different from an incoherent set of sentences. By local coherence (microstructure) he means the relations between sentences or propositions; that is, "linear connections between elements in a sequence" (Van Dijk 1985: 115). He maintains that local coherence can be manifested in two ways: by information distribution; and by sequential ordering and

coherence. The sequential ordering may be conditional / temporal and function to provide causes, reasons, consequences, etc.; or may be functional and function to provide specification, generalization, contrast, etc. (Van Dijk 1985: 133). Sometimes these relations may not explicitly be signalled but the ordering of propositions signals the kind of relationship.

By global coherence (macrostructure) Van Dijk means discourse as a whole. He refers to global discourse as the “theme”, “idea”, “upshot” or “gist” of a discourse or a passage of the discourse (Van Dijk 1980: 52); that is, the most important information in a passage. He argues that local coherence depends on global coherence and that “discourse fragments are meaningful, viz. locally coherent, only with respect to macrostructures (themes)” (Van Dijk 1980: 53). Figure 2.2 summarises Van Dijk’s concept of textuality.

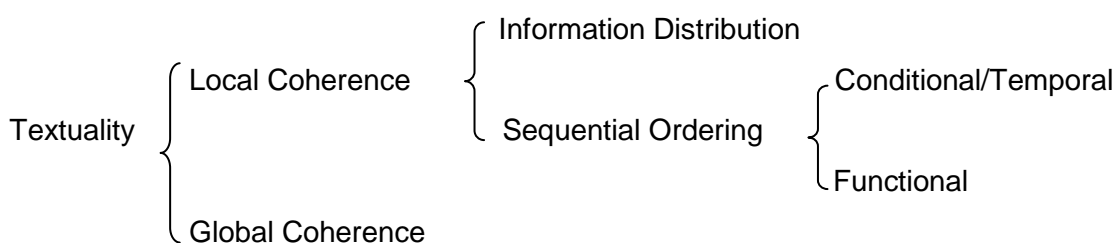


Fig. 2.2 Van Dijk’s concept of textuality

Van Dijk’s local coherence can be roughly equated with Halliday’s definition of cohesion. One difference is that in Van Dijk’s sense of local coherence, sometimes there are no connectors in the text to signal the type of connection. In these cases the type of connection can be understood by the reader or listener due to the ‘ordering’ of the propositions in the text.

- (6) Next month we will be in Berkeley.
We will be staying with friends.
(Van Dijk, 1985: 109)

In the above example no connector has been used. However, the reverse order of the sentences will result in a less meaningful discourse. Van Dijk argues that in order to produce a meaningful discourse it is necessary to specify a more global action, such as time and place, first and then give the details. In other words, the facts should be ordered from general to particular. Halliday and Hasan (1976), although claiming that the underlying semantic relations have

cohesive power, place most of the emphasis on the presence of cohesive markers.

Global coherence can be compared with Hasan's (1984) concept of coherence in the sense that she defines it as the conceptual connectivity in a text. However, Hasan (1984) believes that cohesion is the foundation for coherence. By contrast, Van Dijk (1981: 42) believes that "local coherence is a function of global coherence. Subsequent propositions or FACT, [will] be connected, [...] but this is no guarantee for over-all *coherence*" (emphasis in original).

3.3.3. Social Approach

Cohesion and coherence have also been used by Beaugrande in his definition of textuality. For Beaugrande cohesion or sequential connectivity refers to forms and patterns in a text; that is, the grammatical dependencies on the surface. It refers to the "procedures whereby SURFACE elements appear as progressive occurrences such that their SEQUENTIAL CONNECTIVITY is maintained and made recoverable" (Beaugrande, 1980: 19). Therefore cohesion involves "all the practices of connecting units and patterns for which the lexicogrammar provides the theory" (Beaugrande 2004, Chapter 2, part 3).

- (7) I got on that durned *masheen* and *it jumped up* in the front and *kicked up* behind, and *bucked up* in the middle, and *shied* and balked and *jumped* sideways.[...]. Wall, I lost the *lamp*, I lost the *clamp*, I lost my patience, I lost my temper, I lost my self-respect, my last suspender button and my standin' in the community. I broke the *handle bars*, I broke the *sprockets*, I broke the Ten Commandments, I broke my New Year's pledge and the law agin loud and abusive language.

In the above example, Beaugrande (ibid) identifies the cohesive devices in it as follows: 'masheen' and 'it' form one cohesive relation; and repeating the pronoun 'I' as the subject of a series of verbs as another cohesive device.

Beaugrande's concept of cohesion can be equated with that of Halliday's. They both attribute a lexicogrammatical nature to cohesion. Van Dijk's local coherence covers a wider area than Beaugrande's cohesion. In that it includes information distribution.

Beaugrande's coherence or conceptual connectivity includes procedures in which we activate our knowledge in order to maintain CONCEPTUAL CONNECTIVITY (Beaugrande, 1980: 19); in other words, coherence "can subsume the means for connecting meanings and concepts [...]" (Beaugrande

2004, chapter 2, part 3). In the above example, the following words and phrases: 'lamp', 'clamp', 'handle bars', and 'sprockets' as parts of 'masheen' help towards the coherence of the text. Also, we can recognise a thematic sequence like 'jumped up – kicked up – bucked up – shied – jumped. Beaugrande's concept of coherence is similar to Hasan's in that both maintain a semantic basis for coherence. Beaugrande's criteria of textuality can be related to the use of 'discourse markers' in texts. The two factors of coherence and cohesion are text-oriented; and the discourse markers that help writers to organize a text can contribute to text coherence and cohesion. For example, writers use markers such as *first*, *secondly*, *finally* to arrange the text in a special way and to make it more accessible for readers.

Apart from the two concepts of cohesion and coherence, Beaugrande identifies five more features necessary for the textuality of a text: *intentionality*, *acceptability*, *informativity*, *situationality* and *intertextuality*. These concepts are discussed below.

Intentionality refers to the text producer's attitude toward the text. It is assumed that the text producer's aim is to produce a text which is both coherent and cohesive and, as a result, enhances the process of interaction. Therefore, intentionality means "all the ways in which text producers utilize texts to pursue and fulfil their intentions [that is, communication]" (Beaugrande and Dressler, 1981: 116, brackets added). Intentionality seems to be writer/speaker-oriented.

Acceptability refers to the text receiver's attitude toward the text. By acceptability Beaugrande (1980: 20) means that "a language configuration should be ACCEPTED as a cohesive and a coherent text". In other words, the text receiver assumes that the language entity s/he confronts is both cohesive and coherent and suitable for the ongoing interaction. Acceptability is reader/listener-oriented.

Intentionality and acceptability are psychologically-oriented (Karloy 2002: 20) and may be realised by a variety of interpersonal markers. For example, the use of *by which I mean* can be considered as a discourse marker that helps to relate writer and reader.

Informativity refers to the extent to which a text or some of its aspects are unexpected, interesting, or stimulating for the receivers. In other words, it refers to the new knowledge the text makes accessible to the reader. Thus, "information in not just the content or message itself but the goodness of fit

between the content or message versus what you knew already” (Beaugrande, 1997: 14). Therefore, informativity influences the selection and arrangement of new and given information in texts (Beaugrande and Dressler, 1981: 139, 160). Informativity is related to Halliday’s thematic structure (theme, rheme) and information structure (new and old information) mentioned earlier. On occasions, the information put in the thematic position of a text is not propositional.

(8) Fortunately, the little boy could escape from the trap safely.

In this example, *fortunately* functions as a discourse marker and is in a thematic position which emphasises the writer’s attitude towards the content.

Situationality refers to the connections between the text and the context of situation. As argued by Beaugrande and Dressler (1981), the acceptability of a text depends not only on the “correctness” of its “reference” to the “real world”, but also on “its *believability* and *relevance* to the *participants’ outlook* regarding the *situation*” (ibid: 179, italics in original). While situationality relates to the inter-relationship between text and its context, *intertextuality* is the mutual relevance of separate texts. That is, understanding of one text depends on the previous related texts we have encountered. While producing or receiving a text, we make a connection between the current occasion and our previous knowledge of other similar texts. In Beaugrande’s words, intertextuality refers to “the relationship between a given text and other relevant texts encountered in prior experience, with or without mediation” (Beaugrande, 1980: 20).

Situationality and intertextuality are socially oriented (Karloy 2002: 20). Some discourse markers that are used to contribute to situationality can be *most importantly, the truth is that*; and those that contribute to intertextuality can be *according to, Halliday states that*.

Beaugrande (2004) argues that the above mentioned standards of textuality are for ‘describing texts’ and can apply by definition to all authentic texts. Therefore, he proposes ‘design criteria’ for ‘evaluating texts’; that is “how far the text is **efficient** in getting readily produced and received, **effective** in promoting intentions and goals, and **appropriate** to the context, the participants, and the situation” (ibid: Chapter 2, part 3, emphasis in original). He maintains that these criteria may or may not be met in all texts. This aspect of coherence will be taken into consideration later in the discussion of categories.

3.4. Summary

Studies of language started historically with a focus on sounds and forms and developed into the descriptive structuralist approach in 20th century. The concept of textuality evolved when scholars realised the importance of context in developing and understanding a text. Textuality has been approached from a range of different perspectives. What is common in all these approaches is their emphasis on cohesion and coherence as the two most important aspects of textuality. Studies on cohesion and coherence were the basis for the studies on metadiscourse taken up later by scholars such as Vandekoppe and Crismore.

The studies of textuality entailed the use of the term 'discourse' instead of 'text' in later studies. Following is a brief overview of the concept of discourse.

3.5. The Notion of Discourse

As research on textuality and coherence developed to include the role of contextual features, the notion of 'discourse' emerged. The term 'text' gave way to the term 'discourse'. Discourse became particularly important around 1970 as soon as it was recognized that language studies need not be restricted to grammatical analysis, but rather that the actual use of language in a social context needed to be taken into consideration. According to Schiffrin (1994), discourse is defined in two ways: formalists define it as a unit of language above the sentence and functionalists define it as a particular focus on language use. Structural analysis (discussed in Section 2) focuses on the way different units of language function in relation to each other (Schiffrin 1994: 24). Functionalists regard language as a societal phenomenon which is "interdependent with social life, such that its analysis necessarily intersects with meaning, activities, and systems outside of itself" (ibid: 31). Recently, discourse analysts have focused on the latter, the functional approach, and are concerned with language use. They treat language "as the record (text) of a dynamic process in which language was used as an instrument of communication in a text by a speaker/writer to express meanings and achieve intentions (discourse)" (Brown and Yule 1984: 26).

Apart from the two definitions given above, Schiffrin defines discourse as 'utterance'. By 'utterance' she means contextualized units of language production (whether spoken or written) and states that this last definition balances both the functional emphasis on how language is used and the formal

emphasis on extended patterns (Schiffrin 1994: 40). This is a further step to looking at the non-textual aspects of discourse that may vary across cultures.

4. Studies on Discourse Signalling

As noted earlier, from the 1950s some linguists shifted their focus of analysis from sentence to text and discourse. Until this time, not much work had been carried out on how discourses signal their structure. Winter (1977) is the linguist who has concerned himself with the metalanguage of English. He identified a semantic relationship between sentences or propositions the result of which is discourse. He studied clause relations in text. For him a clause relation is “the various relations which connect one sentence with another as members of a sequenced discourse” (ibid. 2). Conceiving the existence of a continuum between the traditional open-system (e.g. nouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs) and closed system words (e.g. grammatical items like *a, the, because, when, why*, etc.), he identified three sets of words: Subordinators (Vocabulary 1), e.g. *after, (al)though, at the same time as, on the basis that*; Sentence Connectors (Vocabulary 2), e.g. *accordingly, in addition, all the same, also*. Both of these are part of closed system vocabularies that connect clauses and sentences together. The third set is a class of open–system words grouped under Vocabulary 3 which “directly or indirectly paraphrase either the subordinators or the sentence connectors or both” (ibid: 13) and have similar semantic properties to closed system items in sentence connection. Defining ‘clause relation’ as “the various relations [e.g. achievement, affirm, cause, compare, example, etc.] which connect one sentence with another as members of a sequenced discourse” (ibid. 2: brackets added), he suggests that Vocabulary 3 can function as exponents of a clause relation and have a predictive function in the organisation of written discourse by means of which the reader can anticipate what is to come in the rest of the text. He mentions the use of ‘rhetorical question’ as one of the most marked forms of sentence connection and argues that while Vocabulary 1 and 2 function as “closed-system items which *mediate* between the meaning of **two adjoining clauses**”, rhetorical questions “*mediate* between the meaning of **two adjoining independent clauses**”; therefore “the rhetorical use of a question is more like the sentence connectors of Vocabulary 2 than the subordinators of Vocabulary

1, in that both questions and sentence connectors can connect independent clauses” (ibid. 38, emphasis added).

Hoey (1979, 1983, 1991) uses Winter’s methods to analyse whole pieces of discourse and longer passages. In his earlier work (1979) he studies the way in which linguistic structures are signalled to listeners or readers by means of questions and certain vocabulary items. He maintains that problems of comprehension arise because of “‘faulty’ or missing signalling” (ibid: 61). He mainly studies the signalling mechanism in a Problem – Solution structure. For this purpose he analyses two discourses, one artificial and one real and identifies signalling devices of Situation, Problem, Solution (or Response) and Evaluation in them. He concludes that each structural function is linguistically overtly signalled and the main function of some clauses and sentences is to clarify the structure of the discourse to which they belong. He states that each structural function can be isolated by the projection of the discourse into question-answer dialogue or by the insertion of appropriate lexical signals and argues that Situation – Problem – Solution (or Response) – Result – Evaluation is a common discourse structure in English (p. 60). Hoey (1979: 11) takes as example the following separate sentences:

(9) I saw the enemy approaching, I beat off the enemy attack, I opened fire, I was on sentry duty.

In order to identify the underlying textual structure of the above sentences, Hoey suggests that (a) lexical signals should be identified and (b) the sentences should be projected into a dialogue as follows:

A: What was the situation?
B: I was on sentry duty.
A: What was the problem?
B: I saw the enemy approaching?
A: What was your solution?
B: I opened fire.
A: What was the result?
And
How successful was it?
B: I beat off the enemy attack.

Therefore the following sequence of sentences can be suggested based on the Situation – Problem - Solution (or response) – Result – Evaluation:

I was on sentry duty. I saw the enemy approaching. I opened fire. I beat off the enemy attack.

This example shows how propositions in a text can be ordered based on the signalling function of the comprising words and their order. This type of ordering based on Situation – Problem - Solution (or response) – Result – Evaluation can be culture-oriented and different cultures may prefer different ways of ordering the propositions in a text.

Hoey (1983) expands his earlier work on signalling and considers how it can be varied and adapted according to different communicative needs and examines how it operates in narrative. He examines lexical signalling, questions and paraphrases that reveal Problem – Solution patterns. Although he examines Problem – Solution patterns in different discourses, he states that the Problem – Solution pattern does not apply to all types of discourse equally well. Therefore, he examines the Matching relation pattern. By matching he means “what happens when two parts of a discourse are compared in respect of their detail” (ibid: 113). According to Hoey, repetition is the clearest way of signalling matching relations although it can also be signalled using conjunctions, syntactic and semantic parallelism, lexical signals and parallelism of questions answered. Sometimes the two parts are matched for similarity, in which case the relation is called Matching Compatibility, and sometimes the two parts are matched for difference, in which case it is called Matching Contrast. Hoey then combines the Matching relation with two types of General – Particular relations: the Generalisation - Example relation, and the Preview – Detail relation to analyse larger discourses. Following is an example of Generalisation – Example in Hoey (1983: 113):

- (10) It is interesting to note that iconic models only represent certain features of that portion of the real world which they simulate. (2) For example, a map will only contain those features which are of interest to the person using the map. (3) Similarly, architects’ models will be limited to include only those features which are of interest to the person considering employing the architect.

In example 10, the first sentence serves as a generalisation and sentences 2 and 3 provide examples for the generalisation.

Following is an example of Preview – Detail from Hoey 1983: 139):

- (11) It [the harpoon] consists of a 'socket', 'shank', and 'mouth'. The shank, which is made of the most pliable iron, is about two feet long; the socket is about six inches long, and swells from the shank to nearly two inches in diameter; and the mouth is of a barbed shape, each barb or wither being eight inches long and six inches broad with a smaller barb reversed in the inside.

In example 11, the first sentence contains a list which predicts that detail will follow.

In his other work, Hoey (1991) examines lexical repetition in discourse. He forms 'nets' in order to show the lexical relations and attempts to identify the central and marginal sentences of a passage to create summaries of the text and also to identify topic-opening and topic-closing sentences.

Hoey's earlier work is more or less restricted to 'co-text' (as opposed to context) level and examines how the use of particular lexical items and ordering of information can act as clues for readers in anticipating how the text may continue. In his more recent work (2001), Hoey adopts a cognitive as well as textual approach in analysing how readers interpret a text. He defines text not as an object of study but as an interaction between an author and a reader "in which the writer seeks to answer the questions that s/he thinks his or her reader will want answering, and the reader seeks to anticipate the questions that the writer is going to answer" (Hoey 2001: 119).

Hoey's work is particularly valuable for the way he attempts to show how the components of a text are connected together by means of strategies like lexical repetition, paraphrasing, and other strategies. He also demonstrates how readers and writers can interact through devising questions as the text develops. However, it seems Hoey only examines propositional meaning-carrying words or phrases of English, and therefore he looks at texts as "interrelated packages of information" (1991: 48). He does not consider the role of another class of words and phrases; that is, words and phrases like *luckily*, *we believe that*, *let's suppose* which are not part of the propositional content of the text but play an important role in the interaction between the reader and writer. This latter class of words and phrases have been the focus of study in the last three decades and have been called metadiscourse. They will be discussed in the next chapter.

5. Conclusion

In the discussion of classical and modern rhetoric it was argued that modern rhetoric has been greatly influenced by classical rhetoric. The difference between these two is in the medium of communication and the way they treat the audience. In classical rhetoric, the medium of communication is spoken language and the direction of communication is one-way; that is, speaker to audience. However, in modern rhetoric, the medium of communication can be spoken or written language and a two-way communication between speaker/writer and audience/reader is emphasised. Classical rhetoric has also had a great impact on contrastive rhetoric which studies linguistic, social and cognitive differences between languages and cultures, and it has paved the way to the formulation of earlier discourse and metadiscourse concepts.

Work on textuality was then reviewed. Moving from structuralism to viewing text as a whole was a major step in understanding the processes involved in text comprehension. Influenced by the Prague School and sociolinguists like Malinowsky, Halliday made a great contribution to text studies as a whole. Introducing a functional view of language was a major step in viewing language in its context, with particular reference to the two concepts of cohesion and coherence. This led to many other studies examining the nature of textuality. Following Halliday, many other scholars studied not only the linguistic structure of discourse but also its relationship to mind and society. For example, Van Dijk (1980, 1985) takes a cognitive approach to textuality, while Beaugrande (1980, 1997, 2004) maintains texts should be studied considering their social and cognitive aspects as well as their linguistic aspect.

Winter (1977) and Hoey (1979, 1983, 1991, 2001) are interested in the semantic relations in texts. They focus on different ways of signalling, examining the semantic relationship between propositions. Although Hoey's earlier work studied language in its co-text, his later work is more of a cognitive nature and regards language as an interaction between reader and writer. In both cases, however, Hoey focuses only on propositional content. In the next chapter more studies on the interaction between reader and writer which only focus on the non-propositional content of the message discussed under the topic of 'metadiscourse' will be examined.

CHAPTER 3

Metadiscourse and Its Categorizations

In this chapter, some major studies of metadiscourse, how it has been described and how metadiscourse markers have been grouped into different categories will be discussed.

After providing a historical background on rhetoric, some major studies of textuality and the concepts of coherence and cohesion were discussed in the previous chapter. It was shown that studies on cohesion and coherence led researchers to study signalling in texts and that Winter (1977) and Hoey's (1979, 1983, 1991, 2001) studies were significant in this relation. However, their studies focused on both propositional and non-propositional materials. This chapter will focus specifically on 'metadiscourse', the non-content part of text. Although there are some differences in the way metadiscourse has been defined, one can generally say that it is an interpersonal and rhetorical instrument and refers to the non-propositional expressions used throughout a text which call the attention of the reader to the argument in the text and facilitate the comprehension process by creating interaction between reader and writer. Metadiscourse has been the focus of study for many researchers and it has been labelled differently by different scholars, partly according to their understanding of the concept. For example, Rossiter (1974) labels it 'metacommunication', Meyer (1975) uses the term 'signalling words', Keller (1979, in Crismore 1989) calls it 'gambits', and Schiffrin (1980) calls it 'meta-talk'. The most common term used by scholars researching in this area, however, is 'metadiscourse', and the term 'metadiscourse' will be used throughout this study.

After looking at the definition of metadiscourse first used by Harris in 1950s, some parallel studies in this area will be examined. Discourse Makers will be discussed next due to their similarities to metadiscourse. After discussing the common characteristics of metadiscourse devices, the categorizations of metadiscourse by different scholars will be analysed. In fact, scholars have applied their categorizations to a variety of different genres. The main purpose

of this chapter, therefore, is to provide a background for the categorization proposed in the next chapter applicable to editorials.

1. Earlier Reference to Metadiscourse

The term 'metadiscourse' was first coined by Harris (1959). Harris (1959/1970) defines metadiscourse as those passages of a text which contain information of a secondary importance. Attempting to reduce scientific texts to a sequence of kernel sentences which is roughly equivalent to information in the original text, he also identifies 'metadiscourse kernels' (such as *We have found that ...*). He maintains that these kernels are quite different from the main kernels and can be omitted from information storage. They do not need to be indexed. His definition of 'metadiscourse kernels' is not elaborate and he simply mentions that these are "talk about the main material" (ibid: 464). Harris does not explicitly specify the difference between 'metadiscourse kernels' and other types of kernels.

Harris's distinction between 'metadiscourse kernels' and 'main kernels' shows that he puts more emphasis on the 'main kernels' as the information-carrying part of the text, while the 'metadiscourse kernels' are not considered as important and can be omitted in the process of summarising a text. This concept of there being two layers of discourse, main discourse and secondary discourse has been of interest to many scholars. Below some parallel notions of metadiscourse are discussed.

2. Some Parallel Concepts of Metadiscourse

2.1. Metacommunication

Rossiter (1974) uses the term metacommunication which to some extent is similar to the concept of metadiscourse. Rossiter is interested in oral verbal communication. His 'metacommunication' covers the broad area of verbal or nonverbal messages and messages about communication. He classifies metacommunication into two types: that which is an ever present aspect of all transactions, and that which constitutes additional commentary about communicative transactions. The former consists of non-verbal cues, such as tone of voice and inform the audience how to interpret messages. The second type is concerned with all communication about communication. It focuses on the conscious attention to the process of interaction, helps clarify vague feelings

about what is going on, helps the generator of language to check with their audience if they have been properly understood, and it provides direct feedback. Rossiter's second type of metacommunication can fit the definition of metadiscourse, since it is concerned with those strategies used in spoken language which facilitate the interaction between the speaker and audience. However, he does not elaborate much on the realisation of metacommunication in actual discourse.

2.2. Signalling Words

Meyer (1975) studies the effects of the "height of information" and other aspects in the organisation of ideas in a passage. She uses the term 'signalling' and discusses its influence on recall. She defines 'signalling' as "a non-content aspect of prose which gives emphasis to certain aspects of the semantic content or points out aspects of the structure of the content" (ibid: 77). She states that signalling words do not add to the content of the material but emphasise information and highlight particularly important points in a text. Her distinction between the content and signalling material is not based on the former as primary and the latter as secondary. However, she believes the use of 'signalling words' enhances recall.

She identifies four types of signalling as follows:

1. words that signal the relations in the content structure; for example,

Two approaches exist. One is based on psychoanalytic theory and the other is based on principles of learning.

2. prematurely revealed information abstracted from the content occurring later in the text; for example, titles and introductory sentences of passages and paragraphs can be examples of this kind of signalling. This type of signalling is used to abstract out the major content prior to its discussion in the main text;
3. summary statements which are same words or paraphrased wording for the information which has already been discussed and is presented at the end of the paragraph or passage;
4. pointer words that inform the reader of the author's perspective of a particular idea, e.g. *unfortunately*.

Meyer's approach and definition of signalling is more precise than Harris's and Rossiter's in the sense that she provides a more explicit definition of

signalling. What is important is her distinction between the two layers of discourse: content and non-content, and the fact that she considers signalling entities as non-content. However, she does not clearly define what she means by non-content material. The interesting point in Meyer (1975) and Meyer et al (1980) is their emphasis on the effects of signalling on readers. They believe that signalling can have positive effects in the recall and comprehension level of readers. It can be said, therefore, that they believe signalling is a form of writer-reader relationship, the core idea behind the notion of metadiscourse.

In Meyer's grouping of signals, although not explicitly mentioned, it seems that the first three are of a textual nature, that is that the signals refer to different parts of the text; and that the last group, pointer words, is more interpersonal in nature and refers to the attitude of the writer towards the content. These four groups, especially the last group may cover a large group of signals in actual analysis.

2.3. Non-topical Material

In a more or less similar fashion, Lautamatti in her 1978 article distinguishes between topical and non-topical entities. Discussing changes in cohesion and coherence caused by simplification, and their possible relevance for the reading process, she argues that in order to communicate effectively, information in a text should be presented in a way that "helps the reader to process it, to evaluate it, and to relate it to earlier information" (ibid: 167) and considers this strategy as contributing to coherence in a specific text. Building on her identification of this process, she identifies the categories of topical and non-topical material. 'Topical' material refers to the element which defines "what the sentence is about" (1987: 88); in other words, the way the written sentence in discourse relates to the discourse topic and its subtopics. By 'non-topical' material, or what is called 'metadiscourse' in the present study, she means the material which is not directly related to the subject matter or the topic of discourse, but forms a framework for the topical material and helps readers to understand the internal organization of the discourse. Lautamatti (1987: 90) classifies non-topical material into the following five groups:

1. discourse organisers, e.g. *consequently*, *however*;
2. reinforcing illocutionary force which indicates to what purpose something is asserted, e.g. *for example*;

3. modality markers which indicate the truth value of what is said, e.g., *obviously*;
4. attitude markers which indicate the writer's personal commentary, e.g. *I would like to, it seems futile to*;
5. commentary, e.g. *next, we shall discuss*
(in Karloy 2002: 29)

Lautamatti distinguishes between topical/content and non-content/metadiscourse material. She does not explicitly distinguish between textual and interpersonal signals. However, 'modality markers' and 'attitude markers' seem to belong to the interpersonal domain. Her five groups of 'non-topical' material are not quite precise. For example, modality markers and attitude markers can be quite extensive and at times overlapping.

2.4. Meta-talk

Schiffrin (1980) in her study of conversation notices the meta-linguistic expressions people use in the course of communication such as *that's what I mean, I'm telling you, what do you mean by that, that's your opinion*. She classifies these meta-linguistic expressions into the two broad categories of 'organizational' and 'evaluative brackets', defining 'brackets' as those metalinguistic features that indicate the boundaries of a discourse unit. She maintains that these meta-linguistic expressions focus on either an individual's own talk or an interlocutor's talk. She calls them 'meta-talk' and defines meta-talk as language used to talk about itself.

According to Schiffrin, "meta-talk functions on a referential, informational plane when it serves as an organizational bracket; and on an expressive, symbolic plane when it serves as an evaluative bracket" (ibid: 231). She states that a bracket may function as an organizational one when it indicates a relationship between two parts of the speech as in *I'll tell you something, The reason is that, I'll answer it this way*. It functions as an evaluative bracket when the speaker indicates his/her stance towards what is being said as in *That's my opinion, at least it seems that way to me, I don't agree with that*.

Schiffrin identifies three indicators of meta-talk as follows:

1. Meta-linguistic referents include entities which refer to something in the language per se, that is, words, phrases, clauses, sentences or entities that are characterized through their existence or location in a text, e.g.

terms of discourse deixis, such as *former*, *latter*, *the next point* when they refer to an item in a text rather than to an event; and demonstrative pronouns when pointing to items in a text rather than items in the world outside, such as *let me say this*, or when they refer to the propositions that are expressed through sentences rather than the entities referred to, such as *That's a lie*.

2. Meta-linguistic operators “indicate either the modifications or the combination of propositions into more complex forms in ways that parallel logical operations” (ibid: 202), such as *true*, *false*, *right*, *wrong*, *mean* which function as higher-level predicates whose arguments are propositions in the text. In example 1 below *mean* focuses on predicates that are from two different sentences: *have personality*, *could really hold their own*:

(1) They both have personality! I mean they could really hold their own!
(ibid: 203)

3. Meta-linguistic verbs include references to acts of speech, e.g. *say*, *tell*, *ask*; verbs that indicate something will be done to a piece of talk; e.g. *clarify*, *define*; and references to speech events, e.g. *argue*, *joke*, for example:

(2) AP: Italian?
RW: We wouldn't mind that too much.
JW: Inner race, yeh. Well. I'll tell you something. If you were put with all black people, and people were mixed together, you wouldn't – and y'lived with them, you wouldn't notice it. After awhile.
(ibid: 204)

The above meta-linguistic indicators are embedded in a linguistic context and provide the means to focus on talk.

It appears that, in Schiffrin's study the concept of 'meta-talk' refers to the non-propositional level of discourse. The three types of indicators mentioned above are elements of the non-propositional material speakers use in their speech. Also Schiffrin explicitly distinguishes between 'organisational' or textual meta-talk and 'evaluative' or interpersonal meta-talk and analyses different pieces of conversation in terms of different meta-talk expressions that speakers use in their speech. This distinction is important in helping to differentiate between those metadiscourse devices that organise a text and those that

express speakers' feelings, but still finer distinctions could be made in each of these broad categories.

2.5. Summary

Apart from using different labels, the categories introduced by Rossiter, Meyer, Lautamatti and Schiffrin are more or less similar. What is obvious in their work is their distinction between two levels of discourse, propositional and non-propositional. On the propositional level, writers supply readers with information and on the non-propositional level writers guide the reader throughout the text. However, they have not set a clear boundary between the two as the two may overlap at times.

Furthermore, they seem to distinguish between those markers that organise text and those that build a relationship between writer/speaker and reader/listener, although they do not refer to this distinction explicitly, except Schiffrin who differentiates between 'organizational' and 'evaluative' brackets. Meyer's 'pointer words', Lautamatti's 'attitude markers', and Schiffrin's 'evaluative brackets' have to do with the relation between the writer/speaker and the text/speech; or the writer/speaker and the reader/listener, but it seems more clarification is needed in this area. The categories of Meyer, Lautamatti and Schiffrin are summarised in Table 3.1 below.

Function	Schiffrin	Meyer	Lautamatti
Textual	Organizational Brackets	Words that signal content structure	Discourse Organisers
		Prematurely revealed information	Illocutionary Markers
		Summary Statements	Commentary Markers
Interpersonal	Evaluative Brackets	Pointer Words	Modality Markers
			Attitude Markers

Table 3.1. Summary of Meyer, Lautamatti and Schiffrin's markers

3. Discourse Markers

Before continuing the discussion on more detailed studies on metadiscourse, a brief reference will be made to the concept of 'discourse markers' due to the similarities these have to 'metadiscourse'. Both 'discourse markers' and 'metadiscourse' refer to non-truth conditional segments in discourse. However, they do not cover the same span of words and phrases. Moreover, the realisation of 'metadiscourse' is through its functional meaning in the context in which it appears; but 'discourse markers' have been studied semantically, syntactically and functionally. Below is a brief reference to some major studies in this domain.

'Discourse markers' (henceforth DM) have been the focus of study for many researchers and have been labelled differently by different scholars; e.g. discourse operators (Redeker, 1990, 1991), discourse particles (Schourup, 1985), pragmatic connectives (Fraser, 1987), pragmatic markers (Fraser, 1988, 1990, Schiffrin, 1987), sentence connectives (Halliday and Hasan, 1976). According to Fraser (1999) the first reference to DM was made by Labov and Fanshel (1977) and later by Levinson (1983). DM include items such as *after all, moreover, oh, y'know*. Schourup (1999) attributes seven common features to DM as follows:

CONNECTIVITY: DM are used to relate utterances or other discourse units,

OPTIONALITY: DM are considered syntactically and semantically optional. That is, if they are removed, the grammaticality and the relationship they signal will not be affected,

NON-TRUTH CONDITIONALITY: DM do not contribute to the truth-conditions⁵ of the proposition expressed by an utterance,

WEAK CLAUSE ASSOCIATION: DM usually occur outside the syntactic structure or are loosely attached to it. For example *conjuncts*, although they are clause elements, have a detached role relative to other elements such as subject or object,

INITIALITY: DM prototypically introduce the discourse segment they mark,

ORALITY: most forms claimed to be DM occur primarily in speech (e.g. *by the way, well, after all*),

⁵ Very briefly, truth-condition of a statement is the condition the world must meet if the statement is to be true.

MULTICATEGORALITY: DM constitute a functional category that is heterogeneous with respect to syntactic class. For example, they might be adverbs, conjunctions, verbs, etc.

Fraser (1990, 1996, 1999) treats DM as a unique grammatical class of words and phrases. He maintains DM “impose a relationship between some aspects of the discourse segment they are part of [...] and some aspect of the prior discourse segment [...]” (Fraser 1999: 938). He defines discourse markers as a pragmatic class, lexical expressions drawn from the syntactic classes of conjunctions, adverbials, and prepositional phrases which signal a relationship between the segment they introduce and the prior segment. For example:

- (3) He drove the truck through the parking lot and into the street. Then he almost cut me off. After that, he ran a red light. However, these weren't his worst offenses.
- (4) A: I don't want to go very much.
B: John said he would be there.
A: However, I do have some sort of obligation to be there.
- (5) You want to know how my garden grew this summer. Essentially, the tomatoes grew well. The broccoli was fair as were the peppers. The eggplant and carrots were terrible.
(Fraser 1999: 938)

In examples 3-5 above, *however* and *essentially* join the two parts of discourse together and create coherence. (The concepts of cohesion and coherence were discussed in the previous chapter.)

Another detailed study on discourse markers has been conducted by Schiffrin (1987) in which she conducts a detailed analysis of the expressions *but, I mean, now, oh, or, so, then, well* and *y'know* in conversations. She adopts a functional approach to defining DM and defines them as the elements which mark sequentially-dependent units of discourse and add to the discourse coherence.

DM have also been studied from the point of view of Relevance Theory (Blakemore 1987, 2002). In Relevance Theory (RT) DM are defined as “expressions that constrain the interpretation of utterances that contain them by virtue of the inferential connections they express” (Blakemore 1987: 105). Schourup (1999: 240) argues that while the approaches taken by Fraser and Schiffrin are coherence based, the approach taken in RT is that coherence is

not the main function of DM, but that using DM, hearers attempt to determine how that utterance achieves relevance.

Studies on discourse markers are numerous. From them it can be determined that the common aspect shared by discourse markers and metadiscourse markers is that they are both considered non-propositional entities. However, the difference appears to be that discourse markers are of a textual nature as they join different parts of a text together and make the text coherent, whereas metadiscourse markers include a larger area of both textual and interpersonal entities. The discussion on DM leads to a more detailed discussion of metadiscourse below.

4. Development of Metadiscourse

The concept of metadiscourse refers to the “second plane” of discourse as distinct from the “primary plane” (Sinclair 1981). The primary plane includes the propositional content and carries information for the readers or in Hyland’s (2005: 38) words it includes the “communicative content of discourse”. The secondary plane, i.e. metadiscourse, includes the non-propositional part of the text, or the part which directs the reader through the text and creates a bond between the writer and the readers. Following are the main concepts revolving around the notion of metadiscourse.

4.1. Content and Non-Content Distinction

The concept of two layers of discourse has been explored by many researchers studying metadiscourse (e.g. Williams 1981, 1990; Vande Kopple 1985, 2002; Crismore 1989; Crismore and Farnsmore 1989). The common point is they all identify two levels of discourse: ‘primary discourse’ and ‘secondary discourse’. Primary discourse represents the subject matter and refers to the level where writers supply information about the subject of a text or propositional content. The secondary discourse or ‘metadiscourse’ is ‘discourse about discourse’. Writers help readers “to organize, classify, interpret, evaluate, and react to such material [main content]” through the use of metadiscourse (Vande Kopple 1985: 83). In other words writers use metadiscourse to act on readers and to guide and direct them rather than inform them. For example, we use metadiscourse to announce what we will do in the rest of the passage, e.g. *explain, show, summarize*, etc; to list parts or steps in the text, e.g. *first, second*,

finally; to express logical connections, e.g. *infer, support, therefore*; to show the degree of certainty, e.g. *it seems, that's probable*; and to announce the writer's intentions by using *I* or *we* (Williams 1990).

Distinguishing between propositional and non-propositional discourse and labelling them 'primary' and 'secondary' has been the subject of debate for some scholars. Hyland and Tse (2004) argue that with metadiscourse "a writer is able to not only transform a dry, difficult text into coherent, reader-friendly prose, but also relate it to a given context and convey his or her personality, credibility, audience-sensitivity, and relationship to the message" (ibid: 157). Any attempt to separate propositional material and metadiscourse undermines the importance of metadiscourse which is essential in communicating meaning. Hyland and Tse (ibid: 161) maintain that "[m]etadiscourse is not simply the 'glue' that holds the more important parts together, but is itself a crucial element of its meaning – that which helps relate a text to its context, taking readers' needs, understandings, existing knowledge, prior knowledge with texts, and relative status into account". They reject Vandekopple's idea of propositional content as primary discourse and metadiscourse as secondary. Hyland (2005: 40-41) maintains that both of them are crucial to coherence and meaning, "one concerned with the world and the other with the text and its reception".

Another scholar who also rejects the idea of 'primary' and 'secondary' discourse is Mao (1993). He states that "any characterization of metadiscourse has to profess 'a pragmatic kinship' to its associated, local rhetorical context" and that "such a rhetorical context constitutes an integral part of the 'felicity conditions'⁶" (ibid: 265). Mao argues that

there is an intrinsic relationship between metadiscourse and its own rhetorical context; this rhetorical context in fact represents a major "felicity condition" that shapes our discourse activities. Since all discourse activities are both referential and expressive, it is inconceivable to characterize one type of discourse as being primary and another as being secondary. (ibid: 284)

Another way of looking at the distinction between the two layers of propositional and non-propositional content is that of considering that there is a

⁶ Austin proposes some conditions that 'performative utterances' like *I hereby name this ship ...* must have in order to be successful. He calls these 'felicity conditions'. Using the term 'felicity conditions', Mao refers to the conditions that not only performative utterances, but all our communicative acts have to satisfy.

continuum one end of which is proposition and the other end is non-proposition. Where does one end and the other start? Is there a clear and well-defined boundary for this distinction?

It is becoming clear by now that one of the characteristics of metadiscourse is its being fuzzy and subjective. One expression may be considered propositional in one context and non-propositional in another context or judged differently by another reader. The more problematic situation is when they are both in the same grammatical category. For example, consider the function of *really* in the following two examples mentioned by Crismore et al. (1993):

(6) Really, it was terrible.

(7) It was really terrible.
(cited in Alkaff 2000: 80)

In the first sentence *really* would be considered non-propositional and therefore a metadiscourse marker, whereas in the second case it functions as an adjective and is considered propositional.

The following is another example of the fuzzy nature of metadiscourse where 'evaluatives' need to be distinguished from 'interpersonal' metadiscourse markers:

(8) Among the great and wonderful institutions of the republics and principalities of antiquity that have now gone into disuse, was that by means of which towns and cities were from time to time established; and there is nothing more worthy the attention of a great prince ...
(Crismore 1989: 11)

Crismore considers 'great', 'wonderful', and 'there is nothing more worthy' in the above examples as 'evaluatives' and therefore 'interpersonal metadiscourse' markers. However, it seems 'great' and 'wonderful' used as adjectives are more of a propositional nature than 'there is nothing more worthy' which is in the thematic position of the clause and reflects the attitude of the writer to the subject discussed.

Hyland (2005) argues that although the division between propositional and non-propositional content is essential, there is no infallible means of identification between the two. He cites the following example from a science textbook:

- (9) A taxonomic scheme such as the one I present below is not just a neutral description of diversity but a theory in itself. (Hyland 2005: 38)

He argues that the 'taxonomic scheme' might be a *specific example*, something referred to in the text, or it might refer to *all* such schemes which exist in the world. In the first case it is 'metadiscourse' and in the second case it is 'propositional'. He expresses a need for clear principles for identifying them.

The distinction between different categories of metadiscourse becomes fuzzier considering that it can be an open category to which new items can be added indefinitely according to the needs of the situation (Enkvist 1975). This issue raises problems in applying metadiscourse categorization to texts. The distinction between propositional and non-propositional content and how it has been approached in this study will be fully discussed in Chapter 4.

4.2. Writer-Reader Relationship

One of the significant aspects of the use of metadiscourse in texts is its ability to create a relation between writer and readers. It was discussed in the previous chapter that metadiscourse categories may be linked to the dimensions of 'rhetoric' going back to Aristotle's *Rhetoric*. In *Rhetoric*, Aristotle discusses 'ethos' and maintains that "persuasion is achieved by the speaker's personal character" and what makes the audience regard the speaker as 'credible' (Aristotle, translated by Barnes 1984). Using metadiscourse enables the writers to express their individuality, personality and originality. This in turn shapes the writers' 'ethos'. In their paper, Crismore and Farnsworth (1989) refer to the concept of 'ethos' and believe that 'ethos' is necessary if "authors are to be favourably received by readers and their written works considered effective" (ibid: 91). They believe that ethos involves the concept of metadiscourse and that "metadiscourse involves linguistic elements that help realize *ethos*" (ibid: 91, emphasis in original). For example, using expressions like *however, furthermore, to sum up, as previously mentioned* the writer directs the readers through the text and facilitates the comprehensibility of the text by adding to its coherence and cohesion. The writer also expresses her/his attitude and emotion towards the subject matter using expressions like *unfortunately, the advantage of the program is....* Using expressions like *we, you*, the writer signals her/his presence in the text, creates a bond with the readers and includes the readers in the discussion. In other words, creating a relationship

with the readers, or what Alkaff (2000) calls ‘the social characteristic of metadiscourse’, contributes to the involvement of the readers in the main argument of the text and adds to the persuasive power of the writer.

5. Metadiscourse Categorizations

5.1. Textual and Interpersonal

Studies on metadiscourse have mainly been influenced by Halliday and Hasan’s (1976) distinction between the three metafunctions of ideational, textual and interpersonal. Drawing on these three metafunctions, researchers maintain that metadiscourse is related to the interpersonal and the textual metafunctions. This leads to a distinction between Textual and Interpersonal metadiscourse. Textual metadiscourse “shows how we link and relate individual propositions so that they form a cohesive and coherent text and how individual elements of those propositions make sense in conjunction with other elements of the text” (Vande Kopple 1985: 87), but interpersonal metadiscourse “can help us express our personalities and our reactions to the propositional content of our text and characterise the interaction we would like to have with our readers about that content” (ibid. 87).

This dual categorization is reflected in many of the studies carried out in this relation. For example, Williams (1981, 1990) maintains that using metadiscourse writers say what they are doing in the text and establish a dialogue with their readers. He mentions three main types of metadiscourse as follows:

1. Hedges and emphatics. He maintains that hedges give “room to back pedal and to make exceptions” and emphatics “let us underscore what we really believe or would like our reader to think we believe” (Williams 1990: 126). For example, *possibly, seemingly, more or less* function as hedges; and *as everyone knows, it is generally agreed that, the fact is* are common examples of emphatics.
2. Sequencers and topicalizers which lead the reader through the text, e.g. *first, finally, to sum up*.
3. Attributors and narratives which tell the reader where we got our ideas, facts or opinions from; as in example 10 below where the source of the opinion is located in the author.

- (10) I was concerned with the structural integrity of the roof supporters, so I attempted to test the weight that the transverse beams would carry. I have concluded after numerous tests that the beams are sufficiently strong to carry the prescribed weight, but no more. ...
(Williams 1981: 51)

Williams also maintains that some writers use attribution indirectly by using passives. He calls this an 'anonymous attributor'. For example,

- (11) High divorce rates have been observed to occur in parts of the Northeast that have been determined to have especially low population densities.
(Williams 1981: 52)

Although he does not clearly distinguish between textual and interpersonal metadiscourse, it can be observed that his sub-category of 'hedges and emphatics' are of an interpersonal nature and his sub-category of 'sequencers and topicalizers' is of a textual nature. However, his categorization is very broad. For example, 'hedges' can include a large class of expressions which can lead to confusion in the process of analysing a text; or in the sub-category of 'attributors and narratives' no distinction is made when the information comes from the author's personal experience or from another source.

Crismore (1989) and Crismore and Farnsworth (1989, 1990) also argue that metadiscourse fulfils the textual and interpersonal metafunctions. On the non-propositional level, the interpersonal function is realized by interpersonal metadiscourse and the textual function is manifested through the textual metadiscourse.

The strict duality of textual and interpersonal functions maintained by Vande Kopple (1985, 2002), Crismore (1989) and Crismore and Farnsworth (1989, 1990) is rejected by Hyland and Tse (2004). They suggest that "all metadiscourse is interpersonal in that it takes account of the reader's knowledge, textual experiences, and processing needs and it provide writers with an armoury of rhetorical appeals to achieve this" (ibid: 161). They state that the role of textual elements "is crucial to expressing propositional and interpersonal functions, not something they do independently of them" (ibid: 162). They maintain that using textual metadiscourse, writers try to organize a text and highlight certain relationships in order to guide the readers through the text and help them to understand the material. In this way they contribute to the interpersonal features of the text (ibid: 164).

Hyland's (2005) model of metadiscourse defines metadiscourse as "the cover term for the self-reflective expressions used to negotiate interactional meanings in a text, assisting the writer (or speaker) to express a viewpoint and engage with readers as members of a particular community" (ibid: 37). He suggests the following three key principles for his model:

1. The distinction between propositional material or the 'communicative content' of discourse, and the material which organises this material and conveys the writer's attitudes to it; i.e. metadiscourse. He ascribes equal importance to both.
2. Writer – reader interactions through metadiscourse. He maintains that the use of metadiscourse is necessary to achieve a successful communication. He rejects the duality of textual and interpersonal functions and suggests that "**all** metadiscourse is interpersonal in that it takes account of the reader's knowledge, textual experiences and processing needs and that it provides writers with an armoury of rhetorical appeals to achieve this" (Hyland 2005: 41, emphasis in original). Therefore, instead of using 'textual' and 'interpersonal' metadiscourse, Hyland uses the terms 'interactive' and 'interactional' metadiscourse. 'Interactive' resources refer to

features which set out an argument to explicitly establish the writer's preferred interpretations. They are concerned with ways of organizing discourse, rather than experience, to anticipate readers' knowledge and reflect the writer's assessment of what needs to be made explicit to constrain and guide what can be recovered from the text ...
(Hyland & Tse 2004: 168)

'Interactional' resources involve

readers in the argument by alerting them to the author's perspective towards both propositional information and readers themselves... This aspect thus relates to the *tenor* of discourse, concerned with controlling the level of personality in a text.
(Hyland & Tse 2004: 168)

3. The distinction between external and internal relations; that is, the distinction between matters in the world and those in the discourse. Hyland takes connectives as example and argues that "they can function to either connect steps in an exposition (internal), organising the *discourse* as an argument, or they can connect activities in the world outside the text (external), representing *experience* as a series of events" (ibid: 45, italics in

original). He maintains that these textual items, e.g. connectives, can refer to internal or external relations. Example:

(12) We understand that the idea of moving your account to us may be daunting, therefore we will do most of it for you.

(13) The poll was taken just after this month's messy reshuffle and puts the Tories on 33 points, Labour on 32 and the Liberal Democrats on 25. Therefore, on today's results the Tories would gain an extra 41 seats and the Lib Dems 20 in the next election, leaving Blair with an uncomfortably narrow majority.
(Hyland 2005: 46)

In example (12) above 'therefore' is experientially oriented and is used to express a relation between activities and processes. By contrast, 'therefore' in example (13) relates aspects of the discourse and functions as metadiscourse.

The interpersonal metadiscourse can be discussed in terms of Martin and Rose's (2003) concept of 'appraisal' and Hunston and Thompson's (2000) concept of 'evaluation'. For Martin and Rose (2003) 'appraisal' refers to the different means writers or speakers use to show their feelings about things and people. In other words, 'appraisal' refers to a system of interpersonal meanings by means of which writers or speakers negotiate social relationships and express their attitude. Martin and Rose (2003) have developed the 'appraisal' system to analyse texts semantically and pragmatically. They discriminate between three aspects of appraisal as 'attitude', 'engagement' and 'graduation'. 'Attitude' deals with evaluating things, people's characters and their feelings; 'engagement' or 'source' deals with where these feelings come from, i.e. from the writer or any other source; and 'graduation' or 'amplifying attitudes' deal with the linguistic devices writers use to indicate how strongly they feel about someone or something.

In terms of 'attitude', Martin and White (2005) distinguish between three types: affect, judgement, and appreciation. 'Affect' deals with "registering positive and negative feelings"; 'judgement' is concerned with "attitudes towards behaviour"; and 'appreciation' "involves evaluations of semiotic and natural phenomena, according to the ways in which they are valued or not in a given field" (ibid: 42-43). Clearly, Martin and White's term 'attitude' includes both propositional and non-propositional meaning, since it includes the evaluation of

people, things and events as well as ‘comments’ on propositional material. The present study focuses only on evaluation of content.

In terms of ‘graduation’, Martin and White (2005) discuss two types of graduation: force and focus. By ‘force’ they mean those items that turn “the volume up or down” (ibid: 42). They include intensifiers, e.g. *very*, *really*, *extremely*; and degrees of intensity, e.g. *happy*, *delighted*, *ecstatic*. The second type of graduation, ‘focus’, includes ‘softening’ or ‘sharpening’ categories of people and things, e.g. *about*, *exactly*, *real*, *sort of*. According to Martin and White (2005: 138), ‘softening’ values are similar to ‘hedges’ and ‘sharpening’ values are similar to what has been called ‘boosters’, ‘intensifiers’ and ‘amplifiers’ (Hedges and boosters will be discussed later in this chapter.). Figure 3.1 is a summary of Appraisal system.

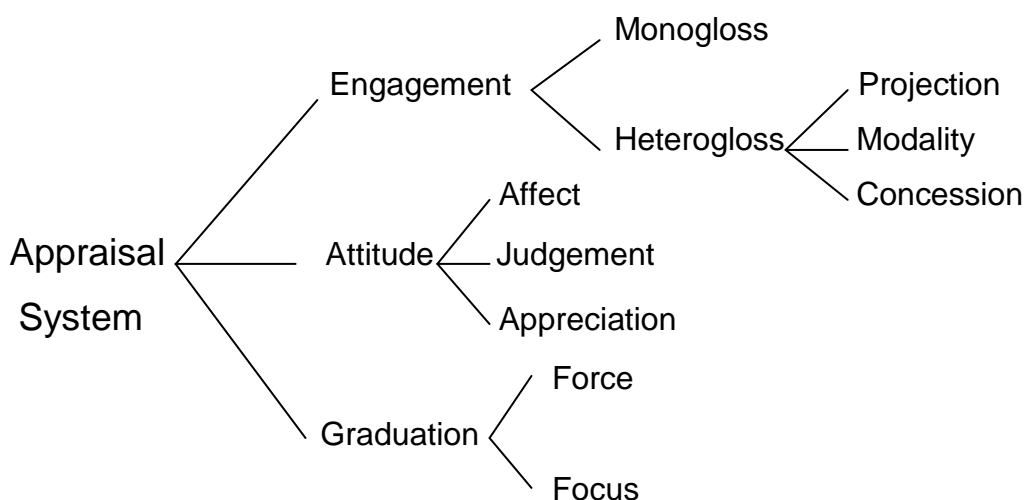


Fig. 3.1. Martin and Rose’s (2003) appraisal system

The following is an example of the occurrence of these three aspects of appraisal: attitude, engagement and graduation.

It was the beginning of a beautiful relationship. A bubbly vivacious man who beamed out wild energy. Sharply intelligent. Even if he was an Englishman, he was **popular** with all the ‘Boer’ Afrikaners.
(Martin and Rose, 2003: 26)

In this example, words like *beautiful*, *bubbly vivacious*, *wild energy*, and *intelligent* evaluate the writer’s attitude towards the relationship they had and towards the man she is talking about. The words *sharply* and *wild* show how

these feelings are amplified. And the word *popular* indicates the source of attitude, that is the 'Boer' Afrikaners.

As mentioned earlier, Hunston and Thompson's (2000) concept of 'evaluation' is another important discussion in relation to the discussion of 'interpersonal metadiscourse'. For Hunston and Thompson (ibid: 5), 'evaluation' means "the expression of the speaker or writer's attitude or stance towards, viewpoint on, or feelings about the entities or propositions that he or she is talking about. That attitude may relate to certainty or obligation or desirability or any of a number of other sets of values". Hunston and Thompson (2000) state that study on evaluation is important because it shows the speaker or writer's opinion and therefore reflects the value system of the person or community; how this aspect of metadiscourse constructs and maintains relations between writer and reader; and how it organizes the discourse (ibid. 6). They maintain that evaluation can be signalled in the following three ways:

1. comparison of the object of evaluation against a yardstick of some kind like the use of comparators, e.g. *just, only, at least*; and expressions of negativity, e.g. *never, hardly, unmistakable*
2. the markers of subjectivity, e.g. modals and markers of (un)certainty; sentence adverbs and conjunctions; marked clause structures
3. and the markers of value which can be of two types: lexical items which are used in an evaluative environment; and those that indicate the existence of goals and their (non-)achievement "(what is good may be glossed as 'what achieves our goals' and 'what is bad' may be glossed as 'what impedes the achievement of our goals')." (ibid: 21)

The first two types of signal are more of a grammatical nature and the last one is of a lexical nature.

From the above discussion it appears that Hunston and Thompson (2000) and Martin and Rose (2003) analyse texts based on both propositional and non-propositional attitudinal features. The important factor to consider is that in this study dealing with metadiscourse markers and specifically 'attitudinal markers' the focus will only be on non-propositional items. Therefore, the different ways in which writers express their feelings through the use of content words such as the ones mentioned above will be ignored and 'attitude' is seen in terms of those non-propositional expressions that writers use to express their feelings about the propositional content. The non-propositional realisations of

attitude will be discussed in Chapter 4 in relation to the concepts of 'appraisal' and 'evaluation'.

5.2. Subcategories of Textual and Interpersonal Metadiscourse

Various classifications of metadiscourse have been proposed by researchers. Essentially they all cover similar entities classified as metadiscourse in a text, although some scholars study this in specific texts or genres. For example, Hyland focuses mostly on academic writing, Crismore (1989) uses her taxonomy for non-fiction in general and for social studies materials in particular, Crismore and Farnsworth (1989) apply the concept of metadiscourse to Darwin's *Origin of Species*, and Milne (2008) focuses on newspaper articles. In this section some major studies in this connection are discussed. The purpose of this section is to show how the subcategories proposed by different scholars overlap in some cases and how they use different labels in their typologies. The categorizations discussed here are the basis for the categorization proposed in Chapter 4 to apply to news magazine editorials.

5.2.1. Vande Kopple

Making some changes in his 1985 classification, Vande Kopple (2002) discusses six kinds of metadiscourse under the two major categories of textual and interpersonal markers. His classification is summarised in Table 3.2.

Although Vande Kopple's revised classification is an attempt to solve the problems of his earlier classification, the categories are still vague and difficult to apply. One noticeable problem is the vagueness of the distinction between propositional and non-propositional material. Vande Kopple emphasises the importance of the distinction between the two; however, there seems to be no clarification of how the two can be identified. This is particularly noticeable in the examples he provides. For example, in his sub-group of 'boosters' he includes adverbial clauses like *enthusiastically* (see Table 3.2) as metadiscourse markers which could arguably be propositional.

Another problem about Vande Kopple's categorization concerns the category of 'illocution markers'. He believes that 'illocution markers' indicate the author's speech or discourse act and he considers them to be textual markers. However, indicating speech act may also function as an 'interpersonal

metadiscourse'. For example, in imperative statements, like *Sit down*, the author addresses the reader and engages them in the discussion.

The use of personal pronouns is significant in establishing a relationship between writers and readers and may be used for different purposes, like achieving solidarity with the readers, addressing the reader to accept an idea, or stating a personal opinion. In his categorisation, Vande Kopple uses the term 'commentary' which includes personal pronouns. By 'commentary' he means the devices used to draw readers into a dialogue with the author. However, he does not differentiate between the different uses of personal pronouns. For example, he does not discuss various appearances of *we*, e.g. inclusive or exclusive *we*.

Another issue concerning Vande Kopple's categorization is the category of 'attitude markers'. The category is vague since many items could fall in this group due to the evaluative nature of 'attitudes'.

Category	Examples	Function
Textual Metadiscourse		
1. Text connectives		connect blocks of
- sequencers	<i>first, next</i>	information to each
- logical/temporal connectors	<i>however, thus</i>	other, help readers to
- reminders	<i>as I noted earlier</i>	construct appropriate
- announcements	<i>as we shall see in Chapter 6</i>	representation of
- topicalizers	<i>there is, as for</i>	texts in memory
2. Code glosses		help readers grasp
- defining	defining unknown words	the meaning of
- explaining	<i>what I mean to say is</i>	elements in texts
- delimiting	<i>technically</i>	
3. Illocution markers		make explicit what
- mitigators	<i>Sit down, won't you</i>	speech or discourse
- boosters	<i>we enthusiastically promise</i>	act we are performing
Interpersonal Metadiscourse		
1. Epistemology markers		
Modality markers		assess the clarity
- hedge	<i>not unlikely, perhaps</i>	and uncertainty of
- shields	In this paper we <i>possibly</i> have	assessments of
	demonstrated a casual link	possibilities and
	between ...	probabilities
- emphatics	<i>without a doubt, believe me</i>	
Evidentials		deal with the kinds of
- convey information	<i>I believe that</i>	evidence or bases
stemming from		we have for
writer		ideational material
- show the writer	<i>I induce that, evidently</i>	
has induced information		
- show information	<i>It sounds like</i>	
stemming from		
sensory experience		
- show other people's work	<i>The principal reported that</i>	
- show the writer's deduction	<i>I deduce that</i>	
2. Attitude markers		reveal author's
	<i>surprisingly, I am afraid that</i>	attitudes towards the
		propositional content
3. Commentary		draw reader's into an
	<i>you might wish to skip to</i>	implicit dialogue with
	<i>the last chapter</i>	the author

Table 3.2. Vande Kopple's (2002) metadiscourse model

5.2.2. Crismore et al.

Crismore et al.'s (1993) typology of metadiscourse is similar to Vande Kopple's. In Crismore et al.'s classification, the problem of distinguishing propositional from non-propositional material still remains, for example the category of 'hedges' and 'certainty markers' may include a large number of items, including both propositional and non-propositional ones. There is a need to present a clearer picture of the appearances of these items as non-propositional material.

Similar to Vande Kopple's (2002) categorization, Crismore et al.'s category of 'commentary' is general. More clarification is needed in terms of the different functions of pronouns. Crismore et al.'s typology is summarised in Table 3.3 below.

Category	Examples	Function
Textual Metadiscourse		
1. Textual markers		
- logical connectives	<i>therefore, so, and</i>	show connections between ideas
- sequencers	<i>first, next</i>	indicate sequence/ ordering of material
- reminders	<i>as we saw in chapter 1</i>	refer to earlier text material
- topicalizers	<i>well, now I will discuss</i>	indicate a shift in topic
2. Interpretive markers		
- Code glosses	<i>for example, that is</i>	explain text material
- Illocution markers	<i>to conclude, in sum</i>	name the act performed
- Announcements	<i>in the next section</i>	announce upcoming material
Interpersonal Metadiscourse		
- hedges	<i>might, possibly, likely</i>	show uncertainty to truth of assertion
- certainty markers	<i>certainly, know, shows</i>	express full commitment to assertion
- attributors	<i>Smith claimed that</i>	give source/support of information
- attitude markers	<i>I hope/ agree, surprisingly</i>	display writer's affective values
- commentary	<i>you may not agree that</i>	build relationship with reader

Table 3.3. Crismore et al.'s (1993) metadiscourse model (in Hyland 2005: 34)

5.2.3. Milne

Similar to other scholars, Milne (2003) in her attempt to identify the rhetorical functions of persuasive texts in English and Spanish divides metadiscourse markers into the two broad categories of textual and interpersonal. Milne's typology is summarised in Table 3.4.

Category	Examples	Function
Textual Metadiscourse		
1. Logical markers		
- additives	<i>and, furthermore</i>	
- adversatives	<i>however</i>	
- consecutives	<i>therefore</i>	
- conclusive	<i>finally</i>	
2. Sequencers	<i>first, second</i>	mark particular position in a series
3. Reminders	<i>Let us return to</i>	refer back to previous sections
4. Code glosses		
- parentheses		
- punctuation devices		
- reformulators		
- exemplifiers		
5. Illocutionary markers	<i>I propose, I hope</i>	name the act the writer performs
6. Announcements	<i>there are many good reasons</i>	refer forward to future sections
Interpersonal metadiscourse		
1. Hedges		
- epistemic verbs	<i>may, might</i>	indicate probability of an action
- probability	<i>probably, perhaps</i>	express partial commitment to the truth-value of text
- epistemic expression	<i>It is likely</i>	
2. Certainty markers	<i>undoubtedly, clearly</i>	express total commitment to the truth-value of text
3. Attributors	<i>x claims that</i>	source of information
4. Attitudinal markers		
- deontic verbs	<i>have to</i>	
- attitudinal adverbs	<i>unfortunately, remarkably</i>	express writer's affective values towards text
- attitudinal adjectives	<i>it is absurd, it is surprising</i>	
- cognitive verbs	<i>I feel, I think</i>	
5. Commentaries		
- rhetorical questions	<i>What is the future of Europe integration or disintegration?</i>	
- direct address to reader	<i>dear reader</i>	
- inclusive expressions	<i>we all believe</i>	establish reader-writer relationship
- personalization	<i>I do not want</i>	
- asides	<i>She seemed (ironically for a Spencer) not of the establishment.</i>	

Table 3.4. Milne's (2003) metadiscourse model

Milne's categories are similar to what Vande Kopple (2002) and Crismore et al. (1993) have already proposed, but she includes a more sophisticated classification in terms of grammatical and functional aspects of the items.

Similar to others, Milne does not clarify the boundary between propositional and non-propositional material, particularly in the categories of 'hedges' and 'attitude markers'. For example, the sub-group of 'attitudinal adjectives' can include a large category of expressions, including propositional ones; or the sub-group of 'cognitive verbs' can be propositional or non-propositional, depending on the context they appear in. In the example, *I feel cold* the cognitive verb *feel* is of a propositional nature, but in the example *I think she is right* the cognitive verb *think* introduces a subordinate clause, and may belong to the domain of non-propositional items.

5.2.4. Hyland

Hyland (2005: 49) proposes his metadiscourse model based on his distinction between 'interactive' and 'interactional' metadiscourse, (discussed in section 5.1). He emphasises that his model is based on a functional approach "which regards metadiscourse as the ways writers refer to the text, the writer or the reader" (ibid: 48).

Similar to the other typologies mentioned above, there are some overlaps in Hyland's model concerning the distinction between propositional and non-propositional material. His categories of 'hedges' and 'boosters' are very broad and may include a large class of expressions. 'Attitude markers' also seem very expansive. Hyland believes that "attitude markers convey surprise, agreement, importance, obligation, frustration, and so on" (ibid: 5) and can be expressed by the use of "subordination, comparatives, progressive particles, punctuation, text location, and so on" (ibid). This definition of attitude markers makes nearly every adverbial, adjectival or verbal clause a potential candidate for metadiscourse items. Considering that every writing convention or particular way of expressing ideas reflects our attitude, a boundary is needed to facilitate the application of metadiscourse categories to real texts.

Another issue concerning Hyland's model is his category of 'evidentials'. Hyland studies 'evidentials' (source of information) in academic writing and considers them to be 'interactive' items. He maintains that these markers refer to a community-based literature and distinguish who is responsible for a

particular position. These markers may function as ‘interactive metadiscourse’ in academic writing; however, they might have a different function in editorials. Hyland’s model is summarised in Table 3.5.

Category	Examples	Function
Interactive		
- transitions	<i>in addition, but</i>	express relations between main clauses
- frame markers	<i>finally, to conclude</i>	refer to discourse acts
- endophoric markers	<i>noted above, see Fig.</i>	refer to information in other parts of the text
- evidential	<i>according to x, z states that</i>	refer to information from other texts
- code glosses	<i>namely, such as</i>	elaborate propositional meaning
Interactional		
- hedges	<i>might, perhaps</i>	withhold commitment and open dialogue
- boosters	<i>in fact, definitely</i>	emphasize certainty or close dialogue
- attitude markers	<i>unfortunately, I agree</i>	express writer’s attitude to proposition
- self mentions	<i>I, we</i>	explicit reference to author
- engagement markers	<i>consider, note, you can see that</i>	explicitly build relationship with reader

Table 3.5. Hyland’s (2005) metadiscourse model

5.2.5. Summary

In sum, the common aspect of all these typologies is the emphasis on the distinction between the propositional and non-propositional content of the message. However, the amount of importance ascribed to these major groups is different. On the one hand, Vande Kopple (1985, 2002) and Crismore (1989) and Crismore and Farnsworth (1989, 1990) consider the non-propositional content or metadiscourse as ‘secondary’ compared with the propositional content. On the other hand, Hyland (2005), Hyland and Tse (2004) and Mao reject the idea of metadiscourse as being marginal compared with the main content of the message.

Hyland’s ‘interactive’ and ‘interactional’ markers can be compared with what others label as ‘textual’ and ‘interpersonal’ markers, but as discussed earlier, the main difference is that for Hyland interactive items can have both

interpersonal as well as textual function and drawing a clear line between them is difficult. Most of Hyland's categories are similar to those of Vande Kopple (2002), Crismore et al. (1993) and Milne (2003) apart from some terminological differences. Table 3.6 below summarises the above categorizations in order to clarify these terminological differences. As can be observed, Hyland does not include a separate category of 'illocutionary markers' in his classification, but it seems this category is embedded in his 'frame markers' when the writer uses expressions such as *to conclude* and *to sum up*. Also, Hyland's 'evidentials' has not been included in this table because for Hyland 'evidentials', e.g. *according to x*, have a textual function while Milne's 'attributors' and Vande Kopple's 'evidentials' which both indicate the source of material have an interpersonal function.

Function	Williams	Vande Kopple	Crismore	Milne	Hyland	
Textual	sequencers and topicalizers	text connectives	logical connectives	logical markers	transitions	
			sequencers	sequencers	frame markers	
	topicalizers	announcements	announcements			
	attributors and narratives	illocution markers	illocution markers	illocutionary markers		
			reminders	reminders		endophoric markers
		code glosses	code glosses	code glosses	code glosses	
code glosses			code glosses	code glosses		
Interpers.	hedges and emphatics	modality markers	hedges	hedges	hedges	
			certainty markers	certainty markers	boosters	
		evidentials	attributors	attributors	-	
		attitude markers	attitude markers	attitude markers	attitude markers	
		commentaries	commentaries	commentaries	commentaries	self-mention
						engagement markers

Table 3.6. Summary of metadiscourse classifications

6. Conclusion

This chapter introduced some of the basic concepts of metadiscourse and discussed how metadiscourse has been approached in some parallel studies like Meyer's on signalling words, Lautamatti's on non-topical material and Schiffrin's on meta-talk. The major part of this chapter examined some studies of metadiscourse and the way they have categorized metadiscourse into different sub-groups. What is common in all these studies is that they all assume the distinction between two 'planes' of discourse, propositional and non-propositional, even though there may be slight disagreement as to what counts as one or the other. On the propositional plane the writer provides information for the readers, and on the non-propositional plane s/he directs the readers through the text and expresses his/her attitude to the content message. Some scholars call the first plane 'primary discourse' and the second one 'secondary discourse'. However, this marginalisation of metadiscourse can be controversial because using metadiscourse is an indispensable instrument in the process of producing a reader-friendly text and its importance should not be disregarded.

Another important property of metadiscourse is its role in creating a relationship between writer and reader. This relationship is created using both textual and interpersonal entities. The textual entities are aimed at readers in that they provide clues to the better understanding of the text where the interpersonal entities are aimed at readers in that they convey the writer's attitude towards the text. Both are meant for the readers and facilitate the process of reading and how the writer intends the readers to take the information.

There are some issues in defining metadiscourse categories. One of the main issues is setting a boundary for the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content. For example, 'hedges' and 'modal verbs' are the most common terms used in the above-mentioned studies referring to the probability of a proposition. Since 'hedges' and 'modal verbs' can refer to a large number of items including both propositional and non-propositional ones, there is a need to set a boundary between the two to achieve more consistency in metadiscourse studies. Similarly, 'attitude markers' can cover a large range of expressions which can be problematic when it comes to deciding whether they

are propositional or not. Another issue is the treatment of 'pronouns' in the existent studies. Pronouns can belong to different categories depending on the context they appear in. There is a need to clarify the various appearances of pronouns and group them according to the context they are used.

As stated earlier, one of the main aims of this study is to propose a categorization for interactional metadiscourse applicable to editorials. The next chapter focuses on setting a boundary for propositional and non-propositional content and resolving the existent issues in interactional metadiscourse categorizations.

Chapter 4

Interactional Metadiscourse in Editorials

As stated in Chapter 1, the present study has two main components: the ‘interactional metadiscourse’ (IM) component and the contrastive component. This chapter focuses on the IM component and aims to propose a classification of IM based on the existing typologies.

In Chapter 3 some approaches to metadiscourse were discussed, and the categories proposed by different scholars were presented. In sum, it was argued that metadiscourse refers to the non-propositional content of a text despite the fact that it is sometimes difficult to draw a distinct line between the propositional and non-propositional elements. This chapter is divided into four parts. In the first part the corpora selected for this study are discussed, and the role of the press in the Iranian and the British political settings is clarified. The second part discusses the methodology used to develop the qualitative aspect of the study. A text-based method was used whereby a set of British and Iranian editorials was analysed in order to discover the types of ‘interactional metadiscourse’ used. The third part focuses on the main theoretical clarification related to the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content, paying particular attention to the concepts of hedges and modality. A discussion of modality in Persian will also be included. The value of attribution and authorial material, attitudinal adjectives and adverbs will be clarified in relation to the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content. It should be mentioned that a context-based approach has been taken in setting the boundary between the propositional and non-propositional material, and ultimately in proposing the IM categorization. The last part of this chapter focuses on the identification of categories of ‘interactional metadiscourse’ applicable to editorials. The study sets out to suggest a classification, based on the existing ones, which is applicable to the analysis of editorials. Each interactional item is defined, and English and Persian examples are provided. The English and Persian examples in this chapter are selected from the editorials included in the analysis. The Persian examples are provided with two

translations: one word-for-word translation and another translation of meaning to make it easier to spot the interactional items used.

PART ONE: DISCUSSION OF THE CORPUS

As mentioned in Chapter 1, the data for the study was selected from British and Iranian news magazine editorials. In order to discuss the equivalence of these two sets of data in terms of comparison, a picture of the Iranian and British political situations and their influence on the media are discussed in this section. The process of data selection is then presented.

1.1. Iranian and British Political Contexts and the Press

1.1.1. The Iranian Setting

The post-revolutionary period in Iran is divided into four distinct periods: the war years (1979 – 1989) which includes the aftermath of the revolution and the war between Iran and Iraq; the reconstruction era (1989 – 1997) which includes the post-war reconstruction era under the presidency of Ali Akbar Hashemi Rafsanjani; the reform era (1997 – 2005) which covers the reformist government of Mohammad Khatami; and the post-reform era (2005 to the present) which started with the election of Mahmoud Ahmadinejad (Semati 2008). In all these periods the media has had a political function. According to Semati (2008), since the state controls the national broadcasting outlets, the print press has been a battleground for the reformists.

The role that the media has played in each of these periods is notable. According to Semati (2008), during the Iran-Iraq war the media was used for mass mobilization. The origins of the reform movement started in the second period when some individuals used the print media to launch their political ideas. The election of Khatami brought forth a period of great openness for the media, and many of the restrictions on the press were lifted. This paved the way for spreading the message of reform (Khiabany 2008: 23). The reformists used the print press “to reflect popular discontent, embodying oppositional tendencies, and articulating alternative visions of the social and political orders” (Semati 2008: 6). In the post-reform period the media has been subject to contestation between the reformists and the neo-conservatives.

According to Khiabany (2007), the print media in Iran is either massive and organized in large-scaled corporations, owned by the state, or petty and with small titles owned by individual owners. On average there are 130 publications in Iran, more than 70 of which are controlled by the state (Khiabany 2008). *Keyhan* and *Ettela'at* are the main publishing corporations owned by the state. Each of them has several publications in the form of newspapers, weeklies and monthlies both in Iran and abroad. There are many other smaller publications, the owners of which are current or former government officials who use the press as “an organ to mobilize the popular support for their own ends” (Khiabany 2008: 25).

The competition between the state-linked and private publications is not a fair one. As Khiabany (2007) maintains, since economic resources are available for the state-linked publications (they receive more than 60 per cent of the foreign exchange subsidy), state publications can keep the price of a single copy of their product as low as possible. Because of their unfair advantage, neither the size of their circulation nor their losing money is their prime concern (Khiabany 2007: 493). To overcome this problem and be financially viable the private publications either have to tackle controversial political issues or sensational and popular entertainment stories (Khiabany 2007).

Whether state-owned or privately-owned, the press media in Iran are subject to control by the government. There is a special court (the Islamic Revolutionary Court) that has the authority to monitor the press media, and to suspend or shut down the papers and magazines which are guilty of publishing anti-religious material or information that is ‘against the national interest’.

1.1.2. The British Setting

Unlike Iran, where the media is mostly state-owned, in Britain the media, including the press, is privatised. The free economy in Britain reached its peak in the 1970s with the coming of the Thatcher administration. The policies of the free market apply to the media, including the press. This results in a largely competitive market. Unlike the Iranian press, where most of the media are owned by the state and have access to advanced technology, putting the private publications at a disadvantage, the British press is private and, as Sparks (1999) calls it, “truly capitalist”. There are more than 1000 newspapers and more than 10,000 magazines distributed in the UK (Sparks 1999).

However, their function is not just the reporting of the news, acting as watchdogs for the public, checking the doings of the government and so on, but also to make money (Sparks 1999: 45-46). In this highly competitive market publishers make their products unique and uniquely valued instead of lowering their price (Sparks 1999).

Another issue to mention in relation to the British media in general and the press in particular is its emancipation. It is widely believed that the press gained its freedom partly as a result of the growth of the free market in Britain, resulting in the privatisation of the media (Curran and Seaton 2010). However, Petley (1999) refers to various statutory instruments and pieces of legislation that limit the media's ability to report government business and restrict media freedom. He maintains that, by Western standards, the British media is remarkably tightly regulated by the state.

In sum, in both countries the press is used as a means of disseminating news and for the formation of public opinion. However, there are some differences between the two countries in the level of emancipation and circulation of the press media. Whereas in Britain the media is privatised and is relatively free from dependence on state or party subsidies (Curran and Seaton 2010), in Iran the majority of press publications depend on the state for subsidies and are therefore party-influenced. This results in the press being used as a 'battleground' to reflect the opinions of the opposing parties. In both countries the state intervenes in the activities of the media but this intervention is far more repressive in Iran. Another point to be mentioned is the breadth of circulation in Iran and Britain. The wide circulation of papers and magazines in Britain is in no way comparable to that in Iran.

The press ownership and the on-going argument among the papers affect the relationship between the writer and readers and, therefore, have an impact on the use of metadiscourse devices.

1.2. Editorials

As already mentioned, the corpus in this study comes from the editorial genre. According to Swales (1990), similarities in "structure, style, content and intended audience" form a genre. In other words, common "communicative purpose" is the major characteristic of a genre (Bhatia: 1993). Editorials are opinion articles written by the editorial staff for the purpose of shaping and

forming public opinion. Therefore, the common “communicative purpose” in editorials is the influencing of public opinion. This is made possible through the persuasive use of language which forms (in Cheung’s 2010 terms) the “social function” of editorials, and by including content which is of importance to the intended audience, that is, the public.

The rationale behind choosing editorials as the source of data in this study is that they are normally argumentative in nature, and are persuasive. This characteristic demands conscious structuring of the texts in order to create a bond between the writer and the readers. Beaugrande and Dressler (1981: 184) define argumentative texts as “those utilised to promote the acceptance or evaluation of certain beliefs or ideas as true vs. false, or positive vs. negative. Conceptual relations such as reason, significance, volition, value and opposition should be frequent”. This persuasive characteristic might affect the number of interactional devices used in order to strengthen this relationship. It seems that argumentative writing lends itself more to the use of metadiscourse, especially the interpersonal type (Williams, 1981).

Editorials are opinion articles written by the editorial staff or publisher of a newspaper or magazine. According to Van Dijk (1995), editorials play a role in the formation and change of public opinion, in setting the political agenda, and in influencing social debate, decision making, and other forms of social and political action. Van Dijk maintains that editorial opinion is generally institutional, not personal. Therefore, these articles are usually unsigned. They reflect the opinion of that particular newspaper or magazine and “tend to be derived from social representations, rather than from the personal experiences or opinions of the editor” (Van Dijk 1995).

Although editorials are commonly used as a means of influencing public opinion in both Iran and Britain, there are some differences in the presentation of editorials in the two countries. The British editorials are normally unsigned and reflect institutional opinion, with the exception of the editorials taken from *Prospect* magazine in this study. Even though the articles taken from this magazine are all signed by the editor, David Goodhart, they may be expected to reflect the opinion of the magazine rather than the editor’s personal opinion.

Unlike British editorials, which are mostly unsigned, Iranian editorials are always followed by the name of the editor. As in the case of the British *Prospect*, however, signing the editorial article does not mean that the writer is

writing independently. No matter who signs a particular article, the paper's viewpoint on particular issues is reflected in these articles and the paper accepts the responsibility for the content.

Another point to be taken into consideration is the number of editorials and their place in any one issue of a paper or magazine. In Britain the editorial section is normally placed in a separate section which is readily distinguishable from the other sections. Similarly, in Iran the editorial is put in a separate section. However, in the British papers and news magazines there is usually more than one topic covered in the editorial section, whereas in the Iranian news magazines normally only one topic is covered. This might reflect the fact that in Britain there is usually an editorial board comprising several editors covering different topics whereas in Iran there is usually only one editor.

The training of editorialists is another point to mention. Unlike British editorialists who are specially trained for the job, Iranian editorialists are not necessarily trained as journalists. This might arise from the fact that competition is very stiff in Britain and publishing companies make every effort to ensure that their products are unique and professional. For this purpose they use highly trained journalists. In Iran, however, papers and magazines reflect their own specific political affiliations, and the editors are usually employed because of their political tendencies. They may be writers, politicians or people from other backgrounds. This may lead to greater stylistic variation in the Persian editorials. All these aspects are likely to influence the use of metadiscourse features. This will be further discussed in relation to the findings in Chapter 5.

1.3. The Selected Magazines

For the purpose of ensuring that the corpus is as representative as possible, magazines with different affiliations (Iran), audiences and special interest (Britain) were selected. The three Iranian magazines were *Ettela'at Weekly*, *Cheshamandaze Iran* and *Gozaresh*. *Ettela'at Weekly* belongs to the *Ettela'at* publication company, which is state-owned and therefore pro-governmental. Compared with *Keyhan*, another major state-owned publication, it has a more moderate approach to public issues. It is a weekly Iranian general interest magazine published in Tehran and, as it claims on its website (www.ettelaat.com), reflects the latest cultural and economic events, especially those that interest Iranians and other Persian speaking people from various

backgrounds. *Cheshmandaze Iran* is the other two-monthly magazine selected in this study. It is owned and published by Lotfollah Meisami who also writes the editorials of the magazine. He is a political activist with a background in oil engineering. His political – strategic magazine has a reformist approach to the issues. It is published in Tehran and seems to target educated readers. *Gozaresh*, the other magazine selected in this study, is a political, social and economic monthly owned by Abolqasem Golbaf who claims to be independent and to belong to no political party. Golbaf is the editor of the magazine and has been detained, and his magazine has been shut down several times because of its content. The magazine covers political, social and economical issues and has an anti-governmental approach.

The British editorials were selected from the following four magazines with different target audiences (but all educated) and focus: *The Economist*, *New Statesman*, *Prospect* and *The Spectator*. *The Economist* is a weekly international affairs publication published in London which targets highly educated readers and claims to have an audience comprising many influential executives and policy-makers. *The New Statesman* is another British weekly magazine with a left-wing political tendency which is committed to development, human rights, the environment and global issues. *Prospect* is a British monthly general interest magazine specialising in politics and current affairs which generally takes a left-of-centre line. Lastly is *The Spectator*, a British weekly magazine covering the principal subject areas of politics and culture. It generally takes a right-of-centre, conservative editorial line.

1.4. The Corpus of This Thesis

This study employed a purposeful method of sampling in its data selection. The main reason for doing so was that, for the sake of equivalence, the study aimed to focus on editorials dealing with the serious issues dominant in each society. The articles dealing with less serious issues were therefore excluded. As mentioned in Section 1.3, a variety of news magazines with different affiliations were chosen and articles discussing a variety of topics were selected as representative of a range of argumentative texts intended for consumption by the British and Iranian cultural communities. This was in order to ensure that a variety of content and style was included in the survey.

Altogether a corpus of 32 print versions of English and Persian editorials (20 in English and 12 in Persian) published between Nov. 2007 and March 2009 was collected through the internet. As the Persian articles were longer than the English ones, a smaller number of Persian articles were selected in order to have an approximately equal number of words in both sets of data. The whole corpus amounts to 31296 words, 15745 in English and 15551 in Persian. The titles (in italics) and topics covered in the British and Iranian corpus are listed below.

Economist

1. *The Mumbai attacks*
This discusses the terrorist attacks in Mumbai, India and the reasons for them.
2. *Israel's war in Gaza*
This discusses Israel's attack on Gaza and the main reasons behind it.
3. *America's elections*
In this article Obama's victory in the presidential elections and its aftermaths are covered.
4. *Technology and global warming*
This article discusses the advantages and disadvantages of the technologies used to solve the problem of global warming.
5. *The financial crisis*
This discusses the effects of the financial crisis on the world economy and politics.

New Statesman

6. *Who really holds the country to ransom?*
This discusses the strikes following the tax increase and inflation in Gordon Brown's government.
7. *Why we need whistleblowers?*
A social worker's revelations about the north London borough of Haringey and the failings in its child protection system are covered in this article.
8. *Why tough talk on knife crime is not the answer?*
This article discusses the shortcomings of the government's Youth Crime Action Plan and includes suggestions of how to tackle knife crime.
9. *We have no imperial right to remake nations.*

In this article the historical presence of Britain in Afghanistan is discussed and condemned.

10. *Can we create space for our children to be safe and free?*

This discusses the necessity of providing safe play spaces for British children.

Prospect

Articles in *Prospect* do not have titles. The ones chosen discuss the following topics:

11. The editor discusses Obama's victory in America's presidential elections.

12. The war in Iraq and the military presence of Britain in Iraq and Afghanistan are discussed in this article.

13. In this article *Prospect's* interview with David Miliband is reviewed.

14. This article discusses the global economy.

15. This article refers to George Bush's foreign policy and the benefit of his being replaced by Obama.

Spectator

16. *Help Purnell*

This discusses the government's welfare reform plans.

17. *Brown bets the farm*

This article discusses the Chancellor of the Exchequer's pre-budget report.

18. *Taxing questions*

This article criticises the government's fiscal policy.

19. *A child of our time*

This article criticises the government's efforts in fixing Britain's economic problems without paying attention to the psychological aspects of the economic downturn.

20. *Must try harder*

This article is about the issue of SATS exams in schools.

Chashmandaze Iran

21. *Law abiding: An answer to what must be done*

This article discusses reformists and fundamentalists, and the Constitution law in Iran

22. *Some points in a note*

This article includes the following sub-topics:

- *Turkey, content or form*, which discusses secularism in Turkey and how it is interpreted in Iran.
- *The main reason for the coup against Mosaddeq*, which discusses the main reasons for the movement against Mosaddeq.
- *The superpower of public opinion*, which discusses the public discontent with the war in Iraq.
- *The Energy crisis and the \$1000 billion uranium market*, which discusses the market for nuclear power plants in Persian Gulf countries.

23. *Passage from oil to tax*

This article criticises the government's new tax law and its outcomes.

Ettela'at Weekly

24. *How should they compensate?*

This article discusses inflation in Iran.

25. *Nature that has become lifeless*

This article discusses the environmental issues in the north of Iran.

26. *Medical care, people's certain right*

This article discusses the issues of Iran's medical care system.

27. *All of them must be responsible*

This article discusses the Iranian authorities' mismanagement.

Gozarash

28. *The pain we take, the gain we don't take receive*

This article is about the mismanagement of resources in Iran.

29. *The wisdom of some of the senior managers of the country*

The editor discusses the events in the last year of Ahmadinejad's government.

30. *Beware! Consumerism has got out of control*

This article criticises consumerism and some companies' irresponsible ways of advertising.

31. *Gentlemen, hold on! Please do not sell oil*

This article criticises the government's reliance on oil income.

32. *Even 'change' changes*

This discusses Obama's election as president in 2009.

PART TWO: METHODOLOGY OF CATEGORIZATION

2.1. Research Questions

On the qualitative level this study was carried out in order to probe into the following research questions:

1. What types of 'interactional metadiscourse' are used in British and Iranian editorials?
2. What are the specific linguistic realizations of 'certainty' and 'uncertainty' in British and Iranian editorials?
3. What does the concept of 'hedges' include in metadiscourse studies?
4. What do 'modal expressions' include in metadiscourse studies?
5. What does the concept of 'attitude' include in metadiscourse studies?
6. What does the concept of 'engagement' include in metadiscourse studies?
7. What role do 'personal pronouns' play in metadiscourse studies?

2.2. The Main Characteristics of the Methodology of Categorization

2.2.1. Local Framework

The concept of metadiscourse is a fuzzy area and any generalized classification may lead to an even fuzzier description of the concept. Therefore, a "local" framework which is specifically developed for a particular domain is needed which leads to a clear and accurate picture of the notion of metadiscourse.

From the qualitative point of view the purpose of this study is to develop a "local" analytical framework for studying 'interactional metadiscourse' in editorials. Therefore, following Bednarek (2006) and Pounds (2011), both theory-driven and text-driven approaches were considered in order to develop the IM categorization. The proposed analytical framework suggested in this study is theory-driven, in that it uses previous research on metadiscourse (e.g. Vande Kopple, 1985, 2002; Crismore, 1993; Hyland, 2005) as a basis for the identification of the IM categories. The four main groups of uncertainty, certainty, attitudinal and engagement markers are the revised categories derived from the previous studies. The suggested analytical framework is text-driven, in that the general categories are revised and refined following the actual analysis of the corpora under investigation. The term "local" (Hunston

and Sinclair 2000) in this study refers to a text-driven approach that starts by focusing on the expression of 'interactional metadiscourse' in editorials, and identifies a set of items which fit the general definition of IM categories. These items are then developed into a revised categorization of IM using the existing categorizations.

2.2.2. Functional Analysis

'Function' is another key issue in metadiscourse studies. Since one of the concerns in metadiscourse studies is whether a syntactic or functional approach is taken to identify metadiscourse entities, it is important to clarify the approach taken in this study. Some studies use both approaches in their analysis, such as Crismore (1993) and Milne (2003). Hyland (2005) claims to adopt a 'functional' approach to metadiscourse.

In this study the functional approach is emphasised, in that items are examined in terms of their "communicative purposes" (Hyland 2005). According to Hyland (*ibid*: 24), "the use of language in relation to its surrounding co-text and the purpose of the writer in creating a text as a whole" are recognised. Therefore, the emphasis in this study is on the function of a particular item at a given point in the text. However, relying purely on the functional approach results in a fuzzier classification of the already fuzzy concept of metadiscourse. To avoid this, references have been made to the syntactical appearance of items where there is a need to clarify the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content. This also has repercussions on units of analysis and will be discussed in the next chapter.

PART THREE: THEORETICAL CLARIFICATION

Following Sinclair (1981), Hunston (2000: 176), in her discussion of evaluation, distinguishes between 'interactive' and 'autonomous' planes of discourse. The 'interactive plane' of discourse refers to the ongoing interaction between reader and writer while the 'autonomous plane' refers to the content of the message or the information the writer wants to convey to readers. In the 'interactive plane' the writer signals to the reader the role of a particular proposition in the whole text, while in the 'autonomous plane' the writer says things about the world. The distinction between 'autonomous' and 'interactive'

planes of discourse can be related to the distinction between 'propositional' and 'non-propositional' meaning. Evaluation is possible on both levels. Evaluation on the interactive or non-propositional level is related to the attitude towards the proposition. Evaluation on the autonomous or propositional level is related to the writer's representation of the world or how the writer labels the world. The distinction between the two levels is crucial in any study concerning metadiscourse.

Pertaining to the identification of the main categories of 'interactional metadiscourse', there are some issues to be discussed. As is the case with most metadiscourse studies, there is a great deal of overlap in the range of items that fall into the non-propositional end of the propositional/non-propositional continuum. It was discussed in the previous chapter that the boundary between propositional and non-propositional content is fuzzy. This creates problems in analysing texts and makes research in this area quite variable. There is a need, therefore, to set a limit to the types of items that may be considered non-propositional in order to gain a consistent approach throughout the analysis of texts. One of the main issues in this regard is the category of 'hedges' and 'modals'. In all the studies discussed in the previous chapter, hedges and modals are the main indicators of IM. However, the notions are not clearly defined and may be expanded into a larger range of items. This makes analysing texts problematic. Section 3.1 addresses this problem and attempts to clarify the boundary.

The discussion of attribution and authorial material is another issue to be addressed in this study. It has been included as a metadiscourse marker in other studies. However, a clearer picture is needed in order to reflect its function in 'editorials'. This issue will be discussed in Section 3.2.

Similarly, 'attitude markers' are the main category in all metadiscourse typologies. This category may be very expansive since every item in a text, be it an adverbial, adjectival or verbal clause, may portray the writer's attitude to some degree. The vast span of this category leads to the necessity for setting boundaries. Regarding the existing ambiguities in defining 'attitudinal markers', a discussion of 'attitudinal adjectives and adverbs' will follow in Section 3.3.

Another problematic category concerning the existing studies on metadiscourse is that of 'pronouns'. Personal pronouns are essentially propositional. However, considering the role they play in establishing a

relationship between readers and writers, they have been included in metadiscourse categorizations. The main issue concerning 'personal pronouns' in the previous studies is that there is seldom a fine distinction in the role they play in different contexts. For example, they might be used to state a personal opinion, or they might be used as a means of self reference. A clearer definition of this category is needed in order to reflect these different functions. Section 3.4 is devoted to this issue and how it has been approached in this study.

3.1. Hedges and Modality

The term 'hedge' has been approached in a variety of ways. According to Markkanen and Schröder (1997: 4) it was first used by Lakoff (1972) in order to refer to the logical property of some words and phrases and their ability "to make things fuzzier or less fuzzy". Lakoff's approach to hedging was semantic. According to Varttala (2001: 5), Lakoff was mainly interested in the function of hedging vis-à-vis the conceptual categories of natural language; that is, for Lakoff, hedging was an aspect of Halliday's 'experiential' component or 'ideational' function. Hedging, approached semantically, has usually been associated with an increase or decrease in tentativeness and vagueness, as in the following example taken from Varttala (2001: 7-8).

Penguins are sort of birds.

I suppose that he is leaving on the next train.

In these examples *sort of* and *I suppose that* indicate the imprecision and vagueness of the utterance.

Hedging has recently been approached pragmatically rather than purely semantically, and has been related to the 'interpersonal' function of language. As Varttala (2001: 24) states, the concept of 'hedge' includes those linguistic choices that increase or decrease fuzziness and provide the opportunity to comment on group membership, truth value and illocutionary force. According to Varttala (2001), studies on politeness theories, carried out mainly by Brown and Levinson (1978, 1987), are the most thorough treatment of the interpersonal features of hedging. Another area in which hedging has been treated interpersonally is in the studies on metadiscourse in which hedging has been considered as a sub-component of 'interpersonal metadiscourse' (e.g. Crismore 1989, Vande Kopple 2002, Milne 2003, Hyland, 2005).

Milne and Hyland approach hedges from a communicative point of view. They distinguish between those modality markers that express the writer's uncertainty about a piece of information as 'hedges', and those that express 'certainty' as 'certainty markers' (Milne 2003) or 'boosters' (Hyland 2005). According to Hyland (1996) hedges are necessary to justify claims because writers rely on being approved of by the readers. The writer must make a hypothesis about the nature of reality and the acceptability of the hypothesis to an audience (ibid: 436-7). Markkanen and Schröder (1992) suggest that hedges "offer a possibility for textual manipulation in the sense that the reader is left in the dark as to who is responsible for the truth value of what is being expressed" (in Markkanen and Schröder 1997, 5-6). Markkanen and Schröder believe that this type of functional approach to hedges makes it difficult to have a clear-cut listing of hedging expressions.

Varttala (2001), in his study of hedges in scientifically-oriented discourse, includes a large list of expressions as markers of hedging. His analysis includes entities like *forecast, conceivably, reason, about, possible, likely, etc.* Varttala's distinction is different from the distinction applied in this study. The present study focuses on the non-propositional indicators of (un)certainty. In case of hedging verbs, in order to distinguish between propositional and non-propositional meaning, verbs which, apart from showing the writer's (un)certainty, add to the message content, e.g. *hypothesize, judge, wish*, are considered propositional. For example:

- (1) For those who believe that anything but prison is a soft option, however, the alternatives must be convincing. (*New Statesman*, 17 July 2008, Text No. 8)

In the above example *believe* is not considered a metadiscourse entity since it does not carry authorial voice and refers to the propositional content. However, hedging verbs may also indicate possibility and tentativeness on the part of the author (e.g. *seem, appear*). For example,

- (2) It differs from most previous attacks in two important ways: in the sophistication of the operation's planning and the terrorist manpower that must have been involved; and in selecting foreigners as targets: hostage-takers seem to have sought out American, British and Israeli victims. (*The Economist*, 27 Nov. 2008, Text No. 1)

In this example the writer using *seem* expresses his/her uncertainty about the target of hostage-takers. It should be remembered that only those expressions which indicate the author's uncertainty towards the content will be counted.

Another class of hedging expressions to be excluded from IM categories in this study is adverbs of frequency. It should be noted that these adverbs, e.g. *occasionally, typically, usually* are not counted as metadiscourse markers due to their propositional nature. They could be considered as non-propositional, and therefore 'uncertainty markers' if they are in a thematic position, or stated between commas so that they stand out. However, there were no such cases in the analysed texts in this study.

There is a close connection between the concepts of 'hedging' and 'modality' in the studies of researchers, and specifically those on metadiscourse (e.g. Hyland 1998). Crismore (1989) and Vande Kopple (2002) use the term 'modality markers' to refer to those elements in a text which convey certainty or uncertainty. Hyland and Milne's (2005) 'hedges' include modality.

It should be noted that generally a basic distinction is drawn between 'epistemic' and 'deontic' modality. Epistemic modality occurs when "the speaker explicitly qualifies his commitment to the truth of the proposition expressed by the sentence he utters" (Lyons 1977:797) as in the following example:

- (3) Younger readers may not even know the phrase ...
(*New Statesman*, 26 June 2008, text No. 6)

Using epistemic modality, the writer conveys his/her state of knowledge and belief concerning the information that is presented. Deontic modality, on the other hand, is used to convey obligation and permission and reflects the writer's "attitude toward the desirability (or undesirability) of certain actions or events" (Simpson 1990:67) as in the following example:

- (4) One can understand that Gordon Brown might wish to be rid of the Iraq problem. It was not his war (although he did nothing to stop it), and he would like to move on. But he cannot. He must act now to help prevent a repetition.
(*New Statesman*, 10 Sep. 2007)

In the above example, *must* is used to express 'deontic modality' and indicates the necessity of Brown's action in order to stop the war in Iraq.

Martin and White (2005) group 'epistemic modality' and 'deontic modality' under the heading of 'entertain'. They consider 'entertain' as one of the

components of 'engagement' in their 'appraisal' system, and define it as "those wordings by which the authorial voice indicates that its position is but one of a number of possible positions and thereby, to a greater or lesser extent, make dialogic space for those possibilities. The authorial voice **entertains** those dialogic alternatives" (ibid: 104, emphasis in original). Following Martin and White, deontic modality, when addressed to third parties, has been considered to be an 'engagement marker' (and when addressed to the reader, it has been considered as an 'expression of obligation').

Halliday and Matthiessen (2004) see 'modality' as a sub-component of the interpersonal function and define it as a cline between yes and no. In other words, modality is the degree of probability or obligation of a proposition (either 'is' or 'isn't') or a proposal (either 'do!' or 'don't!') (ibid: 116); therefore, the two poles of positive and negative, that is, the certainty ends, also form part of modality markers. According to Halliday and Matthiessen the function of the modality system is "to construe the region of uncertainty that lies between 'yes' and 'no'" (ibid: 147). They distinguish between two types of modality: 'modalization' and 'modulation'. Modalization is related to the degree of probability, e.g. *probably, certainly, possibly* and the degree of usuality, e.g. *sometimes, usually, always*. They can be expressed by a finite modal operator in the verbal group e.g. that will be John, he'll sit there all day; by a modal adjunct, e.g. that's probably John; or by both together, e.g. that'll probably be John. Modularity relates to obligation and inclination and can be expressed by a finite modal operator, e.g. you should know that, I'll help them; or by an expansion of the predicator, e.g. you're supposed to know that; I'm anxious to help them (Halliday and Matthiessen 2004: 147).

In the present study, 'epistemic modality', or what Halliday and Matthiessen call 'modalization', is considered an important element in conveying 'uncertainty' used to indicate 'possibility' of what is being said, reservation and avoidance of full commitment. The concept of 'deontic modality', or what is termed 'modularity' by Halliday and Matthiessen, is approached from the two perspectives of 'expressions of reader-address' and 'expressions of obligation'. The former is considered as a sub-category of 'engagement marker' because the writer intends to include the reader in the discussion. The latter is considered as a sub-category of 'attitudinal marker' as it expresses the attitude of the writer towards the issue discussed (see sections 4.3 and 4.4 below).

Apart from modal verbs and modal adjuncts, other expressions may be used to convey the writer's (un)certainty. Such expressions have been considered non-propositional when they can be clearly separated from the main propositional content as in:

(5) It is good to see that at least one member of Gordon Brown's Cabinet is still taking seriously the task of public-service and welfare reform. That said, we have doubts about whether the white paper is enough in itself.
(*Spectator*, No. 10, Dec. 2008, text No 16)

(6) What the return of character means for policy is less clear, beyond parenting classes for a few. But it is obvious that good societies need good people, and removing the taboo on character talk is a start.
(*Prospect*, No. 149, Aug. 2008, text No. 15)

(7) farz-e mâ bar in ast ke jâme'e-ye Irân vasi'tar az nezâm-e assumption-EZ we to this be-3SG that society-EZ Iran larger than system-EZ Jomhuri-e Eslâmi va nezâm ham vasi'tar az dolat ast. Republic-EZ Islamic and system also larger than government be-3SG. Our assumption is that the Iranian society is larger than the Islamic Republic system, and the Islamic Republic system is larger than the government.
(*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No 52, Oct. – Dec. 2008, text No. 21)

(8) nâ-gofte peidâ-st ke čenin eqdâm-i na faqat yek harakat-e not-said clear-be-3SG that this step-a not only one movement-EZ mosbat be hesâb ne-mi-ây-ad, balke fâsele-ye tabaq-âti râ bištar positive to count not-DUR-come-3SG, but gap-EZ class-PLU ACC more mi-kon-ad DUR-make-3SG It is clear that this step not only is not a positive action, but will increase the social gap.
(*Ettela'at-e Weekly*, No. 3305, 28 Nov. 2007, text No. 24)

(9) mosalaman avvalin zarar-e in eqdâm, be kešvar va manâbe'-e ân certainly first damage-EZ this action, to country and resources-EZ it vâred mi-šav-ad; enter DUR-become-3SG; Certainly its first damage is imposed on the country and its resources.
(*Gozaresh*, Sep.-Oct. 2008, text No. 30)

In Examples 5 and 7, *we have doubts* and *farz-e mâ bar in ast* (our assumption is that) are considered to be non-propositional because they are subordinate clauses, and are classified as 'uncertainty markers' (see Section 4.1). In Examples 6 and 8, *it is obvious that* and *nâ-gofte peidâ-st* (it is clear that) are considered to be non-propositional, and are classified as 'certainty markers' (see Section 4.2). In Example 9 the writer states his opinion, modifying his

argument using *mosalaman* (of course). In this example *mosallaman* (of course) is considered to be metadiscourse and in this case is a 'certainty marker'.

In some studies declarative expressions, or in other words bare assertions, are included as statements of certainty. For example, Hunston and Thompson (2000) define epistemic modality as the degree of certainty attached to claims of particular knowledge. In Hunston and Thompson's definition of modality, the two poles of certainty (assertion and denial) are considered to be part of modality. It should be noted that in this study those expressions that are at either of the two ends of the yes-no cline are not counted as 'certainty markers'.

- (10) Three years later Mearsheimer and Walt were at the centre of a storm over their book *The Israel Lobby*, which examined America's Jewish-dominated Israel lobby and its supposed armlock on US middle east policy.
(*Prospect*, No. 145, April 2008, text No. 12)

In the above examples all the statements inform the reader of a definite reality, a reality that the writer is reporting as if it is 100% certain. No modal verb is used to tone down the statements. The writer intends those statements to be accepted by the reader as a fact but they do not explicitly signal this through the use of 'certainty markers'. Essentially, the same criterion is used for Persian.

As certainty and uncertainty markers are important tools in persuading readers to accept an idea and be approved by their audience, they are considered as a major method of producing persuasive and effective texts within editorials. Therefore, the major categories of 'certainty' and 'uncertainty' markers are preferred to more general categories, as this allows for a finer distinction between interactional features. The term 'certainty markers' used by Milne (2003), is preferred over 'boosters' used by Hyland (2005) or 'emphatics' used by Vande Kopple (2002). 'Certainty markers' refers to the high degree of probability of a proposition. The term 'uncertainty markers', by contrast, is used in this study to refer to all those expressions that convey the low probability of the proposition. In other words, those markers indicating low grading (Martin and Rose 2003), e.g. *somewhat*, *kind of*, described as items that 'turn the volume down', and those that are 'softening' (ibid) are placed in the category of 'uncertainty markers'.

As already mentioned, modality is one of the means of expressing 'certainty', 'uncertainty' or 'obligation' depending on its function in the text. For example *must* and *bâyad* (must) are used to express certainty in some cases and

obligation in others, while *should* may be used to express uncertainty or obligation.

- (11) It differs from most previous attacks in two important ways: in the sophistication of the operation's planning and the terrorist manpower that must have been involved; and in selecting foreigners as targets: hostage-takers seem to have sought out American, British and Israeli victims.

(*The Economist*, 27 Nov. 2008, text No. 1)

- (12) vâqe'iyat in ast ke bâ tavajoh be olgu-ye masraf-e jâme'e mâ
reality this be-3SG that with regard to pattern-EZ consumption-EZ society we

tâ čand sâl-e digar bâyad naft-e xâm râ ham az xârej vâred
till some year-EZ other must oil-EZ raw ACC also from abroad enter

kon-im.

SUBJ-do-1PLU.

The reality regarding the patterns of consumption in the society is that we will surely have to import our petroleum from abroad in the next few years.

(*Cheshmandaze Iran*, Dec.-Feb. 2008-2009, Text No. 23)

- (13) America will certainly change under Mr Obama; the world of extraordinary rendition and licensed torture should thankfully soon be gone.

(*The Economist*, 6 Nov 2008, text No. 3)

- (14) In general, a war must pass three tests to be justified. A country must first have exhausted all other means of defending itself. The attack should be proportionate to the objective. And it must stand a reasonable chance of achieving its goal.

(*The Economist*, 30 Dec 2008, text No. 2)

- (15) bâyad hoquq-e taraf-e moqâbel-e dolat ham lahâz
must rights-EZ side-EZ opposite-EZ government also considered

šav-ad,

SUBJ-become-3SG-PASS,

The rights of the opposite side of the government must also be considered.

(*Cheshmandaze Iran*, Dec.-Feb. 2008-2009, Text No. 23)

In Example 11 above *must* expresses the certainty of the writer concerning the involvement of sophisticated operations in planning the Mumbai attacks. It is therefore considered to be a 'certainty marker'. In Example 12 by using *bâyad* (must) the author is predicting with certainty that if the present situation of exporting oil and the high demand of oil in the country continues, Iranians will have to import oil in the not-too-distant future. Therefore, *bâyad* (must) is considered to be a 'certainty marker'. *Should* in Example 13 expresses possibility and is therefore considered to be an 'uncertainty marker', whereas in Examples 14 and 15 the modals *must*, *should* and *bâyad* (must) are used to

express necessities, and are considered ‘expressions of obligation’, one of the sub-groups of ‘engagement markers’ (see Section 4.4).

The modal *can* and *tavânestan* (can/be able to) are sometimes used to express uncertainty as in the following examples:

(16) Many Muslims in such places feel marginalised, pushed to the fringes of society. Attacks there can provoke a backlash, feeding a sense of Muslim beleaguerment for al-Qaeda to exploit.
(*The Economist*, 27 Nov. 2008, text No. 1)

(17) Qânun-e Asâsi zarfiyyat-hâ-ye xâli-e besyâri dâr-ad ke mi-tavân
Constitution capacity-PLU-EZ empty-EZ many has-3SG which DUR-can

ân râ por kard;

it ACC full make-3SG;

The Constitution has many empty capacities that could be filled.

(*Cheshmandaze Iran*, Oct. – Dec. 2008, Text No 21)

In cases where *can* and *tavânestan* (can) are used to express ability, they have not been counted as metadiscourse. For example:

(18) When the president-elect was born, in 1961, many states, and not just in the South, had laws on their books that enforced segregation, banned mixed-race unions like that of his parents and restricted voting rights. This week America can claim more credibly than any other western country to have at last become politically colour-blind.
(*The Economist*, 6 Nov 2008, text No. 3)

In Example 18 *can* seems to mean ability rather than possibility, therefore it is considered to be part of the propositional material.

3.2. Attribution and Authorial Material

In the ‘interactive plane’ a statement can be attributed, that is it can be presented as deriving from someone other than the writer, or it can be averred, that is the writer him/herself speaks (Hunston 2000: 178).

In this connection, Conrad and Biber (2000) refer to the different ways in which speakers and writers convey their personal feelings and assessments in addition to giving propositional content. One of these ways is through the use of an ‘epistemic stance’. These include the indication of a source of information. For example:

Egypt’s nuclear power industry is still in the design phase, but according to Mr. Kandil, nuclear power was the only clean energy alternative for Egypt.
(Conrad and Biber 2000:59)

The editorialist's approach to the source of information plays an important role in interacting with the reader, and is considered to be one of the components of 'interactional metadiscourse'. The source of information is either reliable and an expert opinion or not reliable. When the source of information is not reliable or discredited, the item is considered to be an 'uncertainty marker' (see Section 4.1.3). When the source of information is reliable and its function is to reinforce the authorial voice, the marker is considered to be a 'certainty marker' (see Section 4.2.3). For example,

(19) A report the government commissioned in 2006 found Muslims across the country faring, on average, worse than the Hindu majority in education, jobs and income. (*The Economist*, 27 Nov 2008, text No. 1)

(20) Doktor Hasan Sobhâni dar in râbete mi-guy-ad osul garayi hamân
Doctor Hasan Sobhani in this connection DUR-say-3SG fundamentalism same

qânun garâyi ast.

law abiding be-3SG.

In this connection, Dr Hasan Sobhani says fundamentalism is the same as law abiding ... (*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No 52, Oct. – Dec. 2008, text No. 21)

In the above examples, the statements of 'Muslims across the country faring, on average, worse than the Hindu majority in education, jobs and income' and 'fundamentalism is the same as law abiding' have been attributed to reputable sources. In this way, the responsibility for what is attributed is delegated to the attributee and, according to Hunston (2000: 178), readers are expected to attach a great deal of credence to the validity of the evidence because of the respectability attributed to the sources. These expressions do, therefore, act as 'certainty markers'.

Indicating the source of information in a piece of writing may serve different functions. This technique has therefore been included as a sub-group of 'certainty markers' which is used to qualify the reliability of the information and which has been labelled 'attribution'. Vande Kopple (2002) also considers 'evidentials', which are similar to what has been called 'attribution' in this study. These provide a means of conveying "certain bits of ideational information that stem from our personal beliefs" (ibid: 99), on the basis of an induction, sensory experience, the material coming from someone else, or of deduction.

3.3. Attitudinal Adjectives and Attitudinal Adverbs

Another problematic area in metadiscourse studies regarding the distinction between propositional and non-propositional meaning is that of attitudinal adjectives and adverbs. As discussed in Chapter 3 (Section 5.2.3), Milne (2008: 99) in her description of ‘attitudinal markers’ includes ‘attitudinal adverbs’ and ‘attitudinal adjectives’. The examples she provides are *unfortunately*, *remarkably*, *pathetically*, *it is absurd*, *it is surprising*; however, she does not provide a clear definition of ‘attitudinal adverbs’ or ‘attitudinal adjectives’. It is not clear how she treats these adverbs and adjectives when they are used thematically, or are integrated into the rest of the clause. As another example, Crismore (1989) describes *unwise* in the following example as ‘evaluative’ and therefore as being metadiscourse, whereas it is clearly part of the propositional content.

This custom by the unwise practice of princes and republics, having gone into desuetude, the ruin and weakness of territories has followed ...
(Crismore 1989: 46)

Similarly, Hyland (2005: 149-50) regards attitudinal phrases like the ones underlined in the following examples as ‘attitude markers’, and argues that “by signalling an assumption of shared attitudes, values and reactions to material, writers both express a position and suck readers into a conspiracy of agreement so that it can often be difficult to dispute such judgements”.

The first clue of this emerged when we noticed a quite extraordinary result.

Homicide followed by suicide has been a neglected area in criminological theory and research. The work that exists is marked by a series of methodological limitations, such as small samples and lack of systematic multivariate analysis.
(Hyland 2005: 150)

It seems that the above-mentioned attitudinal phrases tend to be more of a propositional nature.

In order to resolve this controversial issue and maintain a consistent approach in analysing texts, some boundaries were set. As mentioned earlier, evaluation may be realised on both the ‘interactive’ and ‘autonomous’ planes, and ‘metadiscourse’ relates to the evaluation on the ‘interactive plane’. The distinction between propositional and non-propositional content is to do with the syntactic structuring of the message, that is, its degree of ‘separation’ from the

main content. There are occasions when words and phrases like *especially*, *particularly*, *on top of all that* have been used separately from the whole clause. For example:

- (21) If, on top of all that, millions of workers lose purchasing power by below-inflation wage settlements, we will quickly be in a recession.
(*New Statesman*, 26 June 2008, text No. 6)

In these cases, as the phrase is added to the whole clause and qualifies the proposition, it is considered to be non-propositional and, in the above example, as an 'expression of attitude'. In other cases where the phrase is integrated into the whole clause and its function is to qualify people, things or events in the real world rather than within the proposition, it is considered propositional and is not counted as a 'metadiscourse marker'. In other words, only 'interactive' evaluation is included in metadiscourse. In the following examples *particularly* and *especially* are integrated into the rest of the clause.

- (22) Falling demand in America and Europe hurts exports, particularly in Asia and Mexico. (*The Economist*, 23 Oct. 2008, text No. 5)
- (23) For optimists like me, the financial crash has made for an especially depressing few weeks. (*Prospect*, Dec. 2008, text No. 11)

These expressions are used as intensifiers in qualifying things in the world; they are therefore considered to be propositional.

The same criteria are applied to the Persian texts. There were no cases in the analysed texts where words and phrases like *be xosus* (especially) were used non-propositionally; but there were cases where these phrases were integrated into the text. For example:

- (24) va kâršenâs-ân-e in sâzmân be xosus dar šahrestân-hâ az
and expert-PLU-EZ this organisation especially in town-PLU from
čegunegi-e ejrâ-ye in qânun bixabar-and."
how-EZ execution-EZ this law not aware-be-3PLU."
And the experts of this organisation, especially in towns, are not aware of the
circumstances of its execution.
(*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, Dec. - Feb. 2008-2009, text No. 23)

In this example *be xosus* (especially) is integrated into the rest of the clause, and is used as an intensifier. Therefore, it is considered to be 'propositional' and not a 'metadiscourse marker'.

Similarly, some words and expressions stand separately from the main clause and seem not to be integrated with the rest of the clause. These phrases and expressions, which are usually ‘attitudinal’, are considered to be non-propositional. For example:

(25) Sadly, Richard Lugar has ruled himself out as secretary of state; but Chuck Hagel, senator for Nebraska, is another possibility for a defence or foreign-policy job. (*The Economist*, 6 Nov. 2008, text No.3)

(26) biparde be-guy-am tabi'at-e mâ zende bud va jân dâšt
honest SUBJ-say-1SG nature-EZ we alive be-PAST-3SG and life have-PAST-3SG

amâ rafte rafte mi-rav-ad tâ be tabi'at-e bijân tabdil šav-ad.
 but little by little DUR-go-3SG till to nature-EZ lifeless change SUBJ-become-3SG.
 Frankly, our nature was alive but little by little it becomes dead.
 (*Ettellat Weekly*, No. 3328, text No. 25)

In the above examples, *sadly* and *biparde be-guy-am* (frankly) are in thematic positions and seem to express the attitude of the author towards the rest of the argument; therefore, they are considered to be non-propositional and, in the above cases, ‘attitudinal markers’.

For the same reason all phrases which have the following impersonal structure: *It is interesting that ...*, *it is easy to judge from afar that ...*, *jâleb ast ke* (it is interesting that), are considered to be non-propositional and therefore ‘attitudinal’. For example:

(27) It is true that Israel has put up with the rockets from Gaza for a long time. But it may have been able to stop the rockets another way. For it is not quite true that Israel’s only demand in respect of Gaza has been for quiet along the border. (*The Economist*, 30 Dec 2008, Text No. 2)

(28) jâleb _____ ast dar barxi az brušur-hâ tozih-ât be10 zabân-e
interesting be-3SG in some of booklet-PLU explanation-PLU to 10 language-EZ

donyâ ham âvard-e šode amâ az zabân-e Farsi xabar-i
 world also bring-PART become-PART but from language-EZ Farsi news-a

n-ist

not -be-3SG

It is interesting that some booklets are in 10 languages of the world but not Farsi.
 (*Gozaresh*, Feb - Mar 2008, text No. 28)

In all these examples the impersonal clauses underlined are used to provide an assessment of the content expressed in the main clause.

Adverbs of frequency such as *sometimes*, *hardly*, and *occasionally* have propositional meaning and are not usually considered to be ‘metadiscourse markers’ in this study, but there are occasions in analysing ‘attitudinal markers’ where these adverbs are used in response to the questions posed by the author. For example:

- (29) Can Israel have forgotten the lesson of Lebanon so soon? Hardly.
(*The Economist*, 30 Dec. 2008, text No. 2)

In these cases they are considered to be non-propositional and are, therefore, ‘expressions of attitude’. This was not observed to be the case in any of the analysed Persian texts.

As the focus of this study is on the non-propositional content of the message, those markers that add to the intensity of the propositional meaning and sharpen the attitude of the writer, e.g. *extremely*, *exactly*, and *ecstatic*, are not counted as ‘certainty markers’ since they add to the content of the text. Example:

- (30) We are not of that view: it is nonsense to argue, as some teachers do, that children will end up as nervous wrecks if subjected to testing — Ed Balls appeared to believe this himself when he suggested recently that Sats should somehow be disguised so that 11-year-olds were unaware they were being tested. That said, Sats as they stand are highly unsatisfactory.
(*The Spectator*, 23 July 2008, text No. 20)

In the above example ‘highly’ adds to the intensity of the propositional meaning and is therefore not considered to be a metadiscourse marker.

3.4. Personal Pronouns

Crismore et al. (1993) in their model of metadiscourse include a category called ‘commentary’, where expressions are used to build a relationship with readers (see Chapter 3, Section 5.2.2), e.g. *you may not agree that*. However, they do not differentiate between cases where pronouns have different addressees, e.g. *you*; and those which involve the reader and the writer together, e.g. *we*.

Hyland (2005) uses the term ‘engagement markers’ to refer to the devices writers use to address their readers. The purpose of these is either to focus the readers’ attention or to include them as participants in the discourse. In Hyland’s terms, ‘engagement markers’ can be of two kinds:

1. Personal pronouns such as *you* used to address readers directly or the inclusive *we* used to meet readers' expectations of inclusion and disciplinary solidarity;
2. Questions, imperatives (e.g. *see, note, consider*), obligation modals (e.g. *should, must, have to*) when addressed to readers, or references to shared knowledge in order to position the audience, pull readers into the discourse at critical points by predicting possible objections, and guiding them to particular interpretations.

Personal pronouns and 'engagement markers' have a propositional nature, but they are used only on occasions where the author feels it necessary to persuade the reader to accept his/her ideas. The interpersonal function of these makers makes them significant in metadiscourse studies.

In this study a differentiation has been made between pronouns which depends on their function and their addressee(s). Therefore, when first person pronouns are used to refer to the writer or to the organisation he/she works for, or when they include the reader in the discussion, they are grouped as 'engagement markers'. For example,

- (31) There was no sense whatsoever of collective contrition or the abject failure of those that govern us, at national and local level, to perform their most fundamental duty: the protection of the most vulnerable. (*The Spectator*, 19 Nov. 2008, text No. 19)

In the above examples, *us* is used to engage the readers in the discussion and is therefore grouped under 'engagement markers'. But when first person pronouns are followed by verbs such as *feel, think*, the whole clause is considered 'attitudinal' since it expresses the attitude of the writer towards a state of affairs (see examples in Section 4.4).

The pronoun 'we' can be used either inclusively or exclusively. In cases where it is used inclusively, it is included in the category of 'inclusive expressions' under 'engagement markers', as in the above example. In cases where it is used exclusively, referring to the writer or to the organisation the writer works for, it is included in the category of 'personalization' (see Section 4.4.2). Apart from these two forms of inclusive and exclusive *we*, there are also some cases of the use of *we* where the pronoun is used more indirectly to refer to a third party, usually the government. It has, for example, been used to blame the government indirectly for its wrong policies. Overall, there were 20 cases of

we used in this way in the Persian corpus and only 1 case in the English corpus. The following are some examples:

(32) It is bizarre that we are taxing families on £10,000 a year, then giving some of the money back — minus a hefty slice for the bureaucratic costs. Low-income workers should be taken out of the tax system altogether and given a powerful message: if you help yourself, you can keep every penny you earn up to £10,000. (*The Spectator*, 10 Dec. 2008, text No. 16)

(33) mâ vaqti pul na-dâr-im, vâjeb n-ist qarz be-dah-im.
we when money not-have-1PLU, necessary not-be-3SG lend SUBJ-give-1PLU.

vaqti bânk-ha-ye mâ bâ eltemâs az mardom pul mi-gir-and va 16
when bank-PLU-EZ we with imploration from people money DUR-get-3PLU and 16
dar sad ham be pul-e sepordegozâri sud mi-dah-and, na-bâyad
per cent also to money-EZ deposited profit SUBJ-give-3PLU, not-must

be ânhâ taklif kon-im ke 12 dar sad vâm be-dah-and.
to them suggestion SUBJ-do-1PLU that 12 per cent loan SUBJ-give-3PLU.

When we don't have money, it is not necessary for us to lend money. When our banks get money from people imploringly and give 16 per cent profit to the deposited money, we must not make them give 12 per cent loans.

(*Ettela'at-e Weekly*, No. 3305, 28 Nov. 2007, Text No. 24)

In both the above examples the writers use *we* to refer to the government indirectly, criticising its tax policies (Example 32), and its banking policies (Example 33). The relevance of the use of this particular kind of *we* to the role of the press in Iranian and British political settings will be presented in the discussion of the findings in Chapter 5.

Further reference to the propositional/non-propositional distinction is made in the extended presentation of the IM categories in the section below, as is required. Considering a continuum in which one end is propositional meaning and the other end is non-propositional meaning, the parameters discussed in this study are summed up in Figure 4.1 at the end of this chapter.

PART FOUR: INTERACTIONAL METADISOURSE IN EDITORIALS

In this section the categorization of 'interactional metadiscourse' markers which has been used in this study to analyse editorials in English and Persian will be discussed with examples.

4.1. Uncertainty Markers

'Uncertainty markers' refer to those expressions that convey the uncertainty of the writer towards the content. Milne (2003) uses a very detailed grammatical categorization to distinguish metadiscourse markers. The focus of this study is on the functional analysis rather than on the grammatical analysis of metadiscourse markers. Therefore, a more general sub-category is proposed to cover all those instances that refer to the probability of an incidence. In this study 'uncertainty markers' are divided into the three following sub-groups: 'expressions of uncertainty', 'conditional clauses', and 'impersonal expressions and reported speech'. Each of these sub-groups is discussed below. (The role of these markers in relation to the press and cultural expectations will be discussed in Chapter 5.)

4.1.1. Expressions of Uncertainty

Epistemic modality plays an important role in signalling uncertainty. It can be expressed in different ways. Using certain modal verbs can be one way of expressing uncertainty when they are used to refer to possibility and tentativeness, e.g. *may, might, can, could* (see Example 3 above). Epistemic verbs may also indicate possibility and tentativeness on the part of the author, e.g. *seem, appear* (see Example 2 above). The use of probability adverbs and adjectives (e.g. *probably, perhaps, maybe, rather*) are yet other ways of expressing uncertainty. For example,

- (34) Like Hizbullah, it will probably prefer to keep on firing no matter how hard it is hit, daring Israel to send its ground forces into a messy street fight in Gaza's congested cities and refugee camps.
(*The Economist*, 30 Dec 2008, text No. 2)

In the above example *probably* indicates uncertainty.

Uncertainty can also be expressed through the use of epistemic expressions, e.g. *it is likely, the likelihood is that*, as in the following example:

- (35) Yet the government has decided to appease the green lobby by negating the effect of the VAT cut with an increase in excise duty. The likelihood is that the PBR measures will do little in themselves to bring consumers out of hibernation.
(*The Spectator*, 26 Nov. 2008, text No. 17)

Another way of expressing uncertainty is through the use of approximators (e.g. *something around, about*). For example:

- (36) There are almost twice as many self-declared conservatives as liberals in the US, but that does not mean America is fated to remain forever a "right nation." (*Prospect*, Dec. 2008 No. 153, text No. 11)

In this example *almost* has been used to reflect the uncertainty of the writer about the number of conservatives in the US.

Uncertainty in Persian is expressed in different ways. It can be expressed through the use of adverbs such as *ehtemâlan* (probably), as in the following example:

- (37) va se câhârom-e baqye-ye in mablagh ehtemâlan qarâr
and three fourths-EZ remaining-EZ this amount probably appointment

ast az mahal-e afzâyesh-e bahâ-ye âb va barq va gâz
be-3SG from place-EZ increasing-EZ price-EZ water and electricity and gas

ta'min gard-ad
provided SUBJ-become-3SG
Probably the remaining three fourth of this amount is to be provided by increasing
the prices of water, electricity and gas.
(*Ettela'at Weekly*, No.3364, text No. 27)

Uncertainty in Persian can also be expressed through the use of auxiliary modals like *šâyad* (may). For example:

- (38) šâyad dar râstâ-ye hamin zarurat-e mobram bud ke qânun-e
possibly in along-EZ this necessity-EZ pressing be-3SG-PAST that law-EZ

mâliat bar arzeš-e afzude ke dar majales va kâbine-hâ mo'atal
tax to value added that in parliament and cabinet-PLU idle

mând-e bud, dar dovom-e xordâd-e 1387 be tasvib-e
remain-PART, be-3SG-PAST, in second-EZ Khordad-EZ 1387 to approvement-EZ

nahâyi-e šurâ-ye negahbân resid va be dolat eblâgh
final-EZ council-EZ guardian reach-3SG-PAST and to government disclosed

šod
become-3SG-PAST
Possibly it was because of this pressing necessity that the law of value added
tax, which had been delayed in parliament and cabinet, was finally approved on
the second of Khordad 1387 [22 May 2008] by the Council of Guardians and was
disclosed to the government.
(*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No. 53, Dec.-Feb. 2008-2009, text No. 23)

In the above example *šâyad* (may) indicates uncertainty.

Uncertainty in Persian can also be expressed through the use of verbal modals:

(39) va nazdik be hezâr dorugh az hokâm-e čâhârgâne-ye Âmrikâ
and near to thousand lie from governors-EZ four-EZ America

kašf kard-e-and va ehtemâl dâd-e mi-šav-ad in-hâ be
discovery do-PART-3PLU and possibility give-PART DUR-give-3SG this-PLU to

xâter-e in dorugh-hâ mohâkeme šav-and,
sake-EZ this lie-PLU prosecute SUBJ-become-3PLU,
Nearly a thousand lies told by the four American governors have been
discovered for which they will possibly be executed
(*Cheshmandaze Iran*, No 52, Oct. – Dec. 2008, text No. 21)

In these examples uncertainty is expressed through the verbal modals of *ehtemâl dâd-e mi-šav-ad* (it is possible).

The use of the modal verb *tavânestan* is another way of expressing uncertainty in Persian (see Example 7 above).

4.1.2. Conditional Clauses

According to Milne (2008: 107-108), conditional forms are prototypical of media discourse since they enable the user to express an opinion or state a fact without a full commitment to it, allowing some room for discussion. Considering the use of some conditionals as ‘uncertainty markers’, Hyland (1996: 448) maintains that deference to the reader may also be achieved by offering up a given claim as being one possibility among many using hypothetical conditionals. In his 1994 article he mentions that “IF-clauses, question forms, passivisation, impersonal phrases, and time-reference (e.g. Perkins 1983) can express the writer’s lack of confidence” (p.240).

As discussed in Section 2.2.2, where necessary, the structural representation of markers is considered in the analysis. In this regard, conditional clauses may indicate a hypothetical situation or, as Martin and Rose (2003: 56) indicate, ‘counterexpectancy’. In this case they are expressing the uncertainty of the author towards the proposition. But not all conditional clauses have been considered to be ‘metadiscourse markers’. Only those clauses that convey hypothetical situations have been counted as ‘metadiscourse markers’ and therefore as markers of uncertainty. For example:

- (40) Parents will be legally liable for children who fail to complete community orders (currently about a third of the total) and will face fines, prison and even eviction if they fail to comply. (*New Statesman*, 17 July 2008, text No. 8)

In this example the writer using the conditional clause suggests that there is the possibility that parents who lose control of their children will be punished. Therefore, the conditional clause is counted as an uncertainty marker. However, in the following example, the conditional clause is not counted as a marker because it is part of the direct quotation of Barack Obama and it does not reflect the author's perspective with regard to the issue.

- (41) As Barack Obama said on a visit to one Israeli town in July, "If somebody was sending rockets into my house where my two daughters sleep at night, I'm going to do everything in my power to stop that. And I would expect Israelis to do the same thing." (*The Economist*, 30Dec. 2008, text No. 2)

Similarly, in Persian conditional clauses can be used to express the writer's lack of confidence. For example:

- (42) be nazar mi-res-ad hatâ agar nimi az in darâmad-e xodâdâdi sarf-e
to eye DUR-COME-3SG even if half from this income-EZ god-given used-EZ

omur-e omrâni šav-ad, bâz ham har fard-e irâni mi-tavan-ad
tasks-EZ construction be-3SG, again also every individual-EZ Iranian DUR-CAN-3SG

mâhâne 660 hezâr Tumân daryâfti-e mâhâne bedune kâr kardan
monthly 660 thousand Tuman income-EZ monthly without work doing

dâšt-e bâš-ad
have-PART become-3SG

It seems that even if half of this natural income was spent on reconstruction, every Iranian individual could still receive 660 thousand Tomans monthly without working (*Gozaresh*, No. 192, Oct. – Nov. 2007)

The above example can be considered as an instance of a conditional clause expressing uncertainty. The writer suggests that the natural income (oil) is unlikely to be spent on reconstruction and even more unlikely to be spent on Iranian individuals.

The following is an example of a conditional in Persian where the clause conveys a fact rather than a hypothetical situation:

- (43) gerâni-e naft agar âmel-e refâh-e eqtesâdi-ye mellat va
expensiveness-EZ oil if cause-EZ comfort-EZ economical-EZ nation and

harbe-ye pišbord-e ahdâf-e syâsi-ye kešvar va daryâft-e tajhiz-ât
tool-EZ developing-EZ aims-EZ political-EZ country and receiving-EZ equipment-PLU

va dâneš-e fanni-ye ruz na-šav-ad va tanhâ âyedi gerâni-e
and knowledge technical day not-become-3SG and only profit expensiveness

mâyahtaj-e mardom-e dast be dahan bâš-ad, çe sud?
what needed-EZ people-EZ hand to mouth become-3SG, what benefit?
What is the benefit of a high oil price, when (if) it only leads to soaring prices of goods and is not a means of economical comfort, the development of the political goals of the country and gaining equipment and modern technical knowledge?
(Gozaresh, No. 196, March-April 2008, Text No. 31)

In the above example, the fact that the expensive price of oil does not lead to the improvement in the welfare of people and the developing of political goals and technical knowledge, is expressed as being evident; therefore, the clause cannot be considered as being an 'uncertainty marker'.

4.1.3. Impersonal Expressions and Reported Speech

Hyland (1994) and Markkanen and Schröder (1997) consider certain forms of passive (with verbs of reporting) and impersonal expressions as representations of 'hedges' in scientific writing. In this study reporting passives and impersonal statements of this kind are considered as markers of uncertainty because by using these modes of expression in the discussion of ideas the writers' intent is to distance themselves from accepting the responsibility for any given claim by ignoring its source of information in order to be 'on the safe side'.

Authors use passives and impersonals when they are not sure of the actual source of a statement or when they want to be on the safe side and avoid mentioning the source. In either case they may carry uncertainty value and can be included in the category of 'uncertainty markers' in these cases. The following are some examples, both English and Persian.

(44) Introducing Manmohan Singh, India's prime minister, to Laura Bush a few years ago, George Bush reportedly noted that India was a country of 150m Muslims and not a single al-Qaeda member. (*The Economist*, 27 Nov. 2008, text No. 1)

(45) That pogrom followed allegations that a Muslim mob had been responsible for the deaths of Hindu activists. (*The Economist*, 27 Nov. 2008, text No. 1)

(46) dar afvâh šenid-e mi-šav-ad ke dolat qasd dâr-ad
in mouths hear-PART DUR-become-3SG that government intention have-3SG

barâye re'âyat-e qanâ'at va sarfejuyi emsâl hodud-e šeš
for observing-EZ contentment and economy this year about-EZ six

darsad bar hoquq-e kârmand-ân va kârgar-ân be-yafzây-ad.
percent in income-EZ employee-PLU and labourer-PLU SUBJ- increase-3SG.
It is said that the government intends to increase the income of employees and
labourers up to six percent. (*Ettela'at weekly*, No. 3305, text No. 24)

In the above examples *reportedly*, *That pogrom followed allegations that* and *dar afvâh šenid-e mi-šav-ad* (it is said) are reporting devices and are considered 'uncertainty markers'.

It should be clarified that not all passive expressions have been considered as being 'uncertainty markers' in this study. The focus has been on the verbs of saying and reporting, and the function of the markers in these texts. Only those reporting passive and impersonal markers that convey indirectness and uncertainty have been counted as metadiscourse markers.

4.2. Certainty Markers

'Certainty markers' have been referred to as 'boosters' (Hyland 2005) and 'emphatics' (Crismore and Farnsworth 1989, Vande Kopple 2002). Martin and White (2005: 98) also discuss 'proclaim' as a sub-category of engagement. 'Proclaim' represents the proposition as "highly warrantable (compelling, valid, plausible, well-founded, generally agreed, reliable, etc.), the textual voice setting itself against, suppressing or ruling out alternative positions". Whatever the term used, they all refer to the total commitment to the truth-value of the text. In the present study such features of metadiscourse will be referred to as 'certainty markers', e.g. *clearly, obviously, of course, undoubtedly*. The focus will be on those non-propositional markers that signal the high probability of a statement.

In the present study 'certainty markers' are divided into three sub-categories: 'expressions of certainty', 'repetition' and 'attribution'. Each of these sub-groups is discussed and exemplified below. (The impact of the political situations in which these editorials have been written will be discussed in Chapter 5.)

4.2.1. Expressions of Certainty

As in the case of 'uncertainty markers' where epistemic modality plays an important role in conveying the writer's lack of confidence, in the case of 'certainty markers' the writer's certainty can also be expressed through the use of epistemic modality. Certainty can be expressed through the use of modals as

in the following example where *must is* used to indicate the high probability of Miliband's image in the media.

- (47) Miliband does not even appear interested in the job at this point—if he was, he would have filled our television screens during the Georgia crisis. To the extent that he is setting out his stall, it must be for a post-election defeat leadership contest. (*Prospect*, No. 151, Oct. 2008, text No. 13)

Adverbs may also be used to indicate certainty, e.g. *certainly*, *surely*. Consider the following example:

- (48) America will certainly change under Mr Obama; the world of extraordinary rendition and licensed torture should thankfully soon be gone. (*The Economist*, 6 Nov 2008, text No. 3)

Whole phrases or sentences can also be an indication of a high degree of certainty, e.g. the use of *we can be sure* and *no one should doubt* in the examples below.

- (49) and we can be sure that a good many of these wicked "holders to ransom" need tax credits to bring their wages up to a level deemed sufficient to live on (*New Statesman*, 26 June 2008, text No.6)

In Persian, certainty can be expressed through the use of adverbs such as *motma'enan* (certainly) and *hatman* (definitely). For example:

- (50) mosalaman dastâvard-e har kešvari – har čand xub – bedun-e bumi
certainly achievement-EZ every country-a – however well– without-EZ local
šodan dar kešvar qâbel-e ejrâ na-xâh-ad bud ...
becoming in country ability-EZ execution not-will-3SG be ...
Certainly, the achievements of every country, however good, will not be practical without localisation in the country ...
(*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No. 53, Dec.-Feb. 2008-2009, text No. 23)

The auxiliary verb of *bâyad* (must) can also be used as a marker of certainty, as in the following example:

- (51) vâqe'iyat in ast ke bâ tavajoh be olgu-ye masraf-e jâme'e mâ
reality this be-3SG that with regard to pattern-EZ consumption-EZ society we
tâ čand sâl-e digar bâyad naft-e xâm râ ham az xârej vâred kon-im.
till some year-EZ other must oil-EZ raw ACC also from abroad enter SUBJ-do-1PLU.
The reality is considering the level of consumption in the society, we will certainly import our petroleum from abroad in the next few years.
(*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No. 53, Dec.-Feb. 2008-2009, text No. 23)

By using *bâyad* (must) in the above example the author predicts the certainty that if the present situation of exporting oil and the high demand for oil in the country continues, Iranians will have to import oil in the not-too-distant future. Therefore, *bâyad* (must) is considered here to be a ‘certainty marker’.

4.2.2. Repetition

Repetition in this study refers to the synonymous repetition of words and phrases in order to stress the truth of a propositional content. The category of ‘repetition’ has not been mentioned in previous studies, probably because it is not a common phenomenon in English. In the English articles examined in this study there were no cases of ‘repetition’ in the sense mentioned above. However, it is frequently used in Persian when authors attempt to emphasise a point by providing various synonyms. Since it can be a way of indicating certainty, it has been included as a metadiscourse marker. The following are some examples of repetition in Persian:

- (52) ke dolat qasd dâr-ad barâ-ye ra’âyat-e qanâ’at va sarfejuyi
that government intention have-3SG for-EZ observe-EZ contentment and economy

emsâl hodud-e şeš darsad bar hoquq-e kârgar-ân va kârmand-ân
this year about-EZ six percent to salary-EZ labourer-PLU and employee-PLU

be-yafzây-ad.

SUBJ-increase-3SG.

It is said that in order to economise and save, the government intends to increase the salary of labourers and employees about six percent.

(*Ettela’at Weekly*, No. 3305, text No. 24)

- (53) az taraf-i Âmrikâ va Englis pasaz sâxt-e Isrâel tâ konun mosamam
from side-a America and England after making-EZ Israel to now decisive

bud-and, bâ hemâyat va taqviat-e ân va hozur-e
be-PAST-3PLU with supporting and strengthening-EZ it and presence-EZ

âzâr dahande-aš, mantaqe râ dar extiâr dâšt-e baš-and
troublesome-its, area ACC in control have-PART be-3PLU

On the other hand, after creating Israel, America and England had decided to keep the area in control by supporting and strengthening it and its troublesome presence (Gozaresh No. 205, Jan – Feb 2009, Text No. 32)

In the above examples ‘contentment and economy’ and ‘supporting and strengthening’ have been used synonymously to emphasise the present situation. This kind of repetition occurs quite frequently in Persian. In some cases these synonyms have been used so often in certain combinations that

they appear to have lost their effectiveness, e.g. *kâr va kasb* (work and trade), *taghyir va tahavol* (transformation and transformation). In these cases they have not been considered to be 'metadiscourse markers'. They have only been counted when a new combination of words and phrases has been used.

It may also be argued that 'repetition' is a means of engaging readers in discussion since the writer uses synonymous expressions to draw the attention of the audience to a particular point. In this sense, 'repetition' can be grouped in the category of 'engagement markers'. This will affect calculations and findings and will be discussed in the next chapter.

4.2.3. Attribution

Attribution is a rhetorical strategy used to gain credibility (Crismore 1989: 31). Vande Kopple (1985) and Crismore and Farnsworth (1989) include attribution in their category of 'modality markers' if used to guide readers to judge or respect the truth value of propositional content as the author would wish. Crismore and Farnsworth (1989: 98) maintain that modality markers may include emphatics, hedges, and attributors and argue that attributors permit authors to encourage their readers to emphasise the truth value of propositional material.

In this study, certainty and uncertainty markers are separated and 'attributors' are classed as a sub-category of 'certainty markers' when they confirm the truth of information by virtue of credibility of the source of information. For example:

(54) As Liz Brocklehurst, a former exam marker, reveals in this issue (see page 21), the exam system has been in crisis since being politicised in David Blunkett's days as education secretary. (*The Spectator*, July 2008, text No. 20)

In attributing the revelation of the critical situation of SATS to Liz Brocklehurst, the writer increases the level of confidence of the truth value of the statement. Or in the following example,

(55) As our political editor, Martin Bright, argues on page 10, the release of the Williams draft leaves no room for doubt that the Blair government set out to deceive us. (*New Statesman*, 21 February 2008)

The writer refers to Martin Bright as the source of information and reinforces the validity of his opinion.

The following is an example in Persian:

- (56) be gofte-ye doktor Mosadeq yeki az dastâvard-ha-ye ehyâ-ye
to said--EZ doctor Mosadeq one from achievement-PLU-EZ revival-EZ

qânun-e asâsi enqelâb-e mašrutiyyat bud.

constitution revolution-EZ mashrutiyyat be-PAST-3SG.

According to Dr Mosadeq, one of the achievements of the Constitution was Constitutional Revolution. (*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No. 42, 1385, text No. 22)

In the above example, *be gofte-ye doktor Mosadeq* (according to Doctor Mosadeq) is an example of attribution used to emphasise the certainty of the information.

It should be noted that there are both direct and indirect quotations in the corpus analysed. In the consideration that in indirect speech the writer can express his/her own opinion by choosing report verbs or other terminological devices, in this study all indirect quotations are analysed as part of the whole text. For example:

- (57) But Barack Obama's victory is some kind of silver lining—and, as Michael Lind's essay points out, it might not have happened without the crash.
(*Spectator*, 19 Nov. 2008, Text No. 19)

In this example, the writer reflects Michael Lind's viewpoint; therefore, 'as Michael Lind points out' is considered to be 'attribution' and reinforcing certainty, and the whole clause is analysed in terms of containing other discourse markers. Following is an example of a direct quotation:

- (58) Mr Balls's response is worth quoting at length: 'A letter came from a lawyer for a former employee of Haringey, which went to the Department of Health. It was passed to the former Department for Education and Skills. It was not seen by Ministers. It was handled in the normal way through official channels. At that time, a reply was written to the lawyer to say that Ministers could not be involved in a particular employment case and that the right way to take the matter forward was through the social care inspectorate. That was done by the lawyer, and that process was followed up by a meeting in which the inspectorate confirmed that it was content that things had been done properly by Haringey in that case. On the wider issue of Haringey social services, there was a review in 2006, and a further review by Ofsted in 2007, which gave a good report.' (*The Spectator*, 19 Nov. 2008, text No. 19)

In the above example the reference to Mr Ball is considered to be 'attribution' and reinforcing certainty; however, the quotation is not analysed since it is the exact words of Mr Balls in response to the question posed concerning a whistleblower who revealed the failures of Haringey's Children Service's Department. In other words, it is not reinforcing the authorial view. The same strategy has been applied in analysing the Persian texts. The only exception is

Cheshmandaze Iran, Text No. 23. Throughout this article there are very long direct quotations from other authorities. It seems as though the author has used these rather long quotations to support his own argument. As the quotations are integrated into the rest of the text and support the view-point of the author, they have been analysed in the same way as the rest of the text.

4.3. Attitudinal Markers

Attitude refers to the way speakers or writers comment on propositional content or entities in the real world. Hunston and Thompson (2000) use the term 'evaluation', and Martin and Rose (2003) use the term 'appraisal' when referring to a range of interpersonal discourse markers, one of which is attitude. As discussed in Chapter 3, Hunston and Thompson, and Martin and Rose analyse texts based on both propositional and non-propositional attitudinal features. The important factor to consider is that in this study dealing with metadiscourse markers, and specifically regarding 'attitudinal markers', the focus will only be on non-propositional items. It has already been discussed in Section 3.3 how some parameters were set in order to differentiate between propositional and non-propositional content. The different ways in which writers express their feelings through the use of content words will therefore be ignored, and 'attitude' will be seen in terms of those non-propositional expressions that writers use to express their feelings about the propositional content.

'Attitudinal markers' are considered to be important in metadiscourse studies because, by means of 'attitudinal markers', authors not only express their own attitude towards a proposition, but also "invite others to endorse and to share with them the feelings, tastes or normative assessments they are announcing. Thus declarations of attitude are dialogically directed towards aligning the addressee into a community of shared value and belief."(Martin and White 2005: 95)

Following Hunston and Thompson's (2000: 21) definition of attitude as 'markers of value', 'attitudinal markers' in this study are studied in the following three sub-groups: 'expressions of obligation', 'expressions of attitude' and 'expressions of negation expressing counter-expectancy'. Each of these sub-categories will be discussed below.

4.3.1. Expressions of Obligation

Milne (2008) includes 'deontic verbs' in her sub-category of 'attitude markers'. However, it seems that she does not clarify the target of the 'deontic verbs'. In this study a distinction has been made between the various targets of the 'expressions of obligation'. When the addressee of the obligation marker is the reader, the marker has been considered to be an 'engagement marker' (this will be discussed in Section 4.4.3). When the addressee is a third party, it is considered to be an 'attitudinal marker'. This latter sub-group comprises those statements of obligation that address third parties and are conveyed through the use of deontic expressions, e.g. *must*, *have to*, *it is advised that*. These expressions demonstrate how the author feels about the necessity of an action to be taken.

(59) Tony Blair continued a Tory tradition of disdain for public servants such as teachers, social workers and probation officers. Brown must break with it.
(*New Statesman*, 26 June 2008, text No. 6)

(60) Sats should be replaced with basic literacy and numeracy exams which can be taken at any age, as soon as pupils are ready, whether it be at age eight or 18.
(*The Spectator*, 23 July 2008, text No.20)

In the above examples *must* and *should* have been used by the writer to point out an obligation and propose a suggestion for action in the given circumstances, and are considered, therefore, as 'expressions of obligation'.

Obligation in Persian can be expressed through the use of deontic verbs such as *bâyad* (must), *lâzem ast* (it is necessary). Some examples follow:

(61) harke mi-ây-ad va âmâde-ye xedmatgozâri mi-šav-ad, bâyad
whoever DUR-COME-3SG and ready-EZ serving DUR-becom-3SG, must

barâ-ye nejât-e jâme'e bi-ây-ad
for-EZ saving-EZ society SUBJ-COME.3SG
Whoever comes, becomes president and is ready to serve, must save the society
(*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No 52, Oct. – Dec. 2008, text No. 21)

(62) lâzame-ye tose'e-ye jâme'e in ast ke eqtedâr va extiyâr
necessity-EZ developing-EZ society this be-3SG that dominion and authority

ham vojud dâšt-e bâš-ad,
also existence have-PART have-3SG,
In order to develop the society, it is necessary to have power and authority,
(*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No 52, Oct. – Dec. 2008, text No. 21)

In the above examples *bâyad* (must) and *lâzem ast* (it is necessary) have been used to indicate a sense of obligation, together with the writer's suggestion in that particular situation, and are therefore considered to be 'expressions of obligation'.

4.3.2. Expressions of Attitude

Attitude can be expressed using attitudinal adverbs such as *fortunately*, *remarkably*, *happily* as in the following example:

- (63) Abrams's more optimistic picture is, happily, closer to the daily experience of most parents and children. (New Statesman, 03 April 2008, text No. 10)

It should be noticed that *happily* in the above example is not integrated into the rest of the clause, therefore it is considered non-propositional (see section 3.3 above).

Attitude can also be expressed using attitudinal phrases such as *it is interesting*, *even more surprising*, as in the example below:

- (64) It is only common sense that claimants of unemployment benefits should have to prove that they are looking for work, and should have their payments suspended if they do not meet this minimal requirement. (*The Spectator*, 10 Dec. 2008, text No. 16)

In the above example *it is only common sense that* indicates the writer's attitude towards the system of the payment of unemployment benefits.

In Persian, attitude can be expressed through the use of attitudinal adverbs or attitudinal phrases as in the following examples:

- (65) mota'asefâne rustâ-hâ-ye mâ, ke mi-tavân-ad behtarin mahal-e rustâ
unfortunately village-PLU-EZ we, that DUR-could-3SG best place-EZ village

gardi va tabi'at gardi bâš-ad har ruz bištar xâli az sakane
touring and nature touring be-3SG every day more empty from residence

mi-šav-ad.

DUR-become-3SG.

Unfortunately, our villages which could be the best place for touring and strolling in nature are becoming more deserted than ever.

(*Gozaresh*, No. 195, Feb - Mar 2008, text No. 28)

- (66) goftani ast hamaknun sâliâne yek bâzâr-e 1000 miliyârd dolâri-e
sayable be-3SG now annually one market-EZ 1000 milliard dollar-EZ

foruš-e orâniom vojud dâr-ad ke bar sar-e tasâhob va yâ
sale-EZ uranium existence have-3SG that on head-EZ possession and or

hefz-e ân reqâbat-hâ-ye ziâdi vojud dâr-ad.
 keeping it competition-PLU-EZ many existence have-3SG.
It is worth saying that at present there is a one billion dollar market for the sale of uranium for which there is a lot of competition to win or to keep.
 (*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No. 49, April-June 2008, text No. 22)

In the above examples attitude has been expressed thematically using the attitudinal adverb *mota'asefâne* (unfortunately) and the attitudinal phrase *goftani ast* (it is worth saying). (See Section 3.3 for the propositional and non-propositional indications of attitude.)

4.3.3. Negation Expressing Counter-Expectancy

Negation has not been considered a metadiscourse marker in previous studies. However, it can be considered a feature of persuasive writing where contesting positions need to be addressed and set aside (Martin and Rose 2003). By using negation, the author implicitly announces that there are alternative positive positions which need to be rejected. The following is an example of negation expressing counter-expectancy in English.

(67) More than 2,000 died in a pogrom in the state of Gujarat in 2002, for which the perpetrators have never been brought to justice.
 (*The Economist*, 27 Nov. 2008, Text No. 1)

In the above example, *the perpetrators have never been brought to justice* indicate the writer's concern about the issue and his/her expectation from the authorities which has not been fulfilled.

The following is a Persian example:

(68) bâbat-e mosâdere-ye baxš-i az tabi'at va xarâb kardan-e manzargâh-e
 for-EZ occupation-EZ part-a of nature and destruction doing-EZ scenery-EZ

milyun-ha mosâfer va gardešgar, hič mâliât-i ne-mi-pardâz-and va hič
 million-PLU traveller and tourist, no tax-a not-DUR-pay-3PLU and no

pâsox-i ne-mi-dah-and,
response-a not-DUR-give-3PLU,

They do not pay any tax for occupying a part of nature and destroying the scenery of millions of travellers and tourists, and they do not feel responsible.
 (*Ettela'at Weekly*, No. 3328, text No. 25)

In the above example, using negation, the writer conveys the belief that better regulations should be put in place concerning people who decide to destroy

nature by excessive building in the northern part of Iran. He expresses the opinion that the current situation seems counter to reasonable expectations.

Adversative meaning can also be expressed using markers such as *although, but, not only ... but also*. As these markers are textual devices they have not been counted as 'interactional metadiscourse' markers and therefore have not been included in this analysis. For example:

(69) Mr Obama will not take office until January 20th, but he can use the next ten weeks well.
(*The Economist*, 6 Nov. 2008, text No.3)

(70) dar in miyân bar sâken-ân-e bumi-e mantaqe ne-mi-tavân ĉandân xorde
in this between to resident-PLU-EZ local-EZ area not-DUR-can much fault

gereft, amâ bar mas'ul-ân va motavali-yân hezâr-hâ gelâye va
get, but to official-PLU and custodian-PLU thousand-PLU complaint and

enteqâd vâred ast
criticism entrance be-3SG

However, the local residents of the areas should not be blamed, but it is the governors and officials that should be criticised.

(*Ettela'at Weekly*, No. 3328, text No. 25)

In the above examples, contrast is signalled through the use of *but* and *amâ* (but). Therefore, they are considered to be 'textual metadiscourse' and are not counted in this analysis. However, in Examples 67 and 68 counter-expectancy is only signalled through the use of negation. These cases are considered to be 'interactional' and so are counted.

4.4. Engagement Markers

Vande Kopple (2002), Crismore (1993) and Milne (2003) use the term 'commentary' and Hyland (2005) uses the term 'engagement markers' to refer to the markers which are used to build a relationship between writer and readers. Following Hyland, the term 'engagement markers' has been used in this study to refer to the expressions that are used to establish a relationship between writer and readers. In this study these are grouped into the following sub-components: 'inclusive expressions', 'personalization', 'expressions of reader-address', 'questions', 'asides', and 'anecdotes and sayings'. These sub-groups are defined and exemplified below. 'Repetition' can also be a feature of 'engagement' as well as 'certainty' because one of its functions seems to be drawing the readers' attention to a particular point in discussion (see Section 4.2.2 for details and examples). (The influence of political tendencies and

cultural beliefs, and how editorialists make use of these beliefs as a means of persuasion, will be discussed in Chapter 5.)

4.4.1. Inclusive Expressions

Inclusive expressions like *we* and *us* can be used to include readers in the discussion. These words and phrases emphasise the writer's wish to express solidarity with their readers. The following are some examples in both English and Persian.

(71) Our modern political ideologies were shaped in the 19th century when the importance of character formation was taken for granted ...

(*Prospect*, No. 149, Aug. 2008, text No. 15)

(72) masâ'eli dar jâme'e-ye mâ mi-gozar-ad ke tâ konun be in šedat
problems in society-EZ we DUR-happen-3SG that till now to this intensity
va hedat did-e na-šod-e,
and strength see-PART not-become-PART,
There are some problems in our society which have never been so tense and
strong before, (*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No 52, Oct. – Dec. 2008, text No. 21)

As mentioned earlier in this chapter, the pronoun *we* can be used either inclusively, exclusively or in referring to a third party. In cases where it has been used inclusively, as in the above examples, it is categorised as being an 'inclusive expression'. In cases where it has been used exclusively, referring to the writer or to the organisation the writer works for as in Example 73 below, it is included in the category of 'personalization'.

As mentioned in Section 3.4 above, apart from the use of *we* in the above-mentioned cases there is another use of *we* when it refers to a third party, usually the government (see Examples 32 and 33). This category is conventionally put in a separate group since it may be an indication of both engagement and attitude. It can be regarded as an 'engagement marker' due to the nature of the use of the pronoun. It can be an expression of the writer's attitude because the writer uses the pronoun to criticise the government indirectly.

4.4.2. Personalization

Personalization refers to writers' reference to themselves through personal pronouns of *I* or the exclusive *we* when referring to the organization they are part of. Following are some examples:

- (73) Those voting to raid the purses of the poor taxpayer included benefit staff, refuse workers, school canteen staff, teaching assistants and cleaners - some of the lowest-paid workers in the land, as Dave Prentis, general secretary of Unison, argues on our website this week.
(*New Statesman*, 26 June 2008, text No. 6)
- (74) pasaz ân dar ruz-e Ĉâhâršanbe 17 Mehr mâh šaxsan jalase-i bâ
after it in day-EZ Wednesday 17 Mehr month personally meeting-a with
âqâ-ye Lârijâni ra'is-e Majles-e Šurâ-ye Eslâmi brgozâr kard-am
Mr-EZ Lârijâni chairman-EZ Parliament-EZ Council-EZ Islamic hold do-PAST-1SG
Afterwards, I had a meeting with Mr Larijani, Chairman of the Parliament, on
Wednesday 17 Mehr (8 October).
(*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No. 53, Dec.-Feb. 2008-2009, text No. 23)

In Example 73 the writer refers to the *New Statesman* magazine he works for, and in Example 74 he is referring to himself.

First personal pronouns 'I' and the 'exclusive we' are included in the category of 'personalization' except in cases where they are followed by verbs such as *believe* or *agree*. In these cases the whole phrase is used to express the attitude of the writer towards its content. These cases are included in the category of 'expressions of attitude' as in the following examples:

- (75) We welcome, therefore, the appointment of Ian Johnston, the head of British Transport Police, to lead an inquiry into the police investigation of the leaks. We welcome, too, the warning from the Leader of the House, Harriet Harman, a former civil liberties lawyer, that the arrest of Green raises serious issues for parliament to consider. (*New Statesman*, 04 Dec. 2008, text No. 7)
- (76) bande be šaxse az sâl-ha piš movâfeq-e hazf-e yârâne-hâ,
I personally from year-PLU ago agreement-EZ omitting-EZ subsidy-PLU,
be viže dar mored-e benzin va gazoil bud-e-am
especially in case-EZ gas and gasoil be-PART-1SG
In the past years I personally agreed with omitting subsidies especially gas and
gasoline. (*Ettela'at-e Weekly*, NO. 3364, text No. 27)

In these examples *we welcome* and *I have personally agreed* express the attitude of the writer towards the rest of the clauses.

4.4.3. Expressions of Reader-Address

As stated in the previous studies, expressions of reader-address include those words and phrases that either directly address the readers using *the reader* or *you*; or that address the readers indirectly using imperatives and obligation modals. These expressions draw the readers' attention to a specific point in the argument, and are a powerful means of communicating with the

readers and persuading them to accept the writer's ideas. The following are some English and Persian examples.

- (77) And lastly, everyone loves a Christmas poll, so we have one of those for you, on the most important global public intellectual of 2008 — you don't even have to vote because we have already chosen the winner. This is one egghead you wouldn't want to pick a fight with. (*Prospect*, Jan. 2009 No. 154, text No. 14)
- (78) And don't even start on the politics of negotiating a global agreement on emissions or the intricacies of cap-and-trade. (*The Economist*, 4 Sep 2008, text No. 4)
- (79) va alâve bar ânhâ xâne-ye Nâsereddin Šâh râ ke mahal-e gardešgari-ye
and plus to them house-EZ Nasereddin Shah ACC that place-EZ tourism-EZ
ma'ruf-i ast mošâhede mi-kon-id
famous-a be-3SG observe DUR-do-2PLU
Moreover, you can see Nasereddin Shah's famous house, a famous resort for tourists, (*Gozarash*, No. 195, Feb - Mar 2008, Text No. 28)

There were three cases in the English texts where the pronoun *you* did not refer to the reader and was used more impersonally. In these cases they were not counted as markers, as in the following example:

- (80) Lind worries that he has surrounded himself with too many (Bill) Clintonites, but this may underestimate both the extent to which Clinton's New Democrat tradition has been eclipsed, particularly since the 2004 defeat, and how much previously conservative figures like Larry Summers appear to have jettisoned orthodoxy. Moreover, in a crisis you need experienced heads and they are, almost by definition, going to be veterans of the Clinton years. (*Prospect*, Dec. 2008, text No. 11)

4.4.4. Questions

Hyland (1999) includes 'questions', which focus on reader-participation, as a sub-category of 'relational markers', i.e. 'engagement markers'. Similarly, Milne (2008) considers 'questions' as a means of maintaining rapport with the audience. Questions are used to address readers and draw their attention to the main point in the argument. It should be noticed that all questions, including rhetorical and non-rhetorical ones, have been counted in this study since they are used to address the readers and engage them in a particular discussion. The following are some examples:

- (81) What was the Qualifications and Curriculum Authority doing when it awarded such a long deal? (*The Spectator*, 23 July 2008, text No. 20)

(82) bâ yek negâh-e ejmâli be ruydâd-hâ-ye čand dahe-ye târix-e mo'âser
with one look-EZ short to event-PLU-EZ several decade-EZ history-EZ recent

molâheze mi-kon-im ke in natijegiri be zâher taqviat
notice DUR-do-1PLU that this conclusion to appearance intensified

mi-šâv-ad, amâ âyâ in matlab esâlat ham dâr-ad?
DUR-become-3SG, but whether this subject originality also have-3SG?

Glancing at the events in the last few decades, we notice that this conclusion is seemingly intensified. But does it really have originality?
(*Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No. 49, April-June 2008, text No. 22)

4.4.5. Asides

Crismore (1989: 17) studies the role of asides as a metadiscourse device in the plays of Plautus. She maintains that asides “make it possible for the audience to become essential participants”. They come in between long stretches of what Crismore calls ‘primary discourse’. Using them writers “insert implicit dialogues with [their] readers, anticipating their concerns, objections and questions” (ibid: 4). Hyland (1999) also considers this technique as a means of encouraging reader-participation.

Asides are a temporary departure from the main topic. They are, arguably, used by the writers to convey a special message specifically directed at the readers and are used to establish a special relationship with them. Because of their importance in creating a bond with the readers they have been grouped as one of the sub-components of ‘engagement makers’. The following are some examples.

(83) Higher-paid (but by no means highly paid) local authority employees such as architects, surveyors and social workers may strike, too, but as many as 250,000 of those balloted earn less than £6.50 an hour.
(*New Statesman Leader*, 26 June 2008, text No. 6)

(84) agar bexâh-im moškel- ât-e dâruyi va darmâni dar kešvar râ
if SUBJ-want-1PLU problem-PLU-EZ medication and treatment in country ACC

riše yâbi kon-im, bâyad be yek baste (albate gheyr-e pišnahâdi!)
root finding SUBJ-do-1PLU, must to one package (indeed non propositional)

tavajoh kon-im ...
attention SUBJ-do-1PLU ...

If we want to find the roots of medical care problems in the country, we should attend to a package (non-propositional, indeed) ...
(*Ettela'at-e Weekly*, No. 333, text No. 26)

In Example 84 the writer is having a joke with the readers using *albate gheyr-e pišnahâdi!* (indeed non-propositional!), referring to the package proposed to Iran concerning its nuclear intentions.

In this study ‘asides’ have been counted as ‘engagement markers’ when they are used to relate to readers in the way which has been demonstrated in the above examples, but when they are used to give extra information about the topic, they have been considered propositional and therefore have not been counted. For example:

- (85) Parents will be legally liable for children who fail to complete community orders (currently about a third of the total) and will face fines, prison and even eviction if they fail to comply. (*New Statesman*, 17 July 2008, Text No. 8)

The above phrase has not been counted as an ‘aside’ as it only provides additional information.

4.4.6. Anecdotes and Sayings

Using anecdotes and sayings, writers refer to an incident having happened in the past and relate it to the present situation. For example,

- (86) Who really holds the country to ransom? Younger readers may not even know the phrase, but unions that threatened strike action were once routinely accused of "holding the public to ransom". (*New Statesman*, 26 June 2008, text No. 6)

In the above example the writer refers the readers to an incident which happened in the past during which the people who threatened to strike were accused of “holding the public to ransom”. The writer relates this event to what is happening now and how the expression ‘holding the public to ransom’ is used again during the recent strikes. In this way the writer shares a story with his readers. Following is a Persian example:

- (87) in kâr dorost mesl-e ân ast ke vâqe'e-ye bezâher zešt-i ettefâq
 this work exactly like-EZ that be-3SG that incident-EZ seemingly ugly-a happening
 oftâde va mâ bejâ-ye ânke mosabeb-e asli râ tanbih kon-im,
 fall-PART and we instead-EZ that cause-EZ main ACC punishment SUBJ-do-1PLU,
 bače-ye mazlum-i râ ke dam-e dast-emân gir oftâd-e ast, bâ
 child-EZ innocent-a ACC that close-EZ hand-our trapped fallen-PART be-3SG, with
 yek sili-ye jânâne be-navâz-im! hâl harče u be-guy-ad xodâ
 one slap-EZ lovely SUBJ-beat-1PLU! now whatever s/he SUBJ-tell-3SG God

DUR-mi-dân-ad man gonâh-l na-dâst-e-am, šiše râ kas-e digar-i
know-3SG I fault-a not-have-PART-1SG, glass ACC someone-EZ else-a

šekast-e va sang râ kas-e digari andâxt-e' harf-i be guš-emân
break-PART and stone ACC someone-EZ else throw-PART', word-a to ear-our

na-rav-ad va xašm va ghazab-emân kontrol na-šav-ad.

not-go-1SG and anger and rage-our control not-become-3SG.

This is like the time when an ugly incident happens, and instead of punishing the main cause of the incident, we slap an innocent child who is at hand! Whatever he says, that he did not have any fault, that someone else broke the window and someone else threw the stone, we turn a deaf ear to it and are not able to control our rage and anger.

Telling a well-known story, the writer equates the government's recent policy on the salary of employees to the punishing of an innocent child.

It appears that 'anecdotes and sayings' have not been included as metadiscourse markers in previous studies. This might be partly because there has been a considerable amount of work carried out on academic writing where anecdotes and sayings are hardly used. However, there are occasions where these markers are used in the English and Persian news magazine editorials analysed in this study. It would appear that using 'anecdotes and sayings' is a way of departing from the main flow of an article and to recall to the reader a familiar incident with which it has similarities. Therefore, in this study they have been considered to be a means of engaging with the readers.

Summary and Conclusion

The first part of this chapter was about the corpora used in this study. In this relation the Iranian and British political settings were discussed and the role of editorials in both communities was clarified.

The second part of this chapter discussed the methodology for the qualitative aspect of this study. With the aim of proposing a 'local' typology applicable to British and Iranian news magazine editorials, the study uses both text-driven and theory-driven methodologies. On the theory-driven basis it uses the existing studies on metadiscourse and their typologies. On the text-driven basis it uses a corpus of British and Iranian news magazine editorials and studies the realisation of IM in both sets. In the process of the analysis the functional significance of the items is emphasised; however, where necessary, syntactic references are made to obtain a clearer picture of the fuzzy notion of

IM and to propose a distinction between propositional and non-propositional content.

The third part of this chapter discussed the importance of distinguishing between propositional and non-propositional meaning in metadiscourse studies, as it has been mentioned that the distinction is not a clear-cut one. Some boundaries were therefore set in analysing the texts in order to be consistent throughout the analysis. The markers were only counted as 'metadiscourse' when they fulfilled the parameters for distinguishing between propositional and non-propositional material that have been set in the present study. Figure 4.1 is a summary. It should be noticed that the elements below the gap include the items in the categories which are counted as non-propositional in this study, whereas the elements above the gap are the propositional items which are excluded.

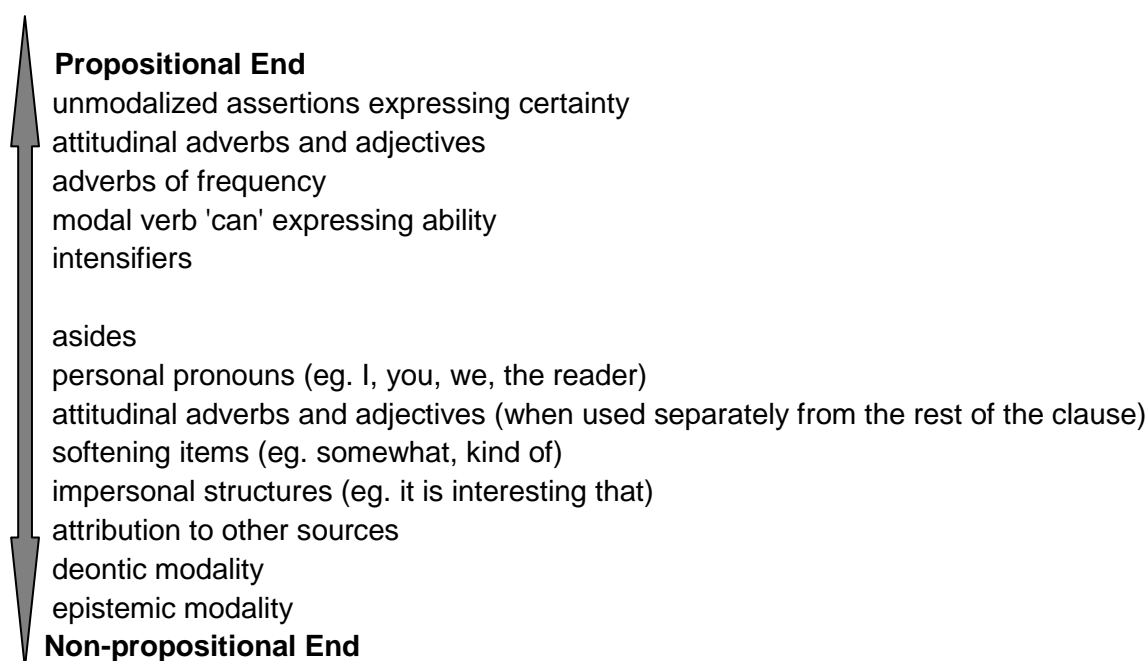


Fig. 4.1. Summary of the propositional and non-propositional continuum

The last part of this chapter included the presentation of the different sub-categories of interactional metadiscourse markers important in editorials. The following main categories were discussed: 'uncertainty markers', 'certainty markers', 'attitudinal markers' and 'engagement markers'. It was mentioned that the term 'uncertainty markers' is preferred over 'hedges' used by Hyland (2005), Crismore et al. (1993) and Milne (2003), or 'modality' used by Vande Kopple (2002) because it allows for a finer distinction between interactional features.

Furthermore, in the discussion of ‘certainty markers’, it was mentioned that in this study those statements that are at either end of the yes/no cline are not considered to be ‘certainty markers’. The focus is only on those markers that explicitly represent ‘certainty’ using expressions such as *definitely*, *there is no doubt* and so on.

In this classification a distinction is made between ‘obligation addressed to readers’ and ‘obligation addressed to third parties because of the different functions they play in editorials. The former is considered to be an ‘engagement marker’ for the role it plays in inviting readers to take part in the discussion, and the latter is considered as an ‘attitudinal marker’ for the role it plays in representing the writer’s attitude to the issues being discussed.

The sub-category of ‘anecdotes and sayings’ has been added to the category of ‘engagement markers’, referring to the occasional departure of writers from the main topic in order to share a well-known incident with the readers. Figure 4.2 is a summary of the above-mentioned categories. (The category of ‘repetition’ is shaded in the table to show that it is a common aspect of ‘certainty markers’ and ‘engagement markers’. The category of ‘we referring to third parties’ is grouped separately with a link to both attitudinal and engagement markers.)

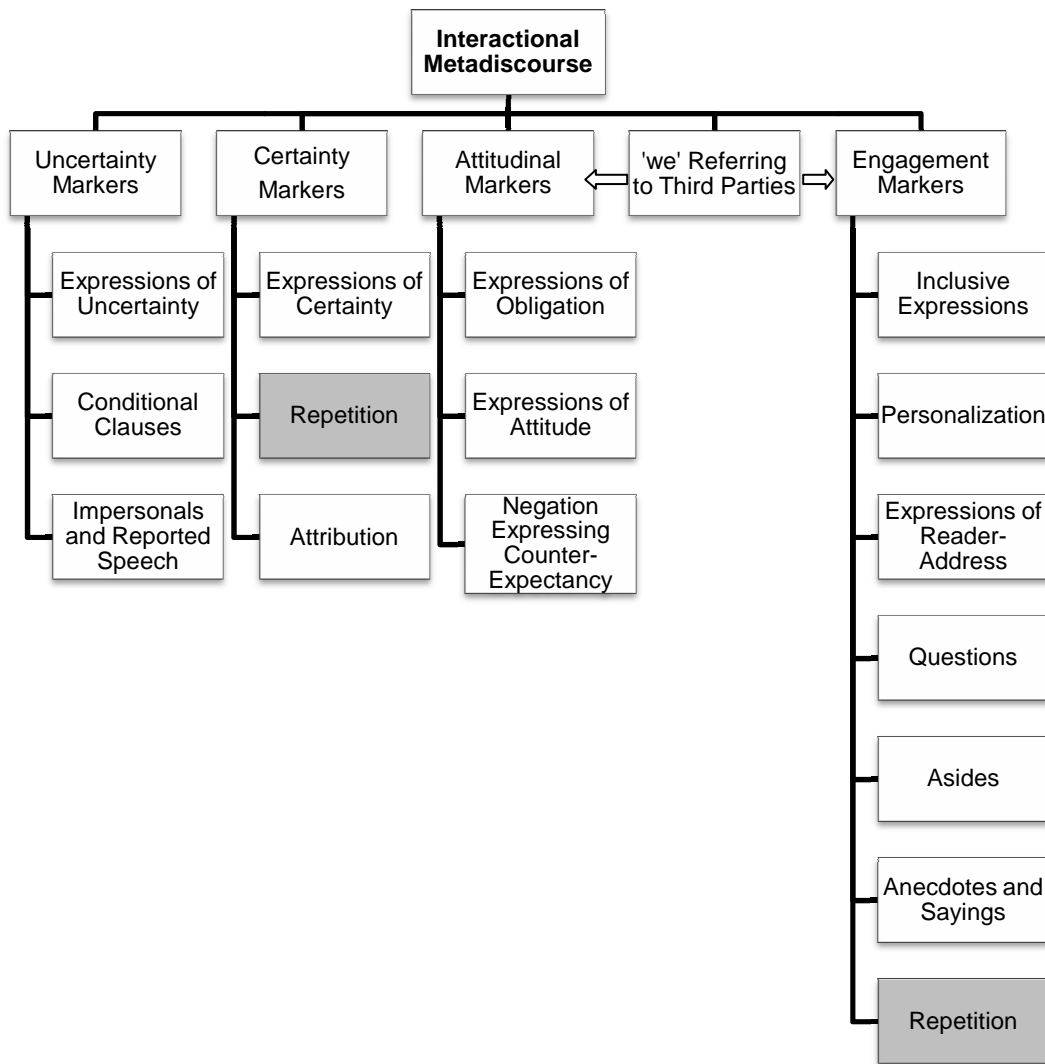


Fig. 4.2. A model of 'interactional metadiscourse' in editorials

CHAPTER 5

Data Analysis and Discussion

As mentioned in Chapter 1, this research has both qualitative and quantitative aspects. The qualitative dimension of the research has been discussed in Chapter 4. Some parameters were suggested in order to set a boundary between propositional and non-propositional content, and a set of criteria for analysing interactional metadiscourse in British and Iranian editorials was presented. In this regard, a classification based on the existing studies on metadiscourse was proposed. The main categories in analysing the data are uncertainty, certainty, attitudinal and engagement markers. It was argued in the previous chapter that the above-mentioned main categories should be broken down into further sub-components in order to enable a finer analysis and comparison.

The main purpose of the present chapter is to compare the two sets of editorials, the British and Iranian, and examine the frequency of the use of 'interactional metadiscourse' and its sub-groups as identified in the previous chapter. To this end, first the methodology used to develop the quantitative aspect of the thesis will be clarified and an example of the analysis of a British and an Iranian text will be provided. A summary of the analysis of the whole corpora in both English and Persian will then be outlined and the similarities and differences will be discussed. The coded texts and tables are included in Appendices 1 and 2.

1. Methodology for Quantitative Analysis

1.1. Research Questions

On the quantitative level this cross-cultural study was carried out to probe into the following research questions:

1. What are the types and frequency of IM in the British and Iranian corpora?
2. Are there any similarities or differences between Iranian and British editorials in terms of the quantity of IM and its sub-categories?

After examining these questions, the similarities and differences observed in the two sets of data will be discussed in the light of the cultural backgrounds of the editorialists and the political settings of the two countries.

1.2. Non-automated Analysis

Metadiscourse studies of texts may be conducted manually or automatically. A computer-assisted analysis of texts allows one's study to be based on a much larger corpus (e.g. Dahl 2004, Milne 2008). A manual analysis allows a more in-depth analysis of texts (e.g. Hyland 1998, 1999b). In consideration of the highly contextual nature of metadiscourse, and because the distinction between propositional and non-propositional material is difficult to identify in automated corpus analysis, a small scale non-automated analysis was carried out in this study. This manual analysis facilitated achieving a finer distinction between the sub-groups based on the context in which they appeared and the 'function' they played in a particular context.

1.3. Units of Analysis

Another point to be clarified concerning the methodology used in this study is the identification of the relevant 'interactional metadiscourse' unit. This has implications with regard to how IM entities are counted. According to Mauranen (1993) and Alkaff (2000), metadiscourse markers may take various forms: a word, a phrase or even a whole sentence. Therefore, every IM marker is considered as one unit of analysis irrespective of the number of words it contains. For example, 'certainly' and 'it is interesting to know that' are each considered to be one IM unit. As advised by the university statisticians, the density of occurrence of IM was calculated as an IM unit per thousand words. This was because the number of words in an article varied from one to another.

1.4. Quantitative Procedures

In order to carry out the quantitative aspect of the analysis, having selected the articles from the news magazines in each cultural community, the texts were broken into clauses and numbered in order to facilitate referencing. The metadiscourse markers, however, were not analysed based on the clauses they were in, but on the context in which they appeared (see Section 2.2.2). The items considered to be 'interactional metadiscourse' were placed in tables according to the sub-category they belonged to, and the frequency with which

each sub-category occurred was then counted and placed at the bottom of each column.

After analysing the data and putting the interactional items in the relevant tables, the following calculations were made:

- total number of words in the whole corpus
- number of words in the English and Persian corpora separately
- total number of 'interactional metadiscourse' units in the whole corpus
- total number of 'interactional metadiscourse' units in each main and sub-category for both the English and Persian corpora
- rate of occurrence of 'interactional metadiscourse' per thousand words in each main category and sub-category for both the English and Persian corpora

The quantitative analysis of the present research is used to show similarities and differences in the Iranian and British editorials with respect to the different types of 'interactional metadiscourse' suggested in the qualitative part of the study. For this purpose the frequency of occurrence of the main groups and sub-groups of 'interactional metadiscourse' in the two sets of data was compared. The similarities and differences were then interpreted with reference to the cultural expectations and political settings in both communities, as partly outlined in Chapter 4.

2. Examples of the Analysis

As mentioned in Chapters 1 and 4, the data for the study was selected from British and Iranian news magazine editorials. The English material was selected from the *Economist*, *New Statesman*, *Prospect* and *The Spectator* (20 articles, 15745 words). The Persian data for the analysis was selected from *Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, *Ettela'at-e Weekly*, and *Gozaresh* (12 articles, 15551 words). The main topics in both sets of data included the main issues in the related society. The following are two examples of analysis, including the coding of one British and one Persian text followed by the tables that summarize the findings. (For the full texts and their coding, with relevant summary tables, see Appendices 1 and 2.)

2.1. An Example of English Text Analysis

Below is one of the editorials from *Prospect* magazine, No. 154, written by David Goodhart, and published in Jan. 2009 (Text No. 14). The interactional items have been marked as follows:

UNCERTAINTY MARKERS

certainty markers

repetition (which may be counted as both 'certainty' and 'engagement' markers)

attitudinal markers

engagement markers

'we' referring to third parties

For ease of reference, the sub-categories to which the markers belong have been added in brackets immediately after the markers. Following is the key for the sub-coding abbreviations:

EU: expressions of uncertainty

Con: conditional expressions

I&RS: impersonals and reported speech

EC: expressions of certainty

R: repetition

Att: attribution

EO: expressions of obligation

EA: expressions of attitude

N: expressions of negation expressing counter-expectancy

IE: inclusive expressions

P: personalization

RA: expressions of reader-address

Q: questions

A: asides

A&S: anecdotes and sayings

WTP: 'we' expressing third parties

(1) This is a time for looking back over a memorable year and for speculating about the future. (2) But, **IF ROBERT SKIDELSKY IS RIGHT [Con]**, what comes next is not just a new year—it is the start of a new era. (3) The pendulum, he argues [Att], is now swinging strongly away from free markets and the smaller state, as it swung towards them at the end of the 1970s. (4) So far, so conventional, and such trends are already evident in British politics: (5) the increase in tax rates for high earners, the decision not to go ahead with Post Office closures, and so on. (6) But Skidelsky also argues that [Att] ideas which until quite recently belonged on the fringes of politics—the idea, for example, that globalisation has done little to increase wellbeing in rich countries—will now have many more mainstream advocates. (7) Speculation about what will happen next to the global economy ranges from just a few fiddles to the financial system to a full-scale return to the third quarter of the 20th century (***with trade still free-ish but finance renationalised***) [A] (8) **or, worse [EA]**, the protectionist and violent second quarter of that century. (9) ***And what about values?*** [Q] (10) ***Will we [IE] see a shift back towards favouring experience and judgement over computer projections?*** [Q] (11) The ideas of loyalty and commitment, especially in economic hard times, will surely [EC] enjoy a renaissance. (12) And this **COULD [EU]**, again, be the hour of the liberal nation-state. (13) The crash has blown away the excesses of post-nationalism in finance and in citizenship itself (14) —**it matters again [EA]** which set of taxpayers stand behind your savings account **IF YOUR BANK FAILS [Con]**, (15) and **it matters [EA]** that borders are properly controlled. (16) **The trick in all this is [EA]** how to depose "Davos man" without destroying the good things about globalisation. (17) An orderly rebalancing of the global economy requires higher wages for Chinese workers, (18) which in turn **WOULD [EU]** reduce the temptation to export jobs (19) and make it easier to recalibrate the balance between labour and capital in the west. (20) For a lighter take on global politics, **we [P]** have an interview with the world's most famous pop star, Paul McCartney, proving that it was not just John Lennon who had a political head. (21) In **our [P]** customary "overrated and underrated" review of the year, (22) **we [P]** make **our [P]** own small contribution towards telling truth to power (23) by encouraging **our [P]** writers to be rude about each other and everybody else too. (24) And lastly, everyone loves a Christmas poll, so **we [P]** have one of those for **you [RA]**, on the most important global public intellectual of 2008 (25) —**you [RA]** don't even have to vote because **we [P]** have already chosen the winner. (26) This is one egghead **you [RA] WOULDN'T [EU]** want to pick a fight with. (29) Please step forward, General Petraeus.

In the first paragraph of the above article the writer describes the hypothetical situation of Skidelsky's claims coming true, using a conditional clause (Clause Number 2). In this way the writer expresses his caution about the claims made. Therefore, this conditional clause is considered to be an 'uncertainty marker'. Later in the paragraph (Clause Numbers 3 and 6), the writer refers to Robert Skidelsky as a reliable source in order to confirm the truth of the claim he makes about the economic situation of the world. In these cases the markers are considered to be 'certainty markers'.

The use of the 'expressions of attitude' in the above article reflects this study's approach to the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content. 'Expressions of attitude' in the article are made either thematically using the impersonal structures of 'it matters that', and 'the trick in all this is' (Clause Numbers 14, 15 and 16) or separated from the rest of the statement using commas, as in Clause Number 8.

Another point to be mentioned is the repetition of 'it matters' in Clause Numbers 14 and 15. This kind of repetition, which happens in both British and Iranian corpora, is not included in the sub-group of 'repetition'. As discussed in Chapter 4, the sub-category of 'repetition' in this study refers to the synonymous expressions used to emphasize the certainty of an issue or to draw readers' attention to a particular point. This occurs mostly in the Iranian corpora (see Section 2.2 below). Repeating 'it matters' in a thematic position in this article appears to emphasize the attitude of the writer towards the issue.

Finally, attention should be paid to the use of the personal pronoun *we* and *our* in this article. They have been put into different sub-groups depending on their function in the text. In Clause Number 10 *we* is used as an 'inclusive expression', but in Clause Numbers 20, 21, 22, 23, 24 and 25, *we* and *our* are used to refer to the organisation the writer works for, and are therefore considered to be in the category of 'personalization'.

Tables 5.1 to 5.5 show the total number of each sub-category, which is indicated at the bottom of each column. The sub-group of 'repetition' is conventionally put into the category of 'certainty markers'. However, in the overall counting it is counted both as a 'certainty' and 'engagement' marker. As discussed in Chapter 4, the unit of counting is based on the frequency of occurrence of the marker in the text as a whole.

Cl. No	EU	Con.	I & RS
2		But, if Robert Skidelsky is right	
12	could		
14		if your bank fails	
18	would		
26	wouldn't		
	3	2	0

Table 5.1. 'Uncertainty markers' in the English example

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
3			he argues
6			Skidelsky also argues that
11	surely		
	1	0	2

Table 5.2. 'Certainty markers' in the English example

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
8		or worse	
14		it matters again	
15		it matters	
16		The trick in all this is	
	0	4	0

Table 5.3. 'Attitudinal markers' in the English example

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
7					(with trade still free-ish but finance renationalised)	
9				And what about values?		
10	we			Will we see a shift back towards favouring experience and judgement over computer projections?		
14			your			
14			your			
20		we				
21		our				
22		we				
22		our				
22		our				
23		our				
24		we	you			
25		we	you			
26			you			
	1	8	5	2	1	0

Table 5.4. 'Engagement markers' in the English example

Cl. No	WTP
	0

Table 5.5. 'we' expressing third parties in the English example

2.2. An Example of Persian Text Analysis

The following is an example of a Persian text taken from *Cheshmandaze Iran*, No. 49, April-June 2008, written by Lotfollah Meisami, and titled *Turkey; content of form* (part of Text No. 22). The article is transcribed into Roman characters, and a gloss is provided underneath each word or morpheme. A literal translation is given at the end. The interactional items are marked in the same way as the pattern given for the English example and put into the related subcategories in Tables 5.6 to 5.10.

(1) *Torkiye; mohtavâ yâ šeki?* (2) hamântor ke mi-dân-im (3) dar sâl-e 1386
Turkey; content or form? as that DUR-KNOW-1PLU in year-EZ 1386

hezb-e Edâlat va Tose'e dar yek sâzokâr-e demokrâtik bâ tekiye bar
 pârtý Justice and Development in one arrangement-EZ democratic with reliance on

niru-hâ-ye movalad, dar yek entexâb-ât-e refrandom gune tavân-est 80
 forces-PLU-EZ producer, in one election-PLU-EZ referendum like can-PAST-3SG 80

darsad ârâ-ye mardom râ be xod jazb kon-ad. (4) ânâ ronaq-e
 percent votes-EZ people ACC to self attraction SUBJ-do-3SG. they splendour-EZ

eqtesâdi, tavarom-e tak raqami, rošd-e eqtesâdi-e qâbel-e molâheze
 economical, inflation-EZ one digit, development-EZ economical-EZ able-EZ notice

va demoakrâsy-e bedun-e filter va motaki bar ârâ-ye mardom râ be armagân
 and democracy-EZ without-EZ filter and based on votes-EZ people ACC to souvenir

âvard-and (5) va pâdâš-e monâseb bâ ân râ az melat-e Torkiye daryâft
 bring-PAST-3PLU and reward-EZ appropriate with it ACC from nation-EZ Turkey receipt

kard-and. (6) mo'âven-e Recep Tayyip Erdoğan, asli-tarin tazâd-e mojud
 do-PAST-3PLU. assistant Recep Tayyip Erdoğan, main-most contradiction-EZ present

dar jâme'e-ye Torkiye râ bein-e do no' demokrâsy mo'arefi kard;
in society-EZ Turkey ACC between-EZ two type democracy introduction do-PAST-3SG;

(7) demokrâsy-e motaki be ârâ-ye mardom va demokrâsy-e ke dar bastar-e
 democracy-EZ based on votes-EZ people and democracy-EZ that in bed-EZ

hoviât-e Torkiye-ye navin, ya'ni sekulârism bâš-âd. (8) sa'y-e hezb-e Edâlat
 identity-EZ Turkey-EZ new, that is secularism SUBJ-be-3SG. effort-EZ party-EZ Justice

va Tose'e bar ân ast (9) ke dar râstyâ-ye mohtavâ-ye Eslâm gâm
and Development on that be-3SG that in direction-EZ content-EZ Islam step

bardâšt-e (10) va manteq-e qavi-e Eslâm râ dar sâzokâr-e demokrâtik piš
take-PART and logic-EZ strong-EZ Islâm ACC in arrangement-EZ democratic front

be-bar-ad (11) tâ pazireš-e jahâni niz peidâ kon-ad. (12) amâ sa'y-e mâ,
SUBJ-take-3SG so acceptance-EZ worldly also find SUB-do-3SG. but effort we,

beviže ruznâme-ye Keyhân dar in ast (13) ke tazâd-e asli-e Torkiye
especially newspaper-EZ Keyhan in this be-3SG that contradiction-EZ main-EZ Turkey

râ ruyârui-ye Eslâm bâ sekulârism va piruzi-e avvali bar dovvoli
ACC face-to-face Islam with secularism and victory-EZ first to second

be-dân-im. (14) maqule-i ke xod-e hezb-e Edâlat va Tose'e râzi be
SUBJ-know-1PLU. subject-a that self-EZ party-EZ Justice and Development satisfied to

ân na-bud-e va in qotbbandi râ qabul na-dâr-ad. (15) ânhâ mo'taged-and
it not-be-PART and this polarity ACC acceptance not-have-3SG. they believe-3PLU

in gotbbandi va šive-ye negareš, sathi va qešri bud-e, (16) ženerâl-hâ-ye
this polarity and way-EZ looking, superficial and shallow be-PART, general-PLU-EZ

Torkiye râ hassâs kard-e tâ dar sangar-e sekulârism alayh-e hezb-e Edâlat
Turkey ACC sensitive make-PART so in trench-EZ secularism against party Justice

va Tose'e, parvande sâzi kon-and. (17) ženerâl-hâ-ye Torkiye ham
and Development, file making SUBJ-do-PLU. general-PLU-EZ Turkey also

demokrâsy râ az filter-e hoviyyat-e sekulârism obur mi-dah-and, (18) magar mâ
democracy ACC from filter-EZ identity-EZ secularism pass DUR-give-3PLU, lest we

dar Irân çe mi-kon-im; (19) be nâm-e Eslâm va Emâm Zamân, tavarrom-e do
in Iran what DUR-do-1PLU to name-EZ Islam and Imam Zaman, inflation-EZ two

ragami, gerâni-e arzâq va maskan râ be armaghân âvard-e-im
digit, expensiveness foodstuff and housing ACC to souvenir brought-PART-1PLU

(20) va demokrâsy râ az hoviyyat-e feghi, obur mi-dah-im. (21) dar mored-e
and democracy ACC from identity religion, pass DUR-give-1PLU. in about-EZ

tahsil-e doxtar-ân, dar pâremân-e Torkiye in tor matrah šod
education-EZ girl-PLU, in parliament Turkey this how proposition become-PAST-3SG

(22) ke dorost n-ist doxtar-ân-e Torkiye az tahsil-e dânešgâhi mahrum
that correct not-be-3SG girl-PLU-EZ Turkey from education-EZ university deprived

bâš-and (23) ke in didgâh ra'y âvard (24) va bedin sân doxtar-ân bâ
SUBJ-be-3PLU that this view point vote bring-3SG-PAST and this way girl-PLU with

rusari ham mi-tavan-and be dânešgâh be-rav-and. (25) ruznâme-ye Keyhân, in
scarf also DUR-can-3PLU to university SUBJ-go-3PLU. newspaper-EZ Keyhan, this

padide râ ham piruzi-e Eslâm bar sekulârism nâm-id (26) va in
phenomenon ACC also victory-EZ Islam against secularism name-PAST-3SG and this

hamân çiz-i ast ke ženerâl-hâ râ hasâs kard-e (27) tâ alayh-e hezb-e
same thing-a be-3SG that general-PLU ACC sensitive make-PART so against-EZ party-EZ

Edâlat parvande sâzi kard-e (28) va dar nahâyat ân râ geyr-e qânuni
Justice file making do-PART and in final that ACC none-EZ law

e'lâm kon-and. (29) tarh-e in masale dar pâremân-e Torkiye, šekl-e
announce SUBJ-do-3PLU. discussion-EZ this issue in parliament Turkey, form-EZ

feghi-e halâl va harâm na-dâšt, balke ruh-e Eslâm matrah
religious-EZ halal and haram not-had-3SG, but essence-EZ Islâm presentation

šod (30) ke doxtar-ân-e mâ na-bâyad az tahsil-e dânešgâhi
become-PAST-3SG that girls-PLU-EZ we not-must from education-EZ university

mahrum šavand (31) va vaqti ânâ mi-tavan-and dar sâzokâr-hâ-ye
deprived SUBJ-become-3PLU and when they DUR-can-3PLU in arrangement-PLU-EZ

demokrâtik be rošd va tose'e-ye monâseb be-res-and, (32) čerâ xod râ
democratic to maturity and development-EZ proper SUBJ-reach-3PLU, why self ACC

dar qotbbandi qarâr be-dah-and ke dar nahâyat be jang-e dâxeli bey-anjâm-ad.
in polarity place SUBJ-give-3SG that in final to war-EZ internal SUBJ-lead-3SG.

Turkey; content or form? [Q]

As ***we [IE]*** know **[EC]**, the Justice and Development party relying on producer forces could gain 80 per cent of the votes in a democratic arrangement and a referendum-like election in 1386 (2007-2008). They presented economic splendour, one digit inflation, noticeable economical development and democracy without filtering and based on public opinion. They received an appropriate reward from the people of Turkey.

Recep Tayyip Erdogan's assistant announced [ATT] two types of democracy as the main sources of contradiction in Turkey's society: democracy based on people's opinion, and democracy based on the new Turkey's identity, that is secularism.

The Justice and Development Party attempts to follow Islamic content and develop Islamic logic in a democratic arrangement in order to make it acceptable to the world.

But ***we [WTP]***, especially the Keyhan newspaper, try to regard the main contradiction in Turkey the contradiction between Islam and secularism and ***we [WTP]*** try to regard it as the victory of the former over the latter. This polarity is a subject that the Justice and Development Party is not happy with and does not accept. They believe [ATT] this polarity and view point is superficial and shallow [R] and has made Turkey's generals sensitive.

So the generals protest against it under the cover of secularism. Turkey's generals pass democracy through the filter of secularism. ***What do we [WTP] do in Iran? [Q]*** Using the name of Islam and Imam Zaman, ***we [WTP]*** have a two-digit inflation, over-priced foodstuff and housing. ***We [WTP]*** pass democracy through the filter of religion.

In the case of women's education in Turkey, it was proposed in the parliament that it was not right to deprive women from higher education. This was accepted and women wearing headscarves were also allowed to go to university. Keyhan newspaper called this the victory of Islam over secularism. This made the generals sensitive, so they collected documents against the Justice Party and announced it as illegal. This issue did not have the religious form of halal and haram when it was presented in the parliament, but the essence of Islam was discussed that our women must not be

deprived of higher education. When women can achieve maturity and development in a democratic arrangement, why should they be polarised, leading to a civil war?

Similar to the English article presented earlier, ‘attribution’ used in Clause Numbers 6 and 15 is an indication of certainty. Using attribution, the writer refers to some reputable sources, Recep Tayyip Erdogan’s assistant (Clause Number 6) and Turkey’s Justice and Development party (Clause Number 15), and later justifies the claims he makes.

Clause Number 25 (Keyhan newspaper called this the victory of Islam over secularism) is an example which demonstrates the context-based approach of this study discussed in Chapter 4. On the surface this example seems like ‘attribution’ because of the use of the reported speech verb ‘called’. Upon examining the context, however, the clause seems to be a criticism of Keyhan newspaper (belonging to the Supreme Leader) and its misinterpretation of the achievements of the Justice party in Turkey’s parliament. Mentioning Keyhan newspaper here does not contribute to the certainty of the author towards the issue, but rather that the author is addressing his criticism to the misinterpretation by the newspaper. It is therefore considered to be propositional and not a metadiscourse marker.

The use of the personal pronoun *we* is another point to draw attention to. In Clause Number 2, *we* has been used as an ‘inclusive expression’, but in Clause Numbers 12, 13, 18 19, and 20 *we* has been used to refer to the government and criticise its policies.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
	0	0	0

Table 5.6. ‘Uncertainty markers’ in the Persian example

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
2	as we know		
6			Erdogan’s assistant announced ...
15		superficial and shallow	they believe
	1	1	2

Table 5.7. ‘Certainty markers’ in the Persian example

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
	0	0	0

Table 5.8. 'Attitude markers' in the Persian example

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1				Turkey: Content or form?		
2	we know					
18				what do we do in Iran?		
	1	0	0	2	0	0

Table 5.9. 'Engagement markers' in the Persian example

Cl. No	WTP
12	our
13	we
18	we
19	we
20	we
	5

Table 5.10. 'we' expressing third parties in the Persian example

3. Findings and Discussion

The corpora selected in this study were analysed as indicated in the example texts. Tables 5.11 and 5.12 are summaries of the analysis, including the number of occurrences of each main and sub-category. Figure 5.1 is a summary of the frequency of the sub-groups of IM items per thousand words in both sets of data.

TN	NW	EU	Con	I&RS	UM	EC	R	Att	CM+R	EO	EA	N	AM	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S	EM-R	EM+R	WTP	IM
1	1017	8	3	5	16	5	0	3	8	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	2	0	2	2	0	27
2	1144	13	2	0	15	2	0	2	4	9	4	0	13	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	33
3	1294	11	3	0	14	4	0	1	5	12	5	0	17	0	0	0	0	5	0	5	5	0	41
4	755	15	1	0	16	0	0	1	1	1	5	1	7	0	0	5	1	0	3	9	9	0	33
5	1213	16	1	0	17	2	0	2	4	3	7	0	10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	31
6	730	8	1	0	9	3	0	3	6	1	4	2	7	7	1	1	4	3	1	17	17	0	39
7	720	5	0	0	5	1	0	0	1	6	2	0	8	2	2	0	1	1	0	6	6	0	20
8	703	7	2	0	9	2	0	3	5	5	4	0	9	2	0	0	2	0	0	4	4	0	27
9	343	4	1	1	6	1	0	2	3	1	1	1	3	7	0	0	0	0	3	10	10	0	22
10	695	5	0	0	5	2	0	10	12	2	4	0	6	4	0	0	4	0	0	8	8	0	31
11	458	9	0	0	9	1	0	2	3	0	1	0	1	2	1	0	1	1	0	5	5	0	18
12	464	6	3	0	9	3	0	2	5	0	5	0	5	1	2	0	0	1	0	4	4	0	23
13	453	4	1	0	5	5	0	0	5	0	4	0	4	1	11	0	0	4	0	16	16	0	30
14	451	3	2	0	5	1	0	2	3	0	4	0	4	1	7	5	2	1	0	16	16	0	28
15	483	6	1	0	7	4	0	2	6	0	1	0	1	2	4	0	1	0	0	7	7	0	21
16	975	10	5	0	15	2	0	1	3	1	8	0	9	1	0	2	4	0	0	7	7	1	35
17	942	9	4	0	13	3	0	1	4	2	3	0	5	3	0	0	1	1	0	5	5	0	27
18	913	7	1	1	9	1	0	1	2	9	1	0	10	0	0	0	5	0	0	5	5	0	26
19	1045	0	0	1	1	1	0	6	7	0	3	0	3	2	0	0	2	3	1	8	8	0	19
20	947	14	3	0	17	0	0	3	3	3	6	2	11	1	0	0	3	0	0	4	4	0	35
Total	15745	160	34	8	202	43	0	47	90	55	72	7	134	36	28	13	32	22	8	139	139	1	566

Table 5.11. Summary of occurrences of 'interactional metadiscourse' in the English editorials

TN	NW	EU	Con	I&RS	UM	EC	R	Att	CM+R	EO	EA	N	AM	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S	EM-R	EM+R	WTP	IM
21	1218	6	9	1	16	0	7	5	12	17	5	0	22	19	0	5	1	0	0	25	32	0	75
22	1339	1	1	1	3	8	5	9	22	3	3	0	6	11	0	0	4	0	0	15	20	10	56
23	4003	15	6	8	29	17	8	14	39	22	18	11	51	37	25	0	10	1	0	73	81	0	192
24	1066	4	4	1	9	6	10	0	16	7	8	2	17	8	5	4	3	0	1	21	31	5	68
25	979	2	1	0	3	0	10	0	10	2	4	3	9	15	0	6	17	0	0	38	48	0	60
26	853	2	4	0	6	7	6	1	14	3	1	0	4	5	0	7	0	1	0	13	19	0	37
27	1406	12	10	0	22	6	2	0	8	9	16	0	25	9	1	21	8	0	0	39	41	3	97
28	1276	9	1	0	10	2	16	1	19	3	7	1	11	6	0	5	8	4	1	24	40	0	64
29	622	1	2	1	4	0	6	0	6	2	2	0	4	4	0	0	1	0	0	5	11	0	19
30	593	2	0	0	2	1	4	0	5	2	1	0	3	3	0	3	3	0	0	9	13	0	19
31	544	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	3	4	1	0	5	5	0	0	2	1	0	8	9	2	19
32	1652	9	3	0	12	4	2	1	7	4	3	0	7	1	0	0	11	0	0	12	14	0	38
Total	15551	63	42	12	117	52	77	32	161	78	69	17	164	123	31	51	68	7	2	282	359	20	744

Table 5.12. Summary of occurrences of 'interactional metadiscourse' in the Persian editorials

key:

TN: Text Number; **NW:** Number of Words; **EU:** expressions of uncertainty; **Con:** conditional clauses; **I&RS:** impersonals and reported speech; **UM:** uncertainty markers; **EC:** expressions of certainty; **R:** repetition; **Att:** attribution; **CM+R:** certainty markers including repetition; **EO:** expressions of obligation; **EA:** expressions of attitude; **N:** expressions of negation expressing counter-expectancy; **AM:** attitudinal markers; **IE:** inclusive expressions; **P:** personalization; **RA:** expressions of reader-address; **Q:** questions; **A:** asides; **A&S:** anecdotes and sayings; **EM-R:** engagement markers without repetition; **EM+R:** engagement markers including repetition; **WTP:** 'we' referring to third parties; **IM:** interactional metadiscourse

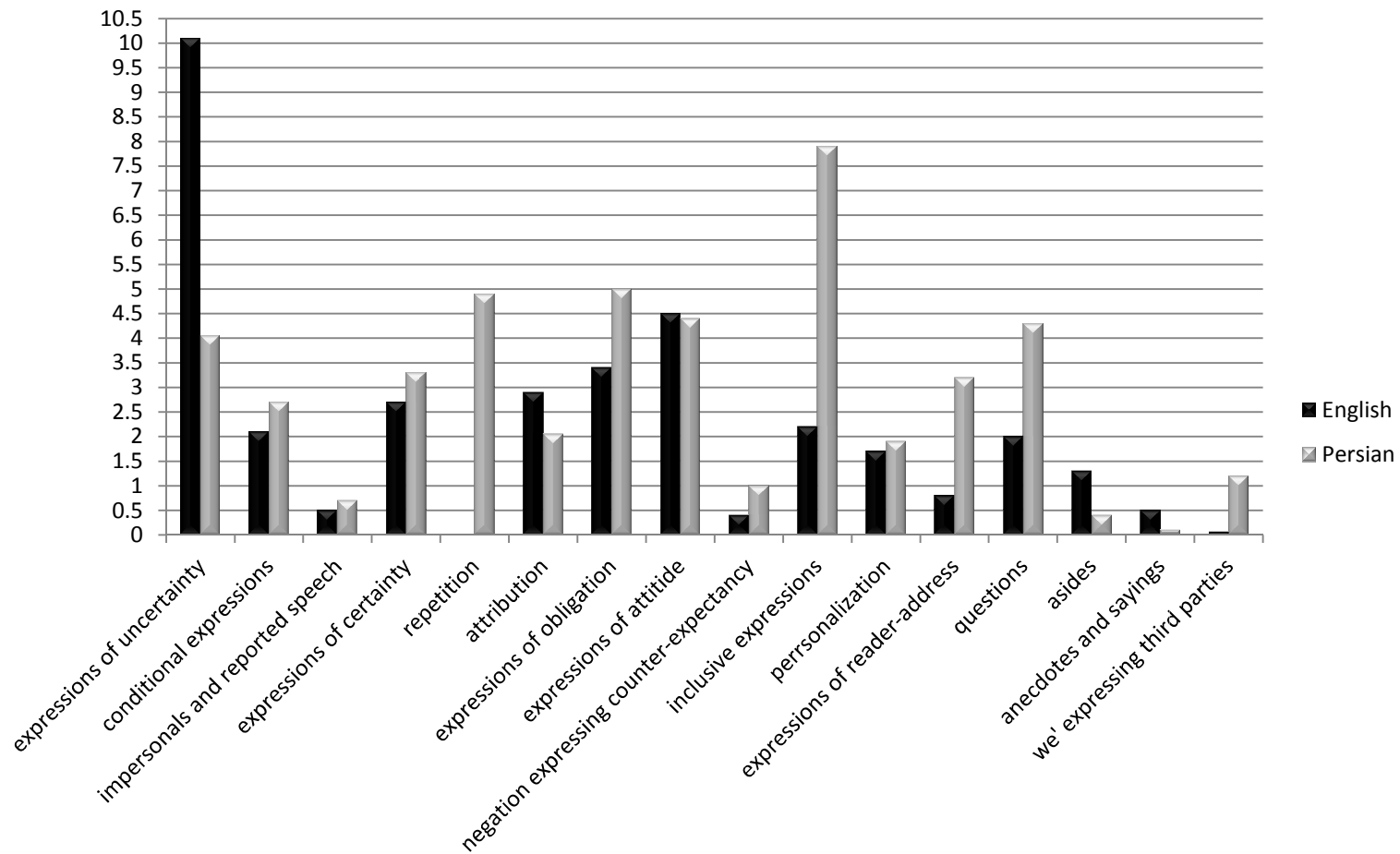


Fig. 5.1. Overall frequency of IM sub-categories in the corpora per thousand words

The corpus analysis in this study indicates that editorialists of both sets of data used all the categories of ‘interactional metadiscourse’ in their articles. The number of occurrences of IM markers in the British and Iranian corpora together is 1310. The number of occurrences of IM markers in the British corpus alone is 566 (35.9 per thousand words), and contributes to 43.2% of the total number of IM markers in both corpora. The number of occurrences of IM markers in the Iranian corpus is 744 (47.84 per thousand words), and contributes to 56.79% of the total number of occurrences of IM markers in both corpora together. The percentages were calculated from the total number of the ‘interactional metadiscourse’ markers in the English or Persian corpus alone divided by the total number of markers in both sets of data multiplied by 100. Figure 5.2 is a summary of the results:

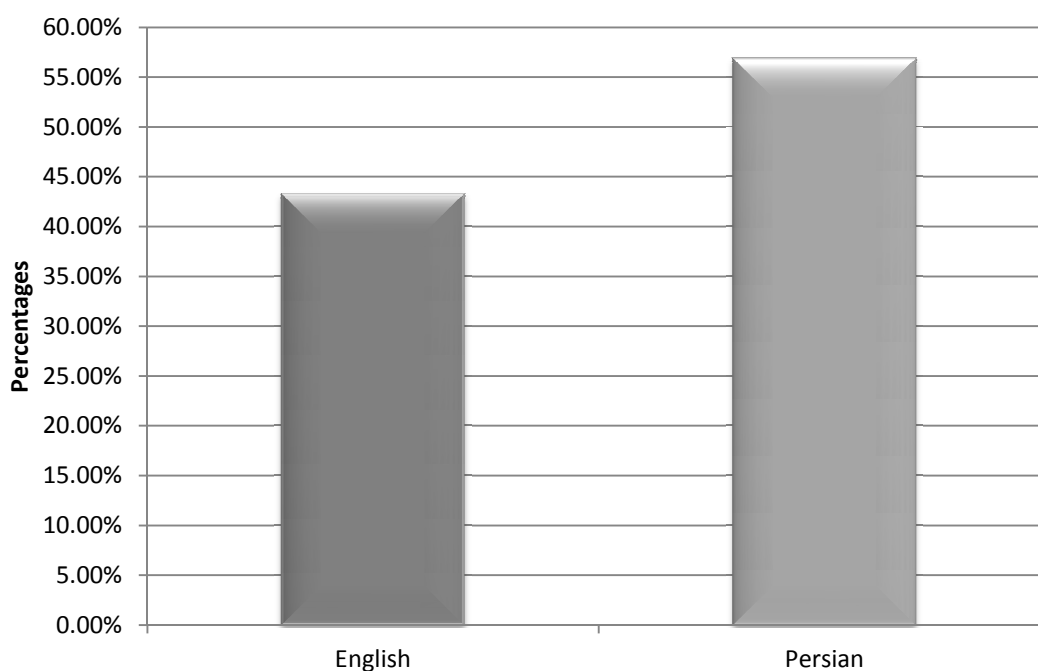


Fig. 5.2. Results of the use of IM in British and Iranian corpora in percentages

As can be observed from Figure 5.2, ‘interactional metadiscourse’ is used in both corpora, but it is used slightly more frequently in the Iranian corpus. In both groups editorialists tend to interact with their readers using similar frequencies of ‘interactional metadiscourse’. According to Lakoff (1990: 216) methods of persuasion are probably universal since persuasion is based on “emotional appeal and intellectual argument”. She argues that “both emotions and logical reasoning are assumed to be present in essentially similar forms in all human beings: that universality unites us as a species and enables us to understand

and be moved by the artistry (verbal and other) of other cultures in other places and other times.” Both the British and Iranian editorialists in this study use ‘interactional metadiscourse’ features as persuasive devices. They use these features to present their ideas in the most effective way, and to persuade their readers to accept their ideas as presented in the articles.

Accepting that ‘interactional metadiscourse’ is used in both sets of editorials as a persuasive device, some differences might be observed in the ways they slice their bar. To understand how the two groups apply this strategy in their writings, the categories of ‘interactional metadiscourse’, i.e. uncertainty, certainty, attitudinal and engagement markers were studied closely. Table 5.13 summarises the number of occurrences of the markers in these categories in both corpora, and the number of times they occurred per thousand words. To calculate the number of times the markers were used per thousand words, the number of occurrences of the markers in each category was divided by the total number of words in the British or Iranian corpus, and then multiplied by 1000. For example:

$$12.8 = \frac{202(\text{the number of 'uncertainty markers' in the British corpus})}{15745 (\text{the total number of words in the British corpus})} \times 1000$$

English

	UM	CM - R	AM	EM - R	R	WTP	Total
number of occurrences	202	90	134	139	0	1	566
frequency per thousand words	12.8	5.7	8.5	8.8	0	0.06	35.9

Persian

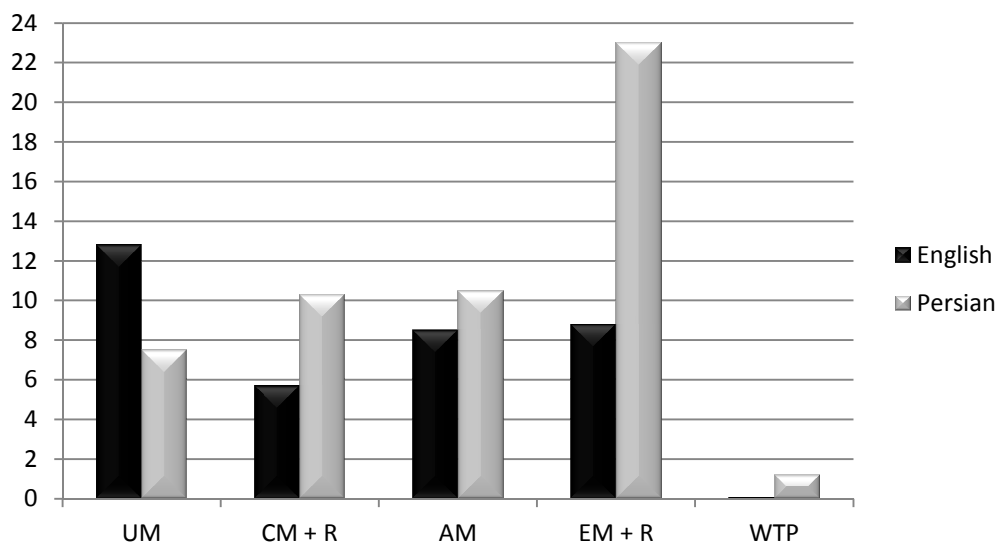
number of occurrences	117	84	164	282	77	20	744
frequency per thousand words	7.5	5.4	10.5	18.1	4.9	1.2	47.84

key: **UM**: uncertainty markers **CM - R**: certainty markers without repetition
AM: attitudinal markers **EM - R**: engagement markers without repetition
WTP: ‘we’ referring to third parties **R**: repetition

Table 5.13. Summary of the occurrences of the main categories of IM in the corpora

As discussed in the previous chapter, ‘repetition’ may be considered both as certainty and as an engagement marker. Therefore, it has been added to both groups in the final counting. The changes it makes when added to CM or EM

will be discussed in the related sections below. Figure 5.3 is a summary of the occurrences of the main categories of ‘interactional metadiscourse’ in English and Persian per thousand words. The rest of this chapter provides an interpretation of the results of this analysis, with each main and sub-group being dealt with individually.



key:

UM: uncertainty markers; **CM + R:** certainty markers including repetition;
AM: attitudinal markers; **EM + R:** engagement markers including repetition;
WTP: ‘we’ referring to third parties

Fig. 5.3. Results of the use of the main categories of IM in the corpora per thousand words

3.1. ‘Uncertainty Markers’ in the British and Iranian Corpora

The corpus analysis in this study indicates that ‘uncertainty markers’ are used in both corpora. As mentioned in the previous section, overall 1310 ‘interactional metadiscourse’ markers were found in this study, 319 of which expressed UM. The number of occurrences of UM in the British corpus was 202 (12.8 per thousand words), and the number of occurrences of UM in the Iranian corpus was 117 (7.5 per thousand words). Table 5.14 is a summary of the sub-categories of ‘uncertainty markers’. The table indicates the number of occurrences of UM in each sub-category and the frequency of occurrences of UM per thousand words. Figure 5.4 is a summary of the results:

English

	EU	Con	I&RS	Total
number of occurrences	160	34	8	202
frequency per thousand words	10.1	2.1	0.5	12.8

Persian

number of occurrences	62	42	12	117
frequency per thousand words	4.05	2.7	0.7	7.5

key: **EU**: expressions of uncertainty; **Con**: conditionals; **I&RS**: impersonals and reported speech

Table 5.14. Summary of the occurrences of the sub-categories of UM in the corpora

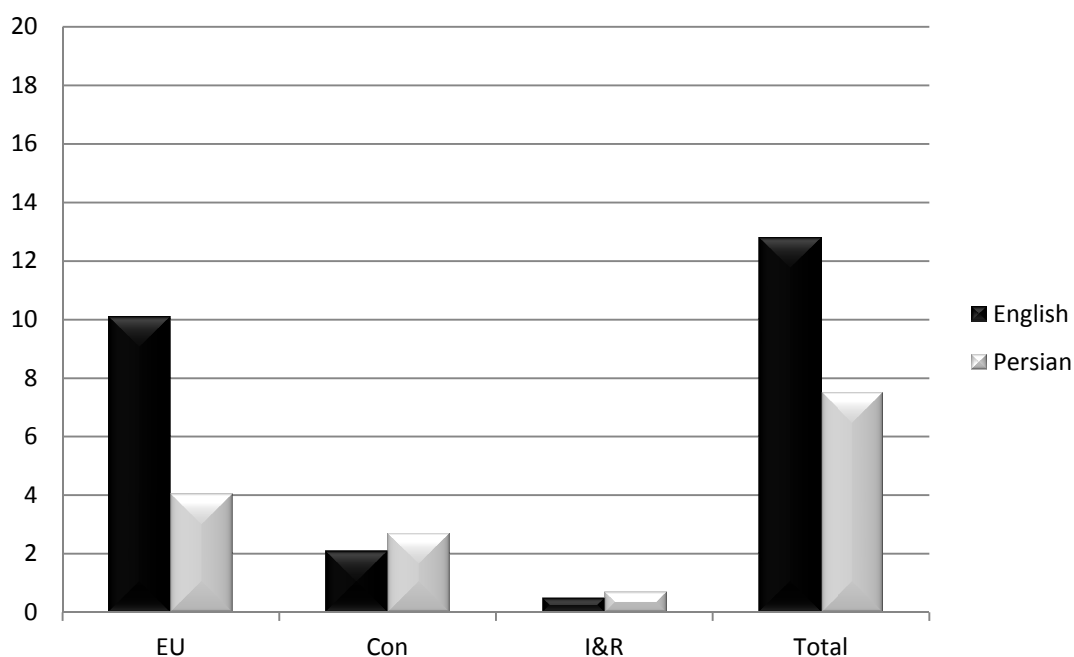


Fig. 5.4. Results of the use of the sub-categories of UM in the corpora

As can be observed from Figure 5.4, compared with the Iranian corpus, ‘uncertainty markers’ are used more than 1.5 times more often in the British corpus. They are the most frequent ‘interactional metadiscourse’ devices used in the British corpus, occurring 12.8 times per thousand words; however, they are the least frequent markers in the Iranian corpus (except for the minor group of ‘we’ referring to third parties’), occurring 7.5 times per thousand words (see Figure 5.3). This is due mostly to the heavy use of ‘expressions of uncertainty’ in the British corpus. As can be seen in Figure 5.1, ‘expressions of uncertainty’

are the most frequent sub-group in the British corpus, occurring 10.1 times per thousand words, whereas in the Iranian corpus they are only the sixth most frequent markers (out of 15 sub-categories), occurring 4.05 times per thousand words. The British editorialists tend to use EU 2.5 times more than the Iranian editorialists. The two sub-groups of 'conditional clauses' and 'impersonals and reported speech' are used slightly more in the Iranian corpus; however, the difference does not seem significant.

'Expressions of uncertainty' are considered to be one of the central aspects of reader-writer relationship. They can have different functions in discourse. These markers indicate the degree of knowledge of writers on the main issue they are discussing, or the degree of their commitment to the truth of the claims they are making (Chilton and Schäffner 2002: 31). They may also indicate the incomplete knowledge or partial commitment of the writer to the opinion being expressed. Using these markers, writers balance the reliability, truth and significance of their claims against the conviction or possible counter arguments of their readers. Using 'uncertainty markers' implies that the writer is stating a fact or personal belief based on some evidence or logical reasoning which is nevertheless potentially contestable, and in this way the writer avoids any personal accountability for the statements. These markers are used to allow claims to be made with caution, modesty and humility (Hyland 1994). 'Uncertainty markers' are therefore also used to express politeness, consideration for others and in order to give readers a chance to disagree.

Regarding the use of 'uncertainty markers' as a means of politeness and deference, a reference should be made to Brown and Levinson's work (1978, 1987). Brown and Levinson (1987) attribute certain precise parallels in the language usage in different languages to certain assumptions about 'face', that is, an individual's self-esteem. They distinguish between three strategies of politeness: positive politeness, negative politeness, and off-record politeness. Positive politeness strategies are used when an utterance is oriented to the positive face of the addressee; in other words, it deals with a person's desire to be understood by others, and the desire to be treated as a friend (the expression of solidarity). Negative politeness strategies are used when an utterance is oriented to the addressee's negative face, and seeks to compensate potential loss of face. It deals with a person's wish not to be imposed upon by others (the expression of resistance). Off-record politeness

refers to the avoidance of unequivocal impositions. The choosing of one or other of these strategies depends on the interlocutors' social distance, power differential and ratio of imposition. For Brown and Levinson (1987), negative politeness includes being conventionally indirect, using hedges, minimising imposition, giving deference, impersonalising and so on. These strategies appear to be represented by the use of the 'uncertainty markers' referred to in this study. It could be that 'uncertainty markers' in British editorials are also used as a politeness strategy.

The level of indirectness and caution taken seems to vary in different cultures. As the results of this study may indicate, compared to their Iranian counterparts, British editorialists tend to use more 'expressions of uncertainty' using devices such as modal verbs like *may* and *could*, modal expressions like *it is possible* and *seemingly*, and approximators like *about* (see Chapter 4, Section 4.1.1). On the other hand, Iranian editorialists appear more straightforward in their arguments and seem to be willing to accept the responsibility of their claims in order to be more persuasive in their argument. This will be discussed further in relation to the use of 'certainty markers' and 'expressions of obligation'.

3.2. 'Certainty Markers' in the British and Iranian Corpora

'Certainty markers' are used in both the British and Iranian editorials. Table 5.15 is a summary of the category of CM in the British and Iranian corpora. The table indicates the number of occurrences of 'certainty markers' in each sub-category, and the frequency of CM per thousand words.

English

	EC	R	Att	Total
number of occurrences	43	0	47	90
frequency per thousand words	2.7	0	2.9	5.7

Persian

number of occurrences	52	77	32	161
frequency per thousand words	3.3	4.9	2.05	10.3

key: **EC**: expressions of certainty; **R**: repetition; **Att**: attribution

Table 5.15. Summary of the occurrences of the sub-categories of CM in the corpora

As revealed by the table above, overall 251 ‘certainty markers’, including ‘repetition’, are used in both sets of data. The number of occurrences of CM in the British corpus was 90 (5.7 times per thousand words), while the number in the Iranian corpus was 161 (10.3 times per thousand words). As Figure 5.5 suggests, the Iranian editorialists use ‘repetition’ as a means of gaining certainty, while the British editorialists prefer the use of ‘attribution.

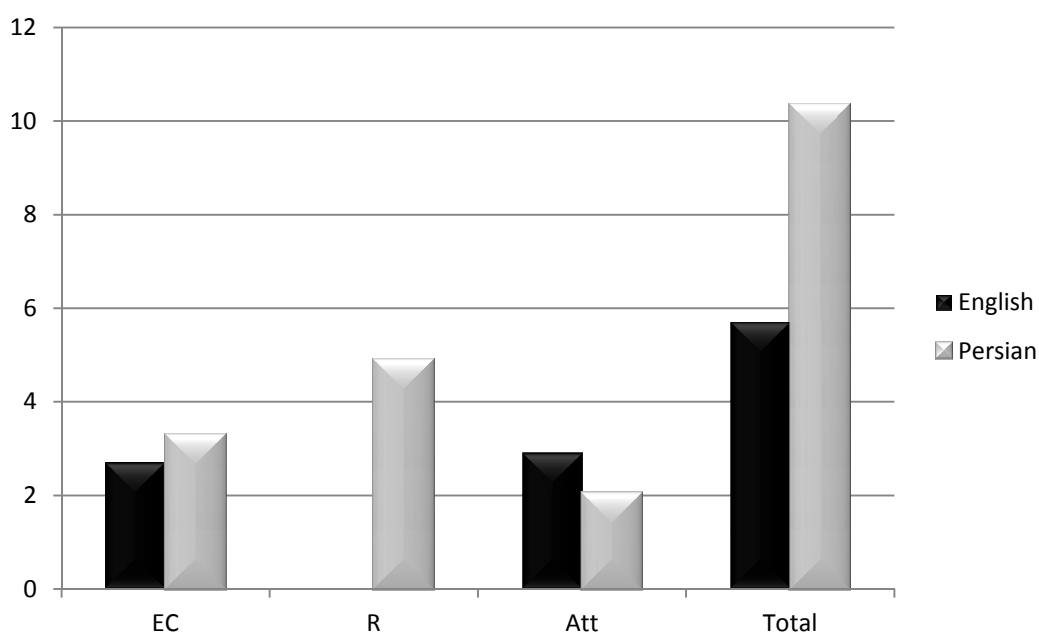


Fig. 5.5. Results of the Use of the sub-categories of CM in the corpora

As already mentioned, the main reason for the great difference between the British and Iranian corpora in the overall use of CM is the abundant use of ‘repetition’ in the Iranian corpus. This could be connected to the partly oral characteristics of the Persian language. Ong (1982) distinguishes between oral and literate cultures in the following way. By the use of the term ‘oral culture’ he means “a culture totally untouched by any knowledge of writing or print” (ibid: 11). He calls this a ‘primary orality’ culture because an oral culture, in its strict sense, can hardly be found today. In a primary oral culture “thought must come into being in heavily rhythmic, balanced patterns, in repetitions or antithesis, in alliterations and assonances, in epithetic and other formulary expressions, in standard thematic settings [...], in proverbs [...] or in other mnemonic form” (ibid: 34). According to Ong (ibid: 40), one of the characteristics of orality is redundancy. It is better for a speaker to repeat the same thing or an equivalent so that if the hearer does not catch one phrase, s/he can follow the speech by

catching and understanding another that has a similar meaning. On the other hand, writing frees the mind from its memory work.

In connection with orality, Ong (1982: 68) identifies ‘verbomotor’ cultures and contrasts them with high technology cultures. In verbomotor cultures words are used effectively and human interaction is significant. Verbomotor refers to “all cultures that retain enough oral residue to remain significantly word-attentive in a person-interactive context [...] rather than object-attentive”.

Writing has existed in Iran for thousands of years; it seems, however, to have kept its oral nature to some degree. It has an extensive oral tradition because of its prevalence in earlier times. For example the stories of *The Great Book* (*Shahname*), an epic based on the mythological stories written in poetry about a thousand years ago by Ferdowsi, have been narrated and recited in cafes and public gatherings for hundreds of years. In these narrations and recitations, repetition has always played an important role in helping the narrator to keep the attention of the audience (engagement) and draw the attention of the audience to a particular point (certainty). Reciting long poems, even among illiterate peasants, which is quite popular and a way of showing knowledge, is another example of this oral tradition. In addition to poems, the literature that was traditionally shared orally includes folk tales, legends, parables and so on. This oral tradition might still have an influence on the arrangement of argumentative texts. It could be said that ‘repetition’ is one of the main persuasive strategies used in Iranian argumentative writings.

Whereas the Iranian editorialists use ‘repetition’ and ‘expressions of certainty’, the British editorialists use ‘attribution’. The use of ‘attribution’ in the British corpus is about 1.5 times more frequent than the Iranian corpus (see Figure 5.1). Using ‘attribution’ as a ‘certainty marker’ is particularly noticeable in the British news magazine the *New Statesman* (8.77 per thousand words). Attribution can be used for different purposes. In journalism the writer may use attribution to higher authorities in order to avoid dogmatism, or to create evidence and strengthen the credibility of the argument. ‘Attribution’ is a more indirect way of expressing certainty than the other sub-groups of ‘repetition’ and ‘expressions of certainty’.

It can be observed from Figure 5.3 that when ‘repetition’ is added to the category of CM, it makes a significant difference to the results. As a result ‘certainty markers’ become the least frequent devices used in the British corpus,

occurring only 5.7 times per thousand words. In the Iranian corpus these markers occur 10.4 times per thousand words. The Iranian editorialists use CM over 1.5 times more frequently than the British editorialists. This significant difference between the two sets of data is mainly due to the use of 'repetition' in the Iranian corpus (see Section 2.2 for examples).

According to Crismore et al. (1993: 65) certainty is related to strength, assertiveness and self-confidence; and hedging is related to weakness. In terms of the use of certainty and uncertainty markers in editorials, it could be said that in Britain expressing uncertainty and hedging is more related to indirectness and politeness, giving the audience room to disagree with the argument. British writers, therefore, tend to approach the issue more indirectly and use politeness strategies to interact with readers and to gain acceptance through deference. However, for Iranians who live in an authoritarian society, uncertainty on the part of the person in authority might be a sign of weakness. Iranian editorialists seem to prefer to be more assertive and express their opinions more authoritatively through the use of 'repetition'. This might be traced to Iranian cultural beliefs. Iranians "value and abide by the roles of the authorities without questioning them, or without expressing doubt or uncertainty about social and, particularly, religious issues" (Abdollahzadeh 2007). They prefer that assertiveness is demonstrated by a person in power. For example, a politician in his/her speeches or a teacher in the classroom is expected to be authoritative and avoid uncertainty since it is considered to be a sign of weakness, and is therefore not approved of coming from a person with power.

The results of this study can be compared with those of a similar study carried out by Abdollahzade (2003) on the use of interpersonal metadiscourse by Persian and Anglo-American scholars in ELT academic writing. In his study he found that, in the case of academic writing, the reverse seemed to apply. His study shows that Iranian academic writers when writing in English use 'hedges' (called 'uncertainty markers' in this study) two and a half times more often than the Anglo-American academics, and use a lower percentage of emphatics (called 'certainty marker' in this study). This might suggest that metadiscourse markers can be used differently in different genres as well as in different cultures. Iranian academics might prefer to be more cautious in making claims in academic writing while being more assertive and persuasive in journalistic writing. The difference could also stem from a time when writers wrote in

another language. It could be said that being familiar with the conventions of one's native language and being aware that the target audience is from the same cultural background allows the writer to use the 'interactional metadiscourse' devices appropriate to the target readers in order to be more convincing; this is not always the case, however, when writing in another language.

3.3. 'Attitudinal Markers' in the British and Iranian Corpora

Both British and Iranian editorials use 'attitudinal markers' in their articles. Table 5.16 is a summary of the number of times each sub-category of 'attitudinal markers' occur in both corpora. The table indicates the number of occurrences of 'attitudinal markers' in each sub-category and their frequency per thousand words. Figure 5.6 shows a summary of the results:

English				
	EO	EA	N	Total
number of occurrences	55	72	7	134
frequency per thousand words	3.4	4.5	0.4	8.5

Persian				
	EO	EA	N	Total
number of occurrences	78	69	17	164
frequency per thousand words	5	4.4	1	10.5

key: **EO**: expressions of obligation **EA**: expressions of attitude;
N: negation expressing counter-expectancy

Table 5.16. Summary of the occurrences of the sub-categories of AM in the corpora

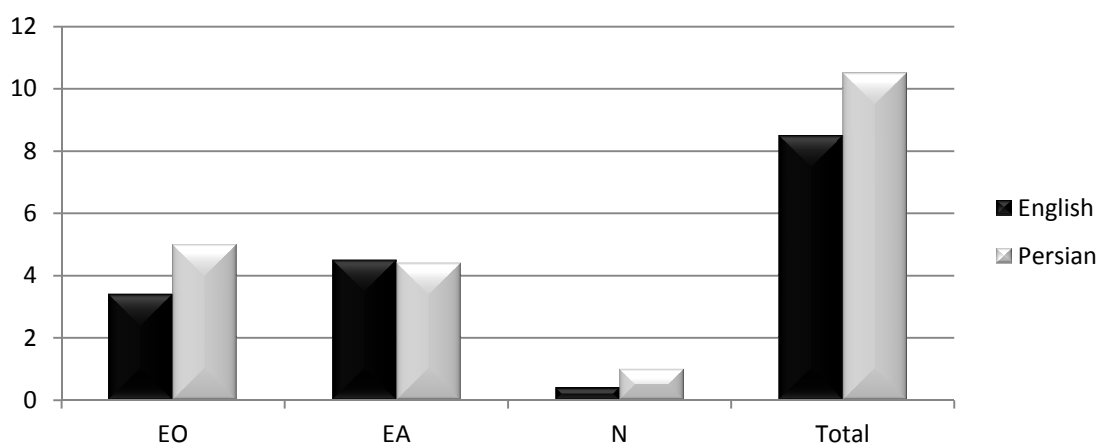


Fig. 5.6. Results of the use of the sub-categories of AM in the corpora per thousand words

Both British and Iranian editorialists use a considerable number of ‘attitudinal markers’ and their sub-categories to relate to their readers. Iranian editorialists seem to use AM slightly more than the British editorialists, but the difference does not seem to be significant. The use of ‘expressions of attitude’ and ‘negation expressing counter-expectancy’ is very similar in the English and Persian corpora, but some noticeable differences can be observed in the use of EO. ‘Expressions of obligation’ are the second most frequently occurring markers in the Iranian corpus, used 5 times per thousand words (see Figure 5.1). Iranian editorialists seem to use these markers about 1.5 times more often than the British editorialists. As discussed in Chapter 4, EO refer to the modals *must*, *should* and other devices used to express an obligation on the part of the writer towards the readers.

The abundant use of EO in the Iranian corpus might suggest that Iranians tend to be more authoritative in their writings through the use of obligation markers like *bâyad*, (must). As mentioned earlier in this chapter, the expression of authority by a person with power, in this case, the writer, is what is normally expected in the Iranian culture., In British culture however this persuasive device might seem less appropriate. The British editorialists seem to prefer more indirect and less imperative means of persuasion.

3.4. ‘Engagement Markers’ in the British and Iranian Corpora

‘Engagement markers’ are used in both British and Iranian editorials. Table 5.17 is a summary of the number of occurrences of the sub-categories of ‘engagement markers’ in British and Iranian corpora. The table indicates the number of occurrences of ‘engagement markers’ in each sub-category and the frequency of their occurrence per thousand words. Figure 5.7 is a summary of the results:

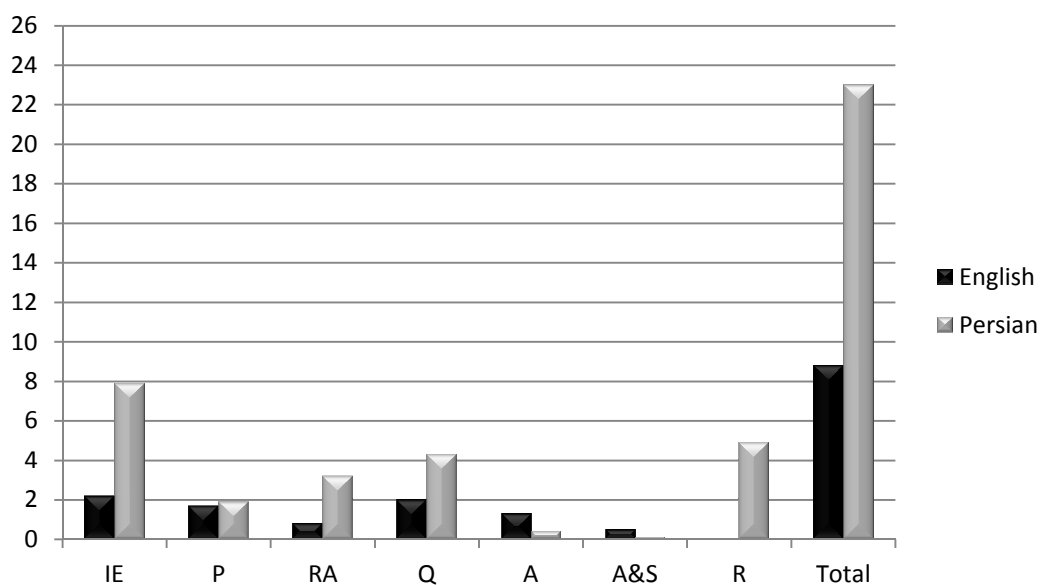
English

	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S	R	Total
number of occurrences	36	28	13	32	22	8	0	139
frequency per thousand words	2.2	1.7	0.8	2	1.3	0.5	0	8.8

Persian

number of occurrences	123	31	51	68	7	2	77	359
frequency per thousand words	7.9	1.9	3.2	4.3	0.4	0.1	4.9	23

Table 5.17. Summary of the occurrences of the sub-categories of EM in the corpora



key: **IE:** inclusive expressions **Q:** questions **R:** repetition
P: personalization **A:** asides
RA: expressions of reader address **A&S:** anecdotes and sayings

Fig. 5.7. Results of the use of the sub-categories of EM in the corpora

Overall 498 ‘engagement markers’ were used in the two sets of data (including ‘repetition’). The number of occurrences of ‘engagement markers’ in the British corpus was 139 (8.8 per thousand words), while the number of occurrences of these markers in the Iranian corpus was 359 (23 per thousand words).

Both British and Iranian editorialists use all the sub-categories of EM except ‘repetition’, which is only used by the Iranian editorialists. ‘Engagement markers’

are the most frequently used devices in the Persian corpus, occurring 23 times per thousand words, whereas they are only the second (out of four) most frequently used markers in the British corpus, occurring 8.8 times per thousand words (see Figure 5.1). Thus the Iranian editorialists use these markers 2.5 times more often than the British editorialists. The former involve their readers in the argument through the use of 'inclusive expressions' like *mâ* (we), or by addressing them directly through the use of 'expressions of reader-address' like *šomâ* (you) and 'questions' while the British editorialists tend to engage their readers in ways which are more indirect, using 'anecdotes' and 'asides and sayings'.

According to Lakoff (1990: 190), inclusive expressions like 'we' are "a powerful emotional force, bringing speaker and hearer together as one, united and sharing common interests". Inclusives are "warm, friendly and egalitarian" (ibid: 191). They bring minds together and create a bond. Using 'expressions of reader address' like 'you' and 'questions', the writer establishes a more dialogic interaction with their readers and thus gains acceptance for their argument.

The significant difference in the use of IE, RA and Q may indicate the influence of cultural characteristics in organising argumentative writing. Here it seems necessary to point to the discussion by the anthropologist Hall (1983) on how societies schedule events. According to Hall (1983) societies organize time in two different ways: those that schedule events as separate items – one thing at a time (Monochronic or M-time) as in North Europe; and those that are involved in several things at the same time (Polychronic or p-time) as in the Middle East and the Mediterranean. For an M-time culture, "time is so thoroughly woven into the fabric of existence that we are hardly aware of the degree to which it determines and coordinates everything we do, including the modelling of relations with others in many subtle ways" (ibid: 48). Hall believes that M-time can alienate us from ourselves and from others by reducing context. "It subtly influences how we think, encouraging us to perceive the world in segmented compartments" (ibid: 49). On the other hand, "P-time stresses the involvement of people and completion of transactions rather than the adherence to preset schedules" (ibid: 46). Polychronic people interact with several people at once and are continually involved with each other. P-time cultures are oriented to people, human relationships and the family, while M-time cultures are oriented to tasks, schedules and procedures.

Both polychronic and monochronic organizations have strong and weak points. “The blindness of the monochronic organization is to the humanity of its members. The weakness of the polychronic type lies in its extreme dependence on the leader to handle contingencies and stay on top of things” (Hall 1983: 52).

Indeed, a mixture of P-time and M-time can be observed in different cultures. The purpose of this study is not to classify the British or Iranian culture in either category. However, it could be argued that in many respects Iranians tend to be polychronics and the British monochronics. This could influence the means of communication in the two cultures. Iranian culture seems to be more people-oriented and regards the relationship between people as being important. This might also have its roots in the oral nature of Iranian culture as discussed in the previous section. The oral culture and the people-oriented tendency make the writers involve their audience in their argument by using inclusive expressions, reader-address expressions and questions, while in the British culture, where tasks and procedures seem to play a significant role in daily activities, writers prefer to engage their readers by focusing on subject matter rather than through rapport using asides and anecdotes.

3.5. ‘We’ Referring to Third Parties

As discussed in Chapter 4 and exemplified in Section 2.2 above, there are occasions in the editorials when the inclusive ‘we’ is used to refer to third parties in the discussion. The third party is usually the government or some other agent whom the writer does not want to criticise directly and so instead uses the pronoun ‘we’ in order to approach the issue more indirectly. As Table 5.18 shows, there is only one occasion in the English corpus where ‘we’ is used for this purpose. However, this phenomenon is more frequent in the Iranian corpus.

English

	WTP
number of occurrences	1
frequency per thousand words	0.06

Persian

number of occurrences	20
frequency per thousand words	1.2

Table 5.18. Summary of ‘inclusive ‘we’ referring to third parties’ in the corpora

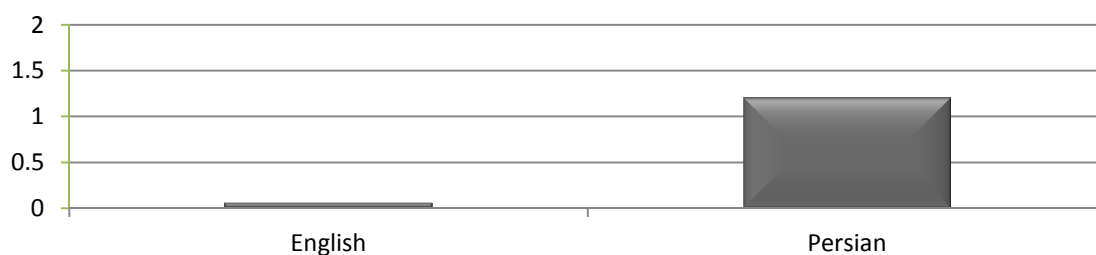


Fig. 5.8. Results of the use of ‘we’ referring to third parties’ in the corpora

The findings of the present study may indicate that Iranian editorialists tend to use ‘we’ referring to third parties’ quite frequently compared with their British peers because of the authoritarian structure of the society. As mentioned in the discussion of ‘certainty markers’, in Iranian cultural beliefs authorities cannot be questioned or doubted. Therefore, when a criticism is made of an authority, writers prefer to use ‘we’ in order to direct the criticism towards themselves verbally since it might be considered an insult to criticise that particular authority directly. The scarcity of this phenomenon in the British editorial could indicate that the British cultural tendencies allow them to criticise people in authority when necessary.

3.6. A Cross-Magazine Examination of the Corpora

A cross-magazine study of the corpora suggests that there is no significant difference in the use of uncertainty and certainty markers across the selected magazines. However, some interesting differences can be observed in the use of attitudinal and engagement markers. Examining the number of ‘engagement markers’ across the selected magazines in the British corpus, it can be observed that these markers are more frequent in *Prospect* magazine (20.8 occurrences per thousand words), but used quite sparingly in the *Economist* (3.1 occurrences per thousand words). The difference is quite noticeable in the use of the EM sub-categories of ‘inclusive expressions’, ‘personalization’ and ‘expressions of reader address’, where they are used 0, 0, and 0.92 times per thousand words respectively in *The Economist*, and 3.03, 10.85 and 2.17 times per thousand words respectively in *Prospect*. The situation is reversed in the case of ‘attitudinal markers’. *The Economist* prefers the use of AM (8.8 occurrences per thousand words), whereas in *Prospect* they appear less frequently (6.5 occurrences per thousand words). The preference for using AM over EM in the *Economist* could be related to the target audience of this

magazine which aims to influence executives and policy makers. It seems that the editorialists prefer to interact with this audience and influence them by highlighting the magazine's attitude and stance to the issues rather than creating a dialogic interaction with them, whereas for *Prospect*, which is a general interest magazine, the involvement of readers in the discussion is more important than stating the magazine's viewpoint on political issues.

Whereas in the British corpus the cross-magazine examination of EM might suggest the impact of the target audience on the use of AM and EM, in the Persian corpus the differences could be due to the influence of magazine ownership. 'Engagement markers', and particularly 'expressions of reader-address' and 'questions', are used quite often in *Ettela'at Weekly*, a state-owned magazine, where their frequency of use is 25.7, 8.8 and 6.5 items per thousand words respectively. The other two magazines, *Cheshmandaze Iran* and *Gozaresh* use these markers less frequently (17.2, 0.7 and 2.2 respectively for *Cheshmandaze Iran*, and 4.05, 1.7 and 5.3 respectively for *Gozaresh*). This could indicate that *Ettela'at Weekly* uses these markers as a strategy that encourages integration with its readers and attempts the construction of the view that they share similar viewpoints to the government on issues (which is not usually the case!). (See Chapter 4, Section 1.1 for a discussion of British and Iranian political settings.)

As is the case for attitude and engagement markers, some significant differences can also be observed in the use of "we' referring to third parties' in the Iranian corpus. Studying the frequency of this kind of 'we' across the Iranian corpus suggests that the state-owned magazine *Ettela'at Weekly* uses these markers more frequently than the other two magazines (1.8 items per thousand words compared with frequencies of 0.1 and 0.4 in *Cheshmandaze Iran* and *Gozaresh* respectively). This could be related to the fact that *Ettela'at Weekly* belongs to the government, and tries therefore to respect its authority by choosing a more indirect way of criticising it.

4. Summary and Conclusion

The data from the British and Iranian news magazine editorials having been selected, it was analysed on the basis of the categorization of 'interactional metadiscourse' as proposed in Chapter 4. The results obtained were counted

and the frequency of occurrences of each main category and sub-category were compared. It was found that 'interactional metadiscourse' markers were used with a similar frequency in both sets of data. This suggests that 'interactional metadiscourse' features are important devices employed for communication with readers in both cultures. However, the components of interactional metadiscourse, that is, uncertainty, certainty, attitudinal, and engagement markers were used in different proportions in the two sets of data. This may suggest cultural preferences in favouring one type over another.

The results obtained suggest a significant difference between the Iranian and British editorialists in their overall use of UM, CM and EM. British editorialists prefer using 'uncertainty markers', particularly 'expressions of uncertainty' while Iranian editorialists prefer using 'repetition'. This might suggest that British editorialists prefer to be more indirect in their argument and persuade their readers through observing politeness. However, for the Iranian editorialists indirectness could indicate weakness, which is not approved of in a person who has authoritative power. For them persuasion is possibly achieved more effectively by being assertive. This is made possible by using fewer 'uncertainty markers' and more 'repetition'.

The frequency of use of EM is also significantly different in the two sets of editorials. Iranian editorialists use considerably more EM, particularly IE, RA and Q. This could be an indication that Iranians need to be addressed directly and involved in order to be persuaded. However, the British editorialists use A and A&S slightly more than the Iranian editorialists. This could be an indication that the British prefer to be engaged more indirectly in order to be persuaded. 'Repetition' can be another device used by Iranians to engage readers' attention and maintain their interest in a subject.

The comparison between the two corpora in the occurrence of the main category of 'attitudinal markers' does not indicate any significant difference in the use of these markers overall, although there are some noticeable differences in the use of the sub-category of EO. 'Expressions of obligation' are used frequently in the Iranian corpus. Similar to the use of 'certainty markers', using more EO suggests a more authoritative approach to the argument. Iranian writers use these markers to enable them to express their opinion more authoritatively and persuasively.

In sum, it appears that the British editorialists prefer to be persuasive by choosing the indirect interactional devices of uncertainty, asides and anecdotes. In this way they allow the readers a chance to disagree. To express certainty they prefer 'attribution' in order to strengthen the credibility of the discussion. On the other hand, the Iranian editorialists prefer a more direct approach using strong 'expressions of obligation'. They address their audience directly using expressions like 'you', and involve their audience using expressions like 'we' in order to allow the audience to share the discussion. They prefer to express certainty through the use of repetitive expressions. This could have its roots in the oral origins of Persian.

As well as the main categories of UM, CM, Att. M and EM, another kind of the use of 'we' was observed. This is where it is referring to a third party, usually the government. This happens particularly often in the Persian corpus where the writer does not want to mention directly who he is talking about. This could have its roots in the Iranian authoritative culture in which people holding power are not to be questioned, and criticising them directly might be considered disrespectful and, therefore, impolite.

As well as comparing the two sets of British and Iranian corpora, a partial cross-magazine comparison was also carried out. The study suggests that the target audience seems to influence the choice of markers in the British corpus. When the audience is expected to be comprised of highly educated policy makers the magazine chooses to use 'attitudinal markers' but when the magazine is of general interest it seems to favour 'engagement markers'.

In the case of the Iranian corpus, the cross-magazine study suggests the influence of the magazines' ownership in the use of markers. The state-owned magazine *Ettela'at Weekly* uses more EM in order to persuade the readers that it shares similar viewpoints to them. It also uses expressions of "we' referring to third parties' more often. This could indicate empathy between the state and the magazine.

Apart from the influence of the audience (British context) and magazine ownership (Iranian context), and the cultural expectations discussed above, the training of the journalists may also be responsible for the differences existing between the two sets of data. As discussed in Chapter 4, British editorialists are trained for their job whereas the Iranian editorialists have not necessarily received training as journalists. This may well be the cause of the wide variety

of styles appearing in the Iranian editorials, but a more stereotyped style in case of the British editorials. This aspect needs more investigation.

CHAPTER 6

Conclusion

Chapters 2 and 3 of this research provided the theoretical foundation for the present research. Chapter 4 presented a categorization for ‘interactional metadiscourse’ and Chapter 5 presented a comparison of the use of IM features in some British and Iranian news magazine editorials. This last chapter aims to briefly summarize the outcomes of this study and to present implications that may be of interest for those involved with metadiscourse and cross-cultural studies, metadiscourse in journalistic writing, or those interested in the role of metadiscourse in teaching and translation.

1. Theoretical Contribution

The theoretical contribution of this study includes a review of studies on textuality, leading to the studies on signalling and finally metadiscourse. A review was made of how studies on metadiscourse evolved from studies on text linguistics and signalling. The main focus of the literature review was on the definitions, theories and classifications of metadiscourse suggested by researchers such as Crismore (1989), Vande Kopple (2002), Milne (2003) and Hyland (2005). After identifying the need for obtaining a clearer picture of ‘interactional metadiscourse’ in terms of its classification and the distinction between the propositional and non-propositional content, a categorization of ‘interactional metadiscourse’ was proposed based on the existing studies. It attempted to set a boundary to the fuzzy nature of the sub-groups of ‘interactional metadiscourse’.

In this regard the following aims were achieved:

1. Assuming metadiscourse as one of the components of rhetoric, the study established a link between classical and contemporary rhetoric and metadiscourse, highlighting the progression from one to the other and their common features, that is, the emphasis they both place on creating effective communication with an audience; and the way they use taxonomy and apply it to oratory or written language.

2. The study carried out a survey of the historical development of studies of text and its development into signalling and discourse analysis where the focus of attention is the whole text.
3. Going back to the earlier references to 'metadiscourse', the study established that there are other parallel studies to 'metadiscourse', such as 'metacommunication', 'signalling words', 'non-topical material' and 'meta-talk'. However, the notion of 'metadiscourse' is broader in the sense that it includes both textual and interpersonal devices.
4. The study addressed a key concept in metadiscourse, that is, the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content which remained fuzzy in previous studies. The present research has attempted to set a boundary between the two in order to be consistent throughout the analysis. For this purpose the following criteria have been followed:

First, the widely used term of 'hedging' has been replaced with the term 'uncertainty markers' because hedging covers a very wide category of words and expressions which at times fall in the category of propositional material.

Secondly, 'modality' expressions have been categorised depending on the meaning they convey. Modality may be used propositionally or non-propositionally. When used non-propositionally, such expressions can convey uncertainty, certainty or attitude. When expressing uncertainty, they have been put in the sub-category of 'expressions of uncertainty'; when expressing certainty, they have been put in the sub-category of 'expressions of certainty'; and when expressing an obligation (deontic modality), they have been put in the category of 'expressions of obligation'. Modal verbs may also be used propositionally, e.g. when *can* means 'ability'. In these cases they have not been counted as 'interactional metadiscourse'.

Thirdly, 'attribution' which refers to the writer's reference to other sources has been considered as non-propositional when its function is to reinforce authorial force. Using attribution, editorialists may add to the certainty of their claims.

Fourthly, adjectival expressions have been considered to be propositional material, unless they have appeared thematically in that-clause structures such as 'it is ... (adj.) that', e.g. *It is fortunate that, it is disappointing that*. Similarly, adverbial expressions have been considered to be propositional unless they have been disintegrated from the rest of the clause using

punctuation marks; e.g. *Importantly, the meetings have taken place* In this sentence ‘importantly’ has been separated from the rest of the sentence by means of punctuation marks; therefore, it has been considered as ‘interactional metadiscourse’. Adverbs of frequency have been considered to be propositional.

Fifthly, ‘personal pronouns’ are basically propositional. However, considering their importance in engaging readers, they have been included as ‘interactional metadiscourse’. Instead of including one category of ‘pronouns’, the personal pronouns used in the data have been put in different categories depending on the subjects of their inclusion. If the first person pronouns were used together with attitudinal verbs, e.g. ‘I believe’, ‘we suppose’, they have been considered to be ‘attitudinal expressions’; and if the personal pronouns were used as a means of engagement, they were put in the appropriate box in the main category of ‘engagement markers’.

5. The study succeeded in producing a categorization for IM applicable to editorials. The categorization was both theory-driven and text-driven. It was theory-driven in that it drew upon the previous studies of metadiscourse, and it was text-driven in that it was completed taking into account the type of IM used in the British and Iranian news magazines. The aim was to minimise the overlaps in the previous studies. In this categorization the new entity of ‘repetition’ was used for the first time since it was frequently observed in the Iranian data. It seems ‘repetition’ is a strategy used by writers to draw the attention of readers to a particular point in the discussion, and to make sure that the readers understand the importance of the issue. Also, the sub-category of ‘negation expressing counter-expectancy’ was used for the first time to express the attitude of the writer. During the course of analysis, a new way of using ‘we’ was observed (particularly in the Iranian corpus) where the reference of the pronoun was a third party (often the government). Therefore, a new category was introduced for the first time to cover this area.

3. Empirical Contribution

The contributions at the empirical level are based on the application of the analytical framework to the analysis of the editorials produced in the British and Iranian cultures. The main findings are as follows:

Both British and Iranian groups use IM. As the results indicate, the Iranian editorialists use IM slightly more than the British editorialists, but the difference does not seem significant. Since the purpose of writing is sharing ideas with others, using IM as a rhetorical device is arguably universal.

The use of 'uncertainty markers' particularly 'expressions of uncertainty' is much more frequent in the British editorials, and 'certainty markers', particularly 'repetition', in the Iranian editorials. This provides a basis for the discussion of cultural influences. Uncertainty on the part of the person or group who holds power (in this case the writer) is not acceptable in the Iranian culture. For Iranians expressing uncertainty means weakness rather than politeness. This might be traced in the authoritarian society of Iran. While the British prefer being indirect and polite using 'uncertainty markers', Iranians prefer being authoritative when in power and reflect this by using fewer 'uncertainty markers'.

The influence of the authoritarian culture is also evident in the Iranian editorialists' use of 'expressions of obligation'. Although there is not a significant difference in the two groups' overall use of 'attitudinal markers', Iranian editorialists tend to use more 'expressions of obligation' like *bâyad* (must) in their articles.

The influence of authoritarian culture can also be observed in the use of 'we' referring to third parties. These expressions are used in the Iranian corpus when the writer needs to criticise the government, but wants to put it as gently as possible. Therefore, the writer uses 'we' to seemingly direct the criticism to the self.

There is a much wider use of 'engagement markers' in the Iranian than in the British editorials. This is particularly significant in terms of the use of the sub-categories of 'inclusive expressions' and 'expressions of reader-address' and 'questions' on the part of the Iranians. This may reflect the influence of culture in organising texts. Considering the tendency of Iranians towards being polychronics suggests that Iranians tend to be more people-oriented. Moreover, this tendency might be traced back to the oral nature of Persian. The Iranian audience needs to be directly involved in the course of argument to be convinced. On the other hand, the British tend to use more 'asides' and 'anecdotes and sayings'. This might suggest the preference of the British culture for more indirect ways of persuasion.

One of the findings of the study is that Iranians tend to make wide use of 'repetition'. 'Repetition' could be a means of expressing certainty and a means of engaging readers in discussion. Therefore, it is considered either 'certainty' and 'engagement' markers. 'Repetition' seems to reflect the oral tendency of the culture. Using 'repetition' the writer makes sure that his/her audience has been convinced and involved in the argument. While Iranian editorialists prefer 'repetition', the British editorialists seem to favour the use of 'attribution' in order to stress the credibility of the argument.

A partial cross-magazine examination of the British and Iranian corpora suggests the influence of target audience (in case of the British corpus) and magazine ownership (in case of the Iranian corpus). When the target audience are expected to be highly educated policy-makers (as in *Economist*), the editorialists prefer to use 'attitudinal markers' more frequently; but when the magazine is of general interest, the editorialists prefer to use engagement markers more frequently (as in *Prospect*).

In case of the Iranian corpus, the cross-magazine examination suggests that the state-owned magazine of *Ettela'at Weekly* uses 'engagement markers', particularly 'expressions of reader-address' and 'questions' more frequently in comparison with the other two privately-owned magazines. The main reason for it could be constructing the belief that the government and people have similar viewpoints to issues. Furthermore, the more frequent use of 'we' referring to third parties' by the same magazine may be an indication of the integrity between the magazine and the government.

4. Recommendations and Suggestions for Further Research

The findings from this study could form the basis for further research.

First, European languages have received considerable attention in metadiscourse studies. It would be interesting to apply the categorization proposed in this research to compare editorials in other cultural communities, particularly non-European cultures and check the validity of the framework.

Secondly, the individual sub-categories of IM proposed in this study could be applied to larger samples. For this purpose, computerised corpora could be used to identify rhetorical behaviour in different genres and different cultural communities.

Thirdly, there is a need for more investigation in the use of IM in other types of texts in Persian. For this purpose, studying other less explored areas like the language of advertisements and e-mails would be beneficial in identifying and comparing devices of persuasion used and the dominant means of interaction in these types of texts. Studying interactional devices in spoken Persian is also another interesting area to be investigated. In this relation, investigating the role of 'repetition' in spoken language would be another interesting area to explore.

Fourthly, developing a categorization for 'textual metadiscourse' applicable to editorials and investigating its use in British and Iranian cultures could be another major study in relation to metadiscourse studies. In this relation, the distinction between propositional and non-propositional content could be explored in 'textual metadiscourse' and a boundary could be set.

Fifthly, inappropriate use of metadiscourse devices when writing in L2 may cause misunderstandings and lead to communication breakdowns. Investigating the use of IM in student-written compositions in English and Persian could assist teachers to identify sources of failure and develop an effective methodology for improving the teaching of English and Persian writing skills.

Sixthly, the readability of texts may be influenced by the quality and quantity of IM used in the texts. Investigating the effects of using IM on the level of readability of texts is another interesting area to be explored.

Seventhly, there is a lot of research on the acquisition of language by native and non-native speakers. The control of interactional features may probably be the most difficult one to learn. Studying the acquisition of IM by native and non-native speakers in British and Iranian communities would shed more light in this area.

Eighthly, the transference of cultural elements is probably one of the major issues in translation. Considering that rhetorical devices are used differently across cultures, a study exploring the reflection of the use of IM in translated works of English and Persian could be another area of investigation.

Finally, a detailed cross-magazine analysis of both British and Iranian magazines in terms of their use of IM will shed more light on the influence of the target audience and magazine ownership.

5. Limitations of the Study

There is no claim that this study is comprehensive. One of the limitations of this study is the relatively small number of the analysed articles. Since there are no large-scale corpora suitable for analysing metadiscourse in Persian, this study provides a starting point for further research in future. Moreover, the aim of the research was to explore the function of the IM items in the context they were used which is difficult to observe in an automated analysis; therefore, a non-automated analysis was carried out. In view of this, and because of the limitation in time, the number of texts was confined to 32. Even though this might suggest that the conclusions in the quantitative aspect of the study are not statistically significant and representative of the British and Iranian news magazine editorials as a whole, the number of the analysed texts was still enough to show general differences in the use of 'uncertainty', 'certainty', 'and 'engagement' markers across the two sets of data.

Another limitation was finding articles with similar topics of discussion. Since it was practically impossible to match the topics of the selected articles in English and Persian, it was decided to choose articles that reflect serious issues in the respective societies.

An important point that needs to be mentioned is the nature of metadiscourse. Since metadiscourse in general and IM categories in particular are essentially fuzzy, there is a restriction in providing a precise analysis of the data. It would have been good if more than one analyst was involved, but this was difficult to achieve due to limitations in time. In the course of analysis, in cases where there were doubts in putting a particular item in certain main or sub-category, native speakers were consulted for their opinion.

Further research of relevant contextual factors (press, particular magazines and editors) could be used to shed more light on the course of the differences observed.

References

Abdollahzadeh, E. (2003). 'Interpersonal metadiscourse in ELT papers by Iranian and Anglo-American academic writers'. Paper presented at INGED conference, Multiculturalism in ELT Practices: Unity and Diversity. Baskent University, Ankara.

Abdollahzadeh, E. (2007). 'Writers' presence in English and Persian newspaper editorials'. Paper presented at the 34th International Systemic Functional Grammar conference. Odense, Denmark.

Alkaff, AARO (2000). 'Metadiscourse in texts produced in English by Yemeni/Arab writers: A writer/reader oriented cross-cultural analysis of letters to the editor'. Unpublished doctoral dissertation, Exeter: University of Exeter.

Barnes, J., Ed. (1984). *The complete works of Aristotle*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.

Beaugrande de, R. (1980). *Text, discourse and process: Toward a multidisciplinary science of texts*. London: Longman.

Beaugrande de, R. (1997). *New foundations for a science of text and discourse: Cognition, communication, and the freedom of access to knowledge and society*. Norwood, NJ: Ablex.

Beaugrande de, R. (2004). 'A new introduction to the study of text and discourse: Discursivism and ecologism'. Published for free use on the internet. http://www.beaugrande.com/new_intro_to_study.htm.

Beaugrande de, R. and W. U. Dressler (1981). *Introduction to text linguistics*. London, NY: Longman.

Bednarek, M. (2006). *Evaluation in media discourse: Analysis of a newspaper corpus*. London and New York: Continuum.

Bhatia, Vijay K. (1993). *Analysing genre: Language use in professional settings*. London: Longman.

Blakemore, D. (2002). *Relevance and linguistic meaning: The semantics and pragmatics of discourse markers*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Bolivar, A. (1994). 'The structure of newspaper editorials'. In M. Coulthard (ed.), *Advances in written text analysis*. London: Routledge, 276-294.

Brown, P. and S. C. Levinson (1978). 'Universals in language usage: Politeness phenomena'. In E. N. Goody (ed.), *Questions and politeness*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 56-289.

Brown, P. and S. C. Levinson (1987). *Politeness: Some universals in language usage*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

- Brown, G. and G. Yule (1984). *Discourse analysis*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Charney, D. (2002). 'Evaluating professional discourse: How does it work for real readers?'. In E. Barton and G. Stygall, *Discourse studies in composition*. Cresskill, NJ: Hampton Press, 305-32
- Cheung, M. (2010). 'The globalization and localization of persuasive marketing communication: A cross-linguistic socio-cultural analysis'. *Journal of pragmatics* 42: 354-376.
- Chilton, P. and C. Schäffner (2002). 'Introduction: Themes and principles in the analysis of political discourse'. In P. Chilton and C. Schäffner (eds.), *Politics and text and talk: Analytic approaches to political discourse*. Amsterdam, Philadelphia: John Benjamins, 1-43.
- Connor, U. (1987). 'Argumentative patterns in student essays: Cross-cultural differences'. In U. Connor and R. B. Kaplan (eds.), *Writing across languages: Analysis of L2 texts*. Reading, MA: Addison – Wesley, 57-71.
- Connor, U. (1996). *Contrastive rhetoric: Cross-cultural aspects of second-language writing*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Connor, U. and Robert B. Kaplan (1987). *Writing across languages: Analysis of L2 texts*. Reading, MA: Addison – Wesley.
- Connor, U. and J. Lauer (1985) 'Understanding persuasive essay writing: Linguistic/rhetorical approach'. *Text* 5 (4):309-326.
- Conrad, S. and D. Biber (2000). 'Adverbial marking of stance in speech and writing'. In S. Hunston and G. Thompson (eds.), *Evaluation in text: Authorial stance and construction of discourse*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 56-73.
- Corbett, E. P. J. (1965). *Classical rhetoric for the modern student*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Crismore, A. (1984). 'The rhetoric of textbooks: Metadiscourse'. *Curriculum studies* 16: 279-296.
- Crismore, A. (1989). *Talking with readers: Metadiscourse as rhetorical act*. New York: Peter Lang.
- Crismore, A. and R. Farnsworth (1989). 'Mr Darwin and his readers: Exploring interpersonal metadiscourse as a dimension of ethos'. *Rhetoric review* 8(1): 91-112.
- Crismore, A. and R. Farnsworth (1990). 'Metadiscourse in popular and professional science discourse'. In W. Nash (ed.), *The writing scholar: Studies in academic discourse*. Newbury Park, et al.: Sage, 118-136.

- Crismore, A. Markkanen, R. and M. Steffensen (1993). 'Metadiscourse in persuasive writing: A study of texts written by American and Finish university students'. *Written Communication* 10 (1): 39-71.
- Curran, J. and J. Seaton (2010). *Power without responsibility: Press, broadcasting and the internet in Britain*. London and NY: Routledge.
- Dahl, T. (2004). 'Textual metadiscourse in research articles: A marker of national culture or of academic discipline?' *Journal of pragmatics* 36: 1807-1825.
- Dantas-Whitney, M. and W. Grabe (1989). 'A comparison of Portuguese and English newspaper editorials'. Paper presented at the 23rd annual TESOL convention, San Antonio, Texas.
- Enkvist, N. E. (1975). *Tekstilingvistiikan peruskasitteita* [Principles of text linguistics]. Helsinki: Oy Gaudemus Ab.
- Fraser, B. (1988). 'Types of English discourse markers'. *Acta Linguistica Hungarica* 38(4): 19-33.
- Fraser, B., (1990). 'An approach to discourse markers'. *Journal of Pragmatics* 14: 383-395.
- Fraser, B. (1996). 'Pragmatic markers'. *Pragmatics* 6 (2).
- Fraser, B. (1999). 'What are discourse markers?' *Journal of pragmatics* 31: 931-952.
- Hackforth, R. (1972). *Plato's Phaedrus translated with an introduction and commentary*. Cambridge, Cambridge University Press.
- Hall, E. T. (1983). *The dance of life: The other dimension of time*. New York: Doubleday.
- Halliday, M. A. K. (1977). 'Text as semantic choice in social contexts'. In T. A. van Dijk and J. S. Petoefi (eds.), *Grammars and descriptions: Studies in text theory and text analysis*. Berlin, NY: Walter de Gruyter, 176-225.
- Halliday, M. A. K. (1985/1994). *An Introduction to Functional Grammar*. London: Edward Arnold
- Halliday, M. A. K. and R. Hasan (1976). *Cohesion in English*. London: Longman.
- Halliday, M. A. K. and R. Hasan (1985). *Language, context and text: A social semiotic perspective*. Geelong, Vic.: Deakin University Press.
- Halliday, M. A. K. and C. Matthiessen (2004). *An introduction to functional grammar*. London, NY: Arnold.

- Harris, Z. S. (1970). 'Linguistic transformations for information retrieval'. In Z. S. Harris (ed.), *Papers in structural and transformational linguistics*. Dordrecht-Holland: D. Reidel, 458-471.
- Hasan, R. (1984). 'Coherence and cohesive harmony'. In J. Flood (ed.), *Understanding reading comprehension: cognition, language, and the structure of prose*. Delaware: International Reading Association, 181-219.
- Hatim, B. and I. Mason (1990). *Discourse and the translator*. London, NY: Longman.
- Hinds, J. (1987). 'Reader versus writer responsibility: A new typology'. In U. Connor and R. B. Kaplan (eds.), *Writing across languages: Analysis of L2 text*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 141-152.
- Hoey, M. P. (1979). *Signalling in discourse*. Birmingham, English Language Research (ELR): University of Birmingham.
- Hoey, M. P. (1983). *On the surface of discourse* London: George Allen & Unwin.
- Hoey, M. P. (1991). *Patterns of lexis in text*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Hoey, M. P. (2001). *Textual interaction*. London, NY: Routledge.
- Hunston, S. (2000). 'Evaluation and the planes of discourse'. In S. Hunston and G. Thompson (eds.), *Evaluation in text: Authorial stance and the construction of discourse*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 176-207.
- Hunston, S. and J. Sinclair (2000). 'A local grammar of evaluation'. In Hunston and G. Thompson (eds.), *Evaluation in text: Authorial stance and the construction of discourse*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 74-101.
- Hunston, S. and G. Thompson (2000). 'Evaluation: An introduction'. In S. Hunston and G. Thompson (eds.), *Evaluation in text: Authorial stance and the construction of discourse*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1-27.
- Hyland, K. (1994). 'Hedging in academic writing and EAP textbooks'. *English for specific purposes* 13(3): 239-256.
- Hyland, K. (1996). 'Writing without conviction? Hedging in science research articles'. *Applied Linguistics* 17(4): 433-454.
- Hyland, K. (1998). 'Persuasion and context: The pragmatics of academic metadiscourse'. *Journal of pragmatics* 30: 437-458.
- Hyland, K. (1999). 'Academic attribution: Citation and the construction of disciplinary knowledge'. *Applied linguistics* 20(3): 341-367.
- Hyland, K. (1999b). 'Talking to students: Metadiscourse in introductory course books'. *English for specific purposes* 18 (1): 3-26.

- Hyland, K. (2000). *Disciplinary discourses: Social interactions in academic writing*. London: Longman.
- Hyland, K. (2001). 'Bringing in the reader: Addressee features in academic articles'. *Written communication* 18(4): 549-74
- Hyland, K. (2005). *Metadiscourse: Exploring interaction in writing*. London, NY: Continuum.
- Hyland, K. and P. Tse (2004). 'Metadiscourse in academic writing: A reappraisal'. *Applied linguistics* 25(2): 156-177.
- Intaraprawat, P. (1988). 'Metadiscourse in native English speakers' and ESL students' persuasive essays', Illinois: Illinois State University.
- Intaraprawat, P. and M. Steffensen (1995). 'The use of metadiscourse in good and poor ESL essays'. *Journal of Second Language Writing*, 4(3): 253-272.
- Johnstone, B. (1986). 'Arguments with Khomeini: Rhetorical situation and persuasive style in cross-cultural perspective', *Text* 6(2): 171-187.
- Karloy, K. (2002). *Lexical repetition in text: A study of the text-organizing function of lexical repetition in foreign language argumentative discourse*. Frankfurt an Main, etal.: Peter Lang.
- Keller, E. (1979). 'Gambits: Conversational strategy signals'. *Journal of pragmatics* 3: 219-228.
- Kennedy, G. (1963). *The art of persuasion in Greece*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
- Kennedy, G. (1972). *The art of rhetoric in the Roman world: 300 B.C. – A.D. 300*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
- Khiabany, G. (2007). 'Iranian media: The paradox of modernity'. *Social semiotics* 17 (4): 479-501.
- Khiabany, G. (2008). 'The Iranian press, state, and civil society'. (2008). In M. Semati (ed.). *Media, culture and society in Iran: Living with globalization and the Islamic state*: London and NY: Routledge: 17-36.
- Kintsch, W. and T. van Dijk (1978). 'Toward a model of text comprehension and production'. *Psychological review* 85(5): 363-394.
- Kintsch, W. and T. van Dijk (1983). *Strategies of discourse comprehension*. London, NY: Academic Press.
- Labov W. and D. Fanshel (1977). *Therapeutic discourse*. New York: Academic Press.

Lakoff, G. (1972). 'Hedges: A study in meaning criteria and the logic of fuzzy concepts'. Papers from the English regional meeting of the Chicago linguistic society. Also in *Journal of Philosophical Logic* (1973) 2: 458-508.

Lakoff, R. T. (1990). *Talking power: The politics of language in our lives*. New York: Basic Books.

Le, Elisabeth (2004). 'Active participation within written argumentation: Metadiscourse and editorialists' authority'. *Journal of pragmatics* 36: 687-714.

Lautamatti, L. (1978). 'Some observations on cohesion and coherence in simplified texts'. In J. O. Ostman (ed.), *Reports on text linguistics: Semantics and cohesion*. Publications of the research institute of the Abo Akademi Foundation, 41 Abo, 165-181.

Lautamatti, L. (1987). 'Observations on the development of the topic of simplified discourse'. In U. Connor and R. B. Kaplan (eds.), *Writing across languages: Analysis of L2 text*. Reading, Massachusetts: Addison – Wesley.

Levinson, S. C. (1983). *Pragmatics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Lyons, J. (1977). *Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Mao, L. R. (1993). 'I conclude not: Toward a pragmatic account of metadiscourse'. *Rhetoric Review* 11(2): 265-289.

Markkanen, R. and H. Schröder (1992). 'Hedging and its linguistic realisation in English, German and Finnish philosophical texts: A case study'. In M. Nordman (ed.), *Fachsprachliche miniaturen*. Frankfurt/Main: Peter Lang, 121-130.

Markkanen, R. and H. Schröder (1997). 'Hedging: A challenge for pragmatics and discourse analysis'. In R. Markkanen and H. Schröder (eds.), *Hedging and discourse: Approaches to the analysis of a pragmatic phenomenon in academic texts*. Berlin: de Gruyter, 3-18.

Markkanen, R., Steffensen, M. S. and Crismore, A. (1993). 'A quantitative contrastive study of metadiscourse: Problems in the design and analysis of the data'. In J. Fisiak (ed.), *Papers and studies in contrastive linguistics*. Poznan: Mickiewicz University, 137-51.

Martin, J. R. and D. Rose (2003). *Working with discourse*. London, NY: Continuum.

Martin, J. R. and P. R. R. White (2005). *The language of evaluation: Appraisal in English*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

Mauranen, A. (1993). 'Contrastive ESP rhetoric: Metatext in Finnish-English economics texts'. *English for specific purposes* 12: 3-22.

Meyer, B. J. F. (1975). *The organization of prose and its effects on memory*. Amsterdam, Oxford: North-Holland.

Meyer, B. J. F., D. M. Brandt, et al. (1980). 'Use of top-level structure in text: Key for reading comprehension of ninth-grade students'. *Reading research quarterly* 16(1): 72-103.

Milne, E. D. (2003). 'Metadiscourse revisited: A contrastive study of persuasive writing in professional discourse'. Unpublished doctoral dissertation, Madrid: Complutense university of Madrid.

Milne, E.D. (2008). 'The pragmatic role of textual and interpersonal metadiscourse markers in the construction and attainment of persuasion: A cross-linguistic study of newspaper discourse'. *Journal of pragmatics* 40: 95-113.

Moore, S. (2006). 'Managing rhetoric in 'smart' journalism: Generic and semantic contours'. *Text and talk* 26(3): 351-381.

Murphy, J. J. (1974). *Rhetoric in the Middle Ages: A history of rhetorical theory from Saint Augustine to the Renaissance*. Berkeley et al.: University of California Press.

Nash, W. (1992). *An uncommon tongue: The uses and resources of English*. London, NY: Routledge.

Ong, W. J. (1982). *Orality and literacy: The technologizing of the word*. London, NY: Routledge.

Perelman, C. (1982). *The realm of rhetoric*. Notredame, London: University of Notredame Press.

Perkins, M. (1983). *Modal expressions in English*. London: Frances Pinter.

Petley, J. (1999). 'The regulation of media content'. In J. Stokes and A. Reading (eds.), *The media in Britain: Current debates and developments*. London: Macmillan, 143-157.

Plett, H. F. (1985). 'Rhetoric'. In T. Van Dijk (ed.), *Discourse and literature*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins, 59-84.

Pounds, G. (2011). "'This property offers much character and charm": Evaluation in the discourse of online property advertising'. *Text & Talk* 31(2): 195-220.

Redeker, G. (1990). 'Ideational and pragmatic markers of discourse structure'. *Journal of Pragmatics* 14: 367-381.

Redeker, G. (1991). 'Linguistic markers of discourse structure'. *Linguistics* 29: 139-172.

Reynolds, M. (2000). 'The blending of narrative and argument in the generic texture of newspaper editorials'. *International journal of applied linguistics* 10(1): 25-40.

- Rossiter Jr, C. M. (1974). 'Instruction in metacommunication'. *Communication studies* 25 (1).
- Schiffrin, D. (1980). 'Meta-talk: Organizational and evaluative brackets in discourse'. *Sociological inquiry* 50: 199-236.
- Schiffrin, D. (1987). *Discourse markers*. Cambridge, Cambridge University Press.
- Schiffrin, D. (1994). *Approaches to discourse*. Oxford UK and Cambridge USA: Blackwell.
- Schourup, Lawrence, (1985). *Common discourse particle in English conversation*. New York: Garland.
- Schourup, L. (1999). 'Discourse Markers'. *Lingua* 107, 227-65.
- Semati, M. (2008). 'Living with globalization and the Islamic state: An introduction to media, culture, and society in Iran'. In M. Semati (ed.). *Media, culture and society in Iran: Living with globalization and the Islamic state*: London and NY: Routledge: 1-13.
- Simpson, P. (1990). 'Modality in literary-critical discourse'. In W. Nash (ed.), *The writing scholar: Studies in academic discourse*. Newbury Park, London, NY: Sage: 63-94.
- Sinclair, J. (1981). 'Planes of discourse'. In S. Rizvi (ed.), *The two-fold voice: Essays in honour of Ramesh Mohan*. Salzburg: Salzburg University Press, 70-89.
- Söter, A. O. (1988) 'The second language learner and cultural transfer in narration'. In A. C. Purves (ed.), *Writing across languages and cultures: Issues in Contrastive rhetoric*. Newbury Park, CA: Sage, 177-205.
- Sparks, C. (1999). 'The press'. In J. Stokes and A. Reading (eds.), *The media in Britain: Current debates and developments*. London: Macmillan, 41-60.
- Swales, John M. (1990). *Genre analysis: English in academic and research settings*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Taleghani, A. H. (2008). *Modality, aspect and negation in Persian*. Amsterdam and Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Tirkkonen-Condit, S. and L. Liefländer-Koistinen (1989). 'Argumentation in Finnish versus English and German editorials'. In M. Kusch and H. Schröder (eds.), *Text-interpretation-argumentation*. Hamburg: Buske Verlag, 173-181.
- van Dijk, T. (1980). 'The semantics and pragmatics of functional coherence in discourse'. In J. Boyd and A. Ferrara (eds.), *Speech act theory: Ten years later*. Milano: Versus, 49-65.

- van Dijk, T. (1985). 'Semantic discourse analysis'. In T. van Dijk (ed.), Volume 2 of *Handbook of discourse analysis: Dimensions of discourse*. London: Academic Press, 103-136.
- van Dijk, T. (1995). 'Opinions and Ideologies in Editorials'. Paper presented at the 4th International Symposium of Critical Discourse Analysis: Language, Social Life and Critical Thought. Athens.
- Vande Kopple, W. J. (1985). 'Some exploratory discourse on metadiscourse'. *College composition and communication* 36(1): 82-93.
- Vande Kopple, W. J. (2002). 'Metadiscourse, discourse, and issues in composition and rhetoric'. In E. L. Barton and G. Stygall (eds.), *Discourse studies in composition*. Cresskill and NJ: Hampton Press, 91-113.
- Varttala, T. (2001). 'Hedging in scientifically oriented discourse: Exploring variation according to discipline and intended audience'. Unpublished doctoral dissertation. Tampere: University of Tampere.
- Williams, J. M. (1981). *Style: Ten lessons in clarity and grace*. Boston: Scott Foresman.
- Williams, J. M. (1990). *Style: Toward clarity and grace*. Chicago, London: The University of Chicago Press.
- Winter, E. O. (1977). 'A clause-relational approach to English texts: A study of some predictive lexical items in written discourse'. *Instructional science* 6: 1-92.
- Young, R. E., A. L. Becker, et al. (1970). *Rhetoric: Discovery and change*. New York: Harcourt, Brace & World.

APPENDIX 1

English Sample Texts

The interactional items in all texts have been marked as follows:

UNCERTAINTY MARKERS

certainty markers

repetition (which may be counted as both 'certainty' and 'engagement' markers)

attitudinal markers

engagement markers

'we' referring to third parties

Text No. 1

The Economist, 27 Nov. 2008

Number of Words: 1017

The Mumbai attacks

Terror in India

A dangerous new front-line in the global war against terrorism

1. Terror has stalked Mumbai, India's commercial capital, all too many times before.
2. In 1993 more than 250 people died in a series of bomb attacks, seen as reprisals for the demolition by Hindu fanatics of the mosque at Ayodhya.
3. In 2003, more than 50 people were killed by two car bombs, including one just outside the Taj Mahal hotel, next to the monumental tourist attraction, the "Gateway of India".
4. And in 2006 over 180 people were killed in seven separate explosions at railway stations and on commuter trains.
5. But the latest atrocity—or rather co-ordinated series of atrocities (see **article**)—is something new to the city.
6. It has alarming implications not just for India, but for the entire international fight against terrorism.
7. It differs from most previous attacks in two important ways:
8. in the sophistication of the operation's planning and the terrorist manpower that must have been involved; and in selecting foreigners as targets:
9. hostage-takers **SEEM** to have sought out American, British and Israeli victims.
10. As *The Economist* went to press, the crisis in Mumbai was still unfolding. Hostages were still held, fires still smouldering at the Taj Mahal hotel and occasional gunfire and explosions still to be heard.
11. It was uncertain⁷ who was responsible, though a previously unknown group calling itself the Deccan Mujahideen had contacted television stations to claim credit.
12. **WHETHER OR NOT SUCH A GROUP REALLY EXISTS**, suspicion will inevitably fall on Islamist extremists.
13. Moreover, the tactic—familiar from New York's twin towers to the London Underground—of simultaneous assaults on "soft" targets, designed to kill large numbers of civilians, **SUGGESTS**⁸ an al-Qaeda involvement, or at least that the group has provided an inspiration.
14. This is deeply worrying for India, which until recently thought itself immune from that particular scourge.
15. Introducing Manmohan Singh, India's prime minister, to Laura Bush a few years ago, George Bush REPORTEDLY noted that India was a country of 150m Muslims and not a single al-Qaeda member.

⁷ 'it was uncertain' here seems propositional. The phrase does not convey the uncertainty of the writer but the uncertainty of the case.

⁸ 'suggests' here is 'evidential' and can be considered as 'uncertainty marker'.

Home-grown poison

16. In the past, terrorist attacks in India were routinely blamed on foreigners.
17. This usually meant Pakistan, either as part of deliberate government policy or as the work of rogue elements of the state apparatus,
18. or occasionally Bangladesh, also suspected at times of tolerating terrorist training camps on its soil.
19. But in recent months a series of attacks in Delhi, Jaipur, Bengaluru (Bangalore) and Ahmedabad have been claimed by the “Indian Mujahideen”.
20. Indeed, this group, which the government since **CLAIMS** to have dismantled, had explicitly threatened to carry out “deadly attacks” in Mumbai.
21. India’s Muslim population does indeed look like fertile ground for those sowing hatred.
22. Although **THERE IS A GENERAL IMPRESSION** that the two-decade-long insurgency in Indian-administered Kashmir—the country’s only Muslim-majority state—is in remission, it still festers.
23. Last year the conflict killed more than 800 people. This year more than 30 unarmed demonstrators were killed in mass protests against Indian rule.
24. Tension there is again high as a state election, which separatist leaders want boycotted, is under way.
25. Elsewhere in India, the Muslim minority is economically disadvantaged.
26. A report the government commissioned in 2006 found Muslims across the country faring, on average, worse than the Hindu majority in education, jobs and income.
27. And Muslims have occasionally been subject to hideous communal slaughter.
28. More than 2,000 died in a pogrom in the state of Gujarat in 2002, for which **the perpetrators have never been brought to justice.**
29. **THAT POGROM FOLLOWED ALLEGATIONS THAT** a Muslim mob had been responsible for the deaths of Hindu activists.
30. This highlights one of the dangers facing India now: of a rise in communal tension and tit-for-tat violence.
31. A general election is due by next May, which adds to the risks.
32. One of India’s two biggest parties, the Bharatiya Janata Party, now in opposition, champions the rights of India’s Hindus.
33. Accusing the Congress-led government of being “soft on terrorism” is a campaign tactic it has often used.
34. In this it **MAY** now be constrained by the recent arrest of alleged Hindu bombers, seeking to avenge the attacks by the Indian Mujahideen.
35. But the emergence of that new phenomenon—Hindu terrorism—is scarcely a comfort.

The usual suspects

36. A second danger is that **IF INDIAN SUSPICIONS AGAIN POINT TO A PAKISTANI INVOLVEMENT**, the slow thawing of relations between the two hostile neighbours will revert to the deep freeze.
37. In fact⁹ Pakistan’s new president, Asif Zardari, has been going out of his way—and courting controversy at home—to placate India.
38. He has annoyed jihadists by describing Kashmiri militants as “terrorists” (**as India has long wanted them to be known**).
39. And he has said Pakistan would never be first to use its nuclear weapons.
40. This week **IT HAS ALSO EMERGED THAT** Pakistan’s Inter-Services Intelligence, the spook network habitually blamed by India for involvement in cross-border attacks, has been revamped.
41. Its “political” arm (**previously, in theory, non-existent**) **IS SAID** to have been disbanded.
42. So any official Pakistani involvement **WOULD SUGGEST** that Mr Zardari and his government are not in control.
43. A third danger is one that faces not just India, but the world as a whole:
44. that the attacks in Mumbai mark a serious setback or even turning-point in the battle against al-Qaeda and its clones.
45. The group has been losing ground in some of the Muslim countries where it has been fighting: in Indonesia, for example, where since the Bali bombings in 2002 the extremists have been in retreat;
46. or in Iraq, where the Sunni “awakening” illuminated the resentment many Iraqis felt for the terrorists.

⁹ ‘in fact’ here indicates more ‘certainty’ rather than ‘attitude’. The clause used following ‘in fact’ has been brought as an evidence for the freezing relations of India and Pakistan.

47. Killing fellow Muslims has been the group's biggest mistake.
 48. But countries where Muslims are in a minority **MAY** offer terrorists a better target.
 49. Many Muslims in such places feel marginalised, pushed to the fringes of society.
 50. Attacks there **CAN** provoke a backlash, feeding a sense of Muslim beleaguerment for al-Qaeda to exploit.
 51. This tactic has already worked in places such as Britain.
 52. **IF IT SUCCEEDS IN INDIA**, which has the biggest Muslim minority in the world, the implications for the global struggle against terrorism **COULD** be catastrophic.

Cl. No	EU	Con.	I&RS
9	seem		
12		Whether or not such a group really exists,	
13	suggests		
15			reportedly
20	claims		
22			there is a general impression
29			That pogrom followed allegations that
34	may		
36		If Indian suspicions again point to a Pakistani involvement,	
40			it has also emerged that
41			is said
42	would suggest		
48	may		
50	can		
52	could	If it succeeds in India	
	8	3	5

Table A1.1 Uncertainty markers in text No. 1

Cl. No	EC	R	Attr.
8	must have been involved		
12	inevitably		
15			George Bush ... noted that
20	indeed		
21	indeed		
26			A report the government commissioned in 2006 found
37	in fact		
39			he has said
	5	0	3

Table A1.2 Certainty markers in text No. 1

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
28			the perpetrators have never been brought to justice
	0	0	1

Table A1.3 Attitudinal markers in text No. 1

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
38					(as India has long wanted them to be known)	
41					(previously, in theory, non-existent)	
	0	0	0	0	2	0

Table A1.4 Engagement markers in text No. 1

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.5 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 1

Text No. 2

The Economist, 30 Dec 2008

Number of Words: 1144

Israel's war in Gaza

Gaza: the rights and wrongs

1. Israel was provoked, but as in Lebanon in 2006 it **MAY** find this war a hard one to end, or to justify
2. The scale and ferocity of the onslaught on Gaza have been shocking,
3. and the television images of civilian suffering wrench the heart.
4. But however deplorable, Israel's resort to military means to silence the rockets of Hamas **should** have been no surprise.
5. This war has been a long time in the making.
6. Since Israel evacuated its soldiers and settlers from the Gaza Strip three years ago, Palestinian groups in Gaza have fired thousands of rudimentary rockets and mortar bombs across the border, killing very few people but disrupting normal life in a swathe of southern Israel.
7. They fired **ALMOST** 300 between December 19th, when Hamas ignored Egypt's entreaties and decided not to renew a six-month truce, and December 27th, when Israel started its bombing campaign (see article).
8. To that extent, Israel is right to say it was provoked.

Of provocation and proportion

9. **It is easy to point out from afar** that barely a dozen Israelis had been killed by Palestinian rockets since the Gaza withdrawal.
10. But few governments facing an election, as Israel's is, **WOULD** let their towns be peppered every day with rockets, no matter how ineffective.
11. As Barack Obama said on a visit to one Israeli town in July, "If somebody was sending rockets into my house where my two daughters sleep at night, I'm going to do everything in my power to stop that. And I would expect Israelis to do the same thing."
12. In recent months, moreover, Hamas has smuggled far more lethal rockets into its Gaza enclave, some of which are now landing in Israeli cities that were previously out of range.
13. On its border with Lebanon, Israel already faces one radical non-state actor, Hizbullah, that is formally dedicated to Israel's destruction and has a powerful arsenal of Iranian-supplied missiles at its disposal.
14. The Israelis are understandably reluctant to let a similar danger grow in Gaza.
15. And yet Israel **should** not be surprised by the torrent of indignation it has aroused from around the world.
16. This is not just because people seldom back the side with the F-16s.
17. In general, a war **must** pass three tests to be justified.
18. A country **must** first have exhausted all other means of defending itself.
19. The attack **should** be proportionate to the objective.
20. And it **must** stand a reasonable chance of achieving its goal.
21. On all three of these tests Israel is on shakier ground than it cares to admit.
22. **It is true that** Israel has put up with the rockets from Gaza for a long time.
23. But it **MAY** have been able to stop the rockets another way.
24. For **it is not quite true that** Israel's only demand in respect of Gaza has been for quiet along the border.
25. Israel has also been trying to undermine Hamas by clamping an economic blockade on Gaza, while boosting the economy of the West Bank, where the Palestinians' more pliant secular movement, Fatah, holds sway.
26. Even during the now-lapsed truce, Israel prevented all but a trickle of humanitarian aid from entering the strip.
27. So although Israel was provoked, Hamas can claim that it was provoked too.
28. **IF ISRAEL HAD ENDED THE BLOCKADE**, Hamas **MAY** have renewed the truce.

29. Indeed, on one reading of its motives, Hamas resumed fire to force Israel into a new truce on terms that **WOULD** include opening the border.
30. On proportionality, the numbers speak for themselves—up to a point.
31. After the first three days, some 350 Palestinians had been killed and only four Israelis.
32. Neither common sense nor the laws of war require Israel to deviate from the usual rule, which is to kill as many enemies as you can and avoid casualties on your own side.
33. Hamas was foolish to pick this uneven fight.
34. But of the Palestinian dead, several score were civilians, and many others were policemen rather than combatants.
35. Although both Western armies and their foes have killed far more civilians in Afghanistan and Iraq, Israel's interest **should** be to minimise the killing.
36. The Palestinians it is bombing today will be its neighbours for ever.
37. This last point speaks to the test of effectiveness.
38. Israel said at first that, much as it would like to topple Hamas, its present operation has the more limited aim of “changing reality” so that Hamas stops firing across the border.
39. But as Israel learnt in Lebanon in 2006, this is far from easy.
40. As with Hizbullah, Hamas's “resistance” to Israel has made it popular and delivered it to power.
41. It is most unlikely to bend the knee.
42. Like Hizbullah, it will **PROBABLY** prefer to keep on firing no matter how hard it is hit, daring Israel to send its ground forces into a messy street fight in Gaza's congested cities and refugee camps.

Now cease fire

43. ***CAN Israel have forgotten the lesson of Lebanon so soon?***
44. **Hardly.**
45. If anything, its campaign against Hamas now is intended to compensate for its relative failure against Hizbullah then.
46. With Iran's nuclear threat on the horizon, and Iranian influence growing in both Lebanon and Gaza, Israel is keen to remind its enemies that the Jewish state can still fight and still win.
47. Precisely for that reason, despite its talk of a long campaign, it **MAY** be more receptive than it is letting on to an immediate ceasefire.
48. Its aircraft have already pummelled **ALMOST** every target in Gaza.
49. Further military gains will be harder.
50. A truce now, **IF HAMAS REALLY DID STOP ITS FIRE, COULD BE** presented to voters as the successful rehabilitation of Israeli deterrence.
51. But a ceasefire needs a mediator.
52. Mr Obama is not yet president, and George Bush has so far hung back, just as he did in 2006 while waiting for an Israeli knockout blow that did not come.
53. This time, he and everyone else with influence **should** pile in at once.
54. To bring Hamas on board, a ceasefire **WOULD** need to include an end to Israel's blockade,
55. but that **WOULD** be a good thing in itself, relieving the suffering in Gaza and removing one of the reasons Hamas gives for fighting.
56. After that, Mr Obama will have to¹⁰ gather up what is left of diplomacy in the Middle East.
57. It is not all hopeless.
58. Until this week, Mahmoud Abbas, the Palestinian president, was talking to Israel about how to create a Palestinian state in the West Bank and Gaza.
59. But Mr Abbas presides over the West Bank only, and little progress is possible so long as half of Palestine's people support an organisation that can still not bring itself to renounce armed struggle or recognise Israel's right to exist.
60. Since Hamas is not going to disappear, some way **must** be found to change its mind.
61. Bombs alone will never do that.

¹⁰ The obligation in this clause does not come from the writer but from the existing situation. Therefore, it has not been considered ‘expression of obligation’.

Cl. No	EU	Con.	I&RS
1	may		
7	almost		
10	would		
23	may		
28	may	If Israel had ended the blockade	
29	would		
42	probably		
43	can		
47	may		
48	almost		
50	could be	if Hamas really did stop its fire	
54	would		
55	would		
	13	2	0

Table A1.6 Uncertainty markers in text No. 2

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
11			As Barack Obama said
29	indeed		
38			Israel said
41	It is most unlikely		
	2	0	2

Table A1.7 Certainty markers in text No. 2

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
4	should		
9		It is easy to point out from afar	
15	should		
17	must		
18	must		
19	should		
20	must		
22		It is true that	
24		it is not quite true that	
35	should		
44		hardly	
53	should		
60	must		
	9	4	0

Table A1.8 Attitudinal markers in text No. 2

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
43				Can Israel have forgotten the lesson of Lebanon so soon?		
	0	0	0	1	0	0

Table A1.9 Engagement markers in text No. 2

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.10 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 2

Text No. 3

The Economist, 6 Nov 2008

Number of Words: 1294

America's election

Great expectations

1. Barack Obama has won a famous victory. Now he **must** use it wisely
2. No one should doubt the magnitude of what Barack Obama achieved this week.
3. When the president-elect was born, in 1961, many states, and not just in the South, had laws on their books that enforced segregation, banned mixed-race unions like that of his parents and restricted voting rights.
4. This week America can claim more credibly than any other western country to have at last become politically colour-blind.
5. Other milestones along the road to civil rights have been passed amid bitterness and bloodshed.
6. This one was marked by joy, white as well as black (see article).
7. Mr Obama lost the white vote, **it is true**, by 43-55%; but he won **ALMOST** exactly same share of it as the last three (**white**) Democratic candidates; Bill Clinton, Al Gore and John Kerry.
8. And he won heavily among younger white voters.
9. America will now have a president with half-brothers in Kenya, old schoolmates in Indonesia and a view of the world that **SEEMS** to be based on respect rather than confrontation.
10. That matters.
11. Under George Bush America's international standing has sunk to awful lows.
12. This week Americans voted in record-smashing numbers for many reasons, but one of them was an abhorrence of how their shining city's reputation has been tarnished.
13. Their country will now be easier for its friends to like and harder for its foes to hate.
14. In its own way the election illustrates this redeeming effect.
15. For the past eight years the debacle in Florida in 2000 has been cited (**not always fairly**) as an example of shabby American politics.
16. Yet here was a clear victory delivered by millions of volunteers—and by the intelligent use of technology to ride a wave of excitement that is all too rare in most democracies.
17. Mr Obama showed that, with the right message, a candidate with no money or machine behind him can build his own.

Hard times and a bleak House

18. With such a great victory come unreasonably great expectations.
19. Many of Mr Obama's more ardent supporters will be let down—and in some cases they deserve to be.
20. For those who voted for him with their eyes wide open to his limitations, everything now depends on how he governs.
21. Abroad, this 21st-century president will have to grapple with the **SORT OF**¹¹ great-power rivalries last seen in the 19th century (see article).
22. At home, he **must** try to unite his country, tackling its economic ills while avoiding the pitfalls of one-party rule.
23. Rhetoric and symbolism will still be useful in this; but now is the turn of detail and dedication.
24. Mr Obama begins with several advantages.
25. At 47, he is too young to have been involved in the bitter cultural wars about Vietnam.
26. And by winning support from a big majority of independents, and even from a fair few Republicans, he makes it possible to imagine a return to a more reflective time when political opponents were not regarded as traitors and collaboration was something to be admired.
27. **Oddly**, he **MAY** be helped by the fact that, in the end, his victory was slightly disappointing.
28. He won **AROUND** 52% of the popular vote, more than Mr Bush in 2000 and 2004, but not a remarkable number;
29. this was no Roosevelt or Reagan landslide.

¹¹ 'sort of' seems to be 'uncertainty marker' because it represents an example of an undistinguished 'great power rivalries' and there is an implication of 'aboutness' in it.

30. And though Mr Obama helped his party cement its grip on Congress, gaining around 20 seats in the House of Representatives and five in the Senate, the haul in the latter chamber falls four short of the 60 needed to break filibusters and pass controversial legislation without Republican support
31. **(though recounts MAY add another seat, or even two).**
32. Given how much more money Mr Obama raised, the destruction of the Republican brand under Mr Bush and the effects of the worst financial crisis for 70 years,
33. the fact that 46% of people voted against the Democrat is a reminder of just what a conservative place America still is.
34. Mr Obama is the first northern liberal to be elected president since John Kennedy;
35. he **must** not forget how far from the political centre of the country that puts him.
36. Mr Obama's victory, **in fact**, is **ALMOST** identical in scope to that of Bill Clinton in 1992;
37. and it took just two years for the Republicans to sweep back to power in the 1994 Gingrich revolution.
38. **SHOULD PRESIDENT OBAMA GIVE IN TO SOME OF THE WILDER PARTISANS IN CONGRESS**, it is easy to imagine an ugly time ahead—and not just for the Democrats in the 2010 mid-term elections.
39. America **COULD** fatally lapse into protectionism, or re-regulate business and finance to the point at which innovation is stifled, or “spread the wealth” **(to quote the next president)** to the extent that capital is prudently shifted overseas.

Our mutual friends

40. Mr Obama will not take office until January 20th, but he can use the next ten weeks well.
41. **A good start would be** to announce that he will offer jobs to a few Republicans.
42. Robert Gates, Mr Bush's excellent defence secretary who has helped transform the position in Iraq, **ought to be kept** in the post for at least a while.
43. **Sadly**, Richard Lugar has ruled himself out as secretary of state;
44. but Chuck Hagel, senator for Nebraska, is another possibility for a defence or foreign-policy job.
45. Mr Obama **MIGHT** even find a non-executive role for John McCain, with whom he agrees on many things, especially the need to tackle global warming and close Guantánamo.
46. **Another pragmatic move would be** to announce that his new treasury secretary (**ideally an experienced centrist such as Larry Summers or Tim Geithner**) will start working closely with Hank Paulson, the current one, immediately.
47. Whoever he appoints, Mr Obama will be constrained by the failing economy.
48. He **should not** hold back from stimulus packages to help America out of recession. But he has huge promises to keep as well.
49. He has pledged tax cuts to 95% of families.
50. He has proposed near-universal health care—an urgent reform, as America's population ages and companies restrict the health insurance they offer.
51. He proposes more spending on infrastructure, both physical and human.
52. **BUT IF HE IS TO TACKLE ALL OR ANY OF THIS**, he **must** balance his plans with other savings or new revenues **IF HIS LEGACY IS NOT TO BE ONE OF PROFLIGACY AND DEBT**.
53. He has to¹² start deciding whom to disappoint.
54. Non-Americans **must** also brace for disappointment.
55. America will certainly change under Mr Obama;
56. the world of extraordinary rendition and licensed torture **SHOULD thankfully** soon be gone.
57. But America will, as it **must**, continue to put its own interests, and those of its allies, first.
58. Withdrawing from Iraq will be harder than Mr Obama's supporters hope;
59. the war in Afghanistan will demand more sacrifices from Americans and Europeans than he has yet prepared them for.
60. The problems of the Middle East will hardly be solved overnight.
61. Getting a climate-change bill through Congress will be hard.
62. The next ten weeks give Mr Obama a chance to recalibrate the rest of the world's hopes.
63. He **COULD** use part of his transition to tour the world, certainly listening to friends and rivals alike but also gently making clear the limits of his presidency.
64. He **needs to** explain that, although his America will respect human rights and pay more heed to the advice of others, it will not be a pushover:

¹² 'has to' has not been considered 'obligation marker' because the obligation comes from outside, not from the writer.

65. he **must** avoid the fate of Jimmy Carter, a moralising president who made the superpower look weak.
66. Like most politicians, Mr Obama will surely fail more than he succeeds.
67. But he is a man of great dignity, superior talents and high ideals.
68. In choosing him, America has shown once again its unrivalled capacity to renew itself, and to surprise.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
7	almost		
9	seems		
21	sort of		
27	may		
28	around		
31	may		
36	almost		
38		Should President Obama give in to some of the wilder partisans in Congress,	
39	could		
45	might		
52		if he is to tackle all or any of this	
52		if his legacy is not to be one of profligacy and debt	
56	should		
63	could		
	11	3	0

Table A1.11 Uncertainty markers in text No. 3

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
2	no one should doubt		
39			(to quote the next president)
55	certainly		
63	certainly		
66	surely		
	4	0	1

Table A1.12 Certainty markers in text No. 3

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
1	must		
7		it is true	
22	must		
27		oddly	
35	must		
36		in fact	
41	A good start would be		
42	ought to be kept		
43		sadly	
46	Another pragmatic move would be		
48	should not		
52	must		
54	must		
56		thankfully	
57	must		
64	needs to		
65	must		
	12	5	0

Table A1.13 Attitudinal markers in text No. 3

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
7					(white)	
15					(not always fairly)	
31					(though recounts may add another seat, or even two)	
39					(to quote the next president)	
46					(ideally an experience centrist such as Larry Summers or Tim Geithner)	
	0	0	0	0	5	0

Table A1.14 Engagement markers in text No. 3

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.15 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 3

Text No. 4

The Economist, Sep 4th 2008

Number of Words: 755

Technology and global warming

The world in a test tube

1. From plug-ins to planktonic algae, technology is part of the solution to climate change.
2. **But which technology?**
3. NOTHING about global warming is simple, **alas**.
4. Meteorological models fry the circuits of the largest supercomputers.
5. Feedback loops and anomalies turbocharge an ill-tempered debate about what will happen where and when.
6. And **don't even start** on the politics of negotiating a global agreement on emissions or the intricacies of cap-and-trade.
7. **Unfortunately**, the technology of climate change is no simpler than anything else.
8. A field that **you MAY** think is governed by level-headed, spreadsheet-wielding engineers is alarmingly prone to zealotry and taboos.
9. Climate change is too important and too complex to yield to either.
10. **It is seductive** to think a new technology can solve **your** problems at a stroke.
11. But zealotry has lately suffered a defeat.
12. It used to be an article of faith in the motor industry that hydrogen-powered fuel cells were the green future, and companies spent billions of dollars on the technology.
13. But it turns out that fuel cells have three **Achilles heels** (see article).
14. The first is the **chicken-and-egg problem** that, as there are virtually no hydrogen filling-stations, there are no hydrogen cars—and hence there is no reason to build the filling-stations.
15. Then comes the cost of hydrogen-based vehicles.
16. Just the platinum for the catalyst inside a fuel cell costs as much as an internal-combustion engine of equivalent power, according to a recent study.
17. And producing hydrogen from natural gas creates a lot of carbon dioxide—about double what a small, petrol-based car emits.
18. One day hydrogen **MAY** be produced from the electrolysis of water.
19. But it **WOULD** have to¹³ be transported and stored, which **WOULD** require a new infrastructure.
20. So, for the next few decades, at least, technological pragmatism will rule motoring.
21. More efficient internal-combustion engines will wring out mileage from every drop of fuel, and hybrid powertrains will combine an electric motor with a conventional engine.
22. Soon there will be "plug-in" hybrids, which can be recharged from the mains and call on a petrol-powered generator when needed.

¹³'have to' here has not been considered as an 'obligation marker' because it does not reflect the attitude of the writer, rather it indicates a fact. Also the target of the obligation is not a person but 'hydrogen'.

23. The plug-ins, in turn, are a bridge towards all-electric vehicles.
24. The plan mapped out by the car industry **MAY** not be as technologically elegant as the fuel cell,
25. but it has the merit that it is based on technology that works, is not expensive and can use existing infrastructure.
26. **Fire up** the Bunsen burner
27. Elsewhere, however, the taboos still rule.
28. Nowhere more so than in geo-engineering, the idea of combating global warming by altering the climate by, say, absorbing carbon dioxide in the oceans, or reflecting sunlight back into space (see article).
29. This involves fantastic sounding schemes, such as fertilising the oceans with iron (to cause a bloom of planktonic algae, thus sucking carbon dioxide out of the atmosphere) or ejecting carbon from the poles using lasers.
30. Scientists and policymakers have been reluctant even to discuss the subject—much less research it,
31. because they worry that it **COULD** cause more problems than it solves and that it will give politicians an excuse to avoid curbing carbon emissions.
32. Both fears are reasonable.
33. **The farmer who introduced rabbits into Australia said the bunnies would do “little harm and might provide a touch of home, in addition to a spot of hunting.”**
34. The rabbit went on to become a devastating pest.
35. And the world’s politicians, they **MAY** well negotiate with less commitment **IF THEY FEEL THAT THEY MAY ONE DAY BE LET OFF THE HOOK.**
36. But neither reason **SHOULD** stop research as insurance.
37. Some forms of geo-engineering **MAY in fact** turn out to be easier and cheaper than widespread global curbs on climate emissions
38. —though they **MAY** still be unacceptably risky.
39. Only research can tell.
40. As for the politics, **geo-engineering cannot just be put back in its box.**
41. And because research creates new information, **IT IS AS LIKELY** to disabuse those who think they can avoid climate-change agreements as it is to offer them false hope.
42. **Just ask the people** who have given their lives to the fuel cell.
43. The solution to climate change will **PROBABLY** involve an array of technologies, from renewables, nuclear, carbon sequestration, public transport to energy conservation.
44. **It is too early to say** whether geo-engineering or anything else will be part of this mix.
45. Geo-engineering **MAY** turn out to be too risky, however much is spent on researching it.
46. Then again, there **MAY** come a time when it is needed.
47. The world **needs to** be ready—and research is the only way to prepare.

Cl. No	EU	Con.	I&RS
8	may		
18	may		
19	would		
19	would		
24	may		
31	could		
35	may	if they feel that they may one day be let off the hook.	
35	may		
36	should		
37	may		
38	may		
41	it is as likely		
43	probably		
45	may		
46	may		
	15	1	0

Table A1.16 Uncertainty markers in text No. 4

No	EC	R	Att
16			according to a recent study
	0	0	1

Table A1.17 Certainty markers in text No. 4

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
3		Alas	
7		unfortunately	
10		it is seductive	
37		in fact	
40			geo-engineering cannot be put back in its box
44		it is too early to say	
47	needs to		
	1	5	1

Table A1.18 Attitudinal markers in text No. 4

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
2				But which technology?		
6			don't even start			
8			you			
10			your			
13						Achilles heels
14						Chicken-and-egg problem
26			fire up			
33						The farmer who introduced rabbits into Australia said the bunnies ... hunting."
42			just ask the people			
	0	0	5	1	0	3

Table A1.19 Engagement markers in text No. 4

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.20 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 4

Text No. 5

The Economist, 23 Oct 2008

Number of Words: 1213

The financial crisis

Into the storm

1. How the emerging world copes with the tempest will affect the world economy and politics for a long time
2. For much of the past year the fast-growing economies of the emerging world watched the Western financial hurricane from afar.
3. Their own banks held few of the mortgage-based assets that undid the rich world's financial firms.
4. Commodity exporters were thriving, **thanks to** high prices for raw materials.
5. China's economic juggernaut powered on.
6. And, from Budapest to Brasília, an abundance of credit fuelled domestic demand.
7. Even as talk mounted of the rich world suffering its worst financial collapse since the Depression, emerging economies **SEEMED** a long way from the centre of the storm.

8. **No longer.**
9. As foreign capital has fled and confidence evaporated, the emerging world's stockmarkets have plunged (in some cases losing half their value) and currencies tumbled.
10. The seizure in the credit market caused havoc, as foreign banks abruptly stopped lending and stepped back from even the most basic banking services, including trade credits.
11. Like their rich-world counterparts, governments are battling to limit the damage (see article).
12. That is easiest for those with large foreign-exchange reserves.
13. Russia is spending \$220 billion to shore up its financial services industry.
14. South Korea has guaranteed \$100 billion of its banks' debt.
15. Less well-endowed countries are asking for help.
16. Hungary has secured a €5 billion (\$6.6 billion) lifeline from the European Central Bank and is negotiating a loan from the IMF, as is Ukraine.
17. Close to a dozen countries are talking to the fund about financial help.
18. Those with long-standing problems are being driven to desperate measures.
19. Argentina is nationalising its private pension funds, **SEEMINGLY** to stave off default (see article).
20. But even stalwarts are looking weaker.
21. Figures released this week showed that China's growth slowed to 9% in the year to the third quarter—still a rapid pace but a lot slower than the double-digit rates of recent years.

Blowing cold on credit

22. The various emerging economies are in different states of readiness, but the cumulative impact of all this will be enormous.
23. **Most obviously**, how these countries fare will determine whether the world economy faces a mild recession or something nastier.
24. Emerging economies accounted for around three-quarters of global growth over the past 18 months.
25. But their economic fate will also have political consequences.
26. In many places—eastern Europe is one example (see article)—financial turmoil is hitting weak governments.
27. But even strong regimes **COULD** suffer.
28. Some experts think that China needs growth of 7% a year to contain social unrest.
29. More generally, the coming strife will shape the debate about the integration of the world economy.
30. Unlike many previous emerging-market crises, today's mess spread from the rich world, **largely thanks to** increasingly integrated capital markets.
31. **IF EMERGING ECONOMIES COLLAPSE**—either into a currency crisis or a sharp recession—there will be yet more questioning of the wisdom of globalised finance.
32. **Fortunately**, the picture is not universally dire.
33. All emerging economies will slow.
34. Some will surely face deep recessions.
35. But many are facing the present danger in stronger shape than ever before, armed with large reserves, flexible currencies and strong budgets.
36. Good policy—both at home and in the rich world—**CAN** yet avoid a catastrophe.
37. One reason for hope is that the direct economic fallout from the rich world's disaster is manageable.
38. Falling demand in America and Europe hurts exports, particularly in Asia and Mexico.
39. Commodity prices have fallen: oil is down **NEARLY** 60% from its peak and many crops and metals have done worse.
40. That has a mixed effect.
41. Although it hurts commodity-exporters from Russia to South America, it helps commodity importers in Asia and reduces inflation fears everywhere.
42. Countries like Venezuela that have been run badly are vulnerable (see article),
43. but given the scale of the past boom, the commodity bust so far **SEEMS UNLIKELY** to cause widespread crises.
44. The more dangerous shock is financial.
45. Wealth is being squeezed as asset prices decline.
46. China's house prices, for instance, have started falling (see article).
47. This will dampen domestic confidence, even though consumers are much less indebted than they are in the rich world.
48. Elsewhere, the sudden dearth of foreign-bank lending and the flight of hedge funds and other investors from bond markets has slammed the brakes on credit growth.

49. And just as booming credit once underpinned strong domestic spending, so tighter credit will mean slower growth.
50. Again, the impact will differ by country.
51. **Thanks to** huge current-account surpluses in China and the oil-exporters in the Gulf, emerging economies as a group still send capital to the rich world.
52. But over 80 have deficits of more than 5% of GDP.
53. Most of these are poor countries that live off foreign aid;
54. but some larger ones rely on private capital.
55. For the likes of Turkey and South Africa a sudden slowing in foreign financing **WOULD** force a dramatic adjustment.
56. A particular worry is eastern Europe, where many countries have double-digit deficits.
57. In addition, even some countries with surpluses, such as Russia, have banks that have grown accustomed to easy foreign lending because of the integration of global finance.
58. The rich world's bank bail-outs **MAY** limit the squeeze, but the flow of capital to the emerging world will slow.
59. The Institute of International Finance, a bankers' group, expects a 30% decline in net flows of private capital from last year.

A wing and a prayer

60. This credit crunch will be grim, but most emerging markets **CAN** avoid catastrophe.
61. The biggest ones are in relatively good shape.
62. The more vulnerable ones **CAN** (and **should**) be helped.
63. Among the giants, China is in a league of its own, with a \$2 trillion arsenal of reserves, a current-account surplus, little connection to foreign banks and a budget surplus that offers lots of room to boost spending.
64. Since the country's leaders have made clear that they will do whatever it takes to cushion growth, China's economy is **LIKELY** to slow—**PERHAPS** to 8%—but not collapse.
65. Although that is not enough to save the world economy, such growth in China **WOULD** put a floor under commodity prices and help other countries in the emerging world.
66. The other large economies will be harder hit, but **SHOULD** be able to weather the storm.
67. India has a big budget deficit and many Brazilian firms have a large foreign-currency exposure.
68. But Brazil's economy is diversified and both countries have plenty of reserves to smooth the shift to slower growth.
69. With \$550 billion of reserves, Russia **OUGHT TO** be able to stop a run on the rouble.
70. In the short-term at least, the most vulnerable countries are all smaller ones.
71. There will be pain as tighter credit forces adjustments.
72. But sensible, speedy international assistance **WOULD** make a big difference.
73. Several emerging countries have asked America's Federal Reserve for liquidity support;
74. some hope that China will bail them out.
75. A better route is surely the IMF, which has huge expertise and some \$250 billion to lend.
76. **Sadly**, borrowing from the fund carries a stigma.
77. That **needs** to change.
78. The IMF **should** develop quicker, more flexible financial instruments and minimise the conditions it attaches to loans.
79. Over the past month deft policymaking saw off calamity in the rich world.
80. Now it is time for something similar in the emerging world.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
7	seemed		
19	seemingly		
27	could		
31		If emerging economies collapse	
36	can		
39	nearly		
43	seems unlikely		
55	would		
58	may		
60	can		
62	can		
64	likely		
64	perhaps		
65	would		
66	should		
69	ought to		
72	would		
	16	1	0

Table A1.21 Uncertainty markers in text No. 5

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
21			Figures released this week showed
28			Some experts think that
34	surely		
75	surely		
	2	0	2

Table A1.22 Certainty markers in text No. 5

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
4		thanks to	
8		No longer.	
23		most obviously	
30		largely thanks to	
32		fortunately	
51		thanks to	
62	should		
76		sadly	
77	needs		
78	should		
	3	7	0

Table A1.23 Attitudinal markers in text No. 5

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
	0	0	0	0	0	0

Table A1.24 Engagement markers in text No. 5

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.25 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 5

Text No. 6

New Statesman, 26 June 2008

Number of Words: 730

1. ***Who really holds the country to ransom?***
2. ***Younger readers*** MAY NOT even know the phrase,
3. ***but unions that threatened strike action were once routinely accused of "holding the public to ransom"***.
4. The occasion for a recent rare outing of the cliché (by the head of the TaxPayers' Alliance) was Unison's ballot of 600,000 council workers
5. who rejected a 2.45 per cent pay increase
6. and **COULD** take strike action next month.
7. Those voting to raid the purses of the poor taxpayer included benefit staff, refuse workers, school canteen staff, teaching assistants and cleaners - some of the lowest-paid workers in the land,
8. as Dave Prentis, general secretary of Unison, argues on **our** website this week.
9. Higher-paid (***but by no means highly paid***) local authority employees such as architects, surveyors and social workers **MAY** strike, too,
10. but as many as 250,000 of those balloted earn less than £6.50 an hour.
11. Of these, 75 per cent are women
12. and **we can be sure** that a good many of these wicked "holders to ransom" need tax credits to bring their wages up to a level deemed sufficient to live on
13. (***contrary to the pompous claim in a Financial Times leader that "public-sector pay is already high enough"***).
14. Thus, a single-parent council worker on such a pay rate, with one school-aged child and needing a couple of hours' cheap childcare a day, **WOULD** at current pay levels be entitled to **ROUGHLY** £5,000 in Working Tax Credit a year.
15. ***Does it make sense that workers employed by one arm of government are paid so poorly that they need handouts from another arm of the state simply to reach a government-set standard of living?***
16. **Of course it does not.** But that hasn't stopped ministers wheeling out further old clichés of summers of discontent, wild-cat strikes and inflationary spirals
17. (***as if a 50p-per-hour improvement to the wages of refuse collectors COULD match the impact on inflation of escalating food and oil prices.***).
18. The chasm between government rhetoric and reality **COULD** hardly be wider.
19. **We** have had ministerial platitudes about the deep insecurity that rapidly rising prices visit on all workers,
20. **but nothing from the Treasury or Prime Minister** on the disproportionate impact the increased cost of food and energy has on the poorest.
21. **We** have had **no calls for restraint to City financiers** who this year have paid themselves bonuses of £13.8bn.
22. Hyperinflation is already a reality for most of **us**, whether or not council workers go on strike for a living wage:
23. food prices are up 9 per cent from last year; domestic energy bills 10 per cent; petrol 20 per cent;
24. and the million or so people soon coming off two-year fixed-rate mortgages will be subject to major increases in housing costs.
25. In addition, the value of the pound has fallen by 14 per cent, increasing the cost of imports and prices in the shops.
26. **IF, on top of all that, MILLIONS OF WORKERS LOSE PURCHASING POWER BY BELOW-INFLATION WAGE SETTLEMENT, we** will quickly be in a recession.
27. In such circumstances, ***is it realistic, or even morally acceptable, to call on the lowest-paid not to defend their families' living standards?***

28. There is no shortage of rich people in Britain who **COULD** exercise wage restraint.
29. Public-sector workers cannot,
30. and, while bankers and hedge-fund speculators go unchallenged,
31. **who has the moral authority to ask them to?**
32. Gordon Brown celebrates his year as Prime Minister with a personal rating as low as it has ever been and in a cold economic climate.
33. **We believe** he can fight back
34. and **we particularly applaud** that he is to make a "national crusade" of improving social mobility, which had stalled under new Labour.
35. Public-sector workers are an important target group for such a project.
36. Tony Blair continued a Tory tradition of disdain for public servants such as teachers, social workers and probation officers.
37. Brown **must** break with it.
38. Fighting them will not win him votes from the middle ground,
39. because anything he can do on that front, the Tories will always do better.
40. George Osborne has already made it clear that his response to strike threats will be tougher trade union legislation.
41. For the past decade, the country has been held to ransom, with Labour's blessing, by the richest in society.
42. That is why an appeal to those seeking only a living wage to act for the greater good sounds hollow indeed.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
2	may not		
6	could		
9	may		
14	would		
14	roughly		
17	could		
18	could		
26		If, on top of all that, millions of workers lose purchasing power by below-inflation wage settlement,	
28	could		
	8	1	0

Table A1.26 Uncertainty markers in text No 6

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
4			by the head of the Tax Payers' Alliance
8			as Dave Prentis, general secretary of Unison, argues on our website this week.
12	we can be sure		
16	of course		
40			George Osborne has already made it clear that
42	indeed		
	3	0	3

Table A1.27 Certainty markers in text No. 6

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
16		Of course it does not.	
20			but nothing from the Treasury or Prime Minister
21			We have had no calls for restraint to city financiers
26		on top of all that	
33		we believe	
34		we particularly applaud	
37	must		
	1	4	2

Table A1.28 Attitudinal markers in text No. 6

No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1				Who really holds the country to ransom?		
2			younger readers			
3						But unions that ... "holding the public to ransom"
8		our				
9					(but by no means highly paid)	
12	we					
13					(contrary to the pompous claim ... "public-sector pay is already high enough")	
15				Does it make sense that ... living?		
17					(as if a 50p-per-hour ... of escalating food and oil prices)	
19	we					
21	we					
22	us					
26	we					
27				is it realistic, or even morally acceptable, ... their families' living standards?		
31				who has the moral authority to ask them to?		
33	we					
34	we					
	7	1	1	4	3	1

Table A1.29 Engagement markers in text No. 6

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.30 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 6

Text No. 7

New Statesman, 04 December 2008

Number of Words: 720

1. Why we need whistleblowers
2. This has been the week of the whistleblowers.
3. Nevres Kemal is the social worker in the north London borough of Haringey who raised the alarm about failings in the council's child protection system in early 2007, several months before the death of Baby P.
4. For her bravery and compassion she was dismissed from her job served with an injunction preventing her from speaking publicly of her concerns.
5. Christopher Galley is the Home Office civil servant who leaked details of mismanagement within the department to the Conservative immigration spokesman and MP for Ashford, Damian Green.
6. The information he passed on was of the lowest level of classification
7. but included details of the employment of illegal immigrants, including 7,000 in sensitive security posts.
8. Mr Galley was arrested in a dawn raid on 19 November and held for 17 hours.
9. Mr Green was arrested eight days later.
10. Events tragically vindicated Ms Kemal.
11. Individuals who failed to act on her concerns in 2007 are themselves disgraced,
12. while the then health secretary, Patricia Hewitt, and her ministers, who were warned in writing about Ms Kemal's worries in February 2007, have questions to ask themselves.
13. Mr Galley is a partisan Tory:
14. he has stood as a Conservative councillor and applied to work in Mr Green's office.
15. He was arrested on suspicion of "misconduct in public office".
16. There has so far been no mention of charges under the Official Secrets Act, **SUGGESTING** that the police recognise the leaks were not especially serious.
17. What the cases of Ms Kemal and Mr Galley have in common is the disproportionate scale of the authorities' reaction to concerns raised by staff about their policies.
18. All governments, local and central, **need to** be able to trust their employees to treat sensitive material with discretion.
19. That **MAY** sometimes require enforcing.
20. Without secrecy the government cannot function properly, as demonstrated by the hysterical reaction to the news that it had considered raising VAT to 18.5 per cent in 2011.
21. However, the manner of Mr Green's arrest and his extended detention (**surely intended to intimidate**), the search of his home and the raid on his parliamentary office are all, in different ways, shocking.
22. No member of parliament is above the law. But there are sound reasons for the privileges of parliament,
23. not least that they allow MPs to hold a government to account on behalf of constituents.
24. MPs **must** be able to do this without fear of the arbitrary exercise of power of the executive.
25. **We welcome**, therefore, the appointment of Ian Johnston, the head of British Transport Police, to lead an inquiry into the police investigation of the leaks.
26. **We welcome**, too, the warning from the Leader of the House, Harriet Harman, a former civil liberties lawyer, that the arrest of Green raises serious issues for parliament to consider.
27. An explicit code defining the protection that MPs **should** enjoy is urgently needed.
28. Both **MAY** bring calm to the overblown statements of distress and foreboding of an imminent British police state expressed in sections of the press
29. and allow **us** to focus on an urgent issue.
30. A culture of secrecy remains obstinately central to British politics.
31. This culture assumes that it is dangerous to give the public official information.

32. The Freedom of Information Act was a major step forward and has yielded good results.
33. But it was designed to tip the balance in favour of disclosure and this it has signally failed to do.
34. Outdated civil service attitudes persist.
35. Officials complain they are overwhelmed by FoI requests.
36. **A sensible approach would be** for government agencies to accede to requests as a matter of course.
37. Objecting to disclosure **should** be the exception.
38. The *New Statesman* has supported whistleblowers and their right to disclose information they believe to be in the public interest.
39. That is why **we** supported Derek Pasquill, who leaked information from the Foreign Office about the government's relationship with radical Islamists and ministers' knowledge of CIA "rendition flights".
40. Charges against Mr Pasquill were dropped when it was revealed that senior FO officials shared his concerns.
41. His disclosures had been embarrassing to ministers but not damaging to national security.
42. The same **MAY** prove true of the leaks to Mr Green.
43. Or they **MAY NOT**.
44. But the first question **should** have been asked long before the arrests: **why are these documents secret?**

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
16	suggesting		
19	may		
28	may		
42	may		
43	may not		
	5	0	0

Table A1.31 Uncertainty markers in text No. 7

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
21	surely		
	1	0	0

Table A1.32 Certainty markers in text No. 7

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
18	need to		
24	must		
25		We welcome	
26		We welcome	
27	should		
36	A sensible approach would be		
37	should		
44	should		
	6	2	0

Table A1.33 Attitudinal markers in text No. 7

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
21					(surely intended to intimidate)	
25	we					
26	we					
29		us				
39		we				
44				why are those documents secret		
	2	2	0	1	1	0

Table A1.34 Engagement markers in text No. 7

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.35 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 7

Text No. 8

New Statesman, 17 July 2008

Number of Words: 703

1. Why tough talk on knife crime is not the answer
2. The Youth Crime Action Plan, which has been months in the preparation, was intended to draw a line under the so-called Respect agenda of the Blair years.
3. The Schools Secretary, Ed Balls, wanted an end to the "Asbo culture", which in effect criminalised behaviour previously considered merely antisocial.
4. **It was a brave move**, considering the high priority given in Labour's heartlands to cracking down on unruly youths.
5. The aim was to tackle crime by addressing welfare issues, focusing on children at risk and, where necessary, treating mental health and drug or alcohol issues.
6. The criminal justice system **WOULD** be a last resort.
7. But when a government gets unlucky, it gets really unlucky.
8. The publication of the plan has coincided with a period of intense public concern about the use of knives by young people living in **our** big cities.
9. No volume of statistics to prove that crime is falling is reassuring at a time when images of young people cut down by knives fill the media.
10. **Worse still**, the government so lacks confidence that it has launched its plan emphasising the punitive elements, for fear of attracting accusations of being soft.
11. So, while advocating programmes to support 20,000 families who risk losing control of their children, it also recommends punishing them further.
12. Parents will be legally liable for children who fail to complete community orders (currently about a third of the total) and will face fines, prison and even eviction **IF THEY FAIL TO COMPLY.**
13. **What kind of solution is destitution?**
14. The Home Secretary, Jacqui Smith, deserves praise for making the case for restorative justice, yet it was badly done.
15. There is solid evidence that forcing people to confront the consequences of their crimes is more effective in cutting reoffending than purely punitive measures.
16. A study this month from Cambridge University shows that, under restorative justice, reconviction rates fall by as much as 27 per cent.
17. For those who believe that anything but prison is a soft option, however, the alternatives must be convincing.
18. **It was incompetent of the Home Office** to wait so long before making it clear that those using knives would not be marched to hospital to visit the victims of their violence.
19. Smith's clarification eventually came, but the damage was done.

20. There is deep confusion about crime within the Brown government.
21. The Prime Minister recently boasted of the rise in the prison population (currently 82,000 in England and Wales and 7,700 in Scotland) as evidence that the government **COULD BE** tough.
22. Yet, at the same time, prison overcrowding leads to the early release of thousands of offenders.
23. Experts advising ministers know that liberal solutions are usually the most effective.
24. **This is not to suggest that** violent prisoners **SHOULD** avoid incarceration.
25. Restorative justice can and **should** be used in prisons, too, but prison is not in itself a solution, as David Blunkett argues on page 12.
26. When 70 per cent of prisoners have mental health problems and more than half are drug users **the real question is whether prison is often itself the problem.**
27. There are no easy answers, but there are policies Labour **COULD** adopt now.
28. First, it **should** shelve plans for Titan prisons, a catastrophe waiting to happen.
29. The warehousing of prisoners will solve none of the underlying drug and mental health issues.
30. Studies show rehabilitation works best in smaller institutions.
31. Women and young people **should** be not in prison, but in specialist units close to their homes.
32. Second, [it **should**]¹⁴ put an end to sentences of less than a year.
33. There is a cross-party consensus that prison works only **IF REHABILITATION HAS TIME TO KICK IN.**
34. This **WOULD** increase pressure on the courts and the probation service to make community sentences work.
35. Third, the government **should** adopt a bill being framed by Napo, the probation officers' union, which **WOULD** place a duty on local authorities to combat knife and gun crime.
36. Councils **WOULD** be required to offer sport, music and mentoring facilities as alternatives to street gang culture.
37. Each of these proposals requires large investment.
38. But the social costs of letting the culture of the knife and gun embed itself in **our** inner cities are far higher.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
6	would		
12		if they fail to comply.	
21	could be		
24	should		
27	could		
33		if rehabilitation has time to kick in.	
34	would		
35	would		
36	would		
	7	2	0

Table A1.36 Uncertainty markers in text No. 8

¹⁴ 'it should' has been omitted from the main text. It has been added in the analysis.

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
15	There is solid evidence that		
16			A study this month from Cambridge University shows that
17	must be		
25			as David Blunkett argues
30			Studies show
	2	0	3

Table A1.37 Certainty markers in text No. 8

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
4		It was a brave move	
10		worse still	
18		It was incompetent of the Home Office	
24		This is not to suggest that	
25	should		
28	should		
31	should		
32	[should] put		
35	should		
	5	4	0

Table A1.38 Attitudinal markers in text No. 8

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
8	our					
13				What kind of solution is destitution?		
26				the real question is whether prison is often itself the problem		
38	our					
	2	0	0	2	0	0

Table A1.39 Engagement markers in text No. 8

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.40 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 8

Text No. 9

New Statesman, 09 Oct 2008

Number of Words: 343

1. **We have no imperial right to remake nations**
2. Brigadier Mark Carleton-Smith and Sir Sherard Cowper-Coles sound like the kind of chaps who **MIGHT** have led skirmishes along the North-West Frontier in the days of the Great Game.
3. Their names **MAY** be redolent of *the era when an officer bound for the east set off from his St James's club with a volume or two of Kipling in his trunk*;
4. but this **SHOULD** not make **us** overlook the wisdom of their judgement about the resilience of the Taliban in Afghanistan.
5. The brigadier, Britain's most senior military commander in Afghanistan, and Sir Sherard, **Our** Man in Kabul, both warn that the current strategy will not work.
6. "We're not going to win this war," said Carleton-Smith.
7. Sir Sherard **REPORTEDLY** thinks the approach is "doomed to failure".
8. Given that Britain has suffered 120 military fatalities since 2001, there is urgency in their advice.

9. Some have already dismissed such talk as defeatism.
10. ***But 170 years to the month that Lord Auckland, governor general of India, issued the Simla Manifesto justifying British intervention in Afghanistan,***
11. **it is high time we** learned lessons
12. from **our** long and dismal history in central Asia.
13. The first Anglo-Afghan War ended with the massacre of the retreating British forces in 1842.
14. Only one man, Dr William Brydon, survived out of 16,000 who attempted to reach Jalalabad from Kabul.
15. (***"Where is the army?" he was asked on arrival. "I am the army," he replied.***)
16. Subsequent attempts to impose **our** will on a population with the misfortune to be caught between two empires, those of Britain and Russia, were scarcely less happy.
17. That the Taliban are reactionary and barbaric is not in doubt, **EVEN IF THEY NO LONGER OBJECT TO KITE-FLYING OR FROWN ON A CLEAN-SHAVEN CHIN.**
18. But after Iraq and the continuing conflict in Afghanistan, there **SHOULD** be no less doubt
19. that Britain **should** exercise greater caution before committing militarily to the remaking of nations.
20. "The Great Game", Kipling's coinage, reflected the ambitions of an imperial age.
21. It has no place in **our** discourse today.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
2	might		
3	may		
4	should		
7			reportedly
17		even if they no longer object to kite-flying or frown on a clean-shaven chin	
18	should		
	4	1	1

Table A1.41 Uncertainty markers in text No. 9

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
6			said Carleton-Smith
17	is not in doubt		
20			Kipling's coinage
	1	0	2

Table A1.42 Certainty markers in text No. 9

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
1			We have no imperial right to remake nations
11		it is high time	
19	should		
	1	1	1

Table A1.43 Attitudinal markers in text No. 9

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1	we					
3						the era when an officer bound for the east set off from his St James's club with a volume or two of Kipling in his trunk
4	us					
5	our					
10						But 170 years to the month that Lord Aukland, governor of India, issued the Slima Manifesto justifying British intervention in Afghanistan
11	we					
12	our					
15						"Where is the army?" he was asked on arrival. "I am the army," he replied.
16	our					
21	our					
	7	0	0	0	0	3

Table A1.44 Engagement markers in text No. 9

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.45 'we' expressing third parties in text No 9

Text No. 10

New Statesman, 03 April 2008

Number of Words: 695

1. ***Can we create space for our children to be safe and free?***
2. Hard on the heels of a spate of reports **SUGGESTING** that British children are living through a uniquely awful era in which they are bullied by peers, spend little quality time with parents and are unlikely to live near any safe recreational facilities,
3. along come counter-reports and commentaries saying that, in fact¹⁵, British children are better off, more sociable and cleverer than ever before.
4. ***So is this the best of times or the worst for British children?***
5. The "death of childhood" position was well represented by a *Time* article in the past week entitled "Britain's mean streets".
6. This painted a lurid picture of boys and girls, "fuelled by cheap booze", who "casually pick fights, have sex and keep the emergency services fully occupied".
7. Alarming statistics backed up the thesis.
8. British teenagers were more likely than their European counterparts to fight, try drugs, be sexually active and get drunk.
9. Acknowledging this terrible reputation, the Children's Commissioner, Al Aynsley-Green, is due to address the Institute for Public Policy Research on 7 April on "Unhappy Children", discussing whether Britain really is the worst place to grow up in the developed world, as a much-quoted Unicef report **CLAIMED** last year.
10. The counterposition was well argued by the journalist Fran Abrams in the *Observer* last weekend.
11. Author of a book on teenagers, she drew on her interviews with young people to make the point that on many counts - from childhood safety to crime to educational achievement - British teenagers are **PROBABLY** doing better than in any previous generation.
12. Abrams's more optimistic picture is, **happily**, closer to the daily experience of most parents and children.
13. As Darcus Howe points out on page 23, **shocking though it is** to hear of seemingly casual killings of young black adolescents in London, very, very few teenagers in London are, **in fact**, involved in knife fights and gunfights with their peers.
14. There is not, as some **SUGGEST**, widespread organised gang warfare; the incidents most often turn out to be isolated, if tragic.

¹⁵ 'in fact' indicates contrast; therefore it is more 'textual' rather than 'interactional'.

15. Howe is right, too, to remind **us** that the collective protests and demonstrations of his younger days - so agonised over by commentators at the time - **MIGHT**, in retrospect, be seen as a better outlet for adolescent anger than the small-scale violent flare-ups of today.
16. **How, though, does the government persuade parents that the "mean streets" beyond their doors are not full of feral children waiting to corrupt their offspring?**
17. **And how does it provide places where children both feel safe and will be safe?**
18. An initiative from the children's minister provides one answer.
19. "*myplace*", a £190m programme of play spaces, will provide grants of up to £5m to private and public sector bodies for provision of "world-class youth facilities".
20. Announcing it on 3 April, Beverley Hughes said: "Across the country, young people are calling for more great places to go . . . that offer a real alternative to the 'street-corner' culture."
21. It is, without doubt, something to celebrate.
22. But the government **should** also aim, surely, not to eradicate "street-corner" culture, but rather to make teenage spaces part of the community.
23. The age at which children have "independent mobility" - go out by themselves - is getting higher each year, according to Play England, part of the National Children's Bureau.
24. Streets, housing estates, shopping precincts are dangerous partly because too few young people use them.
25. Projects such as Play England argue that **we** need a fundamental review of the way in which planners everywhere cater for children.
26. The Children Act places a duty on local authorities to consider the needs of children.
27. This **should** become an explicit obligation on authorities to consider their needs in all major planning and transport decisions, believes Play England.
28. The responsibility to provide safe play space for children was well expressed by Lloyd George in a message to the National Playing Fields Association at its founding in 1925:
29. "The right to play is a child's first claim on the community . . . No community can infringe that right without doing deep and enduring harm to the minds and bodies of its citizens."

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
2	suggesting		
9	claimed		
11	probably		
14	suggest		
15	might		
	5	0	0

Table A1.46 Uncertainty markers in text No. 10

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
5			a <i>Time</i> article in the past week entitled "Britain's mean streets"
10			the journalist Fran Abrams in <i>the Observer</i> last week
13			As Darcus Howe points out on page 23
15			Howe is right, too, to remind us ...
18			An initiative from the children's minister provides one answer.
20			Beverly Hughes said
21	without doubt		
22	surely		
23			according to Play England, part of the National Children's Bureau
25			Projects such as Play England argue
27			believes Play England
28			by Lloyd George
	2	0	10

Table A1.47 Certainty markers in text No. 10

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
12		happily	
13		in fact	
13		shocking though it is	
15		Howe is right, too, to remind us that	
22	should		
27	should		
	2	4	0

Table A1.48 Attitudinal markers in text No. 10

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1	we			Can we create space for our children to be safe and free?		
1	our					
4				So is this the best of times or the worst for British children?		
15	us					
16				How, though, does the government persuade parents that the "mean streets" beyond their doors are not full of feral children waiting to corrupt their offspring?		
17				And how does it provide places where children both feel safe and will be safe?		
25	we					
	4	0	0	4	0	0

Table A1.49 Engagement markers in text No. 10

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.50 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 10

Text No. 11

Prospect, No. 153, Dec. 2008

By David Goodhart

Number of Words: 458

1. **For optimists like me**, the financial crash has made for an especially depressing few weeks.
2. With even the most drearily pessimistic speculations being swiftly outflanked by still more disastrous reality,
3. looking on the bright side has been only for the foolish or complacent.
4. But Barack Obama's victory is some kind of silver lining
5. —and, as Michael Lind's essay points out, it **MIGHT** not have happened without the crash.
6. Any residual anxiety about Obama's complexion got washed away by his coolness under pressure (**compared with a flapping McCain**).
7. The elevation of gut instinct over reason that has often marked the Bush years—symbolised by the choice of Sarah Plain—suddenly seemed an unaffordable luxury.
8. When the going gets tough, the world needs someone in the White House who is thoughtful, intelligent and articulate.
9. American liberalism needs Obama's help too.
10. Its unaccomplished social goal is a regulated market economy with a moderately redistributive tax system and a stronger safety net than most Americans now enjoy.
11. Having been knocked off course by the turn to identity politics in the 1970s, and then by Clinton's "liberalism in a cold climate" of the 1990s,
12. liberalism now has another chance.
13. It falls to Obama to write the new chapter.
14. Lind worries that he has surrounded himself with too many (Bill) Clintonites,
15. but this **MAY** underestimate both the extent to which Clinton's New Democrat tradition has been eclipsed, particularly since the 2004 defeat,

16. and how much previously conservative figures like Larry Summers **APPEAR** to have jettisoned orthodoxy.
17. Moreover, in a crisis you need experienced heads and they are, almost by definition, going to be veterans of the Clinton years.
18. The unanswerable question is: **how much political room for manoeuvre will the crisis provide?**
19. There are **ALMOST** twice as many self-declared conservatives as liberals in the US, but that does not mean America is fated to remain forever a "right nation."
20. US leaders like to talk about their country's exceptionalism,
21. but they still have much in common with Europeans and a big crisis **MAY** draw **our** systems even closer.
22. The American dream **MAY** have been politically rebooted by Obama
23. but his country still suffers one of the lowest levels of social mobility in the rich world.
24. Britain is not much better; but the received wisdom that social mobility here has fallen sharply in recent years is half true **AT BEST**,
25. as *I* argue in the article "More mobile than we think".
26. There is still a problem with the openness of the elite,
27. and the rising inequality of the 1980s was **PROBABLY** a drag on general mobility too.
28. But recessions usually cause inequality to decline,
29. so **PERHAPS** a slightly more socially mobile Britain is another silver lining for **we** optimists to look forward to from the crash.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
5	might		
15	may		
16	appear		
19	almost		
21	may		
22	may		
24	at best		
27	probably		
29	perhaps		
	9	0	0

Table A1.51 Uncertainty markers in text No. 11

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
5			as Michael Lind's essay points out
14			Lind worries that
17	almost by definition		
	1	0	2

Table A1.52 Certainty markers in text No. 11

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
1		For optimists like me	
	0	1	0

Table A1.53 Attitudinal markers in text No. 11

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
6					(compared with flapping Mc Cain)	
18				how much political room for manoeuvre will the crisis provide?		
21	our					
25		I				
29	we					
	2	1	0	1	1	0

Table A1.54 Engagement markers in text No. 11

Cl. No	‘we’ expressing third parties
	0

Table A.1.55 ‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 11

Text No. 12

Prospect, No. 145, April 2008

By David Goodhart

Number of Words: 464

1. Big anniversaries call forth big rhetoric.
2. There has certainly been a lot of that to mark the fifth anniversary of the Iraq invasion.
3. **More modestly, we** offer a short history of Iraqi WMD, the famously nonexistent justification for British participation.
4. The story includes the eccentric claims of the WMD true believers, who have not given up hope of finding a smoking gun in the desert.
5. **BUT EVEN IF WMD WERE NOW TO BE DISCOVERED**, there **CANNOT** be many, even among supporters of the war, who **WOULD** consider it retrospective legitimation for a bungled invasion.
6. **PERHAPS the best remaining defence of the war is not that** what **COULD HAVE BEEN** a peaceful liberation was turned into a bloody mess by avoidable mistakes—but rather the opposite,
7. that any removal of Saddam and his Sunni elite, whether from inside or outside Iraq, was bound to mean a violent civil war,
8. and what happened **MAY** have been the least bad way of managing it.
9. Opponents of the war have, of course, been making the most noise during the anniversary,
10. and **understandably** do not consider it necessary to agonise over what **MIGHT** have happened **IF THE TROOPS HAD PULLED BACK AND SADDAM HAD REMAINED IN POWER**
11. —the high costs of action have silenced the merely theoretical costs of inaction.
12. The loudest opponents of the invasion tend to be on the left, yet, **awkwardly for them**, most of the best arguments against action were conservative: deterrence works, national sovereignty should be sacrosanct, security trumps democracy,
13. **we** did not know enough to intervene to good effect.
14. One such "realist" critique of the war—by the American academics John Mearsheimer and Stephen Walt—was published in *Prospect's* March 2003 issue, along with an **editorial** opposing invasion.
15. Three years later Mearsheimer and Walt were at the centre of a storm over their book *The Israel Lobby*,
16. which examined America's Jewish-dominated Israel lobby and its supposed armlock on US middle east policy.
17. **(A piece on this topic by Michael Lind in *Prospect* in April 2002 almost certainly helped prompt *The Atlantic* to commission Mearsheimer and Walt to write the article which turned into the book. Ungenerously, *The Israel Lobby* does not mention Lind's pioneering work.)**
18. **Our** cover story returns to this theme with some good news—in mid-April a new, dovish Israel lobby is to be launched in America to counter the unrepresentative, hawkish views of the existing one.
19. The author of the piece, Israeli historian Gershom Gorenberg, is no fan of Mearsheimer and Walt—he believes they exaggerate the power of the lobby and do not properly grasp how it works—but like them
20. he believes that a new lobby is a necessary condition of progress to a peace deal, **IF AND WHEN ISRAEL AND PALESTINIANS CAN SIT DOWN FOR SERIOUS NEGOTIATIONS.**

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
5	cannot	But even if WMD were now to be discovered,	
5	would		
6	perhaps		
6	could have been		
8	may		
10	might	if the troops had pulled back and Saddam had remained in power	
20		if and when Israelis and Palestinians can sit down for serious negotiations.	
	6	3	0

Table A1.56 Uncertainty markers in text No. 12

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
2	certainly		
9	of course		
17	almost certainly		
19			he believes
20			he believes
	3	0	2

Table A1.57 Certainty markers in text No. 12

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
3		more modestly	
6		the best remaining defence of the war is not that	
10		understandably	
12		awkwardly for them	
17		ungenerously	
	0	5	0

Table A1.58 Attitudinal markers in text No. 12

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
3		we				
13	we					
17					(A piece on this topic by Michael Lind in prospect 2002 almost certainly ... Lind's pioneering work.)	
18		our				
	1	2	0	0	1	0

Table A.1.59 Engagement markers in text No. 12

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A.1.60 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 12

Text No. 13

Prospect, No. 151, Oct. 2008

By David Goodhart

Number of Words: 453

1. Since **we** conducted **our** interview with David Miliband in early September,
2. the torments of Britain's Labour party have been eclipsed by the financial meltdown
3. —one of the few things **we** didn't touch on in a two-hour tour d'horizon (see Jonathan Ford's Opinion piece on the crisis).

4. The deal with Miliband was that **we** would not seek to trip him up or coax out his innermost thoughts about Gordon Brown,
5. and in return he would give **us** his ideas about the big issues of the day.
6. Intelligent politicians are seldom given space to stretch out in this way,
7. and **it was, in the main, a pleasure to listen to him**
8. **(although I could have done without that Blair-era cant about the "need," "want," "can," periods of postwar politics).**
9. He was confident, informed and reasonably open in the face of sometimes sharp questions.
10. Of course, Miliband had his pre-prepared lines and lapses into politician-speak.
11. And there were many things **we** didn't have time to press him on:
12. **my own** regret was ID cards, which must be one of the obstacles to the marriage (**in Miliband's mind**) between liberals and social democrats.
13. Reading back over the interview, **it is striking** how recent Miliband's frames of reference are
14. —he is a post-cold war, post-baby boomer politician for whom time **SEEMED** to begin in the 1990s.
15. Partly for that reason, he does not yet feel like a prime minister-in-waiting.
16. **(One MIGHT say the same about David Cameron.)**
17. In the unlikely event of a coup against Gordon Brown, the beneficiary will surely be Jack Straw.
18. Miliband does not even appear interested in the job at this point—**IF HE WAS**, he **WOULD** have filled **our** television screens during the Georgia crisis.
19. To the extent that he is setting out his stall, it must be for a post-election defeat leadership contest.
20. By then he will have had time to add greater political weight (**and a more lived-in look**) to his intellectual authority.
21. Elsewhere in this—**our** annual British politics special issue—
22. **we** examine two of the Tory party's assaults on New Labour Britain.
23. First, there is James Fergusson's analysis of whether hyperactive liberal interventionism has undermined the "military covenant."
24. Then **we** have Ben Page's dissection of the "broken Britain" story.
25. Page concludes that Britain as a whole is in reasonable shape,
26. but that parts of it are indeed in a mess,
27. **thanks** to the decline of traditional working-class jobs and traditional authorities.
28. **More interesting is** his analysis of why so many people believe Britain is more broken than it is.
29. **IT SEEMS** it is the very success of rich democracies, in creating secure and controlled environments for most citizens, that makes the outside world appear more frightening than it is.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
14	seemed		
16	might		
18	would	if he was	
29	it seems		
	4	1	0

Table A1.61 Uncertainty markers in text No. 13

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
10	of course		
12	must be		
17	surely		
19	must be		
26	indeed		
	5	0	0

Table A1.62 Certainty markers in text No. 13

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
7		it was, in the main, a pleasure to listen to him	
13		it is striking	
27		thanks to	
28		more interesting is	
	0	4	0

Table A1.63 Attitudinal markers in text No. 13

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1		we				
1		our				
3		we				
4		we				
5		us				
8		I			(although I could have done without that Blair-era cant about the “need,” “want,” “can,” periods of postwar politics)	
11		we				
12		my own				
12					(in Miliband’s mind)	
16					(One might say the same about David Cameron.)	
18	our					
20					(and a more lived-in look)	
21		our				
22		we				
24		we				
	1	11	0	0	4	0

Table A1.64 Engagement markers in text No. 13

Cl. No	‘we’ expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.65 ‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 13

Text No. 14

Prospect, No. 154, Jan. 2009

By David Goodhart

Number of Words: 451

1. This is a time for looking back over a memorable year and for speculating about the future.
2. But, **IF ROBERT SKIDELSKY IS RIGHT**, what comes next is not just a new year—it is the start of a new era.
3. The pendulum, he argues, is now swinging strongly away from free markets and the smaller state, as it swung towards them at the end of the 1970s.
4. So far, so conventional, and such trends are already evident in British politics:
5. the increase in tax rates for high earners, the decision not to go ahead with Post Office closures, and so on.
6. But Skidelsky also argues that ideas which until quite recently belonged on the fringes of politics—the idea, for example, that globalisation has done little to increase wellbeing in rich countries—will now have many more mainstream advocates.
7. Speculation about what will happen next to the global economy ranges from just a few fiddles to the financial system to a full-scale return to the third quarter of the 20th century **(with trade still free-ish but finance renationalised)**
8. **or, worse**, the protectionist and violent second quarter of that century.
9. **And what about values?**
10. **Will we see a shift back towards favouring experience and judgement over computer projections?**

11. The ideas of loyalty and commitment, especially in economic hard times, will surely enjoy a renaissance.
12. And this **COULD**, again, be the hour of the liberal nation-state.
13. The crash has blown away the excesses of post-nationalism in finance and in citizenship itself
14. —**it matters again** which set of taxpayers stand behind **your** savings account **IF YOUR BANK FAILS**,
15. and **it matters** that borders are properly controlled.
16. **The trick in all this is** how to depose "Davos man" without destroying the good things about globalisation.
17. An orderly rebalancing of the global economy requires higher wages for Chinese workers,
18. which in turn **WOULD** reduce the temptation to export jobs
19. and make it easier to recalibrate the balance between labour and capital in the west.
20. For a lighter take on global politics, **we** have an interview with the world's most famous pop star, Paul McCartney, proving that it was not just John Lennon who had a political head.
21. In **our** customary "overrated and underrated" review of the year,
22. **we** make **our** own small contribution towards telling truth to power
23. by encouraging **our** writers to be rude about each other and everybody else too.
24. And lastly, everyone loves a Christmas poll, so **we** have one of those for **you**, on the most important global public intellectual of 2008
25. —**you** don't even have to vote because **we** have already chosen the winner.
26. This is one egghead **you WOULDN'T** want to pick a fight with.
27. Please step forward, General Petraeus.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
2		if Robert Skidelsky is right,	
12	could		
14		if your bank fails	
18	would		
26	wouldn't		
	3	2	0

Table A1.66 Uncertainty markers in text No. 14

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
3			he argues
6			Skidelsky also argues that
11	surely		
	1	0	2

Table A1.67 Certainty markers in text No. 14

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
8		or worse	
14		it matters again	
15		it matters	
16		The trick in all this is	
	0	4	0

Table A1.68 Attitudinal markers in text No. 14

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
7					(with trade still free-ish but finance renationalised)	
9				And what about values?		
10	we			Will we see a shift back towards favouring experience and judgement over computer projections?		
14			your			
14			your			
20		we				
21		our				
22		we				
22		our				
23		our				
24		we	you			
25		we	you			
26			you			
	1	7	5	2	1	0

Table A1.69 Engagement markers in text No. 14

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.70 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 14

Text No. 15

Prospect, No. 149, Aug. 2008

By David Goodhart

Number of Words: 483

- Experts used to be the people that **we** turned to for a measured response to the sound and fury of newspapers.
- But on more and more issues—among them climate change and the financial crisis—the experts now **SEEM** more apocalyptic than the commentators.
- Certainly, anyone attending a conference of international relations academics in recent years
- hoping for a balanced view of George W Bush's foreign policy is almost certain to have come away disappointed.
- Our** own coverage of Bush's presidency over the past eight years has mainly reflected that critical consensus.
- But as a parting gift to the 43rd president, **we thought**
- we** would find someone to stick up for the Texan cowboy.
- And who better to do so than the geopolitical provocateur Edward Luttwak?**
- As Luttwak points out,
- the view that Bush's foreign policy has been a disaster is now taken so much for granted by well-informed people, on both left and right,
- that it is usually just stated rather than argued for.
- Luttwak's case for the defence is based on hard-to-measure claims about the success of the mailed fist in combating global jihadism.
- But **EVEN IF HE IS RIGHT**, the conclusion one **MIGHT** draw is that America now needs a kinder, gentler foreign policy to consolidate the respect it has acquired by force.
- Just as Britain needed a Tony Blair to follow the rigours of Margaret Thatcher,
- so America **SEEMS** to be deciding that the inclusive and poised character of Obama is preferable to McCain's peppery one (see Anatol Lieven on McCain).

16. Talking about character leads **me** to one of the new sub-plots in current British politics.
17. Until recently, the idea of good character was associated with Victorian paternalists.
18. But now, according to Richard Reeves, it is the missing link in making liberal societies work.
19. **Our** modern political ideologies were shaped in the 19th century when the importance of character formation was taken for granted
20. —it **SEEMED** obvious to thinkers like JS Mill
21. that freedom **WOULD** send you off the rails unless you were properly raised to defer gratification and behave responsibly.
22. But over the past 50 years, with the decline of religion and the rise of a less judgemental society, many of the agencies of good character development
23. —above all the stable family unit—have been in retreat.
24. This all has a conservative ring to it.
25. But the twist in Reeves's story is that it is the political left that has come to realise that life chances **CAN** be damaged as much by poverty of character as poverty of resources.
26. Indeed, the former often causes the latter, especially in a labour market increasingly in search of the "soft skills" of good character.
27. What the return of character means for policy is less clear, beyond parenting classes for a few.
28. But it is obvious that good societies need good people, and removing the taboo on character talk is a start.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
2	seem		
13	might	even if he is right,	
15	seems		
20	seemed		
21	would		
25	can		
	6	1	0

Table A1.71 Uncertainty markers in text No. 15

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
3	certainly		
4	almost certain		
9			As Luttwak points out
18			According to Richard Reeves
26	indeed		
28	it is obvious		
	4	0	2

Table A1.72 Certainty markers in text No. 15

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
6		we thought	
	0	1	0

Table A1.73 Attitudinal markers in text No. 15

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1	we					
5		our				
6		we				
7		we				
8				And who better to do so than the geopolitical provocateur Edward Luttwak?		
16		me				
19	our					
	2	4	0	1	0	0

Table A1.74 Engagement markers in text No. 15

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.75 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 15

Text No. 16

Spectator, 10 Dec. 2008

Number of words: 975

1. **Help** Purnell
The Spectator on the Government's welfare reform plans
2. **It is one of the oddities of politics that**
3. a Labour government can sometimes get away with announcing policies which, **HAD THEY COME FROM THE MOUTH OF A CONSERVATIVE MINISTER, WOULD** have provoked howls of anger.
4. So it is with welfare reform.
5. Whenever Mrs Thatcher's government proposed to make benefit claimants actually do something for their handouts rather than languish in bedsits in Hastings and Margate, as was the common practice in the 1980s, the resulting rage and charges of heartlessness smothered serious reform — with dreadful consequences.
6. In pockets of the country unemployment has become hereditary, and the idea of working for a living an entirely alien concept.
7. The publication of the government's white paper on welfare reform on Wednesday, then, **OUGHT TO BE** an ideal opportunity to tackle once and for all the culture of welfare dependency.
8. Aside from a few objections from Labour's backbenches the proposals have been welcomed as a concerted attempt to solve a serious problem: **so they are.**
9. **It is only common sense that** claimants of unemployment benefits should¹⁶ have to prove that they are looking for work,
10. and should have their payments suspended **IF THEY DO NOT MEET THIS MINIMAL REQUIREMENT.**
11. **Indeed, it now seems bizarre that** any other view **SHOULD** ever have prevailed.
12. James Purnell, the enterprising Work and Pensions Secretary, deserves credit for his robust approach:
13. he is right to link the wasting of taxpayers' money with the wasting of talent.
14. **It is good to see that** at least one member of Gordon Brown's Cabinet is still taking seriously the task of public-service and welfare reform.
15. That said, **WE HAVE DOUBTS** about whether the white paper is enough in itself.
16. Already, questions have been raised as to the meaningfulness of the new demands which will be placed upon benefit-claimants:
17. it has been suggested, for example, that unemployed parents **MIGHT** be able to satisfy the Department for Work and Pensions that they were embarked on a 'progression to work' merely by showing they had looked up 'babysitting services' in the Yellow Pages.
18. The white paper also only addresses half the problem.
19. The government is never going to end welfare dependency by toughening the rules on benefits alone.

¹⁶ 'should' in this clause and the next one has not been considered 'obligation marker' since obligation arises from 'common sense' not from the writer.

20. This will only ever be achieved **IF WORK IS SHOWN TO PAY**.
21. Too often benefit claimants find themselves caught in a welfare trap, where getting a job will actually make them worse off.
22. **Try** as the government **MIGHT** to force them to look for work, there remains a powerful incentive to stay jobless.
23. Mr Purnell's task has not been made easier by his boss.
24. Gordon Brown's abolition of the 10 pence starting rate on income tax, for instance, has doubled the marginal tax rate for low-income workers.
25. As chancellor, Mr Brown raised national insurance contributions — a straightforward tax on jobs — by one penny in the pound
26. and now his successor proposes to raise them by another halfpenny.
27. Supposed reforms to housing benefits last April have given rise to bizarre cases of unemployed families living in opulence — at a time when the housing crisis for low-income workers has never been greater.
28. In one case, a single mother of seven was found to be living in a seven bedroom villa in Ealing at a cost of £12,458 a month in housing benefit.
29. ***How is the government proposing to persuade claimants like her to go back to work when, by doing so, they know they WOULD make themselves ineligible for housing benefit and join other low-paid workers in the search for an affordable two-bedroom flat?***
30. The government's system of tax credits has hugely complicated the situation for low-income workers seeking casual work.
31. They must¹⁷ now inform the authorities whenever there is any change to their income — which for casual and self-employed workers happens on a daily basis.
32. It is impossible for such people to keep inside the rules — and provides a strong incentive not to seek work.
33. Gordon Brown has always defended tax credits by saying they are a way to target help for needy groups such as families with young children.
34. Yet the same **COULD** be achieved in a far simpler way, without creating a massive bureaucracy:
35. ***why doesn't the government simply raise the tax-free allowance, giving an extra allowance still to parents with young children?***
36. **It is bizarre that we** are taxing families on £10,000 a year, then giving some of the money back — minus a hefty slice for the bureaucratic costs.
37. Low-income workers **should** be taken out of the tax system altogether and given a powerful message:
38. **IF YOU HELP YOURSELF**, you can keep every penny you earn up to £10,000.
39. **The tragedy is that** New Labour began with such apparently good intentions.
40. In 1997, Tony Blair showed he was serious about tackling welfarism by appointing Frank Field, who had been campaigning on the issue for years, to a ministerial job and inviting him to 'think the unthinkable'.
41. He lasted only a year in the job, before returning to the backbenches to carry on campaigning on the subject.
42. As he has tirelessly pointed out, you can't tackle welfarism only by focussing on dole-claimants — or 'job-seekers' as the government has rebranded them.
43. The bigger scandal is the 2.7 million now on incapacity benefit.
44. ***Is it really the case that NEARLY one in ten of the working population is too ill to hold down a job***
45. ***- or is it that the government has created a perverse incentive for claimants to feign illness because the incapacitated automatically qualify for extra benefits, regardless of any assessment of their needs?***
46. Mr Purnell is undoubtedly on the right side of the argument
47. and **it is no surprise that** his proposals have the Tories worried.
48. But one Cabinet minister alone cannot transform a national culture.
49. **IF EVER THERE WAS A TIME FOR 'JOINED-UP GOVERNMENT'**, this is it.

¹⁷ 'must' is not counted 'obligation' marker because obligation does not come from the author.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
3	would	had they come from the mouth of a conservative minister	
7	ought to be		
10		if they do not meet this minimal requirement	
11	seems		
11	should		
15	we have doubts		
17	might		
20		if work is shown to pay	
22	might		
29	would		
34	could		
38		if you help yourself	
44	nearly		
49		If there was a time for 'joined-up government'	
	10	5	0

Table A1.76 Uncertainty markers in text No. 16

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
11	indeed		
42			As he has tirelessly pointed out
46	undoubtedly		
	2	0	1

Table A1.77 Certainty markers in text No. 16

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
2		It is one of the oddities of politics that	
8		so they are.	
9		It is only common sense that	
11		it now seems bizarre that	
14		It is good to see that	
36		It is bizarre that	
37	should		
39		the tragedy is that	
47		it is no surprise that	
	1	8	0

Table A1.78 Attitudinal markers in text No. 16

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1			Help [you]			
15	we					
22			Try [you]			
29				How is the government proposing to persuade ... in the search for an affordable two-bedroom flat?		
35				Why doesn't the government ...to parents with young children?		
44				Is it really the case that nearly one in ten of the working population is too ill to hold down a job		
45				- or is it that the government has created ... regardless of any assessment of their needs?		
	1	0	2	4	0	0

Table A1.79 Engagement markers in text No. 16

Cl. No	'we' expressing Third Parties
36	we
	1

Table A1.80 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 16

Text No. 17

Spectator, 26 Nov. 2008

Number of words: 942

1. Brown bets the farm
2. The Chancellor of the Exchequer's Pre-Budget Report (PBR) was one of the most arresting political events of modern times.
3. The Chancellor of the Exchequer's Pre-Budget Report (PBR) was one of the most arresting political events of modern times.
4. Alistair Darling's delivery was as flat as ever, but what he had to say was truly dramatic:
5. it amounted to a bonfire of the government's own principles of fiscal management,
6. and a colossal bet on the Treasury's ability to issue undreamt-of volumes of government debt.
7. His package of measures was predicated on a bafflingly confident forecast that the recession will be over by the third quarter of 2009,
8. and growth will return to its long-term trend by 2011.
9. And it was constructed on a borrowing requirement of historic proportions, reaching a peak of £118 billion, or 8 per cent of GDP, in 2009-10,
10. and going on to take the national debt above £1 trillion before the moment, beyond not just the next general election but the one after that,
11. when fiscal balance **MIGHT** finally be achieved again.
12. But startling as those borrowing numbers **MAY** become in the medium term,
13. **what really matters about the PBR is** its impact in the short term:
14. whether it achieves Darling's stated objective of making the recession shorter and shallower than it **MIGHT** otherwise have been.
15. That will, of course, be impossible to know precisely,
16. because a great many other factors will impinge
17. — including global factors such as the state of the US economy once the impact of the \$800 billion pumped into the American financial system this week becomes clear,
18. and the Obama administration begins its work.
19. **IF THE RECESSION REALLY DOES PROVE SHORT-LIVED**, Mr Darling and the Prime Minister will claim credit.
20. But **IF THE ECONOMY IS STILL IN DEEP GLOOM AS THE ELECTION APPROACHES**, voters will certainly, and **correctly**, blame them for failing to deliver,
21. and the Pre-Budget Report will be held against the government as the decisive opportunity missed.
22. **So will the gamble pay off?**
23. **We** can at least praise Darling's package of initiatives aimed at helping small businesses, including a £1 billion loan fund, the postponement of some previously announced adverse tax changes, and new arrangements for deferred payment of corporate tax.
24. There were also sensible moves to slow the exodus of British companies to offshore tax regimes.
25. These measures are more significant to businesses today than the distant impact of a 0.5 per cent increase in employers' National Insurance contributions in 2011.
26. But still more important will be the availability of credit on reasonably attractive terms, both to businesses and their customers.
27. This depends in part on expected further cuts in interest rates by the Bank of England's monetary policy committee from 3 per cent **PERHAPS** down to 1 per cent to match the US Federal Reserve's current rate, or even in extremis to 0.5 per cent.
28. Still more important, however, is the fundamental willingness of banks to lend.
29. The government continues to issue propaganda about ordering the banks now under its control to continue lending on pre-recession terms to businesses and mortgage borrowers,
30. but it can only push them so far.
31. Essential to the return to banking as usual is the restoration of faith in the banks themselves,

32. principally through recapitalisation.
33. The nationalisation of RBS, the merger of Lloyds TSB and HBOS, and the raising of new capital for Barclays from the Middle East, are all in different ways highly controversial deals;
34. yet in these extremely febrile market conditions, **it is better that they should** go ahead
35. than that the banks' customers **SHOULD** be left in fear as to what **MIGHT** happen next.
36. The shoring up of **our** financial institutions is more crucial than any temporary tax wheeze.
37. On the consumer front, the temporary cut in Value Added Tax from 17.5 per cent to 15 per cent looks as unconvincing as it is expensive.
38. It will cost the Exchequer £12.4 billion,
39. but many consumers will barely notice it has happened.
40. The prices of many goods, whether on supermarket shelves or offered by online retailers, are so confused by discounting,
41. 'two-for-one' offers and the like that the shopper is hardly likely to respond to a 2.5 per cent cut — **IF INDEED IT IS PASSED ON.**
42. The governor of the Bank of England has said that the change will have little impact until late next year, when retailers can say 'Buy now before VAT goes back up again'.
43. It **MAY** help the profit margins of struggling shopkeepers,
44. but it is almost certainly a less effective way of changing mass consumer behaviour than the alternative, proposed by the Liberal Democrats' Vince Cable, of direct tax cuts for lower-income families.
45. And one of today's most painful household expenses, despite recent price falls, is the cost of fuel for the family car.
46. Yet the government has decided to appease the green lobby by negating the effect of the VAT cut with an increase in excise duty.
47. **The likelihood is that** the PBR measures will do little in themselves to bring consumers out of hibernation.
48. Far more significant will be the general level of confidence, which will be determined by job losses, the perceived safety or otherwise of banks, the state of the housing market and the general grimness of global economic news.
49. The disclosure that the government had (**and may still have**) a secret plan to raise VAT to 18.5 per cent in 2011-12 will scarcely comfort voters.
50. The scale of this gamble is hard to exaggerate.
51. **IF IT FAILS**, Brown will pay a political price, **and rightly so.**
52. But the rest of **us** will carry on paying long after he is gone.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
11	might		
12	may		
14	might		
19		If the recession really does prove short-lived	
20		if the economy is still in deep gloom as the election approaches	
27	perhaps		
35	should		
35	might		
41		if indeed it is passed on	
43	may		
47	The likelihood is that		
49	may		
51		If it fails	
	9	4	0

Table A1.81 Uncertainty markers in text No. 17

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
15	of course		
20	certainly		
42			The governor of the Bank of England has said
44	almost certainly		
	3	0	1

Table A1.82 Certainty markers in text No. 17

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
13		what really matters about the PBR is	
20		correctly	
34	it is better that		
34	should		
51		and rightly so	
	2	3	0

Table A1.83 Attitudinal markers in text No. 17

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
22				So will the gamble pay off?		
23	we					
36	our					
49					(and may still have)	
52	us					
	3	0	0	1	1	0

Table A1.84 Engagement markers in text No. 17

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.85 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 17

Text No. 18

Spectator, 27 Aug. 2008

Number of words: 913

Taxing questions

The *Spectator* on the government's fiscal policy

- Demoralised Labour backbenchers, watching helplessly as their government disintegrates and the prospect of electoral humiliation looms, have at last found a cause to which they can rally:
- higher taxes on the 'super-rich', both private and corporate.
- In the first of those categories, the target is anyone with an annual income of £250,000 or more.
- In the second category, the proposal gathering support not only on Labour benches but also in opinion polls is for a windfall tax on utility companies which have jacked up the prices of electricity and gas so dramatically in recent months, blaming soaring wholesale energy markets,
- yet still have the gall to announce handsome profits.
- Behind this bandwagon — currently driven by the *Guardian's* Polly Toynbee — are two impulses.
- The first is an old-fashioned socialist urge to penalise the allegedly undeserving rich and lash out at the perceived evils of capitalism
- and to use the proceeds to maintain benefits for the poorest segments of society, including, for example, the elderly on fixed incomes who struggle to pay inflated domestic heating bills.
- The second impulse is to do something about the catastrophic state of the public finances.

10. Public sector net borrowing surpassed £19 billion for the first four months of the current fiscal year and **IS LIKELY** to exceed £50 billion by the end of it.
11. With economic growth already at zero and the flow of tax revenues dwindling as slowdown turns to recession, Gordon Brown is set to break all records for debt levels and fiscal deficits before he departs.
12. Growth is not going to solve the problem for him,
13. because there will be very little of it between now and June 2010, the last and most likely date for a general election.
14. To restore the Treasury's balance, either public spending **must** be slashed,
15. or taxes **must** rise.
16. Both impulses are understandable in current circumstances.
17. ***But WOULD penal taxes on the rich and profitable be effective***
18. — ***and what MIGHT an incoming Conservative government do instead to achieve George Osborne's declared twin aims of 'fairness' and sound public finance?***
19. The shadow chancellor has already said that he has no intention of slapping extra taxes on the super-rich,
20. and **he is right to take that position.**
21. Some fortunes amassed in Britain in recent years are well deserved, others less so — but all are highly mobile,
22. and as with the tax grab on non-doms, the net result of a swingeing tax on top earners **COULD** well turn out to be a net loss to the Treasury as the wealthy shift themselves, their cash, their businesses and their investment portfolios abroad.
23. In the recovery phase after the downturn, Britain will need entrepreneurs and venture capitalists more than ever:
24. now is not the time to drive them away.
25. As for one-off, retrospective windfall taxes
26. — previously deployed in Margaret Thatcher's first term against high-street banks accused of profiting too well in the early 1980s recession, and by the incoming Blair government against privatised utilities —
27. they are plainly unsatisfactory in principle.
28. ***Who is to say what constitutes 'excess' profit in today's heavily regulated energy industry, in which no one can predict with certainty where input prices will stand in a few months' time, and which is being asked to invest £100 billion in new nuclear and other generating capacity over the next 15 years?***
29. The bulk of that investment **IS LIKELY** to come from French, German and other foreign utility companies:
30. again, ***why threaten them with tax disincentives when they have a world of other investment possibilities to choose from?***
31. ***But if these are bad ideas, where are the good ones?***
32. First and foremost, **what is needed is** an all-out attack on wasteful public spending.
33. That **MAY** be anathema to Gordon Brown,
34. but the Conservatives **must** have a detailed plan, to be executed as soon as they come to power, to rationalise NHS bureaucracy, to disband Labour's grossly unproductive structures of regional government, radically to simplify the Brownian paraphernalia of tax credits for poorer families and red tape for businesses, and to find ways to encourage a portion of the welfare-dependent population back into economic activity.
35. No one has yet put a figure on the annual savings that **MIGHT** be achieved without harming frontline public services,
36. but it is certainly a big number.
37. As for personal tax rates, the clear long-term aim **should** be to bring them down in line with a reduction in the scale of the state they have to pay for.
38. The Tories **must** make it crystal clear that this is their strategic objective.
39. **Equally**, the state of the public finances means that Mr Osborne's room for manoeuvre in this area of fiscal policy will be narrow in the short term.
40. On the other hand, **it would be good politics and good economics** to declare now that an incoming Conservative government will reduce business taxes in order to boost growth and maintain Britain's global competitiveness.
41. And **it would make sense** to offer increased tax incentives for personal savings
42. — currently at a dangerously low ebb, but vital to individual wellbeing in old age, to the funding through bank deposits of the currently moribund mortgage-lending system, and to overall investment in the economy.

43. **BY COMMON ACCORD**, Britain faces the most difficult economic circumstances for a generation or more.
44. Very tough decisions are required, **IF NOT FROM THIS FAILING GOVERNMENT, THEN FROM ITS EXPECTED CONSERVATIVE SUCCESSOR**.
45. But knee-jerk socialist tax attacks on capitalism are simply not the answer.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
10	is likely		
17	would		
18	might		
22	could		
29	is likely		
33	may		
35	might		
43			by common accord
44		if not from this failing government, then from its expected Conservative successor	
	7	1	1

Table A1.86 Uncertainty markers in text No. 18

No	EC	R	Att
19			The shadow chancellor has already said
36	certainly		
	1	0	1

Table A1.87 Certainty markers in text No. 18

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
14	must		
15	must		
20	he is right to take that position		
32	what is needed is		
34	must		
37	should		
38	must		
39		equally	
40	it would be good politics and good economics		
41	it would make sense		
	9	1	0

Table A1.88 Attitudinal markers in text No. 18

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
17				But would penal taxes on the rich and profitable be effective		
18				and what might and incoming Conservative government do ... public finance?		
28				Who is to say what constitutes 'excess' profit ... over the next 15 years?		
30				why threaten them with tax disincentives ... to choose from?		
31				But if these are bad ideas, where are the good ones?		
	0	0	0	5	0	0

Table A1.89 Engagement markers in text No. 18

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.90 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 18

Text No. 19

The Spectator, 19 Nov. 2008

Number of words: 1045

A child of our time

1. From the economic and psychological bedlam of the global downturn has emerged a particularly dangerous false dichotomy: namely, that there is somehow a choice for ministers over the next few years between economic reconstruction and the repair of Britain's broken society, and that the government (***whether Labour or Conservative***) must prioritise the former at the expense of the latter.
2. From the economic and psychological bedlam of the global downturn has emerged a particularly dangerous false dichotomy: namely, that there is somehow a choice for ministers over the next few years between economic reconstruction and the repair of Britain's broken society, and that the government (***whether Labour or Conservative***) must prioritise the former at the expense of the latter.
3. One of the many ghastly lessons to be drawn from the tragic case of Baby P is that this is a bogus distinction.
4. As recession bites and social breakdown is compounded by the spread of indigence and its foul sibling, hopelessness, many more such children will be at risk.
5. What has been conspicuously lacking at every stage of this terrible story has been a sense of urgency.
6. This is not to be confused with panic.
7. Where the welfare of children is concerned, society and the state have duties of care which far exceed the routine implementation of bureaucratic and legal procedure.
8. The workaday language and methods of officialdom are not equal to the task.
9. This week a dossier shown to the jury during the Old Bailey trial of Baby P's mother was made public, cataloguing 78 separate occasions on which the child was seen by health visitors, doctors and social workers in Haringey, north London (***a total of 28 experts***).
10. **It is particularly extraordinary** that a paediatrician (***ALLEGEDLY***) could¹⁸ have failed to notice that this wretched infant had eight broken ribs and a broken spine only days before his death.
11. Moral outrage at this saga is not only legitimate but the only appropriate response.
12. Those who insist that this is a moment for cool heads and something called 'perspective' miss the point spectacularly.
13. The whole problem in this case was the disinclination of the professionals involved to do anything which smacked of 'over-reaction'.
14. On 30 July 2007, four days before the 999 call that led to Baby P being pronounced dead, the social worker Maria Ward was still taking the mother's side, recording that 'she is feeling stressed by accusations of harming the baby'.
15. In that short sentence one sees one of the most deplorable pathologies of modern life:
16. namely, that the avoidance of 'stress' to an adult takes primacy over all else, including, as it turned out, the survival of a child.
17. ***Why did it take the leader of Haringey council, Councillor George Meehan, until Tuesday to issue a 'heartfelt and unreserved' apology?***
18. The government's response, too, has been generally and disappointingly antiseptic.
19. In the Commons this week Ed Balls, the Secretary of State for Children, was asked by his Conservative shadow, Michael Gove, about Nevres Kemal, the whistleblower who warned ministers of the failures of Haringey's Children Service's Department six months before Baby P's death.
20. Mr Balls's response is worth quoting at length¹⁹:
21. 'A letter came from a lawyer for a former employee of Haringey, which went to the Department of Health. It was passed to the former Department for Education and Skills. It was not seen by Ministers. It was handled in the normal way through official channels. At that time, a reply was written to the lawyer to say that Ministers could not be involved in a particular employment case and that the right way to take the matter forward was through the social care inspectorate. That was done by the lawyer, and that process was followed up by a meeting in which the inspectorate confirmed that it was content that things had been done properly by Haringey in that case. On the wider issue of Haringey social

¹⁸ 'could' is more to do with 'extraordinary' than 'uncertainty'.

¹⁹ 'is worth quoting at length' is integrated in the clause and is not separate; therefore, it has not been considered as 'Attitudinal Marker'.

services, there was a review in 2006, and a further review by Ofsted in 2007, which gave a good report.’

22. Mr Balls is a decent and humane man,
23. but this answer was a depressing litany of political evasion, cold bureaucratic language and ministerial buck-passing.
24. There was no sense whatsoever of collective contrition or the abject failure of those that govern **us**, at national and local level, to perform their most fundamental duty: the protection of the most vulnerable.
25. Still more objectionable are²⁰ the protests of those who argue that this case can only be properly understood in statistical context.
26. In Tuesday’s Guardian, Polly Toynbee attacked the supposed ‘frenzy of media hate’ which, she said, verged on ‘lynch mob incitement’.
27. She urged readers to take comfort that ‘surprisingly few children are murdered’ and ‘the number of children killed has fallen steadily — down 50 per cent in England and Wales since the 1970s... Britain was fourth-worst among Western nations in the 1970s. Now it is among the best: only four countries have fewer child murders per million. Compare America, where child murders have risen by 17 per cent since the 1970s.’
28. The recitation of such numbers is not consoling, but the opposite.
29. It is a classic instance of the public sector mindset, in which statistics and targets so often conceal more than they reveal.
30. Haringey Council is obsessed by ‘measuring impacts’.
31. But none of its procedures made a jot of difference to the short and agonised life of Baby P.
32. At Prime Minister’s Questions last week, Gordon Brown accused David Cameron of ‘making a party political issue of this matter’.
33. **In fact**, the Conservative leader, visibly shaken and outraged by the case, was merely speaking for the country and performing his constitutional duty to hold the government to account.
34. Mr Balls has sent a ‘hit squad’ into Haringey to take over its social services;
35. reviews of varying scope are being carried out by Ofsted, the Healthcare Commission, the Chief Inspector of Constabulary and Lord Laming.
36. When they report, **we will doubtless be told**: ‘Never again.’
37. **The same was said after the death of Victoria Climbié eight years ago.**
38. New procedures, however rigorous, will not be enough.
39. **What matters much more than the rules themselves is** that they be underpinned by a sense of social responsibility, collective shame and untrammelled urgency.
40. **Will they?**

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
10			allegedly
	0	0	1

Table A1.91 Uncertainty markers in text No. 19

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
9			was made public
14			Maria Ward was still taking the mother’s side, recording that ...
20			Mr Ball’s response
26			she said
27			She urged readers to take comfort that
32			Gordon Brown accused David Cameron of ...
36	we will doubtless be told		
	1	0	6

Table A1.92 Certainty markers in text No. 19

²⁰ ‘Still more objectionable are’ is a thematised proposition and has not been considered ‘Attitudinal Marker’.

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
10		It is particularly extraordinary that	
33		in fact	
39		What matters much more than the rules is	
	0	3	0

Table A1.93 Attitudinal markers in text No. 19

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1					(whether labour or conservative)	
2					(whether labour or conservative)	
9					(a total of 28 experts)	
17				Why did it take the leader of Haringey council, ... apology?		
24	us					
36	we					
37						The same was said after the death of Victoria Climbié eight years ago.
40				Will they?		
	2	0	0	2	3	1

Table A1.94 Engagement markers in text No. 19

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.95 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 19

Text No. 20

The Spectator, 23 July 2008

Number of words: 947

- Must** Try Harder
The Spectator on the Sats fiasco
- The wonder of the National Curriculum Tests marking scandal is that** it has taken a decade for the inadequacies of the school exam system to become widely known.
- As Liz Brocklehurst, a former exam marker, reveals in this issue (see page 21), the exam system has been in crisis since being politicised in David Blunkett's days as education secretary.
- For ten years, markers have been put under pressure to interpret answers in a bizarrely over-generous fashion,
- even to the point of marking obviously wrong answers as correct.
- Little has been revealed about such practices
- because the markers have been sworn to secrecy.
- As the results got better and better, allowing the government to crow about how it had raised education standards,
- ministers attempted, often successfully, to stifle criticism by claiming any attack on the examination system was an attack on the hard efforts of the pupils themselves.
- This year there is no way that Ed Balls, the current Education Secretary, can get away with that ruse.
- It isn't critics of the exam system who are insulting the intelligence of children, it is the exam system itself.**

12. Over a million children will end the school year this week knowing their hard work in Standardised Assessment Tests (Sats) has been put through the mangle of an incompetent marking operation.
13. No amount of patronising congratulation by Mr Balls or anyone else will make up for the fact that,
14. as revealed by one disgusted headmistress last week,
15. imaginative, literate children have in some instances been awarded fewer marks in their Standard Assessment Tests than children who have yet to master basic spelling and grammar.
16. Much of the blame **CAN** be laid at the door of ETS, the US company last year awarded a £156 million five-year contract.
17. **But it is a sign of a decaying government that** the ponderous Mr Balls **APPEARS** to think he can sit aloof from the crisis, seeing it as a private matter between ETS and the Qualifications and Curriculum Authority.
18. Education secretaries have always been accountable for schools and exams.
19. The fact that the business of organising exams has been devolved to a quango does not change that.
20. Ministers **cannot** claim the credit when all goes well, but then attempt to hide behind their quangos when things go badly.
21. **IT IS NOT YET CLEAR** how much the marking fiasco will cost taxpayers,
22. though ETS itself is convinced it will be due compensation **IF DEPRIVED OF THE REMAINING FOUR YEARS OF ITS CONTRACT.**
23. ***What was the Qualifications and Curriculum Authority doing when it awarded such a long deal?***
24. The public sector likes to think of itself nowadays as businesslike,
25. but no real business **WOULD** allow itself to be talked into giving such a large contract for so many years without a get-out clause in case the service proved unsatisfactory.
26. The exams fiasco has many hallmarks of the botched Private Finance Initiative (PFI) deals,
27. where the government has managed to tie itself to school and hospital catering contracts lasting 30 years — a period which **WOULD** be unthinkable in the private sector.
28. As for the choice of contractor, **HAD OFFICIALS SIMPLY LOOKED UP ETS ONLINE** they **WOULD** have discovered a record of problems with its exam services:
29. in 2006 the company was ordered to pay £5.5 million in compensation after bungling tests for 4,000 trainee teachers.
30. ***What is the point of the Qualifications and Curriculum Authority if it is neither going to set exams itself nor undertake due diligence when contracting out the work to private companies?***
31. Teaching unions, **predictably enough**, have exploited the marking fiasco to demand an end to national tests for 11- and 14-year-olds.
32. **We are not of that view:**
33. **it is nonsense** to argue, as some teachers do, that children will end up as nervous wrecks **IF SUBJECTED TO TESTING**
34. — Ed Balls **APPEARED** to believe this himself when he suggested recently that Sats should somehow be disguised so that 11-year-olds were unaware they were being tested.
35. That said, Sats as they stand are highly unsatisfactory.
36. ***Why, IT MIGHT WELL BE ASKED, has the government committed itself to the testing and grading of 11-year-olds when it is so strongly opposed to allowing academic selection at that age?***
37. Children are being put through Sats tests not for their own benefit but for the benefit of state bureaucrats, who need data to crunch.
38. Sats results are used in schools admissions, but in a bizarre fashion.
39. Schools are now being encouraged to select their pupils through a quota system linked to ability bands:
40. it allocates so many places from the top-performing group, so many from the next group and so on.
41. The perverse result is that an 11-year-old who performs well in his Sats **MIGHT** be doing himself a disservice:
42. by entering a high-ability band he **MIGHT** miss out on the chance to attend his top-choice school.
43. Sats **should** be replaced with basic literacy and numeracy exams which can be taken at any age, as soon as pupils are ready, whether it be at age eight or 18.
44. Unlike Sats, these **WOULD** serve as a useful qualification:
45. for an eight-year-old it **COULD** lead to education in a faster stream;

46. for an 18-year-old it **COULD** lead to a job.
47. **The tragedy of the current system is that** even when the marking is accurate **it doesn't really test pupils; it tests schools.**
48. The reward for pupils who do well is to see their headteacher get a pat on the back.
49. As for the children themselves, they **MIGHT** as well have spent the time broadening their education:
50. something which tends to get lost while children are being endlessly drilled to pass pointless tests.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
16	can		
17	appears		
21	It is not yet clear		
22		if deprived of the remaining four years of its contract	
25	would		
27	would		
28	would	had officials simply looked up ETS online	
33		if subjected to testing	
34	appeared		
36	it might well be asked		
41	might		
42	might		
44	would		
45	could		
46	could		
49	might		
	14	3	0

Table A1.96 Uncertainty markers in text No. 20

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
3			As Liz Brocklehurst ... reveals
14			as revealed by one disgusted headmistress
34			he suggested
	0	0	3

Table A1.97 Certainty markers in text No. 20

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
1	must		
2		The wonder of the National Curriculum Tests marking scandal is that	
11			It isn't critics of the exam system who are insulting the intelligence of children, it is the exam system itself.
17		it is a sign of a decaying government that	
20	cannot		
31		predictably enough	
32		we are not of that view	
33		it is nonsense	
43	should		
47		The tragedy of the current system is that	it doesn't really test pupils; it tests schools.
	3	6	2

Table A1.98 Attitudinal markers in text No. 20

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
23				What was the Qualification and Curriculum Authority doing when it awarded such a long deal?		
30				What is the point of the Qualifications ... to private companies?		
32	we					
36				Why, it might well be asked, has the government committed itself ... at that age?		
	1	0	0	3	0	0

Table A1.99 Engagement markers in text No. 20

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A1.100 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 20

APPENDIX 2

Persian Sample Texts

Text No. 21

Cheshmandaz-e Iran, No 52, Aban - Azar 1387 (Oct. – Dec. 2008)

By: Lotfollah Meisami

Number of Words: 1218

1. qânun garâyi, pâsox-i be çe **bâyad** kard
law abiding, answer-a to what **must** do-3SG
Law-abiding: an answer to what **must** be done
2. FARZ-E **MÂ BAR IN AST** ke jâme'e-ye Irân vasi'tar az nezâm-e
ASSUMPTION-EZ WE TO THIS BE-3SG that society-EZ Iran larger than system-EZ

Jomhuri-e Eslâmi va nezâm ham vasi'tar az dolat ast.
Republic-EZ Islamic and system also larger of government be-3SG.
OUR ASSUMPTION IS that the Iranian society is larger than the Islamic Republic system, and
the Islamic Republic system is larger than the government.
3. banâ bar in bâ tavajoh be masâ'eli ke dar jâme'e, nezâm va dolat
based on this with attention to issues that in society, system and government

mi-gozaar-ad
DUR-pass-3SG
4. harke mi-ây-ad va âmâde-ye xedmatgozari mi-šav-ad,
whoever DUR-come-3SG and ready-EZ serving DUR-becom-3SG.,
5. **bâyad** barâ-ye nejât-e jâme'e bi-ây-ad
must for-EZ saving-EZ society SUBJ-come.3SG
6. va jenâhbandi-hâ **kenâr gozâšt-e šav-ad.**
and wing prejudice-PLU **aside put-PART SUBJ-become-3SG.**
3-6:
Therefore, considering the issues in the society, the system and the government, whoever
comes, becomes president, and is ready to serve, **must** save the society, and **must** put
aside wing prejudices.
7. masâel-i dar jâme'e-ye **mâ** mi-gozaar-ad ke tâ konun be in šeddat
problem-some in society-EZ **we** DUR-happen-3SG that till now to this intensity

va heddat did-e na-šod-e,
and strength see-PART not-become-PART,
8. mânand-e fahšâ, e'tiâd, biâtiyegi-e javân-ân, moškel-e ezdevâj
like-EZ prostitution, addiction, aimlessness-EZ young-PLU, problem-EZ marriage

va maskan, gerâni, qânun gorizi, gosixtegi, delmordegi va ...
and housing, inflation, law escaping, rupture, despair and ...
7-8:
There are some problems in **our** society which have never been so tense and strong before,
like prostitution, addiction, aimlessness of the young, marriage and housing problems,
inflation, offence, rupture, despair and ...
9. dovvom ân ke harkas mi-ây-ad **bâyad** be yek asl tavajoh dâšt-e
second it that whoever DUR-come-3SG **must** to one principle attention had-PART

bâš-ad
SUBJ-have-3SG.

10. ke yek enqelâb-e šokuhmand-i dar Irân šod
that one revolution-EZ glorious-a in Iran become-PAST-3SG
11. ke in enqelâb tohidi, Eslâmi va mardomi bud-e
that this revolution divine, Islamic and people-oriented been-PART
12. va 98.2 dar sad be ân ra'y dâd-and
and 98.2 per cent to it vote give-3-PAST-3PLU
13. va naxostin samare-ye ân, Qânun-e Asâsi-e Jomhuri-e Eslâmi bud-e ast.
and first fruit-EZ it, Constitution-EZ Rrepublic-EZ Islamic been-PART be-3SG.
9-13:
Second, whoever comes [becomes president], **must** pay attention to the fact that a glorious revolution happened in Iran which was divine, Islamic and people-oriented. 98.2 per cent of people voted for it, and its first outcome was the Constitution of Islamic Republic.
14. in Qânun-e Asâsi maqbuliyyat va mašru'iyat dâr-ad.
this Constitution acceptability and legitimacy have-3SG.
This Constitution is acceptable and legitimate.
15. mašru'iyat-e ân be in ma'nâ-st ke te'dâd-e ziâdi marâje' va
legitimacy-EZ it to this meaning-be-3SG that number-EZ many clerics and
mojtahed-ân-e jâme'ošrâyet ân râ emzâ kard-e-and
clergies-PLU-EZ fully qualified it ACC sign do-PART-3PLU
16. va be lahâz-e maqbuliyyat ham se bâr be râ'y-e mardom gozâšt-e
and to aspect-EZ acceptability also three time to vote-EZ people put-PART
šo-d-e
become.3SG-PART
17. va sanad-e vefâq-e melli ast
and proof-EZ unity-EZ national be-3SG
18. va **mâ** sanad-i behtar az qânun na-dâr-im,
and **we** proof-a better from law not-have-1PLU,
19. garče adam-e ensejâm-hâ-yi dâr-ad
although without-EZ consistency-PLU-some have-3SG
20. vali dar ravâbet-e mojud, tajdid-e nazar dar ân behtar na-xâh-ad šod
but in relationships-EZ present, revising idea in it better not-will-3SG become
ke xod dalâyel-e mostaqeli mi-talab-ad.
that self reasons-3SG separate DUR-need-3SG.
15-20:
Its legitimacy means many fully qualified clerics and clergies have signed it, and its acceptability means it has been put to vote three times and is a proof of the national unity, and **we** don't have a better proof than law. Although it has some inconsistencies, revising it at the present situation will not make it better. This needs a separate discussion.
21. qânun garâyi mi-tavân-ad do qotbi kardan-e kâzeb-e miyân-e osul garâyi
law abiding DUR-can-3SG bipolar making-EZ false-EZ between-EZ fundamentalism
va eslâh talabi râ hal kon-ad,
and reformism ACC solve SUBJ-make-3SG,
22. čerâke **mâ** osuli behtar az Qânun-e Asâsi na-dâr-im
because **we** principles better from Constitution not-have-1PLU

23. va be gofte-ye Emâm Khomeini (r.h.) bar sar-e osul miyân-e
and to saying-EZ Imam Khomeini (p.b.u.h.) on head- EZ principles between-EZ
- foqahâ elâ mâšâ'allâh extelâf ast.
clerics to eternity disagreement be-3SG.
21-23:
Law abiding can solve bipolarity between fundamentalists and reformists because **we** do not have any principles better than Constitution and, according to Imam Khomeini (p.b.u.h.), there is an endless disagreement on principles among clerics.
24. Doktor Hasan Sobhâni dar in râbete mi-guy-ad osul garayi hamân
Doctor Hasan Sobhâni in this connection DUR-say-3SG fundamentalism same
- qânun garâyi ast. (Češmandâz-e Irân, Šomâre-ye 51)
law abiding be-3SG. (Cheshmandaze Iran, Number 51)
In this connection, Dr Hasan Sobhani says fundamentalism is the same as law-abiding (Cheshmandaze Iran, No. 51).
25. az suy-i eslâh talabi ham hamân ehyâ-ye mavâred-e tasrih šod-e dar
from side-a reformism also same reviving-EZ cases-EZ specified become-PART in
- Qânun-e Asâsi ast.
Constitution be-3SG.
On the other hand, reformism is reviving the specified cases in the Constitution.
26. ânče dar zamân-e Seyed Mohamad Xâtami etefâq oft-âd
what in time-EZ Seyed Mohamad Khatami happening fall-PAST-3SG
27. hamânand-e 4 bâr entexâb-ât-e refrendom gune, efšâ-ye qatl-hâ-ye
like-EZ 4 time election-PLU-EZ referendum like, uncovering-EZ murder-PLU-EZ
- zanjirei, ehyâ-ye entexâb-ât-e šurâ-hâ, man'-e motlaq-e šekanje,
chain, reviving-EZ election-PLU-EZ council-PLU, banning-EZ absolute-EZ torture,
- âzâdi-e bayân va gostareš va nahâdine šodan-e matbu'-ât, jodâ
freedom-EZ speech and developing and radicalising become-EZ media-PLU, separate
- kardan-e šerkat-hâ-ye eqtesâdi az vezârat-e ettelâ'ât, hame va
making-EZ company-PLU-EZ economical from ministry-EZ information-EZ, all and
- hame dar râstâ-ye ehyâ-ye Qânun-e Asâsi bud.
all in direction-EZ reviving-EZ Constitution be-PAST-3SG.
26-27:
What happened at the time of Seyed Mohammad Khatami, like 4 times of referendum-like elections, uncovering chain murders, reviving council elections, absolute banning of torture, freedom of speech, developing and radicalizing the media, separating economical companies from Information Ministry, all and all were meant to revive the Constitution.
28. Qânun-e Asâsi zarfiat-hâ-ye xâli-e besyâri dâr-ad ke **MI-TAVÂN** ân râ
Constitution capacity-PLU-EZ empty-EZ many have-3SG which **DUR-can** it ACC
- por kard;
full make;
29. **AGAR MELLI GARÂ HAST-ID**, mardomsâlâri va hâkemiyyat-e melli dâr-ad,
IF NATIONALIST ARE-2PLU, humanitarianism and authority-EZ national has-3SG,
30. **AGAR MARDOM GARÂ HAST-ID**, hâkemiyyat-e mardom râ dâr-ad,
IF HUMANITARIAN ARE-2PLU, authority-EZ people ACC has-3SG.,
31. **AGAR MOTARAQI HAST-ID**, masâ'el-e edâlat talabâne-ye ziyâdi dâr-ad,
IF BROAD-MINDED ARE-2PLU, issues justice seeking-EZ many hâs-3SG.,

32. **AGAR DUSRĀR-E ESLĀM HAST-ID**, hākemiyyat-e Eslām rā dār-ad
 IF **FAN-EZ ISLAM ARE-2PLU**, authority-EZ Islām ACC has-3SG
33. va **AGAR MOVAHED-ID** ke hākemiyyat-e tohid rā dār-ad.
 and IF **MONOTHEIST-BE-2PLU** that authority-EZ monotheism ACC has-3SG.
 28-33:
 The Constitution has many empty capacities that **COULD** be filled. **IF YOU ARE A NATIONALIST**, it has humanitarianism and the national authority. **IF YOU ARE A HUMANITARIAN**, it has the authority of people. **IF YOU ARE A BROAD-MINDED**, it has many justice-seeking issues. **IF YOU ARE AN ISLAMIST**, it has the authority of Islam. And **IF YOU ARE A MONOTHEIST**, it has the authority of monotheism.
34. **AGAR HARKODĀM AZ IN MAVĀRED NOĀVARI ŠAV-AD VA**
 IF **ANY OF THIS CASES RENOVATION SUBJ- BECOME-3SG AND**
DARK-E BEHTAR-I AZ TOHID, ESLĀM VA MARDOMSĀLĀRI
UNDERSTANDING-EZ BETTER-A FROM MONOTHEISM, ISLAM AND HUMANITARIANISM
ERĀE ŠAV-AD, tabi'i ast ke erteqâ dar qanun garâyi
PRESENTATION SUBJ-BECOME-3SG, natural be-3SG that progression in law abiding
 niz be vojud mi-ây-ad.
 also to existence DUR-come-3SG.
IF ANY OF THESE CASES ARE RENOVATED, AND IF A BETTER UNDERSTANDING OF ISLAM AND HUMANITARIANISM IS PRESENTD, naturally progression in law-abiding would proceed.
35. qânun garâyi bâ extiyâr-ât-e hiç maqâmi ham dar tazâd n-ist
 law abiding with authority-PLU-EZ any authority-a also in contrast not-be-3SG.
 Law-abiding is not in contrast with the authority of any one.
36. **lâzame-ye tose'e-ye jâme'e in ast** ke eqtedâr va extiyâr ham
necessity-EZ developing-EZ society this be-3SG that power and authority also
 vojud dâšt-e bâš-ad,
 existence have-PART SUBJ-have-3SG,
37. amâ **bâyad** bar asâs-e Qânun-e Asâsi mas'uliyat va pâsoxguyi ham
 but **must** on basis-EZ Constitution responsibility and accountability also
 bâš-ad
 SUBJ-be-3SG
38. tâ mabâdâ tajrobe-ye pišaz sâl-e 1357 tekrâr šav-ad.
 till lest experience-EZ before year-EZ 1357 repetition SUBJ-become-3SG.
 36-38:
In order to develop the society, it is necessary to have power and authority, but there **must** be responsibility and accountability on the basis of the Constitution, lest the experience prior to 1357 [1979] will be repeated.
39. yeki digar az barak-ât-e Qânun-e Asâsi in ast ke **mâ** dar amal
 one other of blessing-PLU-EZ Constitution this be-3SG that **we** in practice
 se nezâm dâr-im
 three system have-1PLU
40. ke gâhi bâ ham be ta'âroz kešid-e mi-šav-ad;
 that sometimes with together to contrast pull-PART DUR-become-3SG;
41. naxost nezâm-e Halâl va Harâm-e hoze-hâ-ye elmiye,
 first system-EZ Halal and Haram-EZ society-PLU-EZ islamic teaching,
42. digari nezâm-e Qânun-e Asâsi ke az enqelâb-e mašrutiyyat be ba'd šekl
 other system-EZ Constitution that from revolution-EZ constitutional to later form

gereft va omdatan darbargirande-ye ahkâm-e ejtemâ'i va edâre-ye
took-3SG and mainly inclusion-EZ precepts-EZ social and management-EZ

omur-e jâme'e ast
issues-EZ society be-3SG

43.va sevvom didgâh-i ke jâigâh-e vali-e faqih râ foq-e
and third viewpoint-a that place-EZ supreme leader ACC above-EZ

Qânun-e Asâsi mi-dân-ad,
Constitution DUR-know-3SG.,

44.dar hâli ke velâyat ham joz'-e hamin Qânun-e Asâsi mi-bâš-ad.
in situation that Supreme Leader also part-EZ this Constitution DUR-be-3SG.
39-44:

One of the other blessings of the Constitution is that **we** have practically three systems that are sometimes put in contradiction. First is the system of Halal and Haram of the Society of Islamic Teachings. The other one is the Constitution that has been formed after Constitutional Revolution and mainly includes social precepts and management of the issues of the society. And third is the view point that ascribes the Supreme Leader a place above the Constitution. However, the Supreme Leader is also part of this Constitution.

45.**barakat-e qânun garâyi in ast ke se nezâm râ dar yek nezâm-e**
 blessing-EZ law abiding this be-3SG that three system ACC in one system-EZ

Qânun-e Asâsi edghâm mi-kon-ad
Constitution merge DUR-do-3SG

46.va vahdat-e jâme'e râ amiqtar nomud-e
and unity-EZ society ACC deeper make-PART

47.va râh-e tose'e râ âsân va hamvâr mi-namây-ad,
and way-EZ development ACC easy and smooth DUR-make-3SG,

48.tahaqqoq-e in vahdat dastekam yek zamân-e hašt sâle mi-talab-ad.
realization-EZ this unity at least one time-EZ eight year DUR-need-3SG.
45-48:

The blessing of law abiding is that it merges the three systems into one, which is the Constitution, and creates a deep unity in the society and makes development easy and smooth. The realization of this unity needs at least a period of eight years.

49.piš az xordâd-e 1376 teyf-i az jâme'e mi-pors-id râst-e
before Khordad-EZ 1376 (May 1997) group-a of society DUR-ask-PAST-3SG right-EZ

sonnati xatarnâktar ast yâ râst-e modern?
traditional more dangerous be-3SG or right-EZ modern?²¹

Before Khordad 1376 (May 1997), a group of the society asked if the traditional right is more dangerous or the modern right.

50.amâ didgâh-e qânun garâyi mo'taqed ast râst-e modern va râst-e
but view point-EZ law abiding belief be-3SG right-EZ modern and right-EZ

sonati **AGAR BE DONBÂL-E MANÂFE'-E QÂNUNI BÂŠ-AND,** došman be
traditional IF TO AFTER-EZ BENEFITS-EZ LEGITIMATE-EZ SUBJ-BE-3PLU, enemy to

šomâr ne-mi-ây-and, balke râst-e enhesâr talab va râst-e efrâti
count not-DUR-come-3PLU, but right-EZ monopolist and right-EZ extremist

²¹ This clause has not been considered a question because it is not addressed to readers by the author.

va jarayân-i ke hič qânun-i râ bar ne- mi-tâb-ad xatarnâk ast.
 and course-a that no legislation-a ACC to not-DUR-accept-3SG dangerous be-3SG.
 But a law-abiding viewpoint believes modern right and traditional right are not enemies **IF THEY FOLLOW LEGITIMATE BENEFITS**. However, monopolist right and extremist right and a course that does not accept any legislation are dangerous.

51. marhum Āzari Qomi pasaz dovvom-e Xordâd-e 1376 dar resâle-i neveš-t late Āzari Qomi after second-EZ Khordad 1376 in article-a write-PAST-3SG.

52. **dar vâqe** dovvom-e Xordâd piruzi-e ârâ-ye mardom bar Qânun-e Asâsi
in fact second-EZ Khordad victory-EZ votes-EZ people over Constitution

bar ejmâ'-e foqahâ va ideoložy-e sonati bud.
 over consensus-EZ clerics and ideology-EZ traditional be-PAST-3SG.

51-52:

After the second of Khordad 1376 [23rd May], late Azari Qomi wrote in an article that the second of Khordad [23rd May] was in fact the victory of people's votes over the Constitution, the consensus of clerics and the traditional ideology.

53. **šoâr-e Xâtami** ham dar dovvom-e Xordâd, qânun garâyi va mobâreze
 slogan-EZ Khatami also on second-EZ Khordad, law abiding and fight

bâ enhesâr bud.
 with monopoly be-PAST-3SG.

Khatami's slogan on the second Khordad [23rd May] was law abiding and fighting with monopoly.

54. **hâmel-e qânun bâjad** kasi bâš-ad ke vâqe'an be mašru'iyat va
 carrier-EZ legislation **must** someone SUBJ-be-3SG that really to legitimacy and

maqbuliyyat-e tak tak-e mavâd-e mosarrah dar qânun mo'men bâš-ad,
 acceptability-EZ one one-EZ articles specified in law believer SUBJ-become-EZ,

55. na in ke be nâm-e qânun, qânun râ dor be-zan-ad, balke bar
 not this that to name-EZ legislation, legislation ACC round SUBJ-hit-3SG, but on

asâs-e hamin Qânun-e Asâsi be mardom **pâsoxgu bâš-ad**,
 basis-EZ this Constitution to people **responsive SUBJ-be-3SG**,

56. be ânâ **tohin na-kard-e** va **dorugh na-guy-ad**,
 to them **insult not-do-PART** and **lie not-tell-3SG**,

57. kamâ in ke Xâtami hašt sâl na dorugh goft va na be kasi tohin
 as this that Khatami eight year no lie told-3SG and no to one insult

kard.
 did-PAST-3SG.

54-57:

The carrier of legislation **must** be someone who really believes in the legitimacy and acceptability of each of the specified articles in the Constitution. S/he should not ignore legislation, using the name of legislation, but **be responsible** to people. S/he **should not insult them and lie to them**, just as Khatami did not lie and did not insult anyone for eight years.

58. az nazar-e xâreji **mâ** dar šarâyet-i hast-im ke **ÂMRİKÂI-HA**
 from view point-EZ foreign **we** in situation-a be-1PLU that **AMERICAN-PLU**

MO'TAQED-AND hobâb-e maskan, hobâb-e mâli va hobâb-e e'temâd dar
BELIEF-BE-3PLU bubble-EZ housing, bubble-EZ financial and bubble-EZ trust in

ânjâ šekast-e šod-e
 there broken-PART become-PART

- 59.va **NAZDIK BE** hezâr dorugh az hokâm-e çâhârgâne-ye Âmrikâ
 ând **NEAR TO** thousand lie from governors-EZ four-EZ America
 kašf kard-e-and
 discovery do-PART-3PLU
- 60.va **EHTEMÂL DÂD-E MI-ŠAV-AD** in-hâ bexâter-e in dorugh-hâ
 and **POSSIBILITY GIVE-PART DUR-BE-3SG** this-PLU because-EZ this lie-PLU
 mohâkeme šav-and,
 prosecute SUBJ-become-3PLU,
- 61.Obâmâ niz dar kongre-ye AIPAC va dar jâme'e-ye yahudi-ân-i ke
Obama also in congress-EZ AIPAC and in gathering-EZ Jew-PLU-those that
 moharek-ân-e jang alaih-e Irâq bud-and goft
 instigator-PLU-EZ war against-EZ Iraq be-PAST-3PLU tell-PAST-3SG
- 62.in jang yek fâje'e bud'e va mâ bâyard az Erâq bargard-im.
 this war one catastrophe be-PART and we must from Iraq return-1PLU.
 58-62:
 Considering the foreign affairs, **we** are in a situation that **AMERICANS BELEVE** housing,
 finance and trust there [in America] have broken, and **NEARLY** a thousand lies told by the
 four American governors have been discovered for which they will **POSSIBLY** be executed.
 Obama in the gathering of Jews in the AIPAC congress also told that this war was a
 catastrophe and they must return from Iraq.
- 63.hame-ye inhâ nešân mi-dah-ad ravand-i kolli dar Âmrikâ vojod
 all-EZ these indicate DUR-give-3SG process-a general in America existence
 dâr-ad tâ Âmrikâ be masâ'el-e dâxeli-e xod be-pardâz-ad.
 has-3SG so America to issues-EZ internal-EZ itself SUBJ-proceed-3SG.
 All these indicate that there is a process in America which makes it busy with its home
 issues.
- 64.**mâ** mi-tavân-im az in forsat va češm andâz-e xub estefâde kon**im**
we DUR-can-1PLU from this opportunity and perspective-EZ good use SUBJ-do-1PLU
- 65.va dorân-e tose'e-i širin va bedun-e tote'e dâšt-e bâš-**im**.
 and era-EZ development-a sweet and without-EZ conspiracy have-PART SUBJ-be-1PLU.
 64-65:
We can use this good opportunity and perspective and **we** can have an era of
 development without conspiracy.
- 66.**dar injâ alâmat-e soâl-i ijâd mi-šav-ad ke çe jarayân-i bâyard**
in here mark-EZ question-a appear DUR-become-3SG that what course-a must
dar Irân fa'âl šav-ad tâ bâ čenin vîžegi-hâ-yi ta'rif
in Iran active SUBJ-become-3SG till with this specification-PLU definition
šav-ad:
SUBJ-become-3SG:
- 67.siyâsat-e mohkam-e defâ'i, siyâsat-e defâ' az esteqlâl va âzâdi
 policy-EZ strong-EZ defensive, policy-EZ defence from independence and freedom
 va ruykard be pišraft va harakat-i qanun garâ va taneš
 and approach to development and movement-a law abiding and tension
 zodâ, ham dar dâxel va ham dar xârej.
 reducing, also at inside and also in abroad.

66-67:

The question here is which course must be activated in Iran in order to be defined with these specifications: a strong defensive policy or a policy defending independence and freedom, attending to development, a law-abiding and tension reducing movement both at home and abroad.

68. banâ bar in harkas kândidâ-ye vorud be in arše mi-šav-ad
based on this whoever candidate-EZ entrance to this deck DUR-become-3SG

69. **mi-bây-est** e'temâd-e jahâni râ niz nesbat be Irân jalb kard-e
DUR-must-3SG trust-EZ world ACC also towards to Iran attract do-PART

70. va bejâ-ye siyâsat-e tahâjomi va taqâboli, siyâsat-e mohkam-e tadâfo'i-e
and instead-EZ policy-EZ aggressive and opposing, policy-EZ strong-EZ defensive

moqâvem va ta'âmoli dâšt'-e bâš-**im**.
resistant and interactive have-PART be-1PLU.

68-70:

Therefore, whoever becomes the candidate, **must** attract the trust of the world towards Iran; and instead of an aggressive and opposing policy, **we should** have a strong, defensive, resistant and interactive policy.

71. **râhbord-e motanâseb bâ šarâyet-e zamân in ast**
approach-EZ appropriate with situations-EZ time this be-3SG

72. ke čon rubanâ-ye farhangi-ye Âmrikâ demokrâsy ast,
that because exterior-EZ cultural-EZ America democracy be-3SG,

73. vali dar amal donbâl-e manâfe'-e melli va hežemoni talabi va jang ast,
but in practice follow-EZ benefits-EZ national and hegemonism and war be-3SG

74. banâ bar in **behtar ast mâ** râhi râ entexâb kon-im ke be jang-e
based on this **better be-3SG we** way-a ACC choose SUBJ-do-1PLU that to war-EZ

tamâmayâr bâ Âmrikâ na-yanjâm-ad,
complete with America not- lead-3SG,

75. ke dar ân surat **mâ** bâzande-ye ân xâh-im bud.
that in that case **we** loser-EZ that will-1PLU be.

71-75:

Considering that the American culture is based on democracy, but practically is following its national benefits, hegemonism and war; **the appropriate approach we should take in the present situation is that it is better** that **we** avoid war with America, or else we will be the loser.

76. **mâ bâjad** râh-e moqâvemât râ dar piš be-gir-im, ân ham bâ pazireš-e
we must way-EZ resistance ACC in front SUBJ-get-1PLU, it also with accepting-EZ

rubanâ-ye demokrâsy.
exterior-EZ democracy.

We must proceed with resistance, accepting a democratic outer.

77. **AGAR SÂZOKÂR-HÂ-YE DEMOKRÂTIK VA MARDOM SÂLÂRÂNE-YE VÂQR'I RÂ DAR PIŠ**
IF STRATEGY-PLU-EZ DEMOCTATIC AND PEOPLE AUTHORITY-EZ REAL ACC IN FRONT

BE-GIR-IM, Âmrikâ na tanhâ qâder n-ist tude-hâ-ye xod râ alayh-e
SUBJ-GET-1PLU, America not only able not-be-3SG mass-PLU-EZ self ACC against-EZ

mâ basij kon-ad, balke **mâ** bâ tavajoh be manteq-e qavi-e
we militarise SUBJ-do-3SG, but **we** with attention to logic-EZ strong-EZ

Eslâm va zâdova valad-e mosalmân-ân, betadrij bar ânâ piši mi-gir-*im*,
Islam and increasing-EZ muslim-PLU, gradually to them ahead DUR-get-*1PLU*,

78.barâ-ye nomune maziyyat-e hezb-e Edâlat va Tose'e-ye Torkiye bar
for-EZ example advantage-EZ party-EZ Justice and Development-EZ Tukey to

nezâm-e ženerâl-hâ ke dar sangar-e Lâic qarâr gerefte-and in ast
regime-EZ general-PLU that in trench-EZ Laic place put-PART-be-3PLU this be-3SG

79.ke ânâ be demokrâsy-e kâmel mo'taqed-and,
that they to democracy-EZ complete belief-be-3PLU,

80.vali ženerâl-hâ va Lâik-hâ mo'taqed-and demokrâsy na-bâyad bâ hoviyyat-e
but general-PLU and Laics-PLU belief-be-PLU democracy not-must with integrity-EZ

Torkiye-ye navin moghâyerat dâšt-e bâš-ad,
Turkey-EZ new contradiction has-PART be-3SG,

81.čenân ke Orupâ dar tazâddi ke miyâne hezb-e Edâlat va
as that Europe in contradiction that between-EZ party-EZ Justice and

Tose'e bâ ženerâl-hâ bud,
Development with general-PLU be-PAST-3SG,

82.ân hezb râ be lahâz-e demokrâtik ta'yid kard.
that party ACC to cause-EZ democratic approve make-PAST-3SG.
77-82:

IF WE FOLLOW REAL DEMOCRATIC AND PEOPLE-ORIENTED STRATEGIES, America would not be able to militarise its people against **us**; but, considering the strong Islamic area and the increasing number of Muslims, **we** could gradually overcome them. For example, the advantage of the Justice and Development Party over the generals supported by Laic in Turkey is that they believe in democracy thoroughly, but generals and Laics believe that democracy must not contradict the integrity of the new Turkey. In the conflict between the Justice and Development Party and generals, Europe approved the former because of its belief in democracy.

83.in râh-i bud ke dar dorân-e hašt sâle-ye riyâsat jomhuri-e Xâtami
this way-a be-PAST-3SG that in period-EZ eight year-EZ presidency-EZ Khatami

ham dar piš gereft-e šod
also in front put-PART become-3SG

84.va **omidvâr-im** joz'-e barnâme-ye âyande-ye riyâsat jomhur bâš-ad,
and **hope-be-1PLU** part-EZ plan-EZ future-EZ president SUBJ-be-3SG,

85.čerâke hazine-hâ-ye ejtemâ'i râ na tanhâ kâheš mi-dah-ad, balke
because expense-PLU-EZ social ACC not only reduction DUR-give-3SG, but

MOMKEN AST ân râ be sefr be-resân-ad.
POSSIBLE BE-3SG that ACC to zero SUBJ-bring-3SG.
83-85:

This was the approach Khatami took during his eight years of presidency and **we hope** this should be a part of the future president's plan, because it not only reduces the social expenses, but it **MIGHT** bring it down to zero.

86.dar tul-e hašt sâl riyâsat jomhuri-e Xâtami kâr-e bozog-i šod
during-EZ eight year presidency-EZ Khatami work-EZ big-a became-3SG

87.va ân in ke vezârat-e Ettlâ'ât râ az âludegi be šerkat-hâ-ye
and that this that Ministry-EZ Information ACC from corruption to company-PLU-EZ

eqtesâdi-e pirâmun-e xod nejât dâd.
economic-EZ surrounding-EZ self save give-PAST-3SG.

86-87:

During the eight years of Khatami's presidency a big task was done, that is saving the Ministry of Information from the corruption of the surrounding economical companies.

88. **BE NAZAR MI-RES-AD** in tajrobe bâr-e digar dar bâre-ye digar
TO IDEA DUR-COME-3SG this experience time-EZ other in about-EZ other

nahâd-hâ-ye nezâmi va amniyyati ta'mim yâb-ad
organisation-EZ military and security expansion SUBJ-find-3SG

89. tâ jâygâh-e siyâsi – qâuni-e xod râ az dast na-dah-and.
so place political – legitimate-EZ self ACC from hand not give-3PLU.

88-89:

IT SEEMS this experience can be expanded again to other military and security organisations so that their political-legitimate position is not lost.

90. Bush sa'y dâš-t bâ mehvar-e šarârat xândan-e Irân, darâmad-e naft be
Bush try have-PAST-3SG with axis evil calling-EZ Iran, income-EZ oil to

jâ-ye omrân va âbâdâni, sarf-e tabaqe sâzi-e nezâmi– amniyyati
place-EZ construction and improvement, spent-EZ layer making-EZ military– security

šav-ad

SUBJ-be-3G

91. tâ ânjâ ke hame-ye masâel-e daruni-e Irân, mânand-e Šoravi-e pišaz
to place that all-EZ issues-EZ internal-EZ Iran, like-EZ Soviet Union-EZ before

forupâši, hame čiz dar partov-e masâel-e nezâmi –amniyâti did-e šav-ad
collapsing, every thing in light-EZ issues-EZ military –security see-PART become-3SG

92. va dar in râstâ poštvanê-ye qâuni va mardomi-e in nahâd-hâ
and in this direction support-EZ legitimate and public-EZ this organisation-PLU

kam šod-e

less become-PART

93. va dar nahâyat az ânjâ ke serfan nezâmi amniyyati ast dar barâbar-e jarayân-e
and in end from place that only military security be-3SG in front-EZ course-EZ

qavitar az xod taslim šâv-ad.

stronger from itself surrender SUBJ-be-3SG.

90-93:

Calling Iran 'axis of evil', Bush tried to make Iran spend its oil income on military-security bases instead of construction, so that all the internal issues of Iran, like former Soviet Union, be seen in the light of the military-security issues; and finally just because it is only military-security, it should surrender to the stronger force.

94. نکته-ye digar in ke nahâd-hâ-ye nezâmi amniyyati bâ dars gereftan
point another this that organisation-PLU-EZ military security with lesson getting

az tajrobe-ye vezârat-e ettelâ'ât xod râ from âludegi-hâ be
from experiences-EZ Ministry Information itself ACC az corruption-PLU to

darâmad-hâ-ye bâd âvard-e, qarârdâd-hâ-ye xârej az tašrif-ât **nejât**
income-PLU-EZ wind bring-PART, contracts-PLU-EZ out of ceremony-EZ **save**

dah-and

SUBJ-give-3PLU

95. tâ jâygâh-e qânuni va mardomi-e xod râ hefz kon-and.
to place-EZ legitimate and public-AZ self ACC secure SUBJ-make-3PLU.
94-95:

Another point is that military security organisations should learn from the experiences of Information Ministry and **should** save themselves from illegal incomes and illegal contracts.

96. **omidvâr-im** riyâsat jomhuri-e âyande dar râstâ-ye ehyâ-ye Qânun-e Asâsi
hope-are-1PLU president-EZ future in direction-EZ revival-EZ Constitution

be in mohem be-pardâz-ad.
to this important SUBJ-spend-SG.

We hope the future president will try to achieve this in order to revive the Constitution.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
2	our assumption is that		
28	could		
29		if you are a nationalist	
30		if you are humanitarian	
31		if you are broad-minded	
32		if you are Islamist	
33		if you are monotheist	
34		If any of these cases are renovated	
34		if a better understanding of Islam and humanitarianism is presented	
50		if they follow legitimate benefits	
58			Americans believe
59	nearly		
60	it is possible		
77		If we follow real democratic and people-oriented strategies	
85	might		
88	it seems		
	6	9	1

Table A2.1 Uncertainty markers in text No. 21

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
7		intensity and strength	
15		clerics and clergies	
23			according to Imam Khomeini
24			Dr Hasan Sobhani ... says
36		power and authority	
37		responsibility and accountability	
47		easy and smooth	
50			a law-abiding viewpoint believes
51			late Azari Qomi ... wrote
61			Obama ... told
64		opportunity and perspective	
70		aggressive and opposing	
	0	7	5

Table A2.2 Certainty markers in text No. 21

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
1	must		
5	must		
6	must		
9	must		
34		naturally	
36	In order to develop the society it is necessary		
37	must		
45		the blessing of law abiding is that	
52		in fact	
54	must		
55	be responsive		
56	should not to insult them		
56	not to lie to them		
66	must		
69	must		
70	should		
71	the appropriate approach to be taken in the present situation is that		
74	it is better		
76	must		
84		we hope	
94	should save		
96		we hope	
	17	5	0

Table A2.3 Attitudinal markers in text No. 21

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
2	our					
7	our					
18	we					
22	we					
29			you			
30			you			
31			you			
32			you			
33			you			
39	we					
58	we					
64	we					
64	we					
65	we					
66				the question here is ...		
70	we					
74	we					
75	we					
76	we					
77	we					
77	we					
77	we					
77	we					
84	we					
96	we					
	19	0	5	1	0	0

Table A2.4 Engagement markers in text No. 21

Cl. No	‘we’ expressing third parties
	0

Table A2.5 ‘we’ expressing third parties in text No. 21

Text No. 22

Cheshmandaz-e Iran, No. 49, April-June 2008

By: Lotfollah Meisami

Number of Words: 1339

nokte-hâ-yi čand dar yek yâddâšt
point-PLU some in one note
Some points in a note

1. **torkiye; mohtavâ yâ šekl?**
Turkey; content or form?
Turkey; content or form

2. hamântor ke mi-dân-im
as that DUR-know-1PLU

3. dar sâl-e 1386 hezb-e edâlat va tose’e dar yek sâzokâr-e demokrâtik
in year-EZ 1386 party-EZ Justice and Development in one arrangement-EZ democratic

bâ tekiye bar niru-hâ-ye movallad, dar yek entexâb-ât-e refrandom gune
with reliance on forces-PLU-EZ producer, in one election-PLU-EZ referendum like

tavân-est 80 dar sad ârâ-ye mardom râ be xod jazb kon-ad.
can-PAST-3SG 80 per cent votes-EZ people ACC to self attraction SUBJ-do-3SG.
2-3:

As we know in a referendum-like election in 1386 (2007-2008) Justice and Development party relying on producer forces could gain 80 per cent of the votes in a democratic arrangement.

4. ânâ ronaq-e eqtesâdi, tavarom-e tak raqami, rošd-e eqtesâdi-e
they splendour-EZ economical, inflation-EZ one digit, development-EZ economical-EZ

qâbel-e molâheze va demoakrâsy-e bedun-e filter va mottaki bar ârâ-ye mardom
able notice-EZ and democracy-EZ without-EZ filter and based on votes-EZ people

râ be armaghân âvard-and
ACC to souvenir bring-PAST--3PLU

5. va pâdâš-e monâseb bâ on râ az mellat-e Torkiye daryâft kard-and.
and reward-EZ appropriate with it ACC from nation-EZ Turkey receipt do-PAST-3PLU.
4-5:

They presented economical splendour, one digit inflation, noticeable economical development and democracy without filter based on people’s opinion. They received an appropriate reward from the people of Turkey.

6. mo’âven-e Recep Tayyip Erdoğan, aslitarin tazâd-e mojud dar jâme’e-ye
assistant Recep Tayyip Erdoğan, main contradiction-EZ present in society-EZ

torkiye râ bein-e do no’ demokrâsy mo’ârefi kard;
Turkey ACC between-EZ two type democracy introduction do-PAST-3SG;

7. demokrâsy-e motaki be ârâ-ye mardom va demokrâsy ke dar bastar-e hoviat-e
democracy-EZ based on votes-EZ people and democracy that in bed-EZ identity-EZ

torkiye-ye navin, ya’ni seculârism bâš-ad.
Turkey-EZ new, that is secularism SUBJ-be-3SG.

6-7:

Recep Tayyip Erdoğan's assistant announced two types of democracy as the main source of contradiction in Turkey's society: democracy based on people's opinion, and democracy based on the new Turkey's identity, which is secularism.

8. sa'y-e hezb-e edâlat va tose'e bar ân ast
effort-EZ party-EZ Justice and Development on that be-3SG
9. ke dar râstyâ-ye mohtâvâ-ye Eslâm gâm bardâšt-e
that in direction-EZ content-EZ Islam step take-PART
10. va manteq-e qavi-e Eslâm râ dar sâzokâr-e demokrâtik piš be-bar-ad
and logic-EZ strong-EZ Islam ACC in arrangement-EZ democratic front SUBJ-take-3SG
11. tâ pazireš-e jahâni niz peidâ kon-ad.
so acceptance-EZ worldly also find SUBJ-do-3SG.

8-11:

Justice and Development Party's attempt is to follow the Islamic content and to develop the Islamic logic in a democratic arrangement in order to make it acceptable in the world.

12. amâ sa'y-e mâ, beviže ruznâme-ye Keyhân dar in ast
but effort we, especially newspaper-EZ Keyhan in this be-3SG
13. ke tazâd-e asli-e torkiye râ ruyârui-ye Eslâm bâ sekulârisim va
that contradiction-EZ main-EZ Turkey ACC face-to-face Islam with secularism and
- piruzi-e avvali bar dovvomi be-dân-im.
victory-EZ first over second SUBJ-know-1PLU.

12-13:

But we, especially Keyhan newspaper, try to regard the main contradiction in Turkey one between Islam and secularism and the victory of the former over the latter.

14. maqule-i ke xod-e hezb-e edâlat va tose'e râzi be ân na bud-e
subject-a that self-EZ party-EZ Justice and Development satisfied to it not-be-PART
- va in qotb bandi râ qabul na-dâr-ad.
and this polarity ACC acceptance not-have-3SG.
This polarity is a subject that the Justice and Development Party is not happy with and does not accept it.
15. ânhâ mo'taqed-and in qotb bandi va šive-ye negareš, sathi _____ va qešri
they believer-be-3PLU this polarity and way-EZ looking, superficial and shallow

bud-e,
be-PART,

16. ženerâl-hâ-ye Torkiye râ hassâs kard-e tâ dar sangar-e sekulârisim alayh-e
general-PLU-EZ Turkey ACC sensitive make-PART so in trench secularism against-EZ
- hezb-e edâlât va Tose'e, parvande sâzi kon-and.
Party-EZ Justice and Development, file making SUBJ-do-3PLU.
- 15-16:
They believe this polarity and view point is superficial and shallow and has made Turkey's generals sensitive. So the generals protest against it under the cover of secularism.

17. Ženerâl-hâ-ye torkiye ham demokrâsy râ az filter-e hoviya-t-e sekulârisim obur
general-PLU-EZ Turkey also democracy ACC from filter-EZ identity-EZ secularism pass
- mi-dah-and,
DUR-give-3PLU,

18. *magar mâ dar Irân çe mi-kon-im;*
lest we in Iran what DUR-do-1PLU

19. be nâm-e Eslâm va Emâm Zamân, tavarrom-e do raqami, gerâni-e arzâq
to name Islam and Imam Zamân, inflation-EZ two digit, expensiveness-EZ foodstuff

va maskan râ be armaghân âvard-e-im
and housing ACC to souvenir brought-PART-PLU
20. va demokrâsy râ az hoviyyat-e feqhi, obur mi-dah-im.
and democracy ACC from identity religion, pass DUR-give-1PLU.
17-20:
Turkey's generals pass democracy through the filter of secularism. **What do we do in Iran?**
Using the name of Islam and Imam Zaman, **we** have two-digit inflation, over priced foodstuff
and housing. **We** pass democracy through the filter of religion.
21. dar mored-e tahsil-e doxtar-ân, dar pâremân-e torkiye in tor matrah
in about education-EZ girl-PLU, in parliament Turkey this how proposition

šod
become-PAST-3SG
22. ke dorost n-ist doxtar-ân-e Torkiye az tahsil-e dânešgâhi mahrum
that correct not-be-3SG girl-PLU-EZ Turkey from education-EZ university deprived

bâš-and
SUBJ-be-3PLU
23. ke in didgâh ra'y âvard
that this view point vote bring-PAST-3SG
24. va bedin sân doxtar-ân bâ rusari ham mi-tavân-and be dânešgâh be-rav-and.
and to this way girl-PLU with scarf also DUR-can-3PLU to university SUBJ-go-3PLU.
21-24:
In case of women's education in Turkey it was proposed in the parliament that it was not
right to deprive women from higher education. This was accepted and women wearing scarf
were also allowed to go to university.
25. ruznâme-ye Keyhân, in padide râ ham piruzi-e Eslâm bar sekulârisim
newspaper Keyhan, this phenomenon ACC also victory-EZ Islam against secularism

nâm-id
name-PAST-3SG
26. va in hamân čizi ast ke ženerâl-hâ râ hassâs kard-e
and this same thing be-3SG that general-PLU ACC sensitive make-PART
27. tâ alayh-e hezb-e edâlat parvande sâzi kard-e
so against-EZ party-EZ Justice file making do-PART
28. va dar nahâyat on râ gheyr-e qânuni e'lâm kon-and.
and in end that ACC non legal announce SUBJ-do-3PLU.
25-28:
Keyhan newspaper called this the victory of Islam over secularism. This made generals
sensitive, so they collected documents against the Justice Party and announced it illegal.
29. tarh-e in mas'ale dar pâremân-e torkiye, šekl-e feqhi-e halâl va
discussion-EZ this issue in parliament-EZ Turkey, form-EZ religious-EZ halal and

harâm na-dâšt, balke ruh-e Eslâm matrah šod
haram not-have-PAST-3SG, but essence-EZ Islâm presentation become-PAST-3SG
30. ke doxtar-ân-e mâ nâ-bâyâd az tahsil-e dânešgâhi mahrum šavand
that girls-PLU-EZ we not-must from education-EZ university deprived SUBJ-become-3PLU

31. va vaqti ânâ mi-tavân-and dar sâzokâr-hâ-ye demokrâtik be rošd va
and when they DUR-can-3PLU in arrangement-PLU-EZ democratic to maturity and
tose'e-ye monâseb be-res-and,
development-EZ proper SUBJ-reach-3PLU,
32. čerâ xod râ dar qotb bandi qarâr be-dâh-and ke dar nahâyat be jang-e dâxeli
why self ACC in polarity place SUBJ-give-3S that in end to war-EZ internal
be-yanjâm-ad.
SUBJ-lead-3SG.
29-32:
This issue did not have the religious form of halal and haram when it was presented in the parliament, but the essence of Islam was discussed in which it was mentioned that our women must not be deprived from higher education. When they can achieve maturity and development, why they should polarise that could finally lead to a civil war.
- elat-e asli-ye kudetâ alayh-e Mosadeq
reason main-EZ coup against-EZ Mosadeq
The main reason of coup against Mosadeq
33. TÂ ÂN JÂ KE MI-DÂN-IM tâ konun ellat-hâ-ye čandi bar kudetâ-ye 28
TO THAT PLACE THAT DUR-KNOW-1PLU to now reason-PLU-EZ many to coup-EZ 28
Mordâd 1332 alayh-e hokumat-e melli va qânuni-e doktor Mosadeq
Mordad 1332 against-EZ government-EZ national and legal-EZ doctor Mosadeq
baršemord-e šod-e ast: (1)
counting-PART become-PART be-3SG: (1)
AS FAR AS WE KNOW, many reasons have been mentioned on the coup of 28 Mordad 1332 [19 August 1953] against Doctor Mosadeq's national and legal government.
34. alef- hassâsiyyat nesbat be komonism dar prose-ye jang-e sard
a. sensitivity towards communism in process-EZ war cold
35. va in ke hezb-e tude vâbaste be abarqodrat-e Šurâvi, momken
and this that party-EZ masses dependent to superpower-EZ Soviet Union, possible
ast²² qodrat râ dar Irân be dast be-gir-ad.
be-3SG power ACC in Iran to hand SUBJ-get-3SG.
34-35:
a. Sensitivity towards communism in the process of the Cold War and that Party of the Masses (Tude) which was dependent on Soviet Union might gain control in Iran.
36. be-hassâsiyyat-e šerkat-ha-ye farâmeliati-e naft nesbat be sud-e kalân
b. sensitivity-EZ company-PLU-EZ international-EZ oil towards profit-EZ huge
va bâd âvard-e ke tavassot-e qânun-e melli šodan-e naft be leading-EZ
and wind bring-PART that by-EZ law-EZ national becoming-EZ oil to rahbari-e
nehzat-e melli šodân-e Irân va Mosâdeq be xatar oftâd-e bud;
movement-EZ national becoming-EZ Iran and Mosâdeq to danger fall-PART be-PAST-3SG;
37. be ebârat-i râst-e vahši-e jahâni va dâxeli bar asâs-e nâzoki-e kâr va
to word-a right-EZ wild-EZ worldly and internal on basis-EZ thinness-EZ work and
kolofti-e pul.
thickness-EZ money.

²² The phrase has not been counted 'uncertainty marker' since the uncertainty does not arise from the writer.

36-37:

b. International oil companies' sensitivity towards the easy and huge profit which had been endangered by the law of oil nationalisation led by the National Front of Iran and Mosadeq; in other words, the worldly and internal wild right based on less work and more money.

38. je- hassâsyiat-e Amrika va Englis va dar pey-e ân šerkât-hâ-ye
c. sensitivity-EZ America and England and in after-EZ it company-PLU-EZ

farâmeliyati-ye naft be olgu-ye "eqtesâd-e bedun-e nâft-e" Mosadeq va in ke
international-EZ oil to model-EZ "economy-EZ without-EZ oil-EZ" Mosadeq and this that

mabâdâ in olgu be digar kešvar-hâ-ye naft xizi ke be darâmad-e naft mo'tâd
lest this model to other country-PLU-EZ oil rising that to income-EZ oil addict

šod-e-and tasari va ta'mim yâb-ad
become-PART-3PLU generalisation and expansion SUBJ-find-3SG

39. va in ke kešvar-hâ-ye jahân-e sevvom bedun-e vâbastegi, rahâyi
and this that country-PLU-EZ world-EZ third without-EZ dependence, freedom

yâfte va âzâd va mostaqel zist kon-and.
find-PART and free and independent life SUBJ-do-3PLU.

38-39:

- c. The sensitivity of America, England and international oil companies towards Mosadeq's model of "economy without oil", and that lest this model might have generalised and expanded to other oil countries who had got used to oil income, and that the third world countries might find freedom and live independently.

40. De- dar kenâr-e avâmel-e bâlâ, maqâle-hâ-ye moxtalefi dar Āšmandâz-e Irân
d. in side-EZ factors-EZ above, paper-PLU-EZ different in Cheshmandaz-e Iran

va dar ketâb-e "Hame-ye Mardân-e Šâh" barrasi šod-e ast,
and in book-EZ "All-EZ Men-EZ Shah" anslysis become-PART be-3SG

41. Doctor Hušang Amirahmadi tey-e goftoguy-e xod dar Esfand-e 1386 va
Doktor Hushang Amirahmadi in-EZ interview-EZ self in Esfand-EZ 1386 and

Farvadin-e 1387 bâ ruznâme-hâ-ye Kârgozârân, E'temâd va E'temâd-e Melli
Farvadin-EZ 1387 with newspaper-PLU-EZ Kargozaran, Etemad and Etemâd-e Melli

bedun-e tavajoh be avamel-e bâlâ mo'taqed ast
without-EZ notice to factors-EZ above believer be-3SG

42. ellat-e asli-e kudetâ alayh-e hokumat-e Mosadeq in bud ke
reason-EZ main-EZ coup against-EZ government-EZ Mosadeq this be-PAST-3SG that

Mosadeq entexâb-ât-e âzâd va demokrâsy râ dar Irân mostaqar kard-e bud,
Mosadeq election-PLU-EZ open and democracy ACC in Iran set up do-PART be-PAST-3SG,

43. dar hâli ke Amrikâ demokrâsy-e menhâ-ye Amrikâ râ bar ne-mi-tâb-ad.
in situation that America democracy-EZ minus-EZ America ACC to not-DUR-tolerate-3SG.
40-43:

d. Along with the above factors, there are other papers in *Cheshmandaz-e Iran* and *Shah's All Men*. Without attending the above factors, Doctor Hushang Amirahmadi in an interview with the newspapers of Kargozaran, Etemad and Etemad-e Melli in Esfand and Farvadin 1386 (March-April 2008) believes the main reason for the coup against Mosadeq was that Mosadeq had set up free elections and democracy in Iran, while America did not tolerate democracy minus America.

44. dar vaqe' elat-e asli-e sarneguni-e Mosadeq râ demokrâsy-e menhâ-ye
in fact reason-EZ main-EZ overthrow-EZ Mosadeq ACC democracy-EZ minus-EZ

Âmrikâ mi-dân-ad
America DUR-know-3SG

45. va hamaknun niz barâ-ye Jumhuri-e Eslâmi in râhbord râ tajviz mi-kon-ad.
and now also for-EZ Republic-EZ Islamic this strategy ACC prescription DUR-do-3SG.
44-45:

In fact he believes democracy minus America was the main reason for Mosadeq's being overthrown. He prescribes the same strategy for the Islamic Republic now.

46. Barâ-ye taqrib be zehn, dar sâl-e 1327 niz dar hezb-e Tude-ye Irân enše'âb-i be
For-EZ close to mind, in year-EZ 1327 also in party-EZ Masses-EZ Iran branch-a to
rahbari-e xalil Maleki, Anvar Xâmei, Jalâl Âle Ahmad va ...rox dâd.
leadership-EZ Khalil Maleki, Anvar Khamei, Jalal Ale Ahmad and ... happening do-PAST-3SG.
To remind, a party branched off the Party of Masses (Tude) in 1948 led by Khalil Maleki,
Anvar Khamei and Jalal Ale Ahmad.

47. in enše'âb "sosiâlism menhâ-ye Moscow" nâm gereft
this branch "socialism minus-EZ Moscow" name get-PAST-3SG

48. ke aslitarin došman, hezb-e Tude va Šuravi talaqi mi-šod,
that main enemy, party-EZ Masses and Soviet Union consideration DUR-became-3SG,

49. zemn-e ta'amol dar in maqule, **âyâ hežemony-e Âmrikâ tâ in had bâ**
beside-EZ thought in this topic, **whether hegemony-EZ America to this limit with**

demokrâsy ajin šod-e ke tamâmi-e avamel-e digari ke dar ketâb-hâ
democracy mixed became-PART that all-EZ factors-EZ other that in book-PLU

va tahqiq-ât-e moxtalef baršemord-e šode, yâ na-dide gereft-e
and research-PLU-EZ different count-PART, became-PART or not-see get-PART

šavad?!

SUBJ-become-3SG?

47-49:

This branch was called "Socialism Minus Moscow" and its main enemy was the Party of Masses and the Soviet Union. Apart from considering this issue, **is American hegemony so associated with democracy that all other factors brought in different books and researches should be ignored?**

abarqodrat-e afkâr-e omumi
superpower-EZ thoughts-EZ public
The Superpower of Public opinion

50. dar orf-e diplomâsy-e jahâni in matlab râ âmuzeš dâd-e va jâ
in tradition diplomacy-EZ world this topic ACC teaching give-PART and place

andâxt-e-and
put-PART-3PLU

51. ke ayâl-ât-e mottâhede-ye Âmrikâ târâh-e mâsâel va ruydâd-hâ-ye
that States-PLU-EZ United-EZ America designer-EZ issues and event-PLU-EZ

jâhâni bud-e
world be-PART

52. va baqye-ye kešvar-hâ hamrâh va dar nahâyat hammâl va mojri-e
and rest-EZ country-PLU companion and in end porter and executive-EZ

târh-hâ-ye Âmrikâ hast-and.
plan-PLU-EZ America be-3PLU.

50-52:

In the world's diplomatic tradition it has been taught and set that the United States of America is the designer of all the events in the world and the other countries are companion or at most porters and executives of those plans.

53. bâ yek negâh-e ejmâli be ruydâd-hâ-ye čand dahe-ye târix-e mo'âser
with one look-EZ short to event-PLU-EZ several decade-EZ history-EZ recent

molâheze mi-kon-im ke in natijegiri be zâher taqviat mi-šav-ad,
notice DUR-do-1PLU that this conclusion to appearance intensified DUR-become-3SG,

54. ***amâ âyâ in matlab esâlat ham dâr-ad?
but whether this subject originality also have-3SG?***

53-54:

Glancing at the events in the last few decades, we notice that this conclusion is seemingly intensified. ***But does it really have originality?***

55. mâ mi-bin-im Âmrikâ abarqodrat-i ast ke bâ vojûd-e afkâr-e
we DUR-see-1PLU America superpower-a be-3SG that with existence-EZ opinions-EZ

omumi, bâ sâzokâr-hâ-ye taškil-ât-i, nezâmi, amniyyati, ettelâ'-ât-i
public, with arrangement-PLU-EZ organisational-PLU, military, security, information-PLU

va eqtesâdi-e besyâr qavi be kâr-e xod edâme mi-dah-ad.
and economical-EZ very strong to work self continuation DUR-give-3SG.

We see that America is a superpower that continues to work with very strong organisational, military, security, information and economical arrangements in spite of the public opinion.

56. mâ did-im dar moxâlefât bâ hamle be Erâq tanhâ dar ruz, dah milyûn
we see-PAST-1PLU in opposition with attack to Iraq only in day, ten million

nafar az mardom-e jahân be tor-e hamzamân tey-e tazâhor-ât-i
individual from people-EZ world to way-EZ simultaneous during-EZ demonstration-PLU-a

bâ jang moxâlefât kard-and,
with war opposition do-PAST-3PLU,

57. hamčenin dar yek râhpeymâyi-e bisâbeqe-ye yek milyûn va devist
also in one demonstrâtion-EZ unique-EZ one million and two hundred

hezâr nafari, šahrvand-ân-e Landan moxâlefât-e xod râ bâ jang e'lâm
thousand individual, citizen-PLU-EZ London opposition-EZ self ACC with war announce

kard-and.

do-PAST-3PLU.

56-57:

We saw that in the opposition to the attack to Iraq, ten million people in the world demonstrated simultaneously in one day to oppose the war. Also in a unique demonstration one million and two hundred thousand people of London announced their opposition to war.

58. dar sarâsar-e jahân, motafakker-ân-e ziâdi moxâlef-e hamle be Erâq bud-and.
in all-EZ world, thinker-PLU-EZ many against-EZ attack to Iraq be-PAST-3PLU.
All over the world there were many scholars who were against the attack to Iraq.

59. âqâ-ye xâtami, rais jumhur-e vaqt-e Irân pišbini-e qarib be yaqin-i
Mr-EZ Khâtami, president-EZ time-EZ Iran prediction-EZ close to certainty-a

kard

make-PAST-3SG

60. ke dar pey-e halmle be Erâq na tanhâ terrorism az bein na-xâh-ad raft,
that in back-EZ attack to Iraq not only terrorism from between not-will-3SG go-3SG,
balke taqviyat ham xâh-ad šod.
but intensified also will-3SG become.
59-60:
Mr Khatami, Iran's president at the time, made a close prediction that after the attack to
Iraq, terrorism will not only not cease, but will be intensified.
61. **in qalam bar ân n-ist** ke be ânçe dar Erâq gozašt be-pardâz-âd,
this pen to it not-be-3SG that to what in Iraq pass-PAST-3SG SUBJ-discuss-3SG,
balke bar ân ast tâ yek natije-ye râhbordi-e mohem ra matrah
but to it be-3SG so one conclusion-EZ guideline-EZ important ACC proposition
kon-ad;
SUBJ-do-3SG;
62. **bâš-ad ke** dar tarrâhi-e sterâtezy be ân tavajoh dâšt-e **bâš-im**.
be-3SG that in planning strategy to it attention have-PART be-1PLU.
61-62:
The intention of this article is not to discuss what happened in Iraq, but to propose an
important conclusive guideline; **be that we** attend it in [our] strategic planning.
63. âri, afkâr-e omumi niz mânand-e yek abarqodrat amal mi-kon-and.
yes, opinions-EZ public also like-EZ one superpower act DUR-do-3SG.
Yes, the public opinion acts like a superpower.
64. **mâ** šâhed-e ân bud-im ke diri az hamle be Erâq na-gozâšt-e bud
we witness-EZ it be-PAST-1PLU that late of attack to Iraq not-pass-PART be-3SG
ke avârez-e manfi-e jang bar entexâb-ât-e Espâniyâ, Ostrâliâ va Itâliâ
that outcomes-EZ negative-EZ war to elections-PLU-EZ Spain, Australia and Italy
asar kard.
effect make-PAST-3SG.
We witnessed that not long after the attack to Iraq, the negative outcomes of the war
affected the elections in Spain, Australia and Italy.
65. Tony Blair, naxost vazir-e Engelestân majbur šod dar barâbar-e
Tony Blair, prime minister-EZ England forced become-PAST-3SG in front-EZ
afkâr-e omumi aqabnešini kard-e va este'fâ dah-ad.
opinion-EZ public retreat do-PART and resignation SUBJ-give-3SG.
Tony Blair, England's prime minister, had to retreat before the public opinion and resign.
66. dar entexâb-ât-e miân dorei-e âmrikâ did-im mardom-e šadidan
in elections-PLU-EZ mid term-EZ Americ see-PAST-1PLU people-EZ intensely
nâsionâlist-e ân sâmân alayh-e rais jomhur va farmândeher-e kol-e
nationalist-EZ that country against-EZ president and commander-EZ major-EZ
qovâ-yešân ân ham dar garmâgarm-e jang, ra'y dâd-e
forces-their it also in warm-EZ war, vote give-PART
67. va nešân dâd-and ke ne-mi-xâh-and qorbâni-e manâfe'-e moštarak-e
and sign gave-3PLU that not-DUR-want-3PLU sacrifice-EZ profits-EZ common-EZ
mohâfeze kâr-ân-e jâdid va Esrâel bâš-and
conservative-PLU-EZ new and Israel SUBJ-be-3PLU

68. va sarnevešt-e xod-ešân râ be in do gereh be-zan-and.
and fate-EZ self-them ACC to this two knot SUBJ-hit-3PLU.
66-68:
In America's mid-term elections we saw that the nationalist people of the country voted against their president and Commander in Chief in the midst of the war and showed they didn't want to be sacrificed for the new conservatives and Israel and tie their fate to these two.
69. Brzežinski dar âxarin ketâb-e xod be nâm-e Forsat-e Dovvom (Second Chance)
Brzezinski in last book-EZ self to name-EZ Chance Second (Second Chance)
matrah mi-kon-ad,
present DUR-do-3SG,
70. âmrikâ dar târix-e xod be lahâz-e taškilâti tâ in zamân, qavitar az
America in history-EZ self to view point-EZ organisation to this time, stronger of
aknun na-bud-e,
present not-be-PART,
71. vali az nazar-e siyâsi hiç moqeî xosumat-e mardom-e jahân niz alayh-e
but from view point-EZ political no time-a enmity-EZ people-EZ world also against-EZ
Âmrikâ tâ be in had na-bud-e ast.
America till to this limit not-be-PART be-3SG.
69-71:
Brzezinski in his last book called *Second Chance* discusses that America has never been organisationally stronger than now in its history. However, the enmity of the people all over the world against America has never been so great, either.
72. u mi-afzây-ad hamle be Erâq in padide râ besyâr taqviqt kard
he DUR-add-3SG attack to Iraq this phenomenon ACC very intensified make-PAST-3SG
73. va mo'taqed ast tâ dir na-šod-e bâyard tarhi no darandâxt,
and belief be-3SG till late not-become-PART must plan-a new make-3SG,
74. vey bar in bâvar ast ke Saddâm besyâr za'if va mahâr šod-e,
he to this belief be-3SG that Saddam very weak and controlled become-PART,
niâz be çenin hamle-ye porhazine-i na-dâšt.
necessity to this attack-EZ expensive-a not-have-PAST-3SG.
72-74:
He adds that the attack to Iraq intensified this phenomenon. He believes a new plan must be made unless it is not too late. He believes that Saddam had become very weak and was controlled and it wasn't necessary to make such an expensive attack.
75. dar rasânehâ-ye omumi-e âmrikâ vaqti az Bush sohbat mi-šâv-ad
in media-EZ public-EZ America when from Bush speech DUR-become-3SG
ebârat-i mânad-e "gheyr-e mahbub-tarin rais jomhur" va "gheyr-e mahbub-tarin
expression-a like-EZ "non-EZ popular-most president" and "non-EZ popular-most
jang" (The most Unpopular President - The most unpopular War) be kar bord-e
war" (The most Unpopular President - The most unpopular War) to work take-PART
mi-šav-ad.
DUR-become-3SG.
When they talk about Bush in America's mass media, they use expressions like "The most Unpopular President – The most unpopular War".
76. **in ast ahamiyat-e abarqodrat-e afkâr-e omumi** ke bâ fâsele-ye
this be-3SG importance-EZ superpower-EZ opinion-EZ public that with gap-EZ

zamâni-e čand sâl nâqš-e češmgir-e xod râ nešân mi-dah-ad.
time-EZ several year role-EZ noticeable-EZ self ACC point DUR-show-3SG.

This is the importance of public opinion which shows its important role in a matter of a few years.

77. **bi-ây-im** če dar masâ'el-e jahâni va če dar dâxel-e Irân jâ-ye valâ-yi
IMP-come-1PLU what in issues-EZ world and what in inside-EZ Iran place-EZ high-a

dâr mo'âdel-ât-e **xode-mân** be afkâr-e omumi **be-dah-im** ta qodrat-e
in equation-PLU-EZ **self-our** to opinion-EZ public **IMP-give-1PLU** till power-EZ

taškilâti-**mân**, **mâ** râ farib na-dah-ad.
organisational-**our**, **we** ACC trick not-give-3SG.

Let's regard public opinion important in **our** equations in either world issues or home so that **our** organisational power does not trick **us**.

bohrân-e energy va bâzâr-e 1000 milyârd dolâri-e Orâniom
crisis-EZ energy and market-EZ 1000 milliard dollar-EZ Uranium
Energy crisis and the 1000 milliard dollar Uranium market

78. in ruz-ha **MI-ŠENAV-IM** ke reqâbat-e ziâdi bein-e âmrikâ va Farânse
this day-PLU **DUR-hear-1PLU** that competition-EZ many between-EZ America and France

barâ-ye dâdan va foruš-e nirugâh-e atomi be kešvar-hâ-ye sâheli-e xalij-e
for-EZ giving and selling-EZ power plant-EZ atomic to country-PLU-EZ portal-EZ Gulf-EZ

fârs mânand-e Arabestân, Emârât, Bahrain va Qatar âghâz šod-e ast.
Persian like-EZ Saudi Arabia, Emirates, Bahrain, and Qatar start become-PART be-3SG.
These days **WE HEAR** a lot of competition has started between America and France in order to sell nuclear power plant to the countries in Persian Gulf like Saudi Arabia, Emirates, Bahrain, and Qatar.

79. in dar hâli ast ke tabligh-ât-e donyâ-ye gharb bar in manteq
this in situation-a be-3SG that advertisement-PLU-EZ world-EZ west to this logic

ostovar ast ke Irân bâ dârâ budan-e naft va gâz če niâzi be energy-e
based be-3SG that Iran with contain being-EZ oil and gas what necessity to energy-EZ

atomî dâr-ad?
atomic have-3SG?

Meanwhile the advertisement in the west is based on the logic that when Iran has oil and gas what is the necessity of its having access to nuclear energy.

80. **AGAR AZ MANZAR-E BOHRÂN-E ENERŽY VA MÂLI KE GARIBÂNGIR-E ÂMRIKÂ
IF FROM VIEW POINT-EZ CRISIS-EZ ENERGY AND FINANCIAL THAT GRAPPLE-EZ AMERICA**

**VA GHARB AST BE IN PADIDE BE-NEGAR-IM
AND WEST BE-3SG TO THIS PHENOMENON SUBJ-LOOK-1PLU**

81. **xâh-im** did az yek su in kešvar-hâ mabâlegh-e hangofti dar barâbar-e
will-1PLU see from one direction this country-PLU amounts huge in front-EZ

vared-ât-e naft-e gerân qeimat be kešvar-hâ-ye naft xiz mi-pardâz-and,
import-PLU-EZ oil-EZ expensive price to country-PLU-EZ oil rising DUR-pay-3PLU,

82. be tori ke dar movâzene-ye pardâxt-hâ nâqš-e manfi dâr-ad
to how that in equation-EZ payment-PLU role-EZ negative have-3SG

83. va az su-ye digar sa'y dâr-and bâ foruš-e in nirugâh-hâ va
and from direction-EZ other effort have-3PLU with sale-EZ this power plant-PLU and

beviže bâ foruš-e masraf-e sâliâne-ye orâniom ta haddi movazene-ye
especially with sale-EZ expenditure-EZ annual-EZ uranium to degree-a balance-EZ

pardâxt-hâ- ye xod râ jobrân kon-and.
 payment-PLU-EZ self ACC compensate SUBJ-do-3PLU.
 80-83:

IF WE LOOK AT THIS PHENOMENON FROM THE VIEW POINT OF ENERGY AND FINANCE CRISIS THAT HAS GRAPPLED AMERICA AND THE WEST, we will see on the one hand these countries pay huge amounts to oil countries to import the expensive oil so that it has a negative role in payments equations; on the other hand, they try to compensate to some degree by selling these power plants especially the annual expenditure of uranium.

84. **goftani ast** hamaknun sâliâne yek bâzâr-e 1000 milyârd dolâri-e foruŝ-e
sayable be-3SG now annually one market-EZ 1000 milliard dollar-EZ sale

orâniom vojüd dâr-ad ke bar sar-e tasâhob va yâ hefz-e ân
 uranium existence have-3SG that on head-EZ possession and or keeping it

reqâbât-hâ-ye ziâdi vojüd dâr-ad.
 competition-PLU-EZ many existence have-3SG.

It is worth saying that at present there is a one milliard dollar market for uranium sale for which there is a lot of competition to possess or keep.

85. fâyede-ye digar-e foruŝ-e nirugâh-hâ-ye atomi dar in ast ke zaxâyer-e
 benefit-EZ other-EZ sale-EZ power plant-PLU-EZ atomic in this be-3SG that resources-EZ

naft va gâz dar in mantaqe dast na-xord-e bâqi mi-mân-ad
 oil and gas in this area hand not-touch-PART left DUR-remain-3SG

86. tâ keŝvar-hâ-ye gharb beviže âmrikâ be-tâvan-and dar derâz modat az
 so country-PLU-EZ west especially America SUBJ-can-3PLU in long time from

ân estefâde kon-and ke in az lavâzem-e bohrân-e enerjy ast.
 it use SUBJ-do-3PLU that this from necessities-EZ crisis-EZ energy be-3SG.

85-86:

Another benefit of selling nuclear power plants is that the oil and gas resources in these areas are maintained so that western countries especially America can make a long term use of it. This is one of the necessities of energy crisis.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
33	as far as we know		
78			we hear
80		if we look at this phenomenon from the viewpoint of energy and finance crisis	
	1	1	1

Table A2.6 Uncertainty markers in text No. 22

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
2	as we know		
6			Recep Tâyyip Erdogan's assistant announced ...
15		superficial and shallow	they believe
38		generalised and extended	
39		without dependence ... independent	
39		find freedom and live ... free	
41			Dr Hushang Âmirahmadi ... believes
44	in fact		
52		porters and executives	
53	we see		
55	we see		
56	we saw		
59			Mr Khatami ... made a close prediction
63	yes		
64	we witnessed		
66	we saw		
69			Brzezinski ... discusses
72			he adds
73			he believes
74			he believes
75			When they talk about Bush in America's mass media, they use
	8	5	9

Table A2.7 Certainty markers in text No. 22

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
61		the intention of this article is not	
62	be that		
76		this is the importance of public opinion	
77	let's		
77	give		
84		it is worth saying that	
	3	3	0

Table A2.8 Attitudinal markers in text No. 22

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1				Turkey: Content or form?		
2	we					
18				what do we do in Iran?		
33	we					
49				is American hegemony so much associated with ...?		
53	we					
54				does it really have originality?		
55	we					
56	we					
62	we					
64	we					
66	we					
78	we					
80	we					
81	we					
	11	0	0	4	0	0

Table A2.9 Engagement markers in text No. 22

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
12	our
13	we
18	we
19	we
20	we
77	we
77	ourselves
77	we
77	our
77	us
	10

Table A2.10 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 22

Text No. 23

Cheshmandaz-e Iran, No. 53, Day-Bahman 1387 (Dec.-Feb. 2008-2009)

By: Lotfollah Meisami

Number of words: 4003

gozar az naft be mâliât

passage from oil to tax

Passage from oil to tax

1. "jâme'e-ye **mâ** be yek hâlat-e xod ešte'âli yâ auto ignition resid-e va be "society-EZ **we** to one situation-EZ self ignition or self ignition reach-PART and to

ebârat-e digar xod angixtegi.

word-EZ other self stimulation.

Our society has reached a situation of self-ignition; in other words, self-stimulation.

2. dar in bare mesâl-i mi-zan-**am**.

in this about example-a DUR-give-1SG.

I'll give an example.

3. bâ tavajjoh be tajrobe-i ke dar zamine-ye mohandesi-e imeni dar with notice to experience-a that in background-EZ engineering-EZ safety in

anbârdâri dâr-**am**,

warehousing have-1SG,

4. az padide-i bahs mi-šav-ad ke tavajjoh be ân besyâr hayâti from phenomenon-a discussion DUR-become-3SG that noticing to it very vital

ast.

be-3SG.

3-4:

Considering **my** experience in safety engineering, **I** give an example of a phenomenon discussed in warehousing which is very vital.

5. dar anbâr-hâ-yi ke dar-e ânhâ baste ast va tahvie-ye matbu' in warehouse-PLU that door-EZ they close-PART be-3SG and conditioning-EZ nice

na-dâr-ad va havâ-ye taze jâ be jâ ne-mi-šav-ad, dar tâbestân not-have-3SG and air-EZ fresh place to place not-DUR-become-3SG, in summer

betadrij šarâyet-i be vojud mi-ây-ad ke beyekbare anbâr âtaš gradually situation-a to existence DUR-come-3SG that suddenly warehouse fire

mi-gir-ad, bedun-e ân ke kebrit-i zad-e šod-e yâ hattâ jaraq-e-i DUR-catch-3SG, without-EZ it that match-a strike-PART become-PART or even spark-a

dar kâr bâš-ad.
in work be-3SG.

In summer in those closed warehouses where there is no air-conditioning and no fresh air moving about, gradually a situation is created in which the warehouse catches fire without striking a match or even a spark.

6. jâme'e-ye **mâ** be čenin vaz'-i resid-e
society-EZ **we** to this condition-a reach-PART
7. ya'ni potânsiel-e "xod ešte'âli" dâšt-e va âmâdegi-e an râ dâr-ad
that is potential-EZ "self ignition" have-PART and prepration-EZ it ACC have-3SG
8. ke bemahz-e be vojud âmadan-e vâqe'e-i, šureš-hâ-yi mânand-e
that as soon as-EZ to existence come-EZ happening-a, revolt-PLU-some like-EZ

Mašad, Arâk, Qazvin, Eslâmšahr va ... ijâd šav-ad.

Mashad, Arak, Qazvin, Eslamšahr and ...creation SUBJ-become-3SG.

6-8:

Our society has reached this condition; that is, it has the potential of self-ignition and is prepared to revolt as soon as something happens, like Mashad, Arak, Gazvin, Eslamshahr and ...

9. **AGAR BE-TAVÂN-IM JÂME'E RÂ AZ IN VAZ'YYAT XÂREJ KON-IM VA BE**
IF SUBJ-CAN-1PLU SOCIETY ACC FROM THIS CONDITION EXIT SUBJ-DO-1PLU AND TO

ŠARÂYET-E JADID-I SOQ DAH-IM, gâm-e bozorg-i bardâšt-e **im.**"
CONDITION-EZ NEW-A LEAD SUBJ-GIVE-1PLU, step-EZ big-a take-PART-1PLU."

(az melli šodan-e naft tâ melli šodan-e ettelâ'-ât (sarmaqâle),
(from national becoming-EZ oil to national becoming-EZ information-PLU (editorial),

Češmandaz-e Irân, Šomâre 4, Farvardin va Ordibehešt 1379)
Cheshmandaz-e Iran, Number 4, Farvardin and Ordibehesht 1379)²³

IF WE GOT RID OF THIS CONDITION AND MADE A NEW SITUATION IN THE SOCIETY, we would have made a big achievement. (From Nationalising Oil to Nationalising Information (Editorial), *Cheshmandaz-e Iran*, No. 4, March-May 2000)

10. dar Mehr mâh-e emsâl vaqâye'-i dar bazâr va xiâbân-hâ-ye Esfahân,
in Mehr month-EZ this year incidents-some in bazaar and street-PLU-EZ Esfahan,

bazâr-e Tehrân, bazâr-e Tabriz va ... rox dâd ke bâ vojud-e
bazaar-EZ Tehran, bazaar-EZ Tabriz and ...happening give-PAST-3SG that in existence-EZ

qavi budan-e nahâd-hâ-ye amniyati va ettelâ'-âti pišbini
strong being-EZ organisation-PLU-EZ security and information-PLU prediction

na-šod-e bud.
not-become-PART be-PAST-3SG.

In Mehr 1387 (September-October 2008) some incidents happened in the bazaar and streets of Esfahan, Tehran, Tabriz and ... that in spite of strong security and information organisations, were unpredicted.

11. dar sarmaqâle-ye bâlâ nešân dâd-e šod ke čegune harakat-hâ-yi
in editorial-EZ above point give-PART become-PAST that how movement-PLU-some

dar lâye-hâ-ye zirin-e jâme'e rox mi-dah-ad ke bâ komak-e šonud
in layer-PLU-EZ lower-EZ society happening DUR-give-3SG that with help-EZ audition

²³ The first part of the article is taken from another article written by the same author in another issue of the magazine. Because the writers are the same, the markers have been counted.

va digar abzâr-hâ-ye pišrafte **NE-MI-TAVÂN** ânâ râ radyâbi kard yâ
and other instrument-PLU-EZ developed **NOT-DUR-CAN** they ACC detection do or

dast-e kas-ân va goruh-i râ dar ân did, balke yekbâre va yekpârçe
hand-EZ individual-PLU and group-a ACC in it see, but suddenly and united

ettefâq mi-oft-ad.
happening DUR-fall-3SG.

In the above editorial it was shown that how some movements happen in the lower layers of the society that **CANNOT** be detected by auditing and other developed instruments, and no individuals or groups involved can be found in it. They happen suddenly and united.

12. **bâš-ad ke** farhixte-gân-e jâme'e bâ žarf andiši va âyande negari-e
IMP-be-3SG that scholar-PLU-EZ society with deep thinking and future looking-EZ

behtar-i ta'ammol-i dar in râstâ dâšt-e bâš-and.
better-a hesitation-a in this connection have-PART become-3PLU.

Be that the scholars of the society have a better and deeper thought in this regard.

13. âqâ-ye Doctor Mahmud Ahmadinejad dar bahâr-e emsâl (1387) be matlab-e
Mr Doctor Mahmud Ahmadinejad in spring-EZ this year (1387) to subject-EZ

mohem-i dar simâ-ye Jomhuri-e Eslâmi ešâre kard-and ke do
important-a in television-EZ Republic-EZ Islamic point do-PAST-3PLU that two

moalefe dâšt:

feature have-PAST-3SG:

Mr Ahmadinejad pointed to an important point on the television of Islamic Republic in the spring of 2008 that had two features:

14. Alef- tâ čand sâl-e digar naft-i na-xâh-**im** dâšt.
A- till some year-EZ other oil-a not-have-**1PLU** have.
A. **we** will not have any oil in a few years.

15. Be- dar kešvar-hâ-ye digar be tor-e miângin 20 dar sad darâmad-e mardom
B. in country-PLU-EZ other to how-EZ average 20 per cent income-EZ people

mašmul-e mâliât mi-šav-ad,
include-EZ tax DUR-become-3SG,

16. dar hâli ke miângin-e axz-e mâliât dar Irân 7 dar sad- e darâmad-e
in situation that average-EZ getting-EZ tax in Iran 7 per cent-EZ income-EZ

mardom ast.
people be-3SG.

15-16:

B. In other countries people pay 20 per cent of their income on average as tax, while in Iran the average of tax is 7 per cent of people's income.

17. âqâ-ye Ahmadinejad natije gereft-and ke bâyad 13 darsad-e baqye râ
Mr Ahmadinejad conclusion get-PAST-3PLU that must 13 per cent-EZ rest ACC

be onvân-e mâliât axz kard.
to topic-EZ tax getting do.

Mr Ahmadinejad concluded that the remaining 13 per cent must be received through tax.

18. garče kâršenâs-ân tahqiq-ât-e ziâdi darbâre-ye maxâzen-e
although expert-PLU research-PLU-EZ many about-EZ resources-EZ

zirzamini-e naft dâšt-e va maqâle-hâ-ye ziâdi dar in zamine
underground-EZ oil have-PART and article-PLU-EZ many in this background

montašer šod-e ke maxâzen-e naft-e **mâ** nime-ye dovom-e omr-e xod
publication become-PART that resources-EZ oil-EZ **we** half-EZ second-EZ life-EZ self

râ tei mi-kon-ad, (1)
ACC spend DUR-do-3SG, (1)

19. vali masul-ân-e daraje avval-e mamlekat tâ konun čenin ešâre-ye âškâr-i mobtani
but official-PLU-EZ rank first-EZ country to now this hint-EZ clear-a based

bar pâyân pazir budan-e naft na-kard-e bud-and.
on ending ability being-EZ oil not-make-PART be-3PLU.
18-19:

Although experts have made a lot of researches on oil resources and have published
many articles that **our** oil resources are spending the second half of their life (1), the
senior officials of the country had not made such an explicit hint that our oil is finishing.

20. **vâqe'iyat in ast** ke bâ tavajjoh be olgu-ye masraf-e jâme'e **mâ** tâ
reality this be-3SG that with regard to pattern-EZ consumption-EZ society **we** till

čand sâl-e digar bâyad naft-e xam râ ham az xârej vâred kon-im.
some year-EZ other must oil raw ACC also from abroad import SUBJ-do-1PLU.

The reality is regarding the standard of consumption in the society we must surely import
our petroleum in the next few years.

21. âqâ-ye Ahmadinejâd zamâni in soxan-ân râ az simâ-ye jomhuri-e
Mr-EZ Ahmadinejad time-a this speech-PLU ACC from television-EZ Republic-EZ

Eslâmi-e Irân irâd kard-and ke hanuz qeimat-e har boške naft seyr-e
Islamic-EZ Iran quotation do-PAST-3PLU that yet price-E every barrel oil travel-EZ

nozuli-e xod râ âghâz na-kard-e bud
decrease-EZ self ACC start not-do-PART be-PAST-3SG

22. va kâheš-e fâheš-e qeimat-e konuni râ na-dâšt-**im**
and decrease-EZ clear-EZ price-EZ present ACC not-have-1PLU

23. va qeimat-e esmi-e har boške naft 140 dolâr bud.
and price-EZ named-EZ every barrel oil 140 dollar be-PAST-3SG .

21-23:

At the time Mr Ahmadinejad made these speeches on the television of Islamic Republic of
Iran, oil prices had not started decreasing and **we** didn't have the present price fall. The
named price of oil was 140 dollars per barrel.

24. benâ bar in aknun be dalâyel-i čand – čon erâde-ye demokrat-hâ-ye
based on this now to reasons-some several – like wish-EZ democrat-PLU-EZ

Âmrikâ barâye eneržy-e jâigozin va negarni-hâ-ye company-hâ-ye naft az
America for energy-EZ replacement and anxiety-PLU-EZ company-PLU-EZ oil from

in ravand, "rokud-e jahâni beviže dar âmrikâ va dar pey-e ân kâheš-e
this process, "recession-EZ world especially in America and in after-EZ it decrease-EZ

masraf-e jahâni" va monsaref šodan-e movaqati-e âmrikâ az xatt-e
consumption-EZ world" and quitting become-EZ temporary-EZ America from line-EZ

mašy-e jang va barandâzi dar mored-e Irân va ...
walking-EZ war and overthrow in about-EZ Iran and ...

25. qeimat-e naft kâheš-e fâheš-i peidâ kard-e,
price-EZ oil decrease-EZ great-a find do-PART,

26. in zarurat ke dar čenin šarâyet-i edâre-ye mamlekat omdatan bâyad az
this necessity that in this situation-a managing-EZ country mainly must from

tariq-e axz-e mâliât-hâ momken gard-ad fozuni yâfte ast.
 way-EZ getting tax-PLU possible become-3SG increase find-PART be-3SG.
 24-26:

Therefore, for some reasons –for example American democrats’ wish for an energy replacement and oil companies’ anxiety from this process, “the world especially America’s recession and the following decrease in the world consumption”, America’s abandoning of war and overthrowing Iran and ... – the price of oil had a great decrease. In these circumstances the country must be managed through tax.

27. **ŠÂYAD** dar râstâ-ye hamin zarurat-e mobram bud ke qânun-e mâliât bar
POSSIBLY in along-EZ this necessity-EZ pressing be-PAST-3SG that law-EZ tax to

arzeš-e afzude ke dar majles va kâbine-hâ mo’attal mând-e bud,
 value-EZ added that in parliament and cabinet-PLU idle remain-PART be-PAST-3SG,

28. dar dovvom-e xordâd 1387 be tasvib-e nahâyi-e šurâ-ye negahbân
 in second-EZ Khordad 1387 to approval-EZ final-EZ Council-EZ Guardians

resid va be dolat eblâgh šod
 reach-PAST-3SG and to government disclosed become-PAST-3SG

29. va dolat niz dar ruz-hâ-ye pâyâni-e šahrivar 1387 ân râ be ejrâ
 and government also in day-PLU-EZ last-EZ Shahrivar 1387 it ACC to action

gozâšt.
 put-PAST-3SG.

27-29:

Possibly it was because of this pressing necessity that the law of value added tax which had been delayed in parliament and cabinet was finally approved on the second of Xordad 1387 22 May 2008 by the Council of Guardians and was disclosed to the government. The government put it in action in the final days of Šahrivar 1387 (September 2008).

30. hame mi-dân-im ke dar vâkoneš be šive-ye ejrâ-ye ân, moqâvemâ-e
 all DUR-know-1PLU that in reaction to way-EZ execution-EZ it, resistance-EZ

kasabe-ye bazââr va xiâbân-hâ-ye Esfahân, bazâr-e Tehrân, bazâr-e Tabriz
 tradesmen-EZ bazaar and street-PLU-EZ Esfahan, bazaar-EZ Tehran, bazaar-EZ Tabriz

va ... piš âmad
 and ...front come-PAST-EZ

31. va tâ moddati asli-tarin masa’le-ye ruz bud va hanuz ham edâme
 and to time-some main-most problem-EZ day be-PAST-3SG and still also continuation

dâr-ad.
 have-3SG

30-31:

All of us know it was in reaction to the way it was executed that the resistance of the tradesmen in the bazaar and streets of Esfahan, Tehran, Tabriz and ... happened and was the main topic of the day for a while. It is still the main topic now.

32. Aknun 69 sâl ast ke az omr-e **man** mi-gozar-ad
 Now 69 year be-3SG that from life-EZ **I** DUR-pass-3SG

33. va **BE YÂD NA-DÂR-AM** ke kasabe-ye bazââr va xiâbân-hâ-ye Esfahân,
 and **TO MEMORY NOT-HAVE-1SG** that tradesman-EZ bazaar and street-PLU-EZ Esfahan,

ân ham bar sar-e masâel-e senfi tâ be in had vâkoneš nešân dah-and
 that also on head-3SG issues-EZ business to to this limit reaction point SUBJ-give-3PLU

34. ke tey-e yek hafte bejoz aghzye foruši-ha, hame be tore hamâhang kâr va
that during-EZ one week except food shop-PLU, all to way harmonious work and
kasb-e xod râ tatil konand.
Trade-3EZ self ACC stop SUBJ-do-3PLU.
32-34:
I am 69 years old and I DO NOT REMEMBER the tradesmen of the bazaar and streets of Esfahan react unanimously to a business issue and, except for food shops, close their business for a whole week.
35. dar târix-e maktub-e Esfahân niz az čenin hâdese-i yâd na-šod-e
in history-EZ written-EZ Esfahan also from such event-a memory not-make-PART
ast.
be-3SG.
In the written history of Esfahan such an event has not been mentioned either.
36. **če šod-e mardom-e Esfahân ke be molâhezekâri šenâxt-e**
what happen-PART people-EZ Esfahan that to consideration known-PART
šod-e-and dast be čenin eqdâm-e yekpârče-i zade-and ân ham az
become-PART-3PLU hand to such action-EZ unanimous-a hit-3PLU it also of
su-ye bazâri ke 70 dar sad-e ân râ javân-ân taškil mi-dah-and?
part-EZ bazaar-a that 70 per cent-EZ it ACC young-PLU make DUR-do-3PLU?
What has happened that the people of Esfahan that are known for their
considerateness have done such a unanimous action, especially the bazaar, 70 per
cent of which is comprised of the young?
37. **mohe-m-tar in ke in ettefâq dar dorân-e dolat-i mi-oft-ad va**
important-more this that this event in period-EZ government-a DUR-happen-3SG and
dar šahr-i rox midahad ke bištar-e mardom-e ân dar Tir mâh-e 1384,
in city-a happening DUR-do-3SG that more-EZ people-EZ it in Tir month-EZ 1384,
dar pey-e erâde-ye sâzmân yâft-e va fazâ-ye tabaqâti-e ijâd
in after-EZ will-EZ organised find-PART and space-EZ class based-EZ make
šod-e be Doctor Ahmadinejâd ra'y dâd-e bud-and.
become-PART to Doctor Ahmadinejad vote give-PART be-PAST-3PLU.
Importantly this happened at the time of a government and in a city that most of its
people had voted to Dr Ahmadinejad in Tir 1385 (June-July 2005) in an organised activity.
38. si sâl ast ke az bonyângo-zâri-e jomhuri-e eslâmi mi-go-zar-ad,
thirty year be-3SG that from establishing-EZ Republic-EZ Islamic DUR-pass-3SG,
39. dolat va mellat-e **mâ** be yek asl-e pazi-roft-e šod-e-i
government and nation-EZ **we** to one principle-EZ accept-PART become-PART-a
resid-e bud ke har tarh-i bâyad az se vižegi-e ma'qul,
reach-PART be-PAST-3SG that any plan-a must from three characteristic-EZ sensible,
maqbul va qâbel-e ejrâ barxordâr bâšad.
accepted, and able-EZ execution owner be-3SG.
38-39:
It is thirty years that the Islamic Republic has been established. **Our** government and
people had reached an accepted principle that any plan must have the three
characteristics of sensibility, acceptability and practicality.
40. hâl **bâyad** riše yâbi kon-**im** eškâl dar kojâ bud ke in
now **must** root finding SUBJ-do-1PLU problem in where be-PAST-3SG that this

vaqe'e rox dâd:
event happening give-PAST-3SG:

Now **we must** find the source of the problem that led to this event:

41. yek eškâl-e bineši in bud ke modern-tarin qânun – ke dar biš
one problem-EZ ideational this be-PAST-3SG that modern-most law – that in more
az 160 kešvar-e pišrafte-ye jahân ejrâ šode – qarâr ast
than 160 country-EZ developed-EZ world execution become-PART – established be-3SG
dar sonata-tarin ravâbet, ân ham bedun-e bumi šodan piâde va
in traditional-most relations, it also without-EZ localisation becoming executed and
ejrâ šavad.
execution SUBJ-become-3SG.
One ideological problem was that the most modern law which has been enacted in 160
developed countries is to be enacted and executed in one of the most traditional relations
without being localised.
42. mosallaman dastâvard-e har kešvar-i – harčand xub – bedun-e bumi
certainly achievement-EZ every country-a – however well – without-EZ local
šodan dar kešvar qâbel-e ejrâ na-xâh-ad bud va be bâr na-xâh-ad
becoming in country able-EZ execution not-will-3SG be and to fruit not-sit-3SG
nešast.
sit.
Certainly, the achievements of every country, however well, will not be practical without
localisation in the country and will not be useful.
43. qânun-e mâliât bar arzeš-e afzude 53 mâtde va 47 tabsere dâr-ad
law-EZ tax to value-EZ added 53 article and 47 waver have-3SG
44. va **MODDA'I AST** ke tajmi'e avârez dar marâhel-e tolid
and **CLAIMS BE-3SG** that accumulation-EZ toll in processes-EZ production
hazf va be jâ-ye ân mâliât-e 3 dar sad jâigozin šod-e va fešâr râ
omitted and to place-EZ it tax-EZ 3 per cent replace become-PART and pressure ACC
bar masrafkonande kâheš mi-dah-ad,
to consumer decrease DUR-give-3SG,
45. vali dar amal did-im ke masrafkonandeg-ân a'am az kasabe,
but in practice see-PAST-1PLU that consumer-PLU including of tradesmen,
rânande-gân, kârgar-ân va aqšâr-e moxtalef be gune-ye digar fekr mi-
driver-PLU, labourer-PLU and layers-EZ different to kind-EZ other thinking DUR-
kard-and
do-3PLU
46. va mi-goft-and čon hame-ye šahrvand-ân-e Irân masrafkonande-and, benâ bar
and DUR-say-3PLU as all-EZ citizen-PLU-EZ Iran consumer-be-3PLU, based on
in mâliât-e 3 dar sad tahmil-i ast be hame-ye šahrvandân-e Irân.
this tax-EZ 3 per cent imposition-a be-3SG to all-EZ citizen-EZ Iran.
43-46:
The law of value added tax has 53 articles and 47 wavers, and **CLAIMS** the accumulation
of toll in the process of production is omitted and a 3 per cent tax is replaced which
decreases the pressure on the consumers. But we practically saw that consumers
including tradesmen, drivers, labourers and others were thinking differently, and were
saying as all the people of Iran are consumers, the 3 per cent tax is imposed on all
people.

47. **ŠÂYAD BE-TAVÂN GOFT** in hes-e omumi-e malmus bud ke be
POSSIBLY SUBJ-CAN SAY this feeling-EZ general-EZ touchable be-PAST-3SG that to
 âmel-e moštarak va farâgir tabdil šod
 factor-EZ common and pervasive changed become-PAST-3SG
48. va zamine-ye čâleš miân-e kasabe va dolat râ farâham
 and background-EZ dispute between-EZ tradesmen and government ACC provision
 âvard,
 bring-PAST-3SG,
49. barâye nomune sâheb-e maghaze-ye gaz foruši dar Esfâhân ke maghaze-aš
 for example owner-EZ shop-EZ sweet selling in Esfahan that shop-his/her
râ ta'til kard-e bud goft-e bud man ham masraf konande
ACC closed do-PART be-PAST-3SG say-PART be-PAST-3SG I also consumer
 hast-am, doxtar dâr-am, jahiziyye bâyard tahiyye kon-am va ...
 be-1SG, daughter have-1PLU, dower must provide SUBJ-do-1SG and ...
 47-49:
IT COULD BE SAID it was this general and obvious feeling that formed a common and
 pervasive factor and caused the dispute between the tradesmen and the government. For
 example, a sweets shop owner in Esfahan who had closed his shop said that he was also
 a consumer, he had a daughter and must provide dower and ...
50. dar riše yâbi-e in čâleš, âqâ-ye Jalâledin Šokrie, nâyeb ra'is-e šurâ-ye
 in root finding-EZ this dispute, Mr-EZ Jalaledin Šokrie, vice president-EZ council-EZ
asnâf-e kešvar dar bâre-ye šive-ye ejrâ-ye in qânun, ajulâne budan
Trades-EZ country in about-EZ way-EZ execution-EZ this law, hasty being
 va âmuzeš na-dâdan-e ân be matâleb-e zir ešare kard-e-and:
and training not-giving-EZ it to subjects below point do-PART-be-3PLU
 In order to find out the causes of this dispute, Mr Jalaledin Shokrie, vice president of the
 country's Council of Trades, points to the following subjects about its being executed
 hastily and without training.
51. ²⁴“agar qarâr bâš-ad dâstân-e mâliât bar arzeš-e afzude va e'tesâb-ât-e
 “if established be-3SG story-EZ tax on value-EZ added and strike-PLU-EZ
 bazâr râ barrasi-e mojjaddad-i konim **bâyad** qadri zamân râ be aqab
 bazaar ACC analysis-EZ again-a SUBJ-do-PLU **must** a little time ACC to back
 bazgardân-*im*;
 bring back-1PLU;
52. hengâmi ke sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâti tasmim gereft tâ in qânun
 when that Organisation Affairs-EZ Tax decision take-PAST-3SG till this law
 râ ejrâ konad,
 ACC execution SUBJ-do-3SG,
53. hamân zamân be sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâti e'lâm kard-*im* ke
 that time to Organisation Affairs Tax announcement make-PAST-1PLU that
 in qânun mahkum be šekast ast.
 this law condemned to failure be-3SG.

²⁴ This quotation is integrated with the rest of the article. The author uses it as part of the argument to express his own point of view; therefore, the markers have been counted.

51-53:

If **we** want to reanalyse the issue of value added tax and the strikes in bazaar, **we must** go back to the time when the Tax Organisation decided to execute this law. **We** told the Tax Organisation at that time that this law will fail.

54. asâsan az ebtedâ-ye in dâstân ettelâ' dâst-im ke in qânun
basically from start-EZ this story information have-PAST-1PLU that this law
râh be jây-i na-xâh-ad bord va tanhâ barâye asnâf mozâhemat-hâ-yi
way to place-a not-will-3SG take and only for tradesmen inconvenience-PLU-some
bihude ijâd mi-kon-ad.
useless creation DUR-do-3SG.
Basically we knew from the start that this law will not be useful and will cause
inconveniences for tradesmen.
55. sâzmân-e omur-e Mâliâti pişaz in ke çenin qânuni râ ejrâ konad
Organisation-EZ Affairs Tax before this that such law-a ACC execution SUBJ-do-3SG
bâyad mi-dânest ke ruz-hâ-ye saxti ra dar piş-e ruy xâh-ad dâšt,
must DUR-knew-3SG that day-PLU-EZ hard-a ACC in front-EZ face will-3SG have,
56. vali ânâ bitavajoh be šive-ye fa'âliyyat-hâ-ye asnâf va xâste-hâ-ye ânân tanhâ
but they ignorant to way-EZ activity-PLU-EZ tradesmen and wish-PLU-EZ them only
be samt-e ejrâ-ye xâste-hâ-ye xod raft-and
to direction-EZ execution-EZ wish-PLU-EZ self go-PAST-3PLU
57. va saranjam ham bohrân-i râ šekl dâd-and ke bâ qadr-i durandiši
and finally also crisis-a ACC form give-PAST-3PLU that with little-a forethought
MI-ŠOD az voqu-e ân jelogiri kard,
DUR-CAN-PAST from happening-EZ it prevention do,
58. vali **dar pâyân çe etefâq-i rox dâd,** tanhâ bohrân sâzi
but **in end what event-a happening do-PAST-3SG**, only crisis making
šod.
become-PAST-3SG.
55-58:
Before executing this law, Tax Organisation must have known that it would have hard
times ahead. But ignorant of the activities of tradesmen and their wishes, they only
wanted to execute their own wishes and finally brought on a crisis that **COULD** have been
avoided with a bit of forethought. But **what happened in the end?** A crisis was formed.
59. sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâti **mota'assefâne** be jâigâh-e asnâf va xâstehâ-ye
Organisation Affairs Tax **unfortunately** to place-EZ tradesmen and wish-PLU-EZ
ânân tavajoh-i na-dâšt va tanhâ delmašghuli-e ânân axz-e mâliât
them notice-a not-have-PAST-3SG and only interest-EZ them getting-EZ tax
bud.
be-PAST-ESG.
Unfortunately, Tax Organisation did not pay attention to the tradesmen and their wishes
and its only interest was getting tax.
60. sâzmân hattâ dar zamân-e ta'yin-e zarâyeb-e mâliâti niz raftâr-i
Organisation even in time of determining-EZ coefficientcy-EZ tax also behaviour-a
nešân dâd ke barâye asnâf va bexosus šahrestâni-hâ
showing do-PAST-3SG that for tradesmen and especially towns people-PLU

besyâr nâgovâr bud,
very unpleasant be-PAST-3PLU,

61. amâ az ebtedâ-ye dâstân goft-e bud-im ke in tarh bâ in šive-ye
but from start-EZ story tell-PART be-PAST-1PLU that this plan with this way-EZ
ejrâ az hamin ebtedâ mahkum be šekast ast.
execution from this start convicted to failure is-1SG.
60-61:
Even at the time of determining tax coefficientcy, the organisation behaved in a way that
was very unpleasant for tradesmen, especially those of towns. We had told them from the
start of the plan that this way of executing the law will fail.
62. jâme'e-ye asnâf bâ in tarh movâfeg ast,
society-EZ Tradesmen with this plan agree be-3SG,
63. vali šive-ye ejrâ-ye ân bedun-e bastarsâzi va farhang sâzi ke hamaknun
but way-EZ execution-EZ it without-EZ grounding and culture making that now
az su-ye sâzmân-e omur-e Mâliâti dar hâl-e anjâm ast,
from direction-EZ Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax in situation-EZ doing be-3SG,
Jâme-ye asnâf râ negarân kard-e ast.
Society Tradesmen ACC worried make be-3SG.
62-63:
The Society of Tradesmen agrees with this plan but the way it is executed, that is, without
grounding and culture making, which is being carried out by Tax Organisation now, has
worried the Society of Tradesmen.
64. **GUYÂ** dolat faqat be fekr-e ejrâ-ye in tarh tebq-e
REPORTEDLY government only to thought-EZ enacting-EZ this plan according to
zamân bandi-e mošaxxas ast,
time planning-EZ specific be-3SG,
65. čerâke **BE NAZAR MI-RES-AD** xod-e sâzmân-e omur-e Mâliâti ham
because to **idea DUR-come-3SG** self-EZ Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax also
âmâdegi-e ejrâ-ye čenin tarh-i râ na-dâšt.
preparation-EZ enacting-EZ this plan-a ACC not-have-PAST-3SG.
64-65:
REPORTEDLY, the government is only thinking of enacting this law according to the specific
time plan because **IT SEEMS** Tax Organisation was not prepared for enacting it.
66. sâzmân-e omur-e Mâliâti dar farâham kardan-e moqaddam-ât-e in kâr
Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax in providing doing-EZ preliminary-PLU-EZ this work
besyâr nâmovafaq bud,
very unsuccessful be-PAST-3SG,
67. be tor-i ke âmuzeš-hâ-ye lâzem dar in xosus be asnâf dâd-e
to way-a that training-PLU-EZ necessary in this regard to tradesmen give-PART
na-šod-e ast.
not-become-PART be-3SG.
66-67:
Tax Organisation has been very unsuccessful in providing the preliminaries for it and the
tradesmen have not received the necessary information in this regard.
68. tey-e ruzhâ-ye gozâšte yek jalase-ye âmuzeši bargozâr šod-e va
during-EZ day-PLU-EZ past one session-EZ training holding become-PART and

nemâyande-gân-e sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâti bâ anbuhi az so'âl-ât
representative-PLU-EZ Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax with pile-a of question-PLU

ru be ru šod-and
face to face become-PAST-3PLU

69. ke hattâ xod-ešân ham az pâsoxguyi be besyâr-i az ânhâ natavân bud-and.
that even self-them also from responding to many-a of them incapable be-PAST-3PLU.
68-69:

During the past few days, a training session was held and the representatives of Tax Organisation faced a lot of questions and were not able to answer them.

70. hâl dar in šarâyet ke namâyande-gân-e sâzmân ham az tamâmi-e
now in this situation that representative-PLU-EZ organisation also from all-EZ

ab'âd-e in tarh mottâle' n-ist-and **čegune mi-tavân bedun-e**
aspects-EZ this plan informed not-be-3PLU **how DUR-can without-EZ**

âmuzeš-hâ-ye lâzem in qânun râ ejrâyi kard.
training-PLU-EZ necessary this law ACC executive make.

How can the law be executed without the necessary training when the representatives of the organisation are not informed of all the aspects of the plan.

71. asâsan asnâf dar jarayân-e in tarh qarâr na-gereft-e-and.
basically tradesmen in flow-EZ this plan established not-get-PART-3PLU.
Basically, **tradesmen have not been informed about this plan.**

72. sâzmân-e omur-e Mâliâti hattâ yek nâme ham be surâ-ye asnâf-e
Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax **even one letter also to Council-EZ Trades-EZ**

kešvar dar in xosus ersâl na-kard-e
county in this regard sending not-do-PART

73. va hič gune hamkâri-e fekri bâ in nahâd-e senfi anjam
and **no way cooperation-EZ thought with this organisation-EZ trade done**

na-šod-e ast.
not-become-PART be-3SG.

71-73:

Tax organisaation **has not even sent a letter** in this regard to the country's Council of Trades and **has not consulted this organisation.**

74. barâye ejrâ-ye in tarh **bâyad** had aqal az šeš mâh piš jalas-ât-e
for enacting-EZ this plan **should** at least from six month before session-PLU-EZ

âmuzeši va tojihi bâ majme'-e omur-e senfi va ettehâdie-hâ bargozâr
training and justifiacation with Association Affairs Trades and Union-PLU held

mi-šod
DUR-become-3SG

75. tâ in nahâd-hâ be-tavân-and vâhed-hâ-ye senfi râ tojih kon-and.
so this organisation-PLU SUBJ-can-3PLU unit-PLU-EZ trade ACC justify SUBJ-do-3PLU.
74-75:

In order to execute this plan, training and justification sessions **should** have been held with the Trades and Unions Association six months beforehand so that these organisations could have justified the trade units.

76. dar hâl –e hâzer asnâf dar sardargomi be sar mi-bar-and,
in situation-EZ present tradesmen in confusion to head DUR-take-3PLU,

77. dar hamin jalase-ye axir ham namâyande-gân-e sâzmân-e omur-e
in this session-EZ recent also representative-PLU-EZ Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ
- Mâliâti be dalil-e ettelâ'-ât-e nâkâfi az in tarh faqat onvân
Tax to reason-EZ information-PLU-EZ insufficient from this plan only title
- mi-kard-and ke mâ havâ-ye šomâ râ dâr-im.
DUR-do-3PLU that we air-EZ you ACC have-1PLU.
76-77:
At present, tradesmen are confused. Due to the insufficient information of the Tax Organisation representstives in the last session, they only said that they support the tradesman.
78. **âxar magar mi-šav-ad bâ havâ negah dâštan, nezâm-e mâliâti-e kešvar
last lest DUR-become-3SG with air keeping have, system-EZ tax-EZ country**
- râ edâre kard?
ACC manage do-3SG?
Is it possible to run the tax system of the country with supporting?**
79. **pišnahâd-e mâ in ast ke majles-e Šurâ-ye Eslâmi bâ erâe-ye
proposition-EZ we this be-3SG that Parliament-EZ Council-EZ Islamic with giving-EZ**
- tarh, ejrâ-ye qânun-e mâliât bar arzeš-e afzude râ be moddat-e šeš mâh tâ
plan, enacting-EZ law-EZ tax to value-EZ added ACC to time-EZ six month to
- yek sâl maskut be-gozâr-ad
one year silent SUBJ-keep-3SG
80. tâ âmuzeš-hâ va farhang sazi-e ân bexubi anjâm šav-ad,
so training-PLU and culture making-EZ it well done SUBJ-become-3SG,
81. zemn-e in ke faqat az tariq-e čand mosâhebe **NE-MI-TAVÂN** in mozu' râ
addition-EZ this that only from way-EZ some interview **NOT-DUR-CAN** this subject ACC
- be mo'addi-ân šenâsând.
to payer-PLU make known-3SG.
79-81:
We suggest that the parliament should keep the plan and the execution of the law on value added tax unsaid for six months to one year until trainings and culture making is carried out. This subject **CANNOT** be explained to tax payers only by a few interviews.
82. pasaz âmuzeš va bastar sazi, in tarh **bâyad** dar čand ostân be tor-e
after training and ground making, this plan **must** in several county to way-EZ
- âzmâyeši ejrâyi šav-ad
tentative executional be-3SG
83. va pasaz ân be šekl-e sarâsari **dar bi-ây-ad**
and after it to form-EZ nationwide **SUBJ-become-3SG**
84. yâ had aqal tamrin-e in tarh dar vâhed-hâ-ye senfi **mi-tavân-ad** be ejrâ-ye
or at least practice-EZ this plan in unit-PLU-EZ trade **DUR-can-3SG** to action-EZ
- behtar-e in qânun komak kon-ad.
better-EZ this law help SUBJ-do-3SG.
82-84:
After training and grounding, this plan **must** be enacted in some counties tentatively, and then **must** be executed nation wide; or the practice of this plan in trade units **can** at least help its better execution.

85. sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâti **bâyad** tavajoh dâšt-e bâš-ad ke **AGAR**
 Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax **must** notice have-PART be-3SG that **IF**
- QASD DÂR-AD MÂLIÂT-HÂ RA DAR FAZÂ-YE SÂLEM KASB KON-AD BÂYAD**
INTENTION HAVE-3SG TAX-PLU ACC IN SPACE-EZ HEALTHY GAIN SUBJ-DO-3SG MUST
- hadsqal xâste-hâ-ye asnâf ta'min šav-ad.
 at least wish-PLU-EZ tradesmen provided SUBJ-become-3SG.
 Tax Organisation **must** keep in mind that **IF IT WANTS TO COLLECT TAXES PEACEFULLY**, it **must** at least provide the wishes of tradesmen.
86. **in gune n-ist ke** ânâ har sâz-i ke xod mi-pasand-and,
this way not-be-3SG that they every instrument-a that self DUR-like-3PLU,
- be-zan-and va sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâti pišaz ân ke bohrân râ šeki
 SUBJ-play-3PLU and Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax before it that crisis ACC form
- dahad **bâyad** râhehal-hâ râ barrasi konad.”(2)
 SUBJ-give-3PLU **must** solution-PLU ACC analysis SUBJ-do-3SG.” (2)
It is not the way that they do whatever they like. Tax Organisation **must** consider solutions before making crisis.” (92)
87. ... šeš ruz pišaz ejrâ-ye in qânun, sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâti-e kešvar
 ...six day before enacting-EZ this law, Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax-EZ country
- bâ bargozâri-e jalas-ât-i do sâ'ate barâye hey'at-e modire-ye
 with holding-EZ session-PLU-some two hour for board-EZ managing-EZ
- ettehâdie-hâ-ye senfi qasd-e ettelâ' resâni dar in zamine râ dâšt
 Union-PLU-EZ Trade intention-EZ information sending in this regard ACC have-PAST-3SG
88. ke bargozâri-e in jalas-ât xod anbâšt-i az porseš-hâ râ dar zehn-e
 that holding-EZ this session-PLU self pile-a of question-PLU ACC in mind-EZ
- asnâf be vojud âvard
 tradesmen to creation SUBJ-bring-PAST-3SG
89. ke **mota'assefâne** forsat-i barâye tarh-e ân farâham na-bud. (3)
 that **unfortunately** opportunity-a for planning-a it provision not-be-PAST-3SG .(3)
 87-89:
 Six days before executing the law, Tax Organisation intended to provide information by holding two-hour sessions for the managerial board of Trade Union. In these sessions tradesmen had loads of questions but **unfortunately** there was no opportunity to consider them.
90. hamčenin âqâ-ye Ahmad Karimi Esfahâni, dabir kol-e jâme'e-ye
 also Mr-EZ Ahmad Karimi Esfahâni, manager general-EZ society-EZ
- anjoman-hâ-ye Eslâmi-e asnâf va Bâzâr dar riše yâbi-e çâleš-e
Association-PLU-EZ Islamic-EZ Trades and Bazaar in root finding discussion-EZ
- yâdšode mi-guy-ad:
remembered DUR-say-3SG:
 Finding the causes of the above discussion, Mr Ahmad Karimi Esfahani, the general manager of the Islamic Association of Trades and Bazaar says:
91. ²⁵“**AGAR DAR HENGÂM-E EJRÂ-YE QÂNUN TAVASOT-E DOLAT DEQQAT-E BIŠTAR-I**
 “**IF IN TIME ENACTING-EZ LAW BY-EZ GOVERNMENT CARE-EZ MORE-A**

²⁵ This quotation is integrated with the rest of the article. The author uses it as part of the argument of his own point of view; therefore, the markers have been counted.

MI-ŠOD hičgâh čenin masâel-i ettefâq ne-mi-oftâd.
 DUR-BECOME-PAST-3SG never this issue-some happening not-DUR-fall-PAST-3SG.
 "IF THE GOVERNMENT WERE MORE CAREFUL WHILE EXECUTING THE LAW, this would have never happened.

92. **moškele in bud ke pišaz ejrâyi šodan-e in qânun, kê-e problem this be-PAST-3SG that** before enactment become-EZ this law, work-EZ

ettelâ' resâni barâye mardom be hič vajh anjam na-šod.
 information giving for people not at all done not-become-PAST-3SG.
 The problem was that before enacting the law, people had not been informed at all.

93. be in tartib kasâni ke qarâr bud mašmul-e in qânun
 to this way people that established be-PAST-3SG included-EZ this law

šav-and **be hič vajh tojih na-šod-e bud-and.**
 SUBJ-become-3PLU not at all justified not-become-PART be-3PLU.
 Therefore, those included in this law had not been justified at all.

94. **mota'assefane** bâvojud-e in ke maqâm-e mo'azzam-e rahbari tazakkor
 unfortunately although this that authority-EZ highness-EZ leadership indication

dâd-e bud-and az kê-hâ-ye šetâbzade parhiz šav-ad
 give-PART be-3PLU from work-PLU-EZ hasty avoidance SUBJ-become-3SG

95. in bâr ham šâhed-e harakat-i šetâbzade bud-*im*.
 this time also witness-EZ movement-a hasty be-PAST-1PLU.
 94-95:

Unfortunately, despite the fact that the Supreme Leader had warned to keep away from hasty actions, **we** witnessed a hasty action again.

96. pišaz ejrâ-ye in qânun ham bemânand-e bištar-e kê-hâ-yi
 before execution-EZ this law also like-EZ most-EZ work-PLU-some

ke dar kešvar anjâm mi-šav-ad **hič gune mohâsebe va kê-e kêršenâsi**
 that in country done DUR-become-3SG no kind calculation and work-EZ expert

surat na-gereft ...
 done not-get-3SG...

Before the execution of the law, just like many other plans executed in the country, **no calculation and no expert work had been done ...**

97. **dorost ast ke** dolat molzam be ejrâ-ye qânun ast ... dâst-e
 correct be-3SG that government obliged to execution-EZ law be-3SG ... hand-EZ

dolat dar ejrâ-ye in qânun aslan baste n-ist.
 government in execution-EZ this law never closed not-be-3SG.
It is true that the government is to execute the law but it is free in enacting this law.

98. in qânun besarâhat be naqš-e dolat ešâre kard-e va dast-e dolat
 this law clearly to role-EZ government pointed do-PART and hand-EZ government

râ baz gozâšt-e ast ...
 ACC open keep-PART be-3SG ...

This law has clearly pointed to the role of government and has left its hand open ...

99. pišaz avval-e Mehr mâh – dar vâqe²⁶ pišaz šoru'-e ejrâ-ye in qânun –
 before first-EZ Mehr month – in fact before start-EZ enacting-EZ this law –

²⁶ By using 'in fact' the author wants to be precise about the fate of events happening; therefore it is more of 'certainty marker' rather than 'attitude'.

tazakkor-ât-e lâzem râ be mas'ul-ân dâd-e bud-*im*
warning-PLU-EZ necessary ACC to official-PLU give-PART be-PAST-1PLU

100. va enteqâd-e xod râ nesbat be ejrâ-ye šetâbzade-ye in qânun va adam-e
and criticism-EZ self ACC related to enacting-ez hasty-EZ this law and lack-EZ

tojih-e mardom elam kard-e bud-*im*.
Justification-EZ people announced do-PART be-PAST-1PLU.
99-100:

Before the first of Mehr (22 September) - in fact before the start of executing this law - **we** had warned the officials and **we** had criticised its hasty execution and lack of justification.

101. gheyr az in tazakkor-ât-e šafâhi dar târix-e šeš-om-e Mehr mâh, ya'ni pišaz
apart from this warning-PLU-EZ oral in date-EZ six-th-EZ Mehr month, that is before

vogu'e havâdes, naxostin nâme-ye *mâ* be dolat va vezârat-e eqtesâd
happening-EZ events, first letter-EZ **we** to government and ministry-EZ economy

va dârâyi ersâl šod.
and finance sent become-PAST-3SG.

Apart from these oral warnings, **our** first letter was sent to the Ministry of Economic Affairs and Finance on the sixth of Mehr (27 September), that is, before the events.

102. dar in nâme be dust-ân goft-*im* ke jâme'e âbestan-e havâdes-i ast.
in this letter to friend-PLU tell-PAST-1PLU that society pregnant-EZ events-some be-3SG.
In this letter, **we** told the friends that the society is awaiting some events.

103. dar ejrâ-ye qânun **bâyad** be hoquq-e do taraf fekr kard;
in enacting-EZ law **must** to rights-EZ two side thought do-3SG;

104. taraf-e avval, dolat be onvân-e mojri-e qânun ast va taraf-e dovvom
side-EZ first, government to title executor-EZ law be-3SG and side-EZ second

mardom.
people.
103-104:

Both sides **must** be considered in executing this law; first the government as the executor, and second the people.

105. **bâyad** hoquq-e taraf-e moqâbel-e dolat ham lahâz šav-ad,
must rights-EZ side-EZ opposite-EZ government also considered SUBJ-be-3SG,

106. amâ **mota'assefâne** dar ejrâ-ye in qânun be hoquq-e mardom **tavajjoh-i**
but **unfortunately** in execution-EZ this law to rights-EZ people **attention-a**

na-šod.
not-be-3SG.

105-106:

The rights of the opposite side of the government **must** also be considered.
Unfortunately, the people's rights were not attended in the execution of this law.

107. **ettelâ'** resâni-e dorost-i az su-ye dolat **anjâm na-šod**
information giving-EZ proper-a from side-EZ government done not-become-3SG

108. va mardom az hoquq-e xod ke âgâhi pišaz ejrâ-ye qânun ast
and people from rights-EZ self that knowledge before execution-EZ law be-3SG

mahrûm šod-and.
deprived become-PAST-3PLU
107-108:

People were not properly informed and were deprived of their right of being informed before the execution of law.

109. **nokte-ye mohem in ast ke** hattâ sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâtî va **point-EZ important this be-3SG that** even Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax and kâršenâs-ân-e dârâyi ham ettelâ'-ât-e kâmel-i dar xosus-e in qânun va expert-PLU-EZ finace also information-PLU-EZ complete-a in regard-EZ this law and çegunegi-e ejrâ-ye ân na-dâr-and. How-EZ execution-EZ it not-have-3PLU. **The important point is that** even Tax Organisation and finance experts do not have comprehensive information about this law and its execution.
110. majmu'-e in šarâyet mojob šod tâ in etefâq-hâ-ye talx rox collection-EZ this conditions cause be-PAST-3SG till this event-PLU-EZ bitter happening dah-ad SUBJ-do-3SG
111. va ebtedâ dar Esfahân va sepaš dar Tehrân, bazaar-hâ bâ ta'tili ru be ru and first in Esfahan and then in Tehran, bazaar-PLU with closure face to face šod. become-PAST-3SG. 110-111: All these conditions led to the bitter events. First in Esfahan and then in Tehran bazaars were closed.
112. in ettefâq-hâ dar šarâyet-i rox dâd ke pišaz voqu-e ân this event-PLU in condition-a happening give-PAST-3SG that before happening-EZ it dolat râ az ehtemâl-e čenin ettefâq-hâ-yi âgâh kard-e government ACC from possibility-EZ such event-PLU-some informed make-PART bud-*im*. be-PAST-1PLU These events happened in a condition that **we** had already informed the government about the possibility of its happening.
113. pasaz vâqe'e fa'âliyyat-hâ-ye ziâdi râ barâye ârâm kardan-e ozâ' anjâm after event activity-PLU-EZ many ACC for quiening become-EZ situations done dad-*im*, do-PAST-1PLU,
114. pasaz in jarayân name-hâ-yi barâye surâ-ye amniyyat va surâ-ye after this event letter-PLU-some for Council-EZ Security and Council-EZ ta'min ersâl kard-*im* provision send do-PAST-1PLU
115. va ânhâ râ dar jarayân-e omur qarâr dâd-*im*. and they ACC in flow-EZ affairs put do-PAST-1PLU. 113-115: **We** did a lot of activities to pacify the situation. Then, **we** sent a letter to the Security Council and the Provision Council and informed them about the situation.
116. pasaz ân dar ruz-e Čâhâršanbe 17 Mehr mâh **šaxsan** jalase-i bâ âqâ-ye after it in day-EZ Wednesday 17 Mehr month **personally** meeting-a with Mr-EZ Lârijâni ra'is-e majles-e surâ-ye Eslâmi bargozâr kard-*am* Larijani chairman-EZ parliament-EZ council-EZ Islamic held do-PAST-1SG
117. va bâ erâ'e-ye gozâreš-i, išan râ dar jarayân-e omur qarâr dâd-*am*. and with giving-EZ report-a, he ACC in flow-EZ affairs put do-PAST-1SG.

116-117:

Afterwards, I had a meeting with Mr Larijani, the Chairman of the Parliament, on Wednesday 17 Mehr (8 October). I gave a report and informed him about the situation.

118. be âqâ-ye Lârijâni e'lâm šod ke mas'ul-ân nesbat be in qazâyâ
to Mr-EZ Larijani announced be-PAST-3SG that official-PLU regard to this cases

bitavajoh-and,
ignorant-be3PLU,

119. išân ham mozâker-ât-e xod râ bâ mas'ul-ân-e kešvar âghâz kard-and
he also discussion-PLU-EZ self ACC with official-PLU-EZ country start do-PAST-3PLU

120. tâ ânâ ozâ râ sarosâmân dahand
so they situations ACC right SUBJ-give-3PLU

121. bâ tavajoh be in eqdâm, ruz-e panjšanbe ra'is jomhur dastur-e ta'liq-e
with attention to this action, day-EZ Thursday president order-EZ suspension-EZ

in qânun râ dâd-and ...
this law ACC give-PAST-3PLU ...

118-121:

Mr Larijani was told that the officials were ignorant towards these cases. He started his discussion with the officials of the country to make things right. Considering this action, president ordered the suspension of the law on Thursday

122. **dar hič kojâ-ye donyâ inčenin bedonbâl-e ejrâ-ye qânun na-raft-and.**
in no where-EZ world this way after-EZ execution-EZ law not-go-PAST-3PLU.
No where in the world have they executed law like this.

123. raveš-e ânâ be gune-i ast ke ebtedâ be moddat-e 10 sâl tanhâ mâliât bar
method-EZ they to kind-a be-3SG that first to time-EZ 10 year only tax on

masraf râ ân ham bâ tojih-e kâmel ejrâ mi-kon-and tâ
consumtion ACC it also with justification-EZ complete execution DUR-do-3PLU till

farhang-e in mozu' be vojud âyad.

Culture-EZ this subject to existence SUBJ-come-3SG.

They first execute tax on consumption for a period of 10 years after a complete justification of the society and making the culture for it.

124. dar kešvar-e Âlmân dastgâh-hâ-yi tavassot-e dârâyi be tor-e
in country-EZ Germany gadget-PLU-some by-EZ finance office to way-EZ

polomp šod-e tahvil-e forušan-de-gân šod-e.

sealed become-PART delivered-EZ shopkeeper-PLU become-PART.

In Germany sealed gadgets have been delivered to shopkeepers by the finance office.

125. ânâ dar hengâm-e foruš hamân tor ke bâ yek dogme qeimat-e kâlâ râ sabt
they in time selling same way that with one button price-EZ item ACC record

mi-kon-and
DUR-do-3PLU

126. mizân-e mâliât râ ham bâ dogme-ye digar ta'vin mi-kon-and.
Amount-EZ tax ACC also with button-EZ other determine DUR-do3PLU.

125-126:

They record the price of the item at the time of sale by pressing one button and the amount of tax by pressing another button.

127. in dastgâh-hâ pâyân-e har mâh tavasot-e dârâyi kontrol mi-šav-ad
this gadget-PLU end-EZ every month by-EZ finance office controlled DUR-be-3SG

128. va ettelâ'-ât-e dâxel-e ân mabnâ-ye kâr qarâr migirad ...
and information-PLU-EZ inside-EZ it basis-EZ work established DUR-get-3SG ...
127-128:
These gadgets are controlled at the end of every month by the finance office and their information is used as the base of work ...
129. sâzmân-e omur-e Mâliâti az in čamoxam-hâ be dur ast
organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax from this trick-PLU to far be-3SG
130. va faqat be fekr-e jam'âvari-e mâliât ast.
and only to thought-EZ collecting-EZ tax be-3SG.
129-130:
Tax Organisation is far from these techniques and is only thinking of collecting tax.
131. ânhâ be adam-e rezâyat-e mardom va hattâ taba'-ât-e syâsi-e mâjarâ
they to non-EZ satisfaction-EZ people and even aftermath-PLU-EZ political-EZ event

kâr-i na-dâr-and va tanhâ be fekr-e gereftan-e pul hast-and.
work-a not-have-3PLU and only to thought-EZ getting-EZ money be-3PLU.
They have nothing to do with the dissatisfaction of the people and even its political aftermaths. They only think of getting money.
132. ânhâ šarâyet-e nezam va tamâmi-e masâel-e pirâmun-e ân râ dar nazar
they situations-EZ system and all-EZ issues-EZ roun-EZ it ACC in eye

ne-mi-gir-and ...
not-DUR-take-3PLU ...
They do not consider the situation of the system and all the surrounding issues ...
133. **xod-e sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâti tojih na-šod-e**
self-EZ Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax justified not-be-PART
134. va kâršenâs-ân-e in sâzmân be xosus dar šahrestân-hâ az čegunegi-e
and expert-PLU-EZ this organisation especially in town-PLU from how-EZ

ejrâ-ye in qânun bi-xabar-and."
execution this law not-aware-be-3PLU."
133-134:
Tax Organisation is not justified yet and the experts of this organisation, especially in towns, are not aware of the circumstances of its execution.
135. dar ejrâ-ye qânun, sâzmân-e omur-e Mâliâti-e Esfahân dar ruzhâ-ye
in execution-EZ law, Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax-EZ Esfahan in day-PLU-EZ

pâyâni-e Šahrivar be 10-15 dar sad-e saheb-ân-e mašâghel-e Esfahân
final-EZ Šahrivar to 10-15 per cent-EZ owner-PLU-EZ trades-EZ Esfahan

name-hâ-yi ersâl mi-dâr-ad
letter-PLU-some sent DUR-do-3SG
136. ke had aksar târix-e nâmnevisi 25 Šahrivar geid šod-e bud,
that maximum date-EZ registration 25 Shahrivar mentioned become-PART be-3SG,
137. vali in name-hâ čand ruz pasaz in târix be dast-e mo'adi-ân mi-res-ad
but this letter-PLU several day after this date to hand-EZ payer-PLU DUR-reach-3SG
138. ke bâ'es-e sardargomi-e ânhâ šod-e bud.
that source-EZ confusion-EZ they become-PART be-PAST-3SG.
135-138:
While executing the law, Tax Organisation of Esfahan sent some letters to 10-15 per cent of tradesmen in Esfahan in the final days of Shahrivar (September) in which the latest

registration date had been set 25 Shahrivar (15 September). But tax payers received these letters a few days after this date and were confused.

139. **ŠENID-E ŠOD** ettehâdie-ye senf-e talâ sâz-ân va talâ foruš-ân-e Esfahân
HEARD-PART BE-3SG Union-EZ trade-EZ gold maker-PLU and gold seller-PLU-EZ Esfahân
tey-e name-i be edâre-ye mâliâti-e Esfahân, moškel-ât-e ejrâyi-e in qânun
in-EZ letter-a to office-EZ tax-EZ Esfahan, problem-PLU-EZ executional-EZ this law
râ tozih dâd-e bud-and,
had explanation give-PART be-PAST-3PLU,
140. vali bâ ânhâ barxord-e monâseb-i na-šod-e va ruye ejrâ-ye qânun
but with them contact-EZ proper-a not-be-PART and over execution-EZ law
pâfešâri mi-šav-ad.
insistence DUR-become-3SG.
139-140:
IT WAS HEARD that the Union of Goldsmiths in Esfahan had sent a letter to Esfahan's tax office and had explained the executional problems of this law. But they had not been encountered properly and the execution of law had been emphasised.
141. yeki az mas'ul-ân-e Anjoman-e Eslâmi-e in senf goft-e ast:
one of official-PLU-EZ Association-EZ Islamic-EZ this trade say-PART be-3SG:
One of the Islamic Association officials of this trade says:
142. ²⁷**"mâ** si sâl zahmat kešid-im tâ bazâr-e zargar-hâ ta'til
"we thirty year pain take-PAST-1PLU so bazaar-EZ goldsmith-PLU closed
na-šav-ad,
not-become-3SG,
143. vali in ta'tili be **mâ** tahmil šod
but this closure to **we** imposed become-PAST-3SG
144. va in dar hâl-i ast ke vižegi-e šoghli-e talâ sâz-ân va
and this in situation-a be-3SG that specification-EZ trade-EZ gold maker-PLU and
talâ foruš-ân bâ amniat-e kešvar ajin ast.
gold seller-PLU with security-EZ country mixed be-3SG.
142-144:
"For thirty years **we** tried hard to prevent the closure of goldsmiths, but this closure was imposed on **us**. This happens in a situation that the trade specification of goldsmiths is mixed with the security of the country.
145. yek šemš-e yek kiluyi-e talâ **HODUD-E** 27 million Tumân arzeš dâr-ad,
one bar-EZ one kilo-EZ gold **ABOUT-EZ** 27 milyun Tuman value have-3SG,
146. vali foruš-e ân 10 tâ 20 hezâr Tumân sud dâr-ad,
but selling-EZ it 10 till 20 thousand Tuman benefit have-3SG,
147. amâ 3 dar sad-e mâliâti-e ân 800 hezâr Tumân mi-šav-ad;
but 3 per cent-EZ tax-EZ it 800 thousand Tuman DUR-become-3SG;
148. agar be-xâh-ad in xarid va foruš čand dast be-gard-ad avvalan
if SUBJ-want-3SG this buying and selling several hand SUBJ-move-3SG first

²⁷ This quotation is integrated with the rest of the article. The author uses it as part of the argument of his own point of view; therefore, the markers have been counted.

qeimat-e ân ziâd šod-e, sânian zarib-e mâliâti bar asâs-e in 3 dar
price-EZ it more become-PART, second coefficienty-EZ tax on basis-EZ this 3 per

sad hast na ân sud-e kam-i ke nasib-e **mâ** mi-šav-ad,
cent be-3SG not that profit-EZ little-a that belong-EZ **we** DUR-become-3SG,

149. vali be **mâ** javâb mi-dah-and ke zarib-e mâliâti marbut be commision-e
but to **we** response DUR-give-3PLU that coefficienty-EZ tax related to commission-EZ

zarâyeb ast.
coefficienty be-3SG.

145-149:

A one-kilo gold bar is **ABOUT** 27 million Tumans and selling it makes a profit of 10 to 20 thousand Tumans, but its tax of 3 per cent is 800 thousand Tumans. If it is bought and sold several times, first its price will increase; second tax coefficienty is based on these 3 per cents not on the little profit that **we** make. They respond **us** that tax coefficienty is related to coefficienty commission.

150. in commision morakkab az čand vezâratxâne ast va rabt-i be
this commission composed of several ministeriy be-3SG and relation-a to

sâzmân-e omur-e mâliâti na-dâr-ad.
Organisation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax not-have-3SG.

This commission is made of some ministries and has nothing to do with Tax Organisation.

151. **pišnahâd-e mâ in ast ke** bânk-e markazi rasan šemš-e talâ râ be talâ
suggestion we this be-3SG that bank-EZ central directly bar-EZ gold ACC to gold

sâz-ân be-foruš-ad
maker-PLU SUBJ-sell3SG

152. va 3 dar sad-e mâliâti râ bar ân **be-afzây-ad**
and 3 per cent-EZ tax ACC to it **SUBJ-add-3SG**

153. tâ in ke naxost jelo-ye qâčâq-e šemš-e talâ gereft-e šavad
so this that first front-EZ smuggling-EZ bar-EZ gold blocked-PART SUBJ-be-3SG

154. va dovvom, čon sâder-ât-e talâ-ye sâxte šode be zarar-e
and second, because export-PLU-EZ gold-EZ make-PART become-PART to loss-EZ

mamlekat ast **jelo-ye ân gereft-e šav-ad,**
country be-3SG **front-EZ it blocked-PART SUBJ-be-3SG,**

155. čerâke keifiyyat-e sâxt-e talâ dar Irân nesbat be Torkiye va Dubai pâyin bud-e
because quality-EZ making-EZ gold in Iran relation to Turkey and Dubai low be-PART

156. va sâder-ât râ be qeimat-e talâ-ye zob šod-e mi-xar-and
and export-PLU ACC to price-EZ gold-EZ melted become-PART DUR-buy-3PLU

157. ke be zarar-e mamlekat ast."
that to loss-EZ country be-3SG."

151-157:

We suggest Central Bank should directly sell gold bars to goldsmiths and **should** add the 3 per cent of tax. Therefore, first it will prevent gold bar smuggling. Second, the export of made-gold **should** be stopped since it is not to the benefit of the country because the quality of made-gold is lower in Iran than Turkey and Dubai; therefore, it is bought for the price of melted-gold which is not to the benefit of the country.

158. hamčenin dar riše yâbi-e in čâleš **GOFT-E ŠOD-E** mâtde 30 qânun
also in root finding-EZ this dispute **SAY-PART BECOME-PART** article 30 law

(4) dast-e sâzmân-e omur-e Mâliâti râ be hesâb-e seporde-hâ-ye bânki
(4) hand-EZ Organisaation-EZ Affairs-EZ Tax ACC to account-EZ deposit-PLU-EZ bank

– dar surat-e adam-e extelâf – bâz mi-gozar-ad
– in case-EZ lack-EZ dispute – open DUR-put-3SG

159. va in dar hâl-i ast ke dastrasi be hesâb-e seporde-ye bânki va
and this in situation-a be-3SG that availability to account-EZ deposit-EZ bank and

orâq-e bahâdâr-e šahrvand-ân tanhâ bâ ejâze-ye dâdsetân va ân ham
sheets-EZ valuable citizen-PLU only with permission-EZ Prosecutor and it also

dar mavâred-e amniyyati emkân pazir ast.
in cases-EZ security possible be-3SG.
158-159:

On the causes of this dispute, **IT HAS BEEN SAID THAT** Article Number 30 (4) of law has allowed Tax Organisation to have access to bank accounts – in case there is no dispute. However, access to bank accounts and stock exchange of citizens is only possible with the permission of Prosecutor and for security reasons only.

160. in amr bâes-e adam-e e'temâd-e kasabe be bank-hâ va dar natije taxlie-ye
this case cause-EZ not-EZ trust-EZ tradesmen to bank-PLU and in result emptying

seporde-hâ va falaj šodan-e kasb va kâr va gardeš-e kâr-e
deposit-PLU and paralysis becoming-EZ trade and work and flow-EZ work-EZ

bank-hâ mi-šav-ad.
bank-PLU DUR-become-3SG.

This results in distrust of tradesmen to banks, emptying deposits and paralysis of trades and banks.

161. dar riše yâbi-e in çâleš **BÂZ GOFT-E MI-ŠAV-AD** qânun dar zamân-i be
in root finding-EZ this dispute **AGAIN SAY-PART DUR-BE-3SG** law in time-a to

marhale-ye ejrâ gozâšt-e šod ke bar asâs-e âmâr-e rasmi-e
process-EZ execution put-PART be-3SG that on basis-EZ statistics official-EZ

dolať, ček-hâ-ye bargašti va vâxâst šod-e dar bank-hâ be oj-e
government, check-PLU-EZ returned and protested be-PART in bank-PLU to summit-EZ

xod resid-e,
self reach-PART,

162. rokud va kesâdi dar mo'âmel-ât vojud dâr-ad
recession and decline in business-PLU existence have-3SG

163. va vâred-ât-e kâlâ aztariq-e dollar-hâ-ye nafti be hadd-i ziâd šod-e
and import-PLU-EZ goods through-EZ dollar-PLU-EZ oil to extent-a many become-PART

ke mansuj-ât-e dâxeli tavân-e reqâbat bâ ânhâ râ na-dâr-and.
that textile-PART-EZ internal ability-EZ competition with them ACC not-have-3PLU.
161-163:

On the reasons of this dispute, **IT IHAS BEEN SAID AGAIN** that the law was put into action at a time when, according to the government's official statistics, the number of returned and invalid cheques in banks had reached its summit, there was recession and decline in business, and the import of goods through oil income had been so great that the home textile did not have the ability to compete with.

164. **mota'assefâne** kârxâne-hâ-ye nasâji-e **mâ** niz be ruz na-bud-e
unfortunately factory-PLU-EZ textile-EZ **we** also to date not-be-PART

165. va hazine-ye personeli-e tolid niz ziâd ast
and expense-EZ personnel-EZ production also much be-3SG
166. va nagdinegi niz dar dast-e omum-e mardom n-ist, balke čarx-ye ân dar
and cash also in hand-EZ public-EZ people not-be-3SG, but cycle-EZ it in
dâst-e goruh-e xâss-i ast.
hand-EZ group-EZ special-a be-3SG.
164-166:
Unfortunately, our textile factories are not up to date and the expense of personnel in production is too much. People do not have cash in hand; rather it is in the hands of a special group.
167. **MI-GUY-AND – BAR ASÂS-E ÂNČE MI-ŠENAV-IM –** dar dorân-e rokud
DUR-SAY-3PLU – ON BASIS-EZ WHAT DUR-HEAR-1PLU – in period-EZ recession
dolathâ-ye jahân be baxš-e xosusi komak mi-kon-and tâ dorân-e rokud
government-PLU world to section-EZ private help DUR-do-3PLU so period-EZ recession
separi šavad,
pass SUBJ-become-3SG,
168. vali dar Irân dar čenin šarâyet-e kesâdi, rokud va kambud-e moštari,
but in Iran in this conditions-EZ decline, recession and lack-EZ customer,
mâliât-e 3 dar sadi niz bar xaridâr tahmil mi-šav-ad.
Tax-EZ 3 per cent also to buyer imposed DUR-become-3SG.
167-168:
IT IS SAID – BASED ON WHAT WE HAVE HEARD – in recession governments help private sections to go through the period. However, in Iran in this decline, recession and lack of customers, the 3 per cent tax is also imposed on customers.
169. moškel-e digar dar ejrâ in ast ke dar šarâyet-e konuni ke qeimat-e
problem-EZ other in execution this be-3SG that in situations-EZ present that price-EZ
âhan az kilu-yi 1500 Tumân be 600 Tumân kâheš peidâ kard-e
ironware from kilo-a 1500 Tuman to 600 Tuman reduction find do-PART
170. mi-bin-im az yek su foruš-e in kâlâ bâ zarar ru be ru-st,
DUR-see-1PLU from one side sale-EZ this item with loss face to face-be-3SG,
171. vali 3 dar sad-e mâliâti mablagh-e mostaqell-i ast ke bâyad be dolat
but 3 per cent-EZ tax amount-EZ independent-a be-3SG that must to government
pardâxt,
pay,
172. **če bâyard kard?**
what must do?
169-172:
Another problem in the execution is that the price of ironware has reduced from 1500 Tumans to 600 Tumans a kilo, and we see its sale is not profitable. But the 3 per cent tax is an independent amount which must be paid to the government. **What must be done?**
173. pasaz ma'yus šodan az mozâkere va baste šodan-e bazâr-e
after disappointed becoming from talk and closed being-EZ bazaar-EZ
zargar-hâ dar ruz-e šanbe 12 Mehr 1387, bazâr-e lavazem-e xânegi
goldsmith-PLU in day-EZ Saturday 12 Mehr 1387, bazaar-EZ equipments-EZ household
va baqye-ye sonuf ham ruz-e 13 Mehr mâh be e'tesâb mi-peivand-and.
and rest-EZ trades also day-EZ 13 Mehr month to strike DUR-join-3PLU.

After the disappointment from talks and the closure of goldsmiths on Saturday 12 Mehr 1387 (3 October 2008), the bazaar of home equipment and other trades also joined the strike on 13 Mehr 1387 (4 October 2008).

174. Bazâri-ân darxâst-hâ-ye xod râ nazd-e Emam Jome-ye Esfahân mi-bar-and.
Tradesmen-PLU request-PLU-EZ self ACC near-EZ Friday Prayer-EZ Esfahan DUR-take-3PLU.
Tradesmen asked their requests from the Friday Prayer of Esfahan.
175. išân zemn-e adam-e moxâlefât bâ darxâst-hâ-ye sonuf az ânhâ mi-xâh-ad
he while-EZ not-EZ disagreement with request-PLU-EZ trades from they DUR-want-3SG
ke bazâr râ baz kard-e tâ moškel-ât hal šav-ad,
that bazaar ACC open do-PART till problem-PLU solved become-3SG,
176. vali qazie barâye asnâf ângadr mobham va amiq bud-e ke qane'
but case for tradesmen somuch vague and deep be-3SG that satisfied
na-šod-e va e'tesâb-e bazâr be xiâbân-hâ-ye Esfahân kešid-e mi-šav-ad.
not-be-PART and strike-EZ bazaar to street-PLU-EZ Esfahan pulled-PART DUR-be-3SG.
175-176:
He didn't disagree with the requests of the tradesmen but asked them to open the bazaar so that the problems were solved. But the case was so vague and serious for the tradesmen that they were not satisfied and the strike expanded to the streets of Esfahan.
177. tey-e yek hafte ta'til-e bazâr va xiâbân-hâ hič jenâh-i az ruhâniyyat,
during-EZ one week closure-EZ bazaar and street-PLU no party-a from clergy,
moxâlefât-e âškâr-i bâ in harakat na-kard
opposition-EZ open-a with this movement not-make-3SG
178. va in nešândahande-ye hemâyat-e talvihi-e ânhâ az in harakat bud.
and this indicator-EZ support-EZ implicit-EZ they from this movement be-PAST-3SG.
177-178:
During the one week of closure in the bazaar and streets, no clergy party expressed their disagreement with the movement. This indicated their implicit support of the movement.
179. mozâker-ât bâ farmandâr, ostandâr, edâre-ye mâliât-e Esfahân
talk-PLU with head of governmental office, Governor, office-EZ tax-EZ Esfahan
edâme dâšt.
continuation have-PAST-3SG.
Talks with Esfahan's head of government, Governor, and tax office continued.
180. ruz-e čâhâršanbe 17 Mehr pasaz tajamo' dar barâbar-e edâre-ye mâliât vâqe'
day Wednesday 17 Mehr after gathering in front-EZ office-EZ tax placed
dar xiâbân-e Sepah, jam'iyyat-e ziâd-i be su-ye darvâze dolat, xiâbân-e
in street-EZ Sepah, crowd-EZ large-a to direction-EZ Darvaze Dolat, street-EZ
Čâhârbâgh, meidân-e enqelâb va sepas xiâbân-e kamâledin Esmâ'il râhoftâd-e va
Chaharbagh, square-EZ Engelab and then street-EZ Kamaledin Ismail walke-PART and
be su-ye sedâ va simâ mi-rav-and
to directon-EZ TV Broadcast DUR-go-3PLU
181. tâ xâste-hâ-ye xod râ matrah kon-and.
so wish-PLU-EZ self ACC presentation SUBJ-do-3PLU.
180-181:
On Wednesday 17 Mehr (8 October) a large crowd gathered in front of tax office on Sepah Street and then walked towards Darvaze Dolat, Chaharbagh Street, Engelab Square and then Kamaledin Ismail Street. They went to Television Broadcast centre in order to express their wishes.

182. ânâ az Sedâ va Simâ gele dâšt-and ke çerâ be ta'til-e yekpârçe-ye
they from TV Broadcast complaint havePAST-3PLU that why to closure-EZ absolute-EZ
- bazâr va xiâbân-hâ-ye Esfahân ešare na-kard-e²⁸, dar hâli ke agar heivân-i
bazaar and street-PLU-EZ Esfahan point not-make-PART, in situation that if animal-a
- dar kešvar-e digar-i seqolu be-zây-ad xabar-e ân montašer mišavad.
in country-EZ other-a triplet SUBJ-give birth-3SG news-EZ it published DUR-be-3SG.
They complained why television broadcast did not point to the absolute closure of the
bazaar and the streets in Esfahan; however, if an animal in another country gave birth to
a triplet, it would broadcast the news.
183. beharhâl AGAR HAKAKAT-E BÂZÂRI-HÂ "GHEYR-E SENFI" BUD VA
anyway IF MOVEMENT-EZ TRADESMAN-PLU "NON-BUSINESS" BE-PAST-3SG AND
- XÂSTE-PLU-YEŠÂN MAŠRU'IYYAT NA-DÂŠT VA YÂ FARMÂNDEH-ÂN-E NEZÂMI
WISH-PLU-THEIR LEGALITY NOT-HAVE-PAST-3SG AND OR COMMANDER-PLU-EZ ARMY
- VA AMNIYATI VA HAMČENIN MO'TAMED-ÂN-E BÂZÂR, MATÂNAT VA POXTEGI
AND SECURITY AND ALSO CONFIDENTIAL-PLU-EZ BAZAAR, COOLNESS AND EXPERIENCE
- NEŠÂN NE-MI-DÂD-AND VA BÂ ČENIN JAM'IYYAT-I BARXORD-E NEZÂMI
SHOW NOT-DUR-GIVE-3PLU AND WITH THIS CROWD-A CONTACT-EZ MILITARY
- MI-ŠOD MOMKEN BUD be fâje'e-i tabdil šavad ke
DUR-BECOME-PAST POSSIBLE BE-PAST-3SG to catastrophe-a change SUBJ-be-3SG that
- qâbel-e jobrân na-bud.
able-EZ repair not-be-PAST-3SG.
- Anyway, IF THE MOVEMENT OF TRADESMEN WAS NOT CONCERNED WITH BUSINESS AND THEIR
WISHES WERE NOT LEGAL; OR IF THE SECURITY AND MILITARY COMMANDERS AND BAZAAR
CONFIDENTIALS WERE NOT COOL AND EXPERIENCED AND HAD MILITARY CONFRONTATION WITH
THIS CROWD, then POSSIBLY it would have changed into a catastrophe, the results of which
would have been irreparable.
184. angâh pasaz in ke bazâri-ân xod râ dar moqâbel-e sedâ va simâ
then after this that tradesman-PLU self ACC in front-EZ TV broadcast
- matrah kard-e va az ân film bardâri šod
presentation do-PART and from it film taking become-PAST-3SG
185. *(dar hâli ke šo'âr-e ânâ laghv-e qânun bud),
(in situation that motto-EZ they cancelling-EZ law be-PAST-3SG),*
186. mo'tamed-ân az bazârl-ân mi-xâh-and be xâne-hâ-yešân raft-e va
confidential-PLU from tradesman-PLU DUR-want-3PLU to home-PLU-their go-PART and
- ba'dazzohr-e hamân ruz barâye molâqât va goftogu bâ nemâyande-ye
afternoon-EZ same day for meeting and discussion with representative-EZ
- dolat, âqâ-ye Aliakbar Arab-Mâzâr be edâre-ye mâliât be-rav-and.
government, Mr-EZ Aliakbar Arab-Mazar to office-EZ tax SUBJ-go-3SG.
184-186:
After the tradesmen discussed their wishes in front of TV cameras (*while their motto
was cancelling the law*), confidentils asked them to go home and come back to the tax
office in the afternoon for a meeting with Mr Aliakbar Arab-Mazar, the government
representative.
187. ba'dazzohr-e čâhâršanbe 17 Mehr mo'âven-e vezârat-e dârâyi, âqâ-ye Arab-Mâzâr
afternoon-EZ Wednesday 17 Mehr assistant-EZ Ministry-EZ Finance, Mr-EZ Arab-Mazar

²⁸ The question here has not been counted as a marker because the addressor is not the author and the addressee is not the readers.

bâ ettefâq-e digar mas'ul-ân-e šahr nešast-i bâ bazâri-ân va
with accomlanilent-EZ other official-PLU-EZ city sitting-a with businessman-PLU and

asnâf-e bazâr va mo'tamed-ân-e ânhâ dâšt-and
tradesmen-EZ bazaar and confidential-PLU-EZ them have-PAST-3PLU

188. va tozih-ât-i dar bâre-ye qânun va šive-ye ejrâ-ye ân mi-dah-and
and explanation-PLU in about-EZ law and way-EZ execution-EZ it DUR-give-3PLU

189. ke **mota'assefâne** qânun bâyad be tore tadriji ejrâ mi-šod
that **unfortunately** law must to way-EZ gradual enacted DUR-become-PAST-3SG

190. va dar marhale-ye avval saheb-ân-e mašâghel-i râ šâmel mi-šod
and in process-EZ first owner-PLU-EZ trades-some ACC included DUR-become-PAST-3SG

ke biš az 300 milyun Tumân foruš dâšt-e bâš-and.
that more than 300 million Tuman sale have-PART be-3PLU.

187-190:

On Wednesday afternoon 17 Mehr (8 October) the assistant of Finance Minister, Mr Arab-Mazar, together with other city officials had a meeting with businessmen, tradesmen and their confidentials. They explained about the law and its execution and that **unfortunately** it must have been enacted gradually. They said on the first phase it only included those tradesmen that had over 300 million Tumans sales.

191. išân ezâfe kard-e bud-and ke in qânun šâmel-e 90 dar sad-e asnâf-e
he added do-PART do- PAST-3PLU that this law include-EZ 90 per cent-EZ tradesmen

Esfahân ne-mi-šav-ad.

Esfahan not-DUR-become-3SG.

He added that this law did not include 90 per cent of Esfahan's tradesmen.

192. **ŠÂYAD AGAR IN TOZIH-ÂT PIŠAZ EJRÂ-YE QÂNUN, BARÂYE KASABE--YE**
POSSIBLY IF THIS EXPLANATION-PLU BEFORE EXECUTION-EZ LAW, FOR TRADESMEN-EZ

ESFAHÂN ÂMUZEŠ DÂD-E MI-ŠOD VA DAR ZEHN-E SÂHEB-ÂN-E MAŠÂGHEL
ESFAHAN TRAINING GIVE-PART DUR-BE AND IN MIND-EZ OWNER-PLU-EZ TRADES

MI-NEŠAST VA NAHÂDINE MI-ŠOD qatan bâzâr bast-e
DUR-SIT-PAST-3SG AND FIXED DUR-BECOME-PAST-3SG definitely bazaar closed-PART

ne-mi-šod, amâ mozâker-ât edâme mi-yâft.

not-DUR-be-3SG, but discussion-PLU continuation DUR-find-PAST-3SG

PPSSIBLE IF THESE EXPLANATIONS HAD BEEN GIVEN TO ESFAHAN'S TRADESMEN BEFORE THE EXECUTION OF THE LAW, AND HAD BEEN SETTLED AND FIXED IN THE MINDS OF THE TRADESMEN, definitely bazaar would have not closed, but the discussions would have continued.

193. bazâri-ân bedonbâl-e in goftogu qâne' mi-šav-and tâ
businessman-PLU following-EZ this discussion convinced DUR-become-3PLU to

maghaze-hâ râ az ruz-e šanbe baz kon-and,
shops ACC from day-EZ Saturday open SUBJ-do-3PLU,

194. vali ruz-e panjšanbe 18 Mehr senf-e talâ sâz-ân-e Tehrân e'tesâb-e xod râ
but day-EZ Thursday 18 Mehr trade-EZ gold maker-PLU-EZ Tehran strike-EZ self ACC

šoru' mi-kon-and.

start DUR-do-3PLU.

193-194:

Following this discussion, the tradesmen were convinced to open their shops from Saturday. But the goldsmiths of Tehtan started their strike on Thursday 18 Mehr (9 October).

195. asr-e hamân ruz Doctor Ahmadinejâd az tariq-e sedâ va simâ evening-EZ same day Doctor Ahmadinejad from way-EZ TV Broadcast
tavaqof-e do mâhe-ye in qânun râ e'lam mi-dâr-ad.
cancellation-EZ two month-EZ this law ACC announced DUR-do-3SG.
On the evening of the same day Doctor Ahmadinejad announces the postponing of the law for two months.
196. baxši az asnâf, harakat-e xod râ qânuni, senfi va piruz part-a of tradesmen, movement-EZ self ACC legal, business and victorious
talaqi kardand
consideration do-PAST-3PLU
197. va baxš-e digar mo'taqed bud-and piruzi vaqt-i ast ke qânun laghv and part-EZ other believed be-PAST-3PLU victory time-a be-3SG that law cancelled
šav-ad.
SUBJ-be-3SG
196-197:
Some tradesmen considered their movement legal, business-like and victorious. Others believed victory would be achieved when the law was cancelled.
198. ruz-hâ-ye šanbe tâ sešanbe ya'ni 20 Mehr 1387 tâ 23 Mehr 1387 alâve bar day-PLU-EZ Saturday to Tuesday that is 20 Mehr 1387 to 23 Mehr 1387 addition to
senf-e talâ sâz-hâ tamâmi-e asnâf-e Tehrân, maghaze-hâ-ye xod râ trade-EZ gold maker-PLU all-EZ trades-EZ Tehran, shop-PLU-EZ self ACC
bast-and va be'e'teraz-e xod edâme dâd-and.
close-PAST-3PLU and to complaint-EZ self continuation give-3PLU.
On Saturday 20 Mehr to Tuesday 23 Mehr 1387 (11-14 October 2008), apart from goldsmiths, all the other trades in Tehran closed their shops in complaint.
199. goftogu-hâ-ye ziâd-i anjâm šod ke baxši az ân dar discussion-PLU-EZ many-some happening be-PAST-3SG that part-a of it in
ruznâme-hâ âmad
newspaper-PLU come-PAST-3SG
200. va bazâr dar ruz-e čâhâršanbe 24 Mehr 1387 kâr-e xod râ šoru' kard. and bazaar in day-EZ Wednesday 24 Mehr 1387 work self ACC start do-PAST-3SG.
199-200:
Many discussions took place, parts of which were brought in newspapers. Bazaar opened on 24 Mehr 1387 (15 October 2008).
201. ***hâl in porseš piš mi-ây-ad ke in hame šetâbzadeqi qhâfel qiri, now this question forward DUR-come-3SG that this much haste surprise,***
foqdân-e ta'âmol va âmuzeš va be gofte-ye âqâ-ye Arab- Mâzâr marhale lack-EZ interaction and training and to said-EZ Mr-EZ Arab-Mazar process
suzi barâye çe bud? burning for what be-PAST_3SG?
Now the question is what all this haste, surprise taking, lack of interaction and information and, according to Mr Arab-Mazar, process skipping were for?
202. âyâ inhâ NE-MI-TAVÂNEST pišgiri šavad? whether these NOT-DUR-CAN-3SG prevention SUBJ-be-3SG?
COULDN'T all this be prevented?

203. *âyâ kâršenâsi-hâ-ye majles-e šurâ-ye Eslâmi va sepas dar sath-e whether expertise-PLU-EZ parliament-EZ council-EZ Islamic and then in level-EZ*
- kâbine-ye dolat, vezârat-e dârâyi va beviže sâzmân-e cabinet-EZ government, Ministry-EZ Finance and especially Organisation-EZ*
- omur-e Mâliâti bâyad dar sath-e teorik va eqtebâs az digar kešvar-hâ Affairs-EZ Tax must in level-EZ theoretic and imitation from other country-PLU*
- bâš-ad*
be-3SG
204. *va be amr-e bumi kardan va qâbeliyyat-e ejrâ dar kešvare and to case-EZ localised making and ability-EZ execution in country-EZ*
- xod-emân va ravâbet-e besyâr piçide-ye bazâr enâyat-i na-šav-ad? self-our and relations-EZ many complex-EZ bazaar attention-a not-give-3SG?*
203-204:
Must the expertise of the Parliament, cabinet, Finance Ministry, and especially Tax Organisation be on a theoretic basis and a copy from other countries? Must no attention be paid to localisation, the complex relations in bazaar and capability of execution in our country?
205. *yeki az vižegi-hâ-ye târixi-e mellat-e mâ dolat gorizi va one of characteristic-PLU-EZ historical-EZ nation-EZ we government escape and*
- mâliât gorizi bud-e tax escape be-PART*
206. *va in be raftâr-e ruhâniyyat-e ši'e bar mi-gard-ad and this to behaviour-EZ clergy-EZ Shiite back DUR-go-3SG*
207. *ke moxâlef-e hamkâri-e mâli bâ hokumat-hâ-ye zolm va jor that against-EZ cooperation-EZ financial with government-PLU-EZ tyranny and cruelty*
- bud-and.*
be-PAST-3PLU
205-207:
One of the historical characteristics of our nation has been escaping from government and tax. This goes back to the behaviour of Shiite clergy who were against financial cooperation with tyrannical and cruel governments.
208. *mi-dân-im ke motadayyen-ân-e bâzâr, ham xoms va zakât mi-dah-and DUR-know-1PLU that pious people-PLU-EZ bazaar, also xoms and zakat DUR-give-3PLU*
- va ham mâliât, and also tax*
209. *benâ bar in BE NAZAR MI-RES-AD bâyad dolat ta'âmol-e nazdik-i bâ based on this TO IDEA DUR-COME-3SG must government interaction-EZ close-a with*
- marâje'-e ezâm va ruhâniyyat dâšt-e bâš-ad clerics-EZ great and clergy have-PART be-3SG*
210. *tâ râh-e borun raft-i barâye in mas'ale peidâ šavad so way-EZ out going-a for this problem find SUBJ-be-3SG*
211. *vagarna bâ tavajjoh be peivand-e nazdik-i ke miân-e bazâr va ruhâniyyat or else with attention to union-EZ close-a that between-EZ bazaar and clergy*
- bud-e va hast az yek su va çâleš-hâ-yi ke dar in se sâl-e axir be-PART and be-3SG from one side and dispute-PLU-some that in this three year-EZ last*

miân-e ruhâniyyat va dolat be vojüd âmad-e az su-ye digar
between-EZ clergy and government to existence come-PART from side-EZ other

ejrâ-ye dobare va šetâbzade-ye in qânun –banâ bar ešâre-ye maqâm-e
execution-EZ again and hasty-EZ this law – based on pointing-EZ authority-EZ

mo'azzam-e rahbari dar in bare – be čâleš va bohrân-i tabdil xâh-ad šod.
Highness-EZ leadership in this regard – to dispute and crisis-a change will-3SG be.
208-211:

We know that the pious in bazaar pay both khoms and zakat, and tax. Therefore, **IT SEEMS** the government **must** make a close interaction with the clerics and clergies in order to find a way out of this problem. On the one hand, considering the close union between bazaar and the clergy in the past and present, and on the other hand the disputes between the clergy and the government in the past three years and the hasty execution of this law– according to the Supreme Leader – will lead to a dipute and crisis.

212. **BARXI MO'TAQED-AND** ejrâ-ye šetâbzade-ye qânun bâvojüd-e mavâne'-e âškâr-e
SOME BELIEVE-BE-3PLU execution-EZ hasty-EZ law despite-EZ barriers-EZ clear-EZ

ân bargerefte az yek ideoložy va zamân bandi-e xâss-i ast
it stemming from an ideaology and time planning-EZ special-a be-3SG

213. ke be axz-e mâliât fekr mi-kon-ad va dar natije mardom dor zad-e
that to getting-EZ tax thought DUR-do-3SG and in result people round hit-PART

mi-šav-and.

DUR-be-3PLU.

212-213:

SOME BELIEVE the hasty execution of the law despite the clear barriers stemmed from a special ideaology and time-planning that thinks of getting tax. As a result, people are ignored.

214. azânjâke gâm-e dovvom-e tarh-e tahavvol-e eqtesâdi, xosusi kardan-e
since step-EZ second-EZ plan-EZ development-EZ economical, private making-EZ

pâlâyešgâh-hâ, post va ... ast,
refinery-PLU, post and ... be-3SG,

215. mabâlegh-e nâši az axz-e mâliât va gerân šodan-e qeimat-e benzin
amounts-EZ coming from getting-EZ tax and expensive becoming-EZ price-EZ gas

va post va digar aqlâm **MI-TAVÂN-AD** yârâne-hâ-yi râ ke âqâ-ye Ahmadinejâd
and post and other items **DUR-CAN-3SG** subsidy-PLU-some ACC that Mr-EZ Ahmadinejad

– bar asâs-e etelâ'-ât-e xânevâr – be mardom qol dâd-e pušeš
– on basis-EZ information–PLU-EZ family – to people promise give-PART cover

dah-ad.

SUBJ-give-3SG.

214-215:

Since the second step in the economical development plan is privatising refineries, post and ..., the income out of tax and price increase of gas and post and other items **CAN** cover the subsidies Mr Ahmadinejad has promised to people based on the family information.

216. **BARXI DIGAR MO'TAQED-AND** agar hadaf-e in qânun šaffâf sazi-e darâmad-hâ-st
SOME OTHER BELIEVE-BE-3PLU if aim-EZ this law clear making-EZ income-PLU-be-3SG

217. **âyâ** behtar na-bud **dolat** in šafâf sazi râ az xod šoru'
whether better not-be-PAST-3SG **government** this clear making ACC fromself start

konad?

SUBJ-do-3SG?

216-217:

OTHERS BELIEVE if the aim of this law was crystalising incomes, wasn't it better the government started this crystalising with itself?

218. sanduq-e zaxire-ye arzi, raqam-e budje-ye 40 milyârd Tumâni
box-EZ reserve-EZ foreign exchange, amount-EZ budget-EZ 40 milliard Tuman

barâye ettelâ'-ât-e xânevâr-hâ va ...
for information-PLU-EZ family-PLU and ...
Foreign Exchange Reserves, the amount of 40 milliard Tumans for family information and ...
219. dar sâl-e 1350 kâršenâs-ân-e OPEC tahqiqi-ât-i ruye qeimat-e zâti-e naft
In year-EZ 1350 expert-PLU-EZ OPEC research-PLU-some on price-EZ inherent oil

anjam dâd-and
done do-PAST-3PLU
220. va arzyâbi-e ânhâ in bud ke har boške naft-e xam –dar moqâyese
and evaluation-EZ they this be-PAST-3SG that every barrel petroleum – in comparison

bâ enerzi-hâ-ye digar – 75 dolâr arzeš dâr-ad,
with energy-PLU-EZ other – 75 dollar value have-3SG,
221. benâ bar in bar asâs-e yek hesâbdâri-e kalân-e san'ati dar sâl-e 1350 har
based on this on basis-EZ one account-EZ macro-EZ industrial in year-EZ 1350 every

boške az servat-e naft ke sâder mi-šod 73 dolâr ziân mi-dâd-**im**
barrel from rich-EZ oil that exported DUR-be-PAST-3SG 73 dollar loss DUR-give-PAST-**1PLU**
222. va dar sâl-e 1353 ke qeimat-e rasmi-e har boške naft 14 dolâr bud
and in year-EZ 1353 that price-EZ official-EZ every barrel oil 14 dollar be-PAST-3SG
223. dar sodur-e har boške naft-e xam 61 dolâr ziân mi-dâd-**im**,
in exporting-EZ every barrel petroleum 61 dollar loss DUR-give-**1PLU**
224. hâl agar be-xâh-**im** 75 dolâr-e sâl-e 1350 šamsi râ be arzeš-e konuni
now if SUBJ-want-**1PLU** 75 dollar-EZ year-EZ 1350 solar ACC to value-EZ present

dar sâl-e 1387 tabdil kon-**im**,
in year-EZ 1387 change SUBJ-do-**1PLU**,
225. bâ tavajjoh be tavarrom va qodrat-e xarid-e dolâr va in ke dar sâl-e
with attention to inflation and power-EZ purchase-EZ dollar and this that in year-EZ

1350 har ons talâ 32 dolâr va hâl 700 dolâr arzeš dâr-ad
1350 every ounce gold 32 dollar and now 700 dollar value have-3SG
226. xâh-**im** did ke qeimat-e zâti-e naft-e xam bâ in qeimat-hâ-ye esmi ke
will-**1PLU** see that price-EZ inherent-EZ petroleum with this price-PLU-EZ face that

ma'mulan masrafkonande-hâ ta'yin mi-kon-and az zamin tâ âsemân tafâvot
usually consumer-PLU determine DUR-do-3PLU from earth to heaven difference

dâr-ad. (5)
have-3SG. (5)
219-226:
In 1350 (1971-1972) OPEC experts made a research on the true value of oil. They evaluated that a barrel of petroleum, compared with the other energies, has a value of 75 dollars. Therefore, **we** lost 73 dollars in every barrel of oil that was exported in 1350 (1971-1972) on the basis of a macro industrial account. In 1353 (1974-1975) the official

price of oil was 14 dollars and **we** lost 61 dollars in every barrel of oil. If **we** change the 75 dollar in 1350 (1971-1972) to the present value in 1387 (2008-2009), considering inflation and the purchasing power of dollar and that in 1350 (1971-1972) every ounce of gold was 32 dollars but now it is 700 dollars, **we** will see that the true value of petroleum with these face values determined by consumers is very large.

227. be gofte-ye âqâ-ye xâtami moškel-e eqtesâdi-e **mâ** maraz-e mozmen-e
to said-EZ Mr-EZ Khatami problem-EZ economical-EZ **we** illness chronic-EZ
e'tiâd be darâmad-e naft ast – ke albatte darâmad n-ist balke
addiction to income-EZ oil be-3SG – that of course income not-be-3SG but
sodur-e servat ast –
export-EZ rich be-3SG –
228. **mota'assefâne** har dolat-i ke ruye kâr mi-ây-ad čand sabâh-i
unfortunately every government-a that on work DUR-come-3SG several morning-a
ruye darâmad-e naft hesâb kard-e va raqam-e omde-ye budje-ye jâri râ
on income-EZ oil counting do-PART and figure-EZ major-EZ budget current ACC
taškil mi-dah-ad,
comprise DUR-give-3SG,
229. vali kamtar šâhed-e yek barnâmerizi-e amiq ruye maxâzen-e zirzamini-e naft
but less witness-EZ one planning-EZ deep on resources-EZ underground-EZ oil
bud-**im**;
be-PAST-**1PLU**;
230. **moškel dar in ast** ke yek barnâme-ye jâme'-e eneržy na-dâr-**im**
problem in this be-3SG that one plan-EZ comprehensive-EZ energy not-have-**1PLU**
231. tâ tosee-ye paidâr-**emân** râ az ân elhâm be-gir-**im**.
so development-EZ stable-**our** ACC from it inspiration SUBJ-get-**1PLU**.
227-231:
According to Mr Khatami, **our** economical problem is a chronic addiction to oil income,
which is not income, of course, but export of riches. **Unfortunately**, every government
that starts work, counts on oil income and oil income comprises the major part of the
current budget. However, **we** see few proper plannings on the underground resources of
oil. **The problem is we** do not have a comprehensive plan for energy in order to inspire
our stable development from.
232. beharhâl gozar az naft be mâliât do hâlat dâr-ad;
anyway passage from oil to tax two situations have-3SG;
233. **MI-TAVÂN-AD** in gozar dar fâz-e nezâmi-amniyyati va bâ fešâr va
DUR-CAN-3SG this passage in phase-EZ military-security and with pressure and
zur az râh-e gereftan-e avârez va mâliât anjâm šavad
force from way-EZ getting-EZ toll and tax done SUBJ-be-3SG
234. ke dar in râstâ Irân-i xâh-**im** dâšt âbestan-e havâdes, **čâleš** va **bohrân**,
that in this length Iran-a will-**1PLU** have pregnant-EZ events, **disputes and crisis**,
ke **xodâ na-kon-ad**.
that **god not-do-3SG**.
232-234:
Anyway, passage from oil to tax **COULD** be in two ways. It can be military-security and by
getting toll and tax by pressure and force. Then, **we** will have an Iran full of events,
disputes and crisis. **God forbid**.

235. **tabi'i ast** ke in râh be enzevâ-ye niru-hâ-ye nezâmi va amniyyati **natural be-3SG** that this way to isolation-EZ force-PLU-EZ military and security
mi-anjâm-ad,
DUR-lead-3SG,
236. harčand ke in niru-hâ dar seir-e defâ'-e moqaddas, mamlekat râ although that this force-PLU in process-EZ defending-EZ sacred, country ACC
nejât dâd-e va esteqlâl-e **mâ** râ ta'min kard-and.
saving give-PART and independence-EZ **we** ACC provision do-PAST-3PLU.
235-236:
Naturally, this will lead to the isolation of military and security forces although these forces saved the country and provided **our** independence in the process of the sacred defence.
237. barâye gozar az vâbastegi-e naft tâ edâre-ye mamlekat az tariq-e digar, for pass from dependence-EZ oil to managing-EZ country from way-EZ other,
râh-e borun raft-e digar-i ham vojûd dâr-ad va ân râh-e syâsi - qânuni way-EZ out going-EZ ther-a also existence have-3SG and that way-EZ political - legal
va bâ tamassok be qânun-e asâsi samare-ye enqelâb ke behtarin sanad-e and with resort to Constitution fruit-EZ revolution that best document-EZ
vefâq-e melli mi-bâš-ad.
consensus-EZ national DUR-be-3SG.
In order to pass from dependence on oil to better ways of managing the country, there is another way out. It is political-legal and with resort to Constitution which is the result of the revolution and the best document of national consensus.
238. dar partov-e qânun garâyi ast ke extelâf-e miân-e osulgarâyân in ray-EZ law abiding be-3SG that problem-EZ between-EZ Fundamentalist-PLU
va eslâhtalab-ân halšodani ast,
and Reformist-PLU solvable be-3SG,
239. čerâke osulgarâyân asl-i behtar az qânun-e asâsi na-dâr-and ke because Fundamentalists principle-a better than Constitution not-have-3PLU that
erâ'e dah-and – ke mored-e tavâfoq-e hame bâš-ad –
voting SUBJ-give-3PLU – that case-EZ agreement-EZ all be-3SG –
240. va eslâhtalab-ân niz eslâh-ât-e mosrrah râ dar qânun-e asâsi talab mi-kon-and. and Reformist-PLU also reform-PLU-EZ specified ACC in Constitution want DUR-do-3SG.
238-240:
It is with law abiding that the problem between Fundamentalists and Reformists can be solved because Fundamentalists have no principle better than Constitution – accepted by all – and Reformists want specified reforms in Constitution.
241. marhum Mohandes Bazargân dar sâl-e 1340 mi-goft ânče u râ late Mohandes Bazargan in year-EZ 1340 DUR-say-PAST-3SG what he ACC
jazb-e hokumat-e melli-e Mosadeq kard in bud ke attracted-EZ government-EZ national-EZ Mosadeq make-PAST-3SG this be-PAST-3SG that
tojjar, dâvtabâne dar saf-e pardâxt-e mâliât be dolat bud-and.
businessmen, voluntarily in queue-EZ paying-EZ tax to government be-PAST-3PLU.
In 1340 (1961-1962) late Mohandes Bazargan said what attracted him to the national government of Mosadeq was that businessmen queued to pay tax to the government voluntarily.

242. **yâd-emân bâš-ad** ke in padide dar hamin sarzamin va dar darun-e
memory-our IMP-be-3SG that this phenomenon in this land and in inside-EZ
 hamin mellat rox dâde ast.
 this nation happening do-PART be-3SG.
We should keep in mind that this happened in this same land and in this same nation.
243. **be nazar-e man amal-e sâleh-e jâme'e-ye mâ bâ tavajjoh be šarâyet-e**
to idea-EZ / deed-EZ good-EZ society-EZ we with attention to condition-EZ
dâxeli va beinolmelali in ast
internal and international this be-3SG
244. ke budje-ye jâri-e mamlekat mottaki be darâmad na-bâš-ad,
 that budget-EZ current-EZ country dependent to income not-be-3SG,
245. **bâyad** kasâni mamlekat râ edâre konand ke mamlekat râ dar fâz-â
must people country management SUBJ-do-3PLU that country ACC in phase-EZ
 qânuni - syâsi negâh dâšt-e tâ dar partov-e e'temâd-e motaqâbel az
 legal - political keeping have-PART so in ray-EZ confidence-EZ reciprocal from
 hadaksar potânsiel-e âzâd šod-e-ye mardom estefâde-ye behine
 maximum potential-EZ freed become-PART-EZ people use-EZ better
 šav-ad.
 SUBJ-become-3SG
 243-245:
 Considering the home and international conditions, **I believe the best thing for our country is that** the current budget of the country should not depend on income. Those **must** manage the country who keeps the country in a legal-political phase in order to make the best use of the freed potential of people under a reciprocal confidence.
246. **man** be in dalil dar čenin šarâyet-i be fard-i nazir-e xâtami
I to this reason in such conditions-some to individual-a like-EZ Khatami
 mi-andiš-am
 DUR-think-1SG
247. ke pasaz dorân-e jang va dorân-e sâzandegi bâ šo'âr-e qânun-e asâsi-
 that after period-EZ war and period-EZ reconstruction with motto-EZ Constitution –
 ke samare-ye enqelâb ast – va qânun garâyi mamlekat râ be osul-e
 that fruit-EZ revolution be-3SG – and law abidind country ACC to principles-EZ
 enqelâb baz gardân-ad;
 revolution again SUBJ-take-3SG;
248. šaxs-i ke dar 8 sâl riâsat-e jomhuri-e xod na yek dorugh goft va
 individual-a that in 8 year presidency-EZ self not one lie tell-PAST-3SG and
 na yek tohin kard.
 not one insult make-PAST-3SG.
 246-248:
 That is why in the present conditions **I think of** a person like Khatami who returned the country to the principles of revolution with the motto of Constitution – the result of revolution – after war and reconstruction periods, a person who never lied and never insulted people during his 8 years of presidency.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
9		If we got rid of this condition and made a new situation in the society	
11	cannot		
27	possibly		
33	I do not remember		
44	claims		
47	it could be said		
57	could		
64			reportedly
65	it seems		
81	cannot		
85		if it wants to collect taxes peacefully	
91		If the government were more careful while executing the law	
139			It was heard
145	about		
158			it has been said that
161			it has been said again
167			It is said
167			on the basis of what we have heard
183		If the movement of tradesmen was not concerned with business and their wishes were not legal	
183	possibly	if the security and military commanders and bazaar confidentials were not cool and experienced and had military confrontation with this crowd	
192	possibly	if these explanations had been given ... of the tradesmen	
202	couldn't		
209	it seems		
212			Some believe
215	can		
216			Others believe
233	could		
	15	6	8

Table A2.11 Uncertainty markers in text No. 23

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
13			Mr Amadinejad pointed to an important point
17			Mr Ahmadinejad concluded
18			experts have made a lot of researches on oil resources and have published many articles that
20	must		
26	must		
30	All of us know		
39	must		
41		executed and enacted	
42	certainly		
45	we practically saw		
49			A sweet shop owner in Esfahan who had closed his shop said
50			Mr Jalaledin Shokrie ... points to the following subjects
54	we knew from the start		
55	must		
61	we had told from the start		
90			Mr Ahmad Karimi Esfahani, general manager of Islamic Association of Trades and Bazaar says
99	in fact		
141			One of the Islamic Association officials of this trade says
161			according to the government's official statistics
162		recession and decline	
168		decline, recession and lack of customers	
170	we see		
171	must		
187		businessmen and tradesmen	
189	must		
191			he added that
192	definitely	had been settled and fixed	
201		haste, surprise, indecision and ... process skipping	According to Mr Arab-Mazar
203	must		
208	we know		
209		clerics and clergies	
211			according to the Supreme Leader
220			they evaluated that
227	of course		According to Mr Khatami
233		pressure and force	
241			late Mohandes Bazargan said
	17	8	14

Table A2.12 Certainty markers in text No. 23

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
12	be that		
20		The reality is	
37		importantly	
40	must		
51	must		
59		unfortunately	
71			have not been informed
72			has not even sent a letter
73			has not consulted this organisation
74	should		
79	we suggest that		
82	must		
83	must		
84	can		
85	must		
85	must		
86	must	It is not the way that	
89		unfortunately	
92		The problem was that	people had not been informed at all
93			those included in this law had not been justified at all
94		unfortunately	
96			no calculation and no expert work had been done
97		It is true that	
103	must		
105	must		
106		unfortunately	people's rights were not attended
107			people were not properly informed
109		The important point is that	
122			No where in the world have they executed law like this.
133			Tax Organisation is not justified yet
134			the experts of this organisation ... are not aware of the circumstances of its execution.
151	we suggest		
152	should		
154	should		
164		unfortunately	
172	must		
189		unfortunately	
209	must		
217	was n't it better		
228		unfortunately	
230		the problem is	
234		God forbid	
235		naturally	
242	We should keep in mind		
243	the best thing for our country in the present situation is	I believe	
245	must		
246		I think of	
	22	18	11

Table A2.13 Attitudinal markers in text No. 23

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1	our					
2		I				
3		I				
6	our					
9	we					
9	we					
9	we					
9	we					
14	we					
18	our					
20	we					
22	we					
30	we					
32		I				
33		I				
36				What has happened that ...?		
39	our					
40	we					
45	we					
51	we					
51	we					
53		we				
54		we				
58				what happened in the end		
61		we				
70				how can this law be executed without the necessary training?		
78				Is it possible to run the tax system of the country with supporting?		
79		we				
95	we					
99		we				
100		we				
101		our				
102		we				
112		we				
113		we				
114		we				
115		we				
116		personally				
117		I				
142		we				
143		us				
148		us				
149		us				
151		we				
164	our					
167	we					
170	we					
172				what must be done?		
185					(while their motto was cancelling the law)	
201				Now the question is ... was		

				for?		
202				Couldn't all this prevented?		
203				Must the experience of the Parliament, cabinet ...and a copy from other countries?		
204	ourselves			Must no attention be paid to localisation ... in our country?		
205	our					
208	we					
217				Was n't it better the government started this crystalising with itself?		
221	we					
223	we					
224	we					
224	we					
226	we					
227	our					
229	we					
230	we					
231	our					
231	we					
234	we					
236	our					
242	we					
243	our					
246						
	37	25	0	10	1	0

Table A2.14 Engagement markers in text No 23

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A2.15 'we' expressing third parties in text No 23

Text No. 24

Ettelaat-e Weekly, No. 3305, 7, 28 Nov. 2007

By: Mohammad Amin Javadi

Number of Words: 1066

1. *čegune jobrân kon-and?!
how compensate do-3PLU?!
How should they compensate?!*
2. *hafte-ye gozašte darbâre-ye lozum-e control-e naqlinegi sohbat kard-im
week-EZ last about-EZ necessity-EZ control-EZ cash talk do-PAST-1PLU*
3. *va arz šod ke vorud-e in naqdinegi be bâzâr-e maskan
and mentioned be-PAST-SG that entrance-EZ this cash to market-EZ housing

ellat-e asli-ye afzâyeš-e šadid-e qeimat-e ân bud-e ast
reason-EZ main-EZ increase-EZ severe-EZ price-EZ it be-PART be-3SG*
4. *VA TÂ ZAMÂN-I KE IN HAJM-E NAQDINEGI KÂHEŠ NA-YÂB-AD, in seir-e
AND TO TIME-A THAT THIS VOLUME-EZ CASH DECREASE NOT-FIND-3SG, this travel-EZ

gheir-e qâbel-e mahâr, sarzamin-hâ-ye digari râ dar xâh-ad navardid.
non-EZ able-EZ restrain, land-PLU-EZ other ACC in will-3SG navigate.*

2-4:

Last week **we** talked about the necessity of controlling cash and it was mentioned that bringing this cash into the housing market has been the main reason for the rapid growth of house prices. **UNLESS THE AMOUNT OF THIS CASH HAS NOT DECREASED**, this non-restrainable journey will spread into other areas.

5. ya'ni az bâzâr-e ešba'šode-ye maskan be bazaar-hâ-ye digari naql-e
that is from market-EZ saturated-EZ housing to market-PLU-EZ other transference-EZ

makân mi-kon-ad
place DUR-do-3SG
6. va leza ânçe ke dar râbete bâ maskan va zamin ettefâq oftad
and so what that in connection with housing and land happening fall-PAST-3SG
7. va ânçe ke dar mored-e talâ va xodro ettefâq oftad-e ast
and what that in about-EZ gold and car happening fall-PART be-3SG
8. va niz ânçe ke bâzâr-e burs râ tahdid mi-kon-ad
and also what that market-EZ stock ACC threaten DUR-do-3SG
9. nadide gereftan-e osul-e mosallam-e eqtesadi ast.
ignoring-EZ basics-EZ certain-EZ economic be-3SG.
5-9:
That is, it will spread from the saturated housing market to other markets. What happened in housing and land and what has happened to gold and car and what is also threatening the stock market is ignoring the certain economical principles.
10. dolat-e mohtaram talaš-e qâbel-e tavajoh-i dâr-ad
government-EZ honourable effort-EZ able-EZ notice-a have-3SG
11. ta az mizân-e hazine-hâ-yaš kam kon-ad
so from amount-EZ expense-PLU-its less SUBJ-make-3SG
12. amâ barname-hâ-ye erâ'e šode va yâ tasvib šode be gune-i bud-e ast
but program-PLU-EZ presented and or approved to kind-a become-PART be-3SG
13. ke be nagozir bar hajm-e dolat afzud-e ast
that inevitably to bulk-EZ government increased be-3SG
14. va leza harčand ke dolat talaš mi-kon-ad tâ az hazine-hâ-yaš
and so although that government effort DUR-make-3SG so from expense-PLU-its

be-kah-ad
SUBJ-decrease-3SG
15. dar amal čon bar hajm-e dolat afzud-e šod-e ast,
in practice as to bulk-EZ government increase-PART become-PART be-3SG,
16. be nagozir hazine-hâ-yaš niz afzâyeš xâh-ad dašt
inevitably expense-PLU-its also increase will-3SG have
17. va râhehal-e in mas'ale niz kâstan az hoquq-e kârmând-ân va
and **solution-EZ this problem also decrease from salary-EZ employee-PLU and**
kârgar-ân-aš n-ist.
labourer-PLU-its not-be-3SG.

10-17:

The honourable government is making a noticeable effort to decrease its expenditures but the presented or approved programs have inevitably increased the bulk of the government. Although the government is trying to decrease its expenditures, in practice as the bulk of the

government increases, its expenses also increase. **The solution to this problem is not decreasing the salary of its employees and labourers.**

18. **DAR AFVÂH ŠENID-E MI-ŠAV-AD**
IN MOUTHS HEAR-PART DUR-BECOME-3SG

19. ke dolat qasd dâr-ad baraye râayat-e qanâ'at va sarfejuyi
that government intention have-3SG for observation-EZ contentment and economy

emsal **HODUD-E** šeš dar sad bar hoquq-e kârgar-ân va kârmand-ân
this year **ABOUT** six per cent to salary-EZ labourer-PLU and employee-PLU

be-yafzay-ad.
SUBJ-increase-3SG.
18-19:

IT IS SAID THAT in order to economise and save the government intends to increase the salary of labourers and employees **ABOUT** six per cent.

20. nâ-gofte peidâ-st
not-said clear-be-3SG

21. ke çenin eqdâm-i na faqat yek harakat-e mosbat be hesâb ne-mi-ây-ad,
that this step-a not only one movement-EZ positive to count not-DUR-come-3SG,

balke fâsele-ye tabaq-âti râ bištar mi-kon-ad
but gap-EZ class-PLU ACC more DUR-make-3SG

22. va tangnâ-ye eqtesâdi-ye çešmgir-tar-i bar aqšâr-e hoquq begir be
and pressure-EZ economical-EZ noticeable-more-a to groups-EZ salary gainer to

vojud xâhad âvard.
existence will-3SG create.
20-22:

It is clear that this step not only is not a positive action, but will increase the social gap and will generate a noticeable economical pressure on employees.

23. **be e'teqâd-e man** in eqdâm, damedasti-tarin va sâde-tarin râh-i ast ke
to belief-EZ I this action, accessible-most and simple-most way-a be-3SG that

dolat baraye kontrol-e naqdinegi dar sadad-e anjam-e ân ast.
government for control-EZ cash in plan-EZ doing-EZ it be-3SG.

I believe this is the simplest and most accessible action that the government has planned to take in order to control the amount of cash.

24. jam'âvari-ye pul va control-e ân az tariq-e faqir-tar kardan-e aqšâr-e
collecting-EZ money and controlling-EZ it from way-EZ poor-er making-EZ groups-EZ

âsibpazir, na be edâlat nazdik ast va na be ensâf, balke âxarin râhehall-i
vulnerable not to justice close be-3SG and not to fairness, but last solution-a

ast ke dolat **MI-TAVÂN-AD** dar kontrol-e naqdinegi dar piš be-gir-ad.
be-3SG that government **DUR-can-3SG** in control-EZ cash in front SUBJ-get-3SG.
Collecting money and controlling it through making the vulnerable classes poorer is not only unfair and unjust, but is the worst solution that the government **COULD TAKE** to control cash.

25. **in kâr dorost mesl-e ân ast ke vâqe'e-ye bezâher zešt-i ettefâq**
this work exactly like-EZ it be-3SG that incident-EZ seemingly ugly-a happening

oftâd-e va mâ be jâ-ye ân ke mosabbeb-e asli râ tanbih kon-im,
fall-PART and we to place-EZ it that cause-EZ main ACC punishment SUBJ-do-1PLU,

*bačče-ye mazlum-i râ ke damedast-emân gir oftâd-e ast, bâ yek
child-EZ innocent-a ACC that accessible-our trapped fall-PART be-3SG, with one*

*sili-ye jânâne be-navâz-im! hâl harče u be-guy-ad xodâ mi-dân-ad man
slap-EZ lovely SUBJ-beat-1PLU! now whatever s/he SUBJ-tell-3SG God DUR-know-3SG I*

*gonâh-i na-dâšt-e-am, šîše râ kas-e digar-i šekast-e va sang râ
fault-a not-have-PART-1SG, glass ACC person-EZ other-a break-PART and stone ACC*

*kas-e digar-i andâxt-e, harf-i be guš-emân na-rav-ad va xašm va
person other-a throw-PART, word-a to ear-our not-go-3SG and anger and*

ghazab-emân kontrol na-šav-ad.

rage-our control not-become-3SG.

*This is like the time when an ugly incident has happened and instead of punishing
the main cause of the incident, we slap an innocent child who is at hand! Whatever
he say that he did not have any fault, someone else broke the window and someone
else threw the stone, we turn a deaf ear to it and not be able to control our rage and
anger.*

26. in ensâf n-ist ke dolat sili-ye tâze-i bar gun-e-ye kârmând-ân
this fair not-be-3SG that government slap-EZ new-a to cheek-EZ employee-PLU

va hoquq begir-ân-aš be-navâz-ad.

and salary gainer-PLU-its SUBJ-beat-3SG.

It is not fair that the government slaps its employees and salary-gainers again.

27. dar hamin mâh-hâ-ye axir ke qeimat-hâ seir-e so'udi-ye mahsus-i peidâ
in this month-PLU-EZ last that price-PLU travel-EZ up-EZ marked-a find

kard-e-and,

do-PART-be-3PLU,

28. dar baxš-e xadam-ât, dar baxš-e bâzargâni, tojjar va kasabe,
in section-EZ service-PLU, in section-EZ business, businessmen and tradesmen,

*maghâzedar-ân va ta'mirkâr-ân, hattâ šâghel-in dar baxš-e maskan, me'mâr
shop-owner-PLU and repairman-PLU, even worker-PLU in section-EZ housing, architect*

*va bannâ va kârgar, hame va hame xod râ bâ navasân-ât-e bâzâr
and constructor and labourer, all and all self ACC with change-PLU-EZ market*

tatbiq dâd-e-and

adjusted give-PART-be-3PLU.

29. va nerx-e kâlâ-hâ va xadam-ât-ešân râ bâlâ bord-e-and
and price-EZ goods and service-PLU-their ACC high take-PART-be-3PLU

30. va be hamin nesbat sabad-e hazine-ye xânevâr-e šahri râ gerân-tar
and to this proportion basket-EZ expense-EZ family-EZ citizen ACC expensive-more

kard-e-and.

Make-PART-be-3PLU.

27-30:

*In the last few months that the prices have been soaring up, businessmen, tradesmen, shop
owners and repairmen, even house agencies, architects, constructors and labourers, all and
all have adjusted themselves with the changes in the market and have increased the price
of their goods and services. They have made the living expenses of citizens more
expensive.*

31. dar čenin šarayet-i nadide gereftan-e asar-ât-e in fešâr-e tavaromi
in this conditions-some ignoring-EZ effect-PLU-EZ this pressure-EZ inflation

bar hazine-ye xânevâr-e aqšar-e hoquq begir va kârmand-ân va kârgar-ân,
on expense-EZ family-EZ groups-EZ salary gainer and employee-PLU and labourer-PLU,

yek zolm-e âškâr ast.
one injustice-EZ clear be-3SG.

In this condition, ignoring the effects of the pressure of inflation on the daily expenses of employees, salary-gainers and labourers is a clear injustice.

32. **dar haqiqat** vaqti tavarrom-i hadaqaal 18 dar sadi dar jâme'e be vojüd amad-e
in fact when inflation-a at least 18 per cent in society to existence come-PART

ast
be-3SG

33. va hoquq-e kârmand-ân va kârgar-ân tanhâ šeš dar sad afzâyeš peidâ
and salary-EZ employee-PLU and labourer-PLU only six per cent increase find

mi-kon-ad,
DUR-do-3SG

34. bedun-e in ke šarh va tozih-i be-xâh-ad,
without-EZ this that description and explanation SUBJ-want-3SG,

35. be qadr-e 12 dar sad az qodrat-e xarid-e ânân kam mi-šav-ad
to amount-EZ 12 per cent from power-EZ purchase-EZ them less DUR-become-3SG

36. va be hamin nesbat ânân faqir-tar xâh-and šod.
and to this relation they poor-er will-3PLU become.

32-36:

In fact, when there is an inflation of 18 per cent in the society and the salary of employees and labourers increases only six percent, there is no need to explain that their purchasing power decreases down to 12 per cent and they become relatively poorer.

37. **AGAR MOTAVASSET-E HAZINE-YE YEK XÂNEVÂR-E ŠAHRI RÂ HAD AQAL PÂNSAD**
IF AVERAGE-EZ EXPENSE-EZ ONE FAMILY-EZ URBAN ACC AT LEAST FIVE HUNDRED

HEZÂR TUMÂN DAR NAZAR BE-GIR-IM, dar mi-yâb-**im** ke in raqam
THOUSAND TUMAN CONSIDERATION SUBJ-TAKE-1PLU, out DUR—find-**1PLU** that this sum

bâ motavasset-e hoquq-e daryâfti-ye aksar-e kârmand-ân va kârgar-ân
with average-EZ salary-EZ received-EZ most-EZ employee-PLU and labourer-PLU

hamxâni na-dâr-ad.
agreement not-have-3SG.

IF WE CONSIDER THE AVERAGE EXPENSES OF AN URBAN FAMILY FIVE HUNDRED THOUSAND TUMANS, **we** will find out that this sum is not in accordance with the salary of most employees and labourers.

38. (dar pâyân-e in yâddâšt xolase-i az fehrest-e had aqali-e hazinehâ-ye yek
(in end-EZ this note sum-a of list-EZ minimum-EZ expense-PLU-EZ one

xânevâr-e panj nafare râ âvard-e-**im**).
family-EZ five person ACC bring-PART-**1PLU**)

(At the end of this article, **we** have listed the minimum expenses of a family of five.)

39. bâ in hesâb adam-e afzayeš-e hoquq-e kârgar-ân va kârmand-ân va
with this calculation lack-EZ increasing-EZ salary-EZ labourer-PLU and employee-PLU and

hoquq begir-ân-e jâme'e az edâlat va ensâf dur ast,
salary gainer-PLU-EZ society from justice and fairness far be-3SG,

40. amâ **hamântor ke bâr-hâ arz kard-e-im**,
but **as that time-PLU mentioned do-PART-1PLU**,

41. rāhe hal-e jamâvari-ye naqdinegi kaheš-e hajm-e dolat va
 solution-EZ gathering-EZ cash decrease-EZ volume-EZ government and
 hazine-hâ-ye ân, kontrol-e vared-ât, jelogiri az vorud-e pul-e naft
 expense-PLU-EZ it, control-EZ import-PLU, prevention from entrance-EZ money-EZ oil
 be eqtesâd-e melli va kâstan az mizân-e yârâne ast.
 to economy national and decrease from amount-EZ subsidy be-3SG.
 40-42:
 Therefore, it is not fair and just not to increase the salary of labourers, employees and salary-gainers of the society. **As we have repeatedly told**, to increase cash amount in the government is decreasing the buddy of the government and its expenses, controlling import, preventing the entrance of the oil income in the country's economy and decreasing subsidy.
42. **dar haqiqat** dolat nik mi-dân-ad,
in fact government well DUR-know-3SG,
43. ke **vaqti darâmad na-dâr-ad, na-bâyad xarj kon-ad.**
 that **when income not-have-3SG, not-must spent** SUBJ-do-3SG.
 42-43:
In fact, the government knows well **when it does not have income, it must not spend.**
44. dolat-i ke fekr mi-kon-ad bâ pardâxt-e yârâne-ye suxt va âb va
 government-a that thought DUR-do-3SG with paying-EZ subsidy-EZ fuel and water and
 barq va gâz va âmuzeš va dâru va ... be jâme'e xedmat mi-kon-ad
 electricity and gas and education and medication and ... to society service DUR-do-3SG
45. bâyad be-tavân-ad jelo-ye rošd-e servat-e gheyr-e tabi'i râ be-gir-ad
must SUBJ-can-3SG front-EZ growth-EZ wealth-EZ non-EZ natural ACC SUBJ-get-3SG
46. va bâyad be-tavân-ad naqdinegi râ mahâr konad
 and must SUBJ-can-3SG cash ACC control SUBJ-do-3SG
47. va bâyad be-tavân-ad az mizân-e bedehkâri-aš be-kâh-ad.
 and must SUBJ-can-3SG from amount-EZ debt-its SUBJ-decrease-3SG.
 45-48:
 A government that thinks is serving the society by paying subsidy for fuel, water, electricity, gas, education, medication and ... must be able to prevent unnatural growth of wealth, must be able to control cash and must be able to decrease its debts.
48. mâ vaqti pul na-dâr-im, **vâjeb n-ist** qarz be-dah-im.
we when money not-have-1PLU, **necessary not-be-3SG** lend SUBJ-give-1PLU.
 When we don't have money, **it is not necessary** that we lend money.
49. vaqti bânk-ha-ye mâ bâ eltemâs az mardom pul mi-gir-and va 16 dar sad
 when bank-PLU-EZ we with imploration from people money DUR-get-3PLU and 16 per cent
 ham be pul-e sepordegozâri sud mi-dah-and,
 also to money-EZ deposited profit SUBJ-give-3PLU,
50. **na-bâyad** be ânha taklif kon-im ke 12 dar sad vâm be-dah-and.
not-must to them suggestion SUBJ-do-1PLU that 12 per cent loan SUBJ-give-3PLU.
 50-51:
 When our banks get money from people imploringly and give 16 per cent profit to the deposited money, **we must not** make them give 12 per cent loans.
51. mâ ham **na-bâyad** bâ gošâdedasti tabdil be dolat-e hazine va
we also **not-must** with generosity change to government-EZ expenditure and
 tozi'-e pul šav-im.
 distribution money SUBJ-become-1PLU.

We must not either change into a generous government of expenditure and money distribution.

52. dar čenin šarâyeti **vazife-ye dolat ân ast** ke jelo-ye rošd-e
in this situations **responsibility-EZ government it be-3SG** that front-EZ increase-EZ

naqdinegi râ az tariq-e elmi va bâ râhkâr-hâ-ye dorost-e eqtasadi
cash ACC from way-EZ scientific and with method-PLU-EZ proper-EZ economical

be-gir-ad
SUBJ-prevent-3SG

53. va naqdinegi **jam kon-ad**
and cash **collection SUBJ-do-3SG**

54. va dar in râh kâstan az qodrat-e xarid-e kârmând-ân va kârgar-ân
and in this way decrease from power-EZ shopping-EZ employee-PLU and labourer-PLU

be hič vajh syasat-e dorost-i dar šarayet-e konuni baraye kaheš-e
not at all policy-EZ proper-a in situations-EZ present for decreasing-EZ

naqdinegi n-ist **MAGAR ÂNKE DOLAT BE-TAVÂN-AD BÂ ŠIVE-HÂ-YE**
cash not-be-3SG **ULLESS THAT GOVERNMENT SUBJ-CAN-3SG WITH METHOD-PLU-EZ**

GHEYR AZ PARDÂXT-E NAQDI, QODRAT-E XARID-E KÂRGAR-ÂN VA KÂRMAND-ÂN
NOT FROM PAYING-EZ CASH, POWER-EZ SHOPPING-EZ LABOURER-PLU AND EMPLOYEE-PLU

RÂ AFZÂYEŠ DAH-AD
ACC INCREASE SUBJ-GIVE-3SG

55. ta az faqirt-ar šodan-e ânâ jelogiri kon-ad.
so from poor-er become-EZ they prevention SUBJ-do-3SG.

52-55:

In this situation **the responsibility of the government is** to stop increasing cash amount using proper scientific and economic methods, and [it should] **collect** cash. For this purpose decreasing the shopping power of employees and labourers to decrease cash is not at all a proper policy at present, **UNLESS THE GOVERNMENT INCREASES THE SHOPPING POWER OF LABOURERES AND EMPLOYEES WITH METHODS OTHER THAN PAYING CASH** in order to prevent them from becoming poorer.

56. ham aknun niz besyâri az agšâr-e hoquq begir-e jâme'e dar saxti va
at present also many from groups-EZ salary gainer-EZ society in difficulty and

osrat zendegi mi-kon-and
hardship living DUR-do-3PLU

57. va hoquq-e ânân hič tanâsob-i bâ hazine-hâ-ye zendegi na-dâr-ad.
and salary-EZ they no proportion-a with expense-PLU-EZ life not-have-3SG.

56-57:

At present many employees in the country live in hardship and difficulty. Their salary is not proportionate with their daily expenses.

58. vojud-e čenin râveš-i zamine-hâ-ye enherâf, fesâd, rešve, extelâs
existence-EZ this method-a ground-PLU-EZ deviation, corruption, bribery, embezzlement

va kamkâri râ dar dastgâh-hâ-ye ejrâyi va edâri afzâyeš
and less working ACC in organisation-PLU-EZ executive and administrative increase

mi-dah-ad.
DUR-give-3SG.

In this way the grounds of deviation, corruption, bribery, embezzlement and less working in the executive and administrative organisations increase.

59. hâl pasaz zekr-e in moqaddame **bad n-ist** nimnegâh-i be nomune-i az
now after citing-EZ this introduction **bad not-be-3SG** half look-a to sample-a from
- fehrest-e hazine-hâ-ye had aqali-ye yek xânevâde-ye 5 nafare-ye šahri
list-EZ expense-PLU-EZ minimum-EZ one family-EZ 5 person-EZ urban
- be-yandâz-*im*.
SUBJ-throw-1PLU.
After the above introduction, **it is not bad** that **we** have a glimpse at the minimum expenses of a family of five.
(The list has been omitted.)
60. ta be hâl 532 hezâr Tumân râ fâktor kard-e-*im*,
till to present 532 thousand Tuman ACC listed do-PART-1PLU,
61. **VA AGAR BE FEHREST-E QEIMAT-HÂ DEQQAT KON-ID**, had aqal-hâ râ ham dar nazar
AND IF TO LIST-EZ PRICE-PLU NOTICE DO-2PLU, minimum-PLU ACC also in eye
- gereft-*im*,
get-PAST-1PLU
62. ya'ni hazine-ye mihmâni hazf šod-e ast.
that is expense-EZ party omitted become-PART be-3SG.
61-63:
So far, **we** have listed 532 thousand Tumans, and **IF YOU NOTICE**, we have considered the minimums, that is, the expenses of giving parties have been omitted.
63. hazine-ye mosâferat, tafrih, motâle'e, xarid-e ruznâme va ketâb dar in fehrest
expense-EZ travelling, fun, reading, buying-EZ newspaper and book in this list
- na-yamad-e-ast.
not-come-PART-be-3SG.
The expenses of travelling, fun, reading, buying newspapers and books have not been brought in this list.
64. **hamântor ke mi-dân-id** hazine-ye sâlâne-ye yek dânešju-ye dânešgâh- e âzâd
as that DUR-know-2PLU expense-EZ annual-EZ one student-EZ university-EZ Azad
- bâlegh bar yek milyun Tumân ast ke in hazine-hâ râ ham mohâsebe
amount to one million Tuman be-3SG that this expense-PLU ACC also calculated
- na-kar-*dim*
not-do-1PLU
As you know, the annual expenses of an Azad University student amount to about one million Tumans which **we** did not count.
65. hazine-ye telefon-e hamrâh râ ham dar in fehrest ne-mi-bin-*id*,
expense-EZ phone-EZ mobile ACC also in this list not-DUR-see-2PLU,
66. ya'ni in ke had aqal-hâ râ dar nazar gereft-*im*.
that is this that minimum-PLU ACC in eye take-PAST-1PLU.
67-68:
You can also not see the expenses of mobile phone in this list. This means **we** considered the minimums.
67. hazine-hâ-ye bimâri va **xoda-ye na-kard-e** amal jarrâhi va yâ bimârestân dar
expense-PLU-EZ illness and **God-EZ not-do-PART** operation and or hospital in
- in fehrest na-yâmad-e ast.
this list not-come-PART be-3SG.
The expenses of illness and, **heaven forbid**, operation or hospital have not been included in this list.

68. sâyer-e hazine-hâ ham kâmelan ma'muli ast
other-EZ expense-PLU also completely normal be-3SG
69. va had aqal hazine-hâ-ye yek xânevâr-e šahri be hesâb mi-ây-ad.
and minimum expense-PLU-EZ one family-EZ urban to counted DUR-come-3SG.
69-70:
Other expenses are also completely normal and are the minimum expenses of an urban family.
70. hâl dar nazar be-gir-*id* xânevâde-i ke do yâ se dânešju-ye geyr-e dolati
now in eye IMP-take-2PLU family-a that two or three student-EZ not-EZ state

dar-and,
have-3PLU,
71. hazine-ye tahiyye-ye jahizie yâ maxarej-e arusi-ye farzand ham
expense-EZ providing-EZ dower or expenses-EZ wedding-EZ child also

piš-e ruy-e u-st,
front-EZ face-EZ s/he-be-3SG,
72. **xodâ-ye na-kard-e** yek mâdar-e bimâr ham dâr-ad ke hazine-ye dâru
God-EZ not-do-PART one mother-EZ ill also have-3SG that expense-EZ medication

va darmân-e bimâri-ye xâss-e u dar sâl, sar be falak mi-keš-ad,
and cure-EZ illness-EZ special-EZ her in year, head to heaven DUR-take-3SG
73. **ĉe bâjad be-kon-ad? ...**
what must SUBJ-do-3SG? ...
71-74:
Now [**you**] consider that a family has two or three students at a private university. The expenses of providing dower or children's wedding expenses are also in advance. **Heaven forbid** s/he has a sick mother whose annual medication expenses are high up. **What must s/he do? ...**
74. hiĉkodâm be hesâb na-yâmad-e ast.
none to calculation not-come-PART be-3SG.
None of these have been counted.
75. hazine-hâ-ye otomobil-e šaxsi mohâsebe na-šod-e ast
expense-PLU-EZ car-EZ private calculated not-be-PART be-3SG
76. va zemnan hazine-ye ejâre niz had aqal dar Tehrân kamtar az in n-ist.
and also expense-EZ rent also at least in Tehran less from this not-be-3SG.
76-77:
The expenses of private car have not been calculated and also the amount of rent, at least in Tehran, is not less than this.
77. ba in tozih-ât kasâni ke kamtar az 500 hezâr Tumân hoquq
with this description-PLU those that less from 500 thousand Tuman salary

mi-gir-and, **ĉegune MI TAVÂN-AND NAZDIK BE 18 dar sad tavarrom râ bâ šeš**
DUR-get-3PLU, **how DUR-CAN-3PLU NEAR TO 18 per cent inflation ACC with six**

dar sad afzâyeš-e hoquq jobrân konand?!
per cent increase-EZ salary compensate SUBJ-do-3PLU?!
So far, **how COULD those with a salary less than 500 thousand Tumans compensate NEARLY 18 per cent inflation rate with six percent salary increase?!**

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
4		unless the amount of this cash has not decreased	
18			It is said that
19	about		
24	could		
37		If we consider the average expenses of an urban family five thousand Tumans	
54		unless the government increases the shopping power of labourers and employees with methods other than paying cash	
61		if you notice	
77	could		
77	nearly		
	4	4	1

Table A2.16 Uncertainty markers in text No. 24

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
19		contentment and economy	
20	It is clear that		
24		justice ...fairness	
25		anger and rage	
26		employees and salary-gainers	
28		businessmen and tradesmen	
31		salary-gainer and employees and labourers	
34	there is no need to explain that	description and explanation	
39		labourers, employees and salary- gainers	
39		fair and just	
45	must		
46	must		
47	must		
56		difficulty and hardship	
64	as you know		
	6	10	0

Table A2.17 Certainty markers in text No 24

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
1	should		
17			The solution to this problem is not decreasing the salary of its employees and labourers
23		I believe	
26		It is not fair	
32		In fact	
40		as we have repeatedly told	
42		In fact	
43	must not		when it does not have income, it must not spend
48	it is not necessary		
50	must not		
51	must not		
52	the responsibility of the government is		
53	[it should] collect		
59		it is not bad	
67		heaven forbid	
72		heaven forbid	
	7	8	2

Table A2.18. Attitudinal markers in text No. 24

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1				How should they compensate?!		
25	we					This is like the time when ... to control our rage and anger.
25	our					
25	we					
25	our					
25	our					
37	we					
37	we					
38		we				
59	we					
60		we				
61		we	you			
64		we	you			
65			you			
66		we				
70			you			
73				what must s/he do?		
77				how can those with a salary of less than ...six percent salary increase?!		
	8	5	4	3	0	1

Table A2.19 Engagement markers in text No. 24

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
48	we
48	we
49	our
50	we
51	we
	5

Table A2.20 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 24

Text No. 25

Ettelaat Weekly, No. 3328

By: Mohammad Amin Javadi

Number of words: 979

- tabi'at-i ke bijân šod-e ast
nature-a that lifeless become-PART be-3SG
Nature that has become lifeless
- NE-MI-DÂN-AM tâzegi-hâ sar-i be manâteq-e šomâl-e kešvar zad-e-id?
NOT-DUR-KNOW-1SG recently-PLU head-a to areas-EZ north-EZ country hit-PART-2PLU?
I DON'T KNOW if you have recently visited the north of the country?
- xâne-hâ va vilâ-hâ-yi ke dar del-e jangal va bâlâ-ye kuh-hâ va
house-PLU and villa-PLU-some that in heart-EZ jungle and over-EZ mountain-PLU and
bolandi-hâ harkodâm be yek šekl va šamâyel sâxt-e šod-e-and râ
height-PLU each to one shape and form build-PART be-PART-3PLU ACC
did-e-id?
see-PART-2PLU?
Have you seen the houses and villas built in different shapes and forms in the middle of the jungle and over the mountains and heights?

4. *âyâ be rusta-hâ-ye kuhestâni-ye Dohezâr va Sehezâr safar kard-e-id? whether to village-PLU-EZ mountainous-EZ Dohezar and Sehezar travel do-PART-2PLU? Have you travelled to the mountainous villages of Dohezar and Sehezar?*
5. *âyâ Kalârdašt râ did-e-id ke yeki az behtarin manâteq-e turisti-e Irân whether Kaladasht ACC see-PART-2PLU that one of best areas-EZ tourist-EZ Iran*
bud va hâlâ čiz-e ziadi az tabi'at-e ân bâqi na-mând-e ast? be-PAST-3SG and now thing-EZ lot of nature-EZ it remained not-stay-PART be-3SG? Have you seen Kaladasht that was one of the best tourist areas in Iran and now not much has been left from its nature?
6. **biparde be-guy-am**
frankly SUBJ-say-1SG
7. tabi'at-e ma zende bud va jân dâst amâ rafte rafte mi-rav-ad tâ nature-EZ we alive be-PAST-3SG and life have-PAST-3SG but little by little DUR-go-3SG till
be tabi'at-e bijân tabdil šav-ad.
to nature-EZ lifeless change SUBJ-be-3SG.
6-7:
Frankly, our nature was alive and had life but little by little it becomes dead.
8. anbu-h-e mosâfer-ân-i ke az in jâdde-hâ va xiâbân-hâ va bolandi-hâ mass-EZ traveller-PLU-some that from this road-PLU and street-PLU and height-PLU
gozašt-e va mi-gozar-and tâ be hâl bâ nezâre-ye javâni va nešat-e tabi'at pass-PART and DUR-pass-3PLU to present with watching-EZ youth and liveliness-EZ nature
del-i tâze mi-kard-and va ruh va jân zende, heart-a new DUR-do-PAST-3PLU and soul and spirit alive,
9. amâ hâl baxš-hâ-yi az in tabi'at-e sabz-e bârvar be tabi'at-e bijân badal but now part-PLU-some of this nature green-EZ fruitful to nature-EZ lifeless changed
šod-e ast, become-PART be-3SG
10. bâ sâxtemân-hâ-yi aksaran biqqavâre va nâmonaseb ke hič ârâmeš-i na be with building-PLU-some mostly ugly and inappropriate that any peace-a not to
jân mi-dah-ad va na be češm! soul DUR-give-3SG and not to eye!
8-10:
All the travellers that have passed or are passing these roads, streets and heights refreshed their souls watching the youth and liveliness of the nature; but now parts of this green and fruitful nature has changed into a lifeless one which does not give any peace to souls or eyes!
11. in sonnat ke **mâ** hame čiz râ barâye xod be-xâh-im this tradition that **we** every thing ACC for self SUBJ-want-1PLU
12. va be hazine-hâ-yi ke digar-ân va mellat bâbat-e xodxâhi-e **mâ** and to expense-PLU-some that other-PLU and nation for-EZ selfishness-EZ **our**
mi-pardâz-and, kar-i na-dâst-e bâš-im DUR-pay-3PLU, work-a not-have-PART be-1PLU
13. va niz farhang-e manfa'at talabi-e šaxsi be har qeimat, yeki az nâhanjâr-tarin and also culture-EZ profit wanting personal to any price, one of unpolished-most

aškâl va ab'âd-e tahâjom-e farhangi ast ke dar jâme'e ettefâq oftâd-e ast.
forms and aspects-EZ invasion-EZ cultural be-3SG that in society happening fall-PART be-SG
11-13:

This tradition that **we** want every thing for ourselves and **we** have nothing to do with the price others pay for our selfishness, and a culture based on personal profit for any price is one of the most unpolished forms of cultural invasion that has happened in the society.

14. **ne-mi-dân-am**²⁹ čekasi in haq râ be servatmand-ân-e jâme'e dâd-e ast ke
not-DUR-know-1SG who this right ACC to rich-PLU-EZ society give-PART be-3SG that

ânče râ mota'alleg be omum ast, mota'alleg be nasi-hâ va hame-ye
whatever ACC belong to public be-3SG, belong to generation-PLU and all-EZ

mardom-ân, be mâlekiyat-e šaxsi-e xiš dar âvarand va barâye yek eqâmat-e
people-PLU, to property-EZ personal-EZ self in SUBJ-take-3PLU and for one staying-EZ

had aksar dah ruze dar sâl yâ čand eqâmat-e kutâh moddat dar tul-e yek sâl,
maximum ten day in year or several staying-EZ short time in duration-EZ one year,

češmnavazi-e tabi'at-e zende va sabz râ az manzar va negâh-e mardom-ân
beauty-EZ nature-EZ alive and green ACC from aspect and look-EZ people-PLU

be-gir-and va barâye rahgozar-ân ghosse bi-âvar-and?
SUBJ-get-3PLU and for passerby-PLU sorrow SUBJ-bring-3PLU?

I don't know who has given the right to the rich of the society that whatever belongs to the public, generations and all people, make their own personal property; and for the sake of staying at most ten days a year or several short stays a year deprive people from watching the beauty of the live and green nature and bring sorrow to the passersby.

15. **âyâ dar donyâ ham čenin mi-kon-and?**
whether in world also this DUR-do-3PLU?
Do they also do the same in the world?

16. dar tul-e in sâl-hâ aksaran savâhel-e Mâzandarân va Gilân be mâlekiat-e
in duration-EZ this year-PLU mostly beaches-EZ Mazandaran and Gilan to property-EZ

šaxsi-ye barxordâr-ân-e jâme'e dar amâd-e ast,
personal-EZ wealthy-PLU-EZ society in come-PART be-3SG

17. be bahâ-ye mahrumiyyat-e hame-ye mardom va rahgozar-ân az tamâša-ye daryâ va
to expense depriving-EZ all-EZ people and passersby-EZ of watching-EZ sea and

talâtom-e moj va sâhel ...
dashing-EZ wave and beach ...

16-17:

During these years most of the beaches of Mazandaran and Gilan have become the property of the rich of the society in exchange for depriving all people and passersby from watching the sea, dashing waves and the beach ...

18. va hâl dašt-hâ va jangal-hâ-ye sabz va kuhestân-hâ-ye mehgerefte-ye **mâ** niz
and now field-PLU and jungle-PLU-EZ green and mountain-PLU-EZ foggy-EZ **we** also

be tasxir-e manfa'at talab-e enhesârgar dar mi-ây-âd,
to invasion-EZ profit wanting-EZ monopolist in DUR-come-3SG,

19. bi ânke čenin haq-i dâst-e bâš-**im**.
without that this right-a have-PART be-**1PLU**.

²⁹ Indirect way of blaming. It seems to be more attitudinal than uncertainty compared with the one in No. 2 above.

18-19:

And now **our** green fields and jungles and foggy mountains are being invaded by monopolists without [**we**] having the right.

20. AGAR BE BARXI AZ IN RUSTÂ-HÂ VA DEHKADE-HÂ-YE KUHESTÂNI-YE
IF TO SOME OF THIS VILLAGE-PLU AND SMALL VILLAGE-PLU-EZ MOUNTAINOUS-EZ

MANÂTEQ-E JANGALI SAR-I BE-ZAN-*id*, šahed-e tekke tekke šodan-e zamin-hâ-ye
AREAS-EZ JUNGLE HEAD-A SUBJ-HIT-2PLU, witness-EZ piece piece become-EZ land-PLU-EZ

kešâvarzi hast-*id*
agricultural be-2PLU

21. ke rustâiy-ân-e mantaqe barâye raf'-e moškel-ât-e eqtesâdi-ye
that villager-PLU-EZ area for removing-EZ problem-PLU-EZ economical-EZ

mota'added-ešân az xeyr-e ân gozašt-and,
numerous-their from profit-EZ it pass-PAST-3PLU,

22. kešt va zar-i dar ân surat ne-mi-dah-and
plantation and cultivation-a in it face not-DUR-give-3PLU

23. va be qata'-at-e moxtalef taqsim-aš kard-e-and
and to piece-PLU-EZ different division-it do-PART-3PLU

24. va be moštari-ân-i mi-foruš-and ke mi-xâh-and dar čand ruz-e esterâhat va
and to customer-PLU-a DUR-sell-3PLU that DUR-want-3PLU in several day-EZ rest and

tafrih-e ehtemâli-šân dar tul-e čand mâh va yâ čand fasl, jay-i barâye
pastime-EZ possible-their in duration several month and or several season, place-a for

eskân dâst-e bâš-and.
residence have-PART be-3PLU.

20-24:

IF **you** VISIT SOME OF THESE MOUNTAINOUS VILLAGES IN JUNGLES, **you** will see how the agricultural lands have been shredded into pieces and the villagers have abandoned them. In order to solve some of their problems, **they do not make any plantation**, and have divided the lands into pieces to sell to those customers who want to have a place to stay during their holidays.

25. aksaran in xâne-hâ dar bištar-e mavaqe'-e sâl xâli-and.
mostly this house-PLU in most-EZ times-EZ year empty-be-3PLU.
Most of these houses are usually empty during a whole year.

26. bâbat-e mosâdere-ye baxš-i az tabi'at va xarâb kardan-e manzargâh-e milyun-hâ
for-EZ occupation-EZ part-a of nature and destroyed making-EZ scenery-EZ million-PLU

mosâfer va gardešgar, hič mâliât-i ne-mi-pardâz-and va hič pâsox-i
traveller and tourist, no tax-a not-DUR-pay-3PLU and no response-a

ne-mi-dah-and, *amâ âyâ mâ va dolat haq dâr-im ke ejâze*
not-DUR-give-3PLU, *but whether we and government right have-1PLU that permission*

dah-im pul va sarmâye-ye bâd âvarde bâ tabi'at-emân čenin jafâ-yi
SUBJ-give-1PLU money and fund-EZ wind brought with nature-our this injustice-a

be-kon-ad?

SUBJ-do-3SG?

They do not pay any tax for occupying a part of nature and destroying the scenery of millions of travellers and tourists and **do not feel responsible**. But **do we and the government have the right to [we] allow this easily-earned money do such injustice with our nature?**

27. **âyâ mâ bâyesti**³⁰ jân-e tabi'at râ be-gir-im va tabi'at-e sabz va zende
whether we must life-EZ nature ACC SUBJ-take-1PLU and nature-EZ green and live
- râ be tabi'at-e bijân badal kon-im **ke az mošt-i âhan va ajor va**
ACC to nature-EZ lifeless change SUBJ-do-1PLU that from handful-a iron and brick and
- simân va sang sâxt-e šod-e-and va bi hič tanavvo'-e basari va**
cement and stone make-PART be-PART-3PLU and without any variety-EZ visual and
- hamâhangi-ye zibâyi šenasi-ye me'mâri-e šahri, mohem-tarin mantaqe-ye**
harmony-EZ aesthetic-EZ architectural-EZ civil, important-most area-EZ
- gardešgari-e mâ râ be jangal-e molâ-yi badal kon-and** **ke na molâheze-ye**
tourist-EZ we ACC to jungle-EZ chaotic-a change SUBJ-do-3PLU that not watching-EZ
- ân ârâmeš-i be ruh va jân mi-dah-ad va na obur az ân taskin-e tan**
it peace-a to soul and spirit DUR-give-3S and not passing from it soothe-EZ body
- va jân-e xaste-i ast.**
and soul-EZ tired-a be-3SG.
- Must we take the life of nature and [we] change the green and live nature into a lifeless one**
that is made of a handful of iron, bricks and cement and has no visual variety and
aesthetic harmony from civil engineering point of view? They have changed our most
important tourist areas into a chaos. Neither watching them brings any peace into
souls, nor does passing them soothe the tired bodies.
28. **rustâyi-ân-e sâken dar in dehkade-hâ-ye yeilâqi va jangali va kuhestâni,**
villager-PLU-EZ resident in this small village-PLU-EZ country and jungle and mountainous,
- sad-hâ sâl ast ke pâki va tarâvat-e tabi'at râ hefz**
hundred-PLU year be-3SG that cleanliness and freshness-EZ nature ACC maintenance
- kard-e-and**
do-PART-3PLU
29. **va na-gozašt-e-and nabz-e zendegi dar in manâteq az harakat bi-oft-ad**
and not-let-PART-3PLU pulse-EZ life in this areas from movement SUBJ-fall-3SG
30. **va hâl be har dalil va az jomle moškel-ât-e mota'aded-e eqtesâdi va**
and now to any reason and especially problem-PLU-EZ various-EZ financial and
- ma'išati** **be tamâm-e dâste-hâ-yešân az sar-e nâčâri čub-e harrâj**
living to all-EZ property-PLU-their from head-EZ helplessness stick-EZ sale
- mi-zan-and**
DUR-put-3PLU
31. **tâ bâ pul-e andak-i ke be dast mi-ây-âd, čâle va čule-hâ-ye moxtalef-e**
so with money-EZ little-a that to hand DUR-come-3SG, ditches and gap-PLU-EZ various-EZ
- zendegi-šân râ por kon-and,**
life-their ACC full SUBJ-do-3PLU,
32. **amâ âyâ andiše kard-e-im ke jâbejâyi-ye sâken-ân-e tolid konande-ye**
but whether thought do-PART-1PLU that exchange-EZ resident-PLU-EZ producer-EZ
- mantaqe bâ mohâjer-ân-e masraf konande-ye moraffah va xošgozarân če bar**
area with immigrant-PLU-EZ consumer-EZ wealthy and luxurious what to

³⁰ 'bâyesti' here is used not as an 'Obligation Marker' but an 'Expression of Attitude'. Using 'bâyesti' the author criticises the people who build buildings destroying nature.

sar-e eqtesad-e mantaqe va tolid va kešavarzi mi-âvar-ad?
head-EZ economy-EZ area and production and agriculture DUR-bring-3SG?
 28-32:

For hundreds of years the villagers in these villages and mountainous areas have maintained the cleanliness and freshness of the area and have not let the pulse of life stop. But now for some reason, especially various financial and economical reasons, they have put up sale to whatever they have in order to fill in the various gaps of their life with the little money they earn. **But have we thought what will happen to production and agriculture after exchanging the producer residents of the area with the wealthy and luxurious immigrants?**

33. **âyâ bâ edâme va estemrâr-e hamin ravand tolid konande-gân-i**
whether with continuation and progression-EZ this process producer-PLU-some

dar baxš-e kešavarzi bâqi mi-mân-and
in section-EZ agriculture remain DUR-remain-3PLU

34. **va yâ mâ šâhed-e rustâ-hâ-yi na-xâh-im bud ke bejâ-ye sâken-ân-e**
and or we witness-EZ village-PLU-some not-will-1PLU be that instead-EZ resident-PLU-EZ

sâbet, mohâjer-ân-e movaqqat va oburi peidâ kard-e-and ke na
constant, immigrant-PLU-EZ temporary and passing find do-PART-3PLU that not

delbastegi be bumzâd dâr-and va na hosale barâye tolid va kâr-e
love to home have-3PLU and not patience for production and work

kešavarzi?
agricultural?

33-34:

With the continuation and progression of this process, will there remain any producers in the agricultural section. Will we not observe villages that instead of permanent residents have temporary and passing immigrants who have neither any love of home, nor a desire to production and agriculture?

35. **čekasi bâjad az mazlumiyyat-e tabi'at soxan be-guy-ad va az haq-e hame-ye**
who must from oppression-EZ nature word SUBJ-say-3SG and of right-EZ all-EZ

šahrvand-ân va rahgozar-ân va mosâfer-ân harf be-zan-ad
citizen-PLU and passersby-PLU and traveller-PLU word SUBJ-say-3SG

36. **ke har ruz ke mi-goazar-ad bâ didan-e xâne-hâ va vilâ-hâ-yi dar del-e**
that every day that DUR-pass-3SG with seeing-EZ house-PLU and villa-PLU-some in heart-EZ

jangal va kuh va čamanzâr va dašt-hâ-ye sabz, digar čiz-i barâye didan
jungle and mountain and grassland and field-PLU-EZ green, other thing-a for watching

barâye-šân bâqi ne-mi-mân-ad va yâ jay-i barâye laxt-i lamidan.
for-them remain not-DUR-be-3SG and or place-a for while-a rest.

35-36:

Who must speak for nature and must speak for the rights of all citizens, passersby and travellers? Every day with the increasing number of houses and villas in the heart of the green jungles, mountains, grassland and fields nothing remains to watch or rest for a while.

37. **dar in miân bar sâken-ân-e bumi-e mantaqe NE-MI-TAVÂN čandân xorde gereft,**
in this between to resident-PLU-EZ local-EZ area NOT-DUR-CAN much fault take,

amâ bar mas'ul-ân va motaval-yân hezâr-hâ gelâye va enteçâd vâred ast
but to official-PLU and custodian-PLU thousand-PLU complaint and criticism entrance be-3SG

38. **ke čerâ barâye jangal va dašt va daryâ va kuh šenâsnâme na-dâr-and?**
that why for jungle and field and sea and mountain ID not-have-PLU?

37-38:

However, the local residents of the area **COULD** not be blamed. It is the governors and officials that should be criticised that **why they do not have any IDs for jungles, fields, mountains and the sea.**

39. *čerâ jelo-ye sâxt va sâz-hâ-ye biqavâre râ ne-mi-gir-and?*
why front-EZ building and construction-PLU-EZ ugly ACC not-DUR-get-3PLU?
Why don't they prevent building ugly constructions?
40. *čerâ ejâze-ye tajâvoz be tabi'at râ mi-dah-and?*
why permit-EZ violation to nature ACC DUR-give-3PLU?
Why do they allow violating nature?
41. *va čerâ had aqal nazm va nasaq-i be sâxt va sâz-hâ dar*
and why at least order and regularity-a to building and construction-PLU in
in manâteq ne-mi-dah-and tâ had aqal zibâyi va nazm va âhang-i dar
this areas not-DUR-give-3PLU so at least beauty and order and harmony-a in
me'mâri-ye in xâne-hâ-ye banâ šod-e dar del-e tabi'at did-e
architecture-EZ this house-PLU-EZ built be-PART in heart-EZ nature see-PART
šav-ad tâ češm va del-e rahgozar-ân biš az in âzâr na-bin-ad?
SUBJ-be-3SG so eye and heart-EZ passerby-PLU more than this harm not-see-3SG?
And why don't they put an order and regularity to the buildings in these areas at least
to make these buildings, built in the heart of nature, harmonious, ordered and
aesthetic and not to hurt the eyes and hearts of the passersby any more?
42. *va čerâ barnâmeriz-ân-e mâ kâr-i ne-mi-kon-and ke hojum-e in*
and why planner-PLU-EZ we work-a not-DUR-do-3PLU that swarming-EZ this
sarmâye-hâ be in manâteq-e tabi'i faqqat va faqat zarar va ziân motavajeh-e
fund-PLU to this areas-EZ natural only and only loss and harm towards-EZ
in manâteq na-kon-and?
this areas not-do-3PLU?
And why our planners do nothing to stop these investments of bringing loss to these
natural areas?
43. *va had aqal vorud-e in sarmâye-hâ xeir-i ham barâye eqtesad-e mantaqe be*
and at least entering-EZ this fund-PLU benefit-a also for economy-EZ area to
hamrâh bi-âvar-ad.
accompany SUBJ-bring-3SG.
And at least these investments benefit the economy of the area.
44. *âyâ in deraxt-hâ va tappe-hâ va čamnazâr-hâ va dašt-hâ čon qodrat-i*
whether this tree-PLU and hill-PLU and grassland-PLU and field-PLU because power-a
barâye defa' az xiš na-dâr-and, bâjad³¹ čenin birahmâne dar ma'raz-e
for defend from self not-have-3PLU, must this cruelly in exposure-EZ
tâxt va tâz qarâr gir-and?
assault and offense exposed SUBJ-get-3PLU?
Must these trees, hills, and grasslands be assaulted cruelly just because they can't
defend themselves?

³¹ 'bâjad' does not convey 'obligation, rather the author uses it to criticise those who do not consider environment in their constructions.; therefore it has been considered 'Expression of Attitude'.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
2	I don't know		
20		If you visit some of these mountainous villages in jungles	
37	could		
	2	1	0

Table A2.21 Uncertainty markers in text No. 25

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
3		mountains and heights	
7		was alive and had life	
14		whatever belongs to the public, generations and all people	
26		traveller and tourist	
27		take the life of nature and change the green and live nature into a lifeless one	
30		financial and economical reasons	
33		continuation and progression	
34		temporary and passing immigrants	
37		governors and officials	
41		order and regularity	
	0	10	0

Table A2.22 Certainty markers in text No. 25

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
6		frankly	
14		I don't know	
22			they do not make any plantation in them
26			they do not pay any tax
26			do not feel responsible
27		must	
35	must		
35	must		
44		must	
	2	4	3

Table A2.23 Attitudinal markers in text No. 25

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
2			you	I don't know if you have recently visited the north of the country?		
3			you	Have you seen the houses and villas built ...?		
4			you	Have you travelled to the ...?		
5			you	Have you seen Kalardasht that was one of the best tourist areas in Iran ...?		
7	our					
11	we					
12	our					
12	we					
15				Do they do the same in the world?		
18	our					
19	we					
20			you			
20			you			
26	we			do we and the government have the right ... our nature?		
26	we					
26	our					
27	we			Must we take the life of nature and ...?		
27	we					
27	our					
32	we			have we thought what will happen to production ...?		
33				If this process continues, will there remain any producers in agricultural section?		
34	we			Will we not observe villages that instead of permanent residents have temporary residents...?		
35				Who must speak for nature and the rights of ... travellers?		
38				why they do not have ID for jungles, fields, mountains and the sea?		
39				Why they do not prevent building ugly constructions?		
40				Why do they allow violating nature?		
41				Why they don't at least put an order and regularity to the buildings made in the heart of nature ... ?		
42	our			And why our planners do nothing to stop these investments...?		
44				Must these trees, hills and grassland be assaulted cruelly ...?		
	15	0	6	17	0	0

Table A2.24 Engagement markers in text No. 25

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A2.25 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 25

Text No. 26

Ettelaat-e Weekly, No. 333, 6 Shahrivar 1387 (27 August 2008)

By: Mohammad Amin Javadi

Number of Words: 853

1. darmân, haq-e mosallam-e šahrvand-ân
treatment, right-EZ certain-EZ citizen-PLU
Medical Care, people's certain right
2. sâl-hâ-st ke darmân va beviže xadam-ât-e bimârestâni yeki az
year-PLU-be-3SG that treatment and especially service-PLU-EZ hospital one of

daghdaghe-hâ-ye asâsi-ye mardom-e **ma** šod-e ast.
Disturbance-PLU-EZ basic-EZ people-EZ **we** become-PART be-3SG.
Medical care, especially hospital services, has become one of the basic problems of **our**
people for years many years.
3. bâ vojod-e hame-ye talâš-hâ-ye anjâm šod-e dar ba'daz enqelâb va afzâyeš-e
with existence all-EZ effort-PLU-EZ done be-PART in after revolution and increasing-EZ

taxt-hâ-ye bimârestâni va niz gostareš-e xadam-ât-e darmâni dar
bed-PLU-EZ hospital and also development-EZ service-PLU-EZ treatment in

joghrafyâ-ye bozorg-e Irân, hanuz daghdaghemandi-e šahrvand-ân nesbat be mas'ale-ye
geography-EZ big-EZ Iran, still disturbance-EZ citizen-PLU related to problem-EZ

darmân kâsti na-gereft-e ast.
treatment decrease not-get-PART be-3SG.
Although there have been many efforts after Revolution in increasing the number of beds in
hospitals and developing medical care all over Iran, the people's problems in relation to
medical care have not decreased yet.
4. hamin hâl **AGAR SAR-I BE BIMÂRESTÂN-HÂ-YE DOLATI BE-ZAN-id** dar mi-yâb-**id**
this now IF **HEAD-A TO HOSPITAL-PLU-EZ STATE SUBJ-HIT-2PLU** in DUR-find-**2PLU**

ke barâye anjâm-e yek amale jarahi tavassot-e bimârestân-hâ-ye dolati va yâ taht-e
that for doingEZ one operation by-EZ hospital-PLU-EZ state and or under-EZ

pušeš-e bime, **nâgozir bâyard** entezâr-i čand mâhe ra tahammol
cover-EZ insurance, **inevitably must** waiting-a several month ACC endure

kon-**id**.
SUBJ-do-**2PLU**
Just now IF **you VISIT A STATE HOSPITAL**, **you** will find that in order to do an operation
covered by insurance, **inevitably, you must** wait several months.
5. har sâle raqam-e qâbel-e tavajoh-i niz tavassot-e dolat dar in baxš
every year figure-EZ able-EZ consideration-a also by-EZ government in this section

hazine mi-šav-ad,
spent DUR-be-3SG,
6. če dar baxš-e dâru va če dar baxš-e darmân,
both in section-EZ medicine and in section-EZ treatment,
7. amâ mardom hamčenân az xadam-ât-e bimârestâni va dâruyi va darmâni
but people still from service-PLU-EZ hospital and medicine and treatment

râzi n-ist-and.
satisfied not-be-3PLU.

5-7:

A considerable amount of money is spent on both medical care and medication every year by the government, but people are still not satisfied by hospital services, medication and medical care.

8. besyâri az ânâyi ke taht-e onvân-e "dâru-hâ-ye xâs" nâmid-e mi-šav-and, many of those that under-EZ title-EZ "medicine-PLU-EZ special" call-PART DUR-be-3PLU, yâ taht-e pušeš-e bime n-ist-and va yâ qeimat-hâ-ye bâlâ-yi dâr-and. either under-EZ cover-EZ insurance not-be-3PLU and or price-PLU-EZ high have-3PLU. Many of those called "special medicines" are either not covered by insurance or are very expensive.
9. hanuz besyâri az rustâiy-ân va saken-ân-e šahr-hâ-ye kučak barâye daryâft-e still many of villager-PLU and resident-EZ city-PLU-EZ small for receiving xadam-ât-e behtar-e darmâni be šahr-hâ-ye bozorg va yâ be paitaxt mi-ây-and. service-PLU-EZ better-EZ treatment to city-PLU-EZ big and or to capital DUR-come-3PLU. Still many villagers and residents of towns go to bigger cities or the capital in order to receive better medical care.
10. va inhâ dar hâ-i ast ke hamčenân hazine-hâ-ye darmân bâlâ-st va and these in situation-a be-3SG that still expense-PLU-EZ treatment high-be-3SG and šahrvand-ân barâye ânke be-tavân-and be xadam-ât-e darmâni-e monâseb-i dast citizen-PLU for that SUBJ-can-3PLU to service-PLU-EZ treatment-EZ proper-a hand peidâ kon-and bâyad hazine-hâ-ye qâbel-e tavajjoh-i be-pardâz-and. find SUBJ-do-3PLU must expense-PLU-EZ able-EZ attention-a SUBJ-pay-3PLU. Moreover medical care expenses are still high and in order to be able to access proper medical care, people have to pay considerable amounts.
11. dar besyâri az bimârestân-hâ-ye dolati sâxtemân-hâ qadimi-and va moškel-e behdâšt in many of hospital-PLU-EZ state building-PLU old-be-3PLU and problem-EZ hygiene va nezâfat dar in bimârestân-hâ va niz xadam-ât-e parastâri hal and cleanliness in this hospital-PLU and also service-PLU-EZ nursing solved na-šod-e ast. not-become-PART be-3SG. The buildings in many of the state hospitals are old and have hygiene and cleanliness problems. Nursing problems have not been solved, either.
12. dar aksar-e kešvar-hâ-ye tose'e yâft-e **šomâ** vaqti bimâr-**etân** râ be in many-EZ country-PLU-EZ development find-PART **you** when patient-**your** ACC to bimârestân misepar-id, digar kâr-i bâ u na-dâr-**id**, hospital DUR-entrust-2PLU, other work-a with him/her not-have-**2PLU**,
13. amâ dar injâ tâze kâr-e **šomâ** aghâz mi-šav-ad. but in here new work-EZ **you** start DUR-be-3SG. 12-13: In many developed countries when **you** take **your** patient to hospital, **you** have nothing to do with him/her, but in Iran **your** problems start here.
14. bimâr-i ke hamrâh na-dašt-e bâš-ad ma'mulan yatim mi-mân-ad! patient-a that companion not-have-PART be-3SG normally orphan DUR-remain-3SG! The patient that doesn't have any companion is not cared for!
15. yek nafar bâyad be donbâl-e tahlye-ye dâru, sorang, âmpul, hole, lebâs one person must to trail-EZ providing-EZ medicine, syringe, ampoule, towel, clothes

va ... bâš-ad.
and ... be-3SG.
Someone must go after providing medicine, syringe, towel, clothes and...

16. daqiqan xalâf-e ânçe ke dar aksar-e bimârestân-hâ-ye pišrafte-ye donyâ
exactly contrary-EZ what that in many-EZ hospital-PLU-EZ developed-EZ world

amal mi-šav-ad.
practice DUR-be-3SG.
It is exactly contrary to what happens in many of the world's developed hospitals.

17. hame-ye in xadam-ât dar bimârestân-hâ-ye donyâ tavasot-e kadr-e bimârestâni
all-EZ this service-PLU in hospital-PLU-EZ world by-EZ staff-EZ hospital

ta'min mi-gard-ad.
provided DUR-be-3SG.
In these hospitals all these services are provided by the staff in the hospital.

18. dar injâ amâ AGAR SEDÂ-YE HAMRÂH VA YÂ BASTE-GÂN-E YEK BIMÂR BOLAND
in here but IF VOICE-EZ COMPANION AND OR RELATIVE-PLU-EZ ONE PATIENT HIGH

ŠAV-AD YÂ ASABÂNIYYAT-I AZ U DID-E ŠAV-AD, tâb-e
SUBJ-BECOME-3SG OR ANGER-A FROM HIM/HER OBSERVE-PART be-3SG, ability

tahammol n-ist.
toleration not-be-3SG.
But here it is not tolerated IF A PATIENT'S COMPANION OR RELATIVES RAISE VOICE AND BECOME ANGRY.

19. pazireš-e bimâr-ân-e badhâl ham hamčenân bâ došvâri-hâ-ye mota'added
admission-EZ patient-PLU-EZ very ill also as usual with problem-PLU-EZ various

ru be ru ast,
face to face be-3SG,

20. amâ in tâze yek taraf-e mâjerâ ast.
but this new one side-EZ story be-3SG.
19-20:
There are still a lot of problems in admitting very ill patients, but this is only one side of the story.

21. xârej az hoze-ye behdâšt va darmân, šahrvand-ân-e Irâni bastar-e âmâde-tar-i
out of area-EZ hygiene and treatment, citizen-PLU-EZ Iranian bed-EZ ready-more-a

barâye pazireš-e bimâri dâr-and.
for accepting-a illness have-3PLU.
Apart from hygiene and medical care, Iranian citizens are more ready to get ill.

22. anvâ'-e daghdaghe-hâ va stress-hâ ke riše-ye ejtemâ'i eqtesâdi dâr-ad
various-EZ disturbance-PLU and stress-PLU that root-EZ social economical have-3SG

zamine-ye peidâyeš va yâ gostareš-e bimâri râ dar ânân tašdid mi-kon-ad
background-EZ appearance and or development-EZ illness ACC in them intense DUR-do-3SG

23. va az ânjâ-yi ke riše-ye besyâri az bimâri-hâ extelâl-ât-e asabi ast
and from there-a that root-EZ many of illness-PLU disorder-PLU-EZ psychological be-3SG

24. va beqol-e ma'ruf hame be no'i gereftâr-e moškel-ât-e asabi hast-and,
and sayingEZ famous all sort-a involved-EZ problem-PLU-EZ mental be-3PLU,

25. zudtar ham bimâr mi-šav-and.
earlier also ill UR-become-3SG.

22-25:

Various kinds of disturbances and stresses have roots in psychological problems. As everyone knows, everyone is sort of involved with psychological problems and therefore becomes ill easily.

26. be hamin dalil ham ârâmeš-e kamtar-i dâr-and,
to this reason also peace-EZ less-a have-3PLU,
27. kamtar varzeš mi-kon-and
less exercise DUR-do-3PLU
28. va bištar bedonbâl-e porkârdan-e çâle va çule-hâ-ye zendegi hast-and,
and more after filling-EZ gaps and shortcoming-PLU-EZ life be-3PLU,
29. be soragh-e davâ va darmân ne-mi-rav-and
to near-EZ medication and treatment notDUR-go-3PLU
30. va dar ân hengâm ham xeili zud dir mi-šav-ad.
and in that time also very soon late DUR-become-3SG.
26-30:
Therefore, they have less peace and do less exercise. They are more after filling the gaps of their lives and do not look after their health.
31. **AGAR BE-XÂH-IM MOŠKEL-ÂT-E DÂRUJI VA DARMÂNI DAR KEŠVAR RÂ
IF SUBJ-WANT-1PLU PROBLEM-PLU-EZ MEDICATION AND TREATMENT IN COUNTRY ACC**
**RIŠE YÂBI KON-im,
ROOT FINDING SUBJ-DO-1PLU,**
32. **bâyad** be yek baste (**albatte gheyr-e pišnahâdi!**) tavajjoh kon-**im**
must to one package (**indeed non-EZ propositional**) attention SUBJ-do-1PLU
33. ke dar ân vezârat -e Bâzargâni, vezârat -e refâh, sâzmân-e Tarbiat Badani,
that in that ministry-EZ Commerce, ministry-EZ Welfare, organization-EZ Physical Education,
âmuzeš va parvareš va ... hame va hame be no'-i sahm dâr-and
education and ... all and all to kind-a part have-3PLU
34. va serfan **NE-MI-TAVÂN** tamâmi-e taqisr-hâ râ be garden-e vezârat-e behdašt andâxt,
and only **NOT-DUR-CAN** all-EZ fault-PLU ACC to neck-EZ ministry-EZ Health put,
35. amâ yek نکته rošan ast, bimâr, bimâr ast
but one point clear be-3SG, patient, patient be-3SG
36. va vaqti niazmand-e komak mi-šav-ad
and when need-EZ help DUR-become-3SG
37. avvalin va mohem-tarin mas'ale xadam-ât rasâni-e monâseb be u ast,
first and important-most issue service-PLU giving-EZ proper to him/her be-3SG,
38. bedun-e tavajjoh be in ke hamrâh dâr-ad yâ na-dâr-ad , pul-e darmân
without-EZ attention to this that companion have-3SG or not-have-3SG, money-EZ treatment
dâr-ad yâ na-dâr-ad , bime-ye mošaxxas-i dâr-ad yâ na-dâr-ad .
have-3SG or not-have-3SG, insurance-EZ specific-a have-3SG or not-have-3SG

31-38:

IF WE WANT TO FIND THE ROOTS OF THE MEDICAL CARE PROBLEMS IN THE COUNTRY, we must attend to a package (**non-propositional, indeed**) in which the Ministry of Commerce, the Ministry of Welfare, the Organization of Physical Education, Ministry of Education and ... all and all have sort of share in it. All the blame **COULD NOT** be put on the Ministry of Health. But one point is clear. That is, a patient is a patient and when h/she needs help, the first and

most important thing is giving him/her the proper service whether s/he has or does not have a companion, has or does not have money, has or does not have a specific insurance.

39. nejât-e jân-e bimâr avvalin hoquq-e šahrivandi-ye šahrivand-ân dar yek jame'e ast, saving-EZ soul-EZ patient first rights-EZ citizenship-EZ citizen-PLU in one society be-3SG,

40. hoquq-i ke ma'mulan nadide gerefte mi-šav-ad.
Rights-some that normally ignored take-PART DUR-be-3SG.
39-40:

Saving patients is the first right of citizens in a society, the right which is normally ignored.

41. barâye tahaqog-e in hadaf-e mohem be čand amal **bâyad** enâyat dâšt.
for developing-EZ this aim-EZ important to some action **must** attention have.
In order to gain this objective, some points must be paid attention.

42. 1. sâ mân dâdan-e yek nezâm-e bime-ye hamegâni ke hame-ye šahrivand-ân
1. organisation giving-EZ one system-EZ insurance-EZ public that all-EZ citizen-PLU

râ a'am az rustâyi va šahri, kâseb va kârmand, faqir va ghani darbar
ACC including of villager and urban, businessman and employee, poor and rich involve

be-gir-ad.

SUBJ-take-3SG.

1. Organising a public insurance system which includes everybody, including villagers and citizens, businessmen and employees, the poor and the rich.

43. 2. taghyir dar šive-ye modiriyyat-e bimârestâni.

2. changing in way-EZ managing-EZ hospital.

2. Changing the managing system of hospitals.

44. besyâri az bimârestân-hâ-ye dolati **DAR SURAT-E VOJUD-E YEK HEI'AT MODIRE-YE**
many of hospital-PLU-EZ state IN **CASE-EZ EXISTENCE-EZ ONE BOARD-EZ DIRECTOR-EZ**

KÂRÂMAD VA YEK MODIR-E KÂRBALAD VA DELSUZ bedun-e hattâ afzâyeš-e
EFFICIENT AND ONE DIRECTOR-EZ EFFICIENT AND PASSIONATE without-EZ even increasing-EZ

e'tebâr-ât-e dolati mi-tavân-and bâ estefâde az zarfiyyat-hâ-ye mojud dar hamân
fund-PLU-EZ state DUR-can-PLU with use of capacity-PLU-EZ present in that

bimârestân, afzâyeš-e bahrevari va estefâde-ye monâseb va sahih az
hospital, increasing-EZ profit and using-EZ proper and appropriate of

komak-hâ-ye xayyer-in va nikukâr-ân va ta'âmol-e monâseb bâ ânân,
help-PLU-EZ charity-PLU and donor-PLU and interaction-EZ appropriate with them,

ham xadam-ât-e bimârestâni-e xod râ afzâyeš dah-and
also service-PLU-EZ hospital-EZ self ACC increase SUBJ-give-3PLU

45. va ham nesbatbe nosâzi va bâzsâzi-ye vâhed-e darmâni gam-hâ-ye
and also towards renewing and reconstructing-EZ unit-EZ treatment step-PLU-EZ

mosbat-i bardâr-and.

positive-a take-3PLU.

44-45:

IF THE STATE HOSPITALS HAD AN EFFICIENT BOARD OF DIRECTORS AND AN EFFICIENT AND PASSIONATE DIRECTOR, they could both increase their hospital services and take positive steps towards renewing and reconstructing it. It could be done even without increasing state funds and only by using the present capacities of the hospital and increasing its profit. It could be done with an appropriate and proper use of charities and donors, and having an appropriate interaction with donors.

46. bimârestân-e šahid hâšeminežâd (Daryâni) az jomle nomune-hâ-ye movafaq-e
hospital-EZ Shahid Hasheminezhad (Daryâni) an example sample-PLU-EZ successful-EZ

modiriyat-e bimârestâni ast
management-EZ hospital be-3SG

47. ke heme-ye ânâhâ ke vaz'iyat-e hâl-e in râ bâ vaz'iyat-e dah sâl piš-e
that all-EZ them that condition-EZ now-EZ it ACC with condition-EZ ten year ago-EZ

hamin binaresatân moqâyese mi-kon-and be ân mo'taref-and.
this hospital comparison DUR-do-3PLU to it accept-be-3PLU.

46-47:

Shahid Hasheminezhad Hospital is an example of a successful management. All those who compare the present condition of the hospital with its condition ten years ago agree with it.

48. 3. talâš dar jahat-e ijâd-e ta'âmol-e monâseb bein-e pezešk-ân
3. effort in direction-EZ establishing-EZ interaction-EZ appropriate between-EZ doctor-PLU

va parastâr-ân va sâzmân-hâ-ye bimei va ijâd-e rezâyatmandi barâye
and nurse-PLU and organisation-PLU-EZ insurance and establishing-EZ satisfaction for

pezešk-ân va parastâr-ân dar jahat-e erâ'e-ye xadam-ât-e matlub-tar be
doctor-PLU and nurse-PLU in direction-EZ giving-EZ service-PLU-EZ desirable-more to

bime šode-gân.

the insured-PLU.

3. Trying to establish an appropriate interaction between doctors and nurses and insurance organisations and satisfying doctors and nurses in order to give more desirable services to the insured.

49. 4. kârâmad kardan-e sâzmân-hâ-ye bâznešastegi va ta'min-e ejtemâ'i va
4. efficient making-EZ organisation-PLU-EZ retirement and improvement-EZ social and

xadam-ât-e darmâni va modiriyat-e behine bar manabe-e mali-e in
service-PLU-EZ treatment and management-EZ better to resources-EZ financial-EZ this

sâzmân-hâ ke az nazar-e mâli tavânâyi-ye belqove nirumand-i dâr-and,
organisation-PLU that from view-EZ financial ability-EZ potential powerful-a have-3PLU,

50. amâ dar jahat-e erteqâ-e bahrevari va sarmâyegozâri-hâ-ye monâseb va
but in direction-EZ promotion-EZ profit and investment-PLU-EZ appropriate and

afzâyeš-e tavân-e eqtesâdi-e xod barâye komak be bimegozâr-ân va afrâd-e
increasing-EZ ability-EZ economical-EZ self for help to insurer-PLU and people-EZ

taht-e pušeš gâm-hâ-ye kâfi va mosbat-i bar ne-mi-dâr-and.

under-EZ cover step-PLU-EZ enough and positive-a in not-DUR-take-3PLU.

49-50:

4. Making the Retirement Organisation, Social Improvement Organisation and Medical Care Services more efficient; better management of financial resources in those organisations that have a high financial potential, but do not take enough and positive steps to increase profit and appropriate investment and therefore increase their economic ability to assist insurers and the insured.

51. 5. taqviat-e farhang-e vaqf va estefâde az zarfiyyat-e besyâr bâlâ-ye xayyer-in
5. promoting-EZ culture-EZ donation and use of capacity-EZ very high-EZ charity-PLU

va nikukâr-ân va afrâd-e zinofuz-e eqtesâd i barâye hal-e mas'ale-ye
and donor-PLU and people-EZ influential-EZ economical for solving-EZ problem-EZ

darmân-e šahrvand-ân.

Treatment-EZ citizen-PLU.

5. Promoting the culture of donation and using the high capacity of charities and donors and their economical influence in order to solve people's medical care problem.

52. 6. tozi'-e monâseb-e xadam-ât-e darmâni va tajhiz-ât-e bimârestâni
6. distribution-EZ appropriate-EZ service-PLU-EZ treatment and equipment-PLU-EZ hospital
- dar manâteq-e moxtalef-e kešvar be manzur-e jelogiri az mohâjerat-hâ-ye naši
in areas-EZ different-EZ country to intention-EZ preventing from migration-PLU-EZ resulted
- az darmân.
from treatment.
6. Appropriate distribution of medical care services and hospital equipments in different parts of the country in order to prevent people from migration for treatment purposes.
53. 7. ...
7. ...
54. va albatte **MI-TAVÂN** hamçenân bar in fehrest afzud
and of course **DUR-CAN** as usual to this list increase
55. va râhkâr-hâ-ye digar-i râ niz madde nazar qarâr dâd
and solution-PLU-EZ other-some ACC also view point established give
56. tâ šahrvand-ân be-tavân-and ârâmeš-e behtar va bištar-i be-yâb-and
so citizen-PLU SUBJ-can-3PLU peace-EZ better and more-a SUBJ-find-3PLU
57. va dar morâje'e be marâkez-e darmâni va bimârestâni in hame mosta'sal
and in going to centres-EZ treatment and hospital this much confused
- na-mân-and.
not-remain-3PLU.
- 54-57:
And, of course, more **COULD** be added to the list and other solutions can be considered, too in order to provide more peace for people and make them less confused when they go to medical centres and hospitals.
58. kutâh-e soxan ân ke darmân-e monâseb va xub az jomle avvalin hoquq-e
short-EZ word this that treatment-EZ appropriate and good as whole first rights-EZ
- šahrvandi ast.
citizenship be-3SG.
To sum, appropriate medical care is one of the first rights of citizens.
59. nesbat be ân bitavajjohi **na-kon-im**.
towards to it non-attention **not-make-1PLU**.
We should not ignore it.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
4		if you visit a state hospital	
18		if a patient's companion or relatives raise voice and become angry	
31		If we want to find the roots of medical care problems in the country	
34	could not		
44		If the state hospitals had an efficient board of directors and an efficient and passionate director	
54	could		
	2	4	0

Table A2.26 Uncertainty markers in text No. 26

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
4	must		
10	must		
11		hygiene and cleanliness	
15	must		
22		disturbances and stresses	
24	as everyone knows		
32	of course		
35	but one point is clear		
44		an efficient board of directors ... and an efficient director	
44		proper and appropriate	
44		charities and donors	
47			All those who compare the present condition of the hospital with its condition ten years ago agree with it.
51		charities and donors	
54	of course		
	7	6	1

Table A2.27 Certainty markers in text No. 26

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
4		inevitably	
32	must		
41	must		
59	should not		
	3	1	0

Table A2.28 Attitudinal markers in text No. 26

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
2	our					
4			you			
4			you			
4			you			
12			you			
12			your			
12			you			
13			your			
31	we					
31	we					
32	we				(non-propositional, indeed)	
59	we					
	5	0	7	0	1	0

Table A2.29 Engagement markers in text No. 26

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A2.30 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 26

Text No. 27

Ettelaat-e Weekly, NO. 3364

By: Mohammad Amin Javadi

Number of words: 1406

1. hame-ye ânâ pâsoxgu **bâš-and**
all-EZ they answerer **IMP-be-3PLU**
All of them **must be** responsible
2. râsti **čerâ su'e modiriyyat jorm n-ist?**
honestly why bad-EZ management crime not-be-3SG?
Honestly, why mismanagement isn't a crime?
3. râsti **čerâ bayân-e harf-ha-ye gheyr-e kâršenâsi va yâ ettexaz-e**
honestly why expressing talk-PLU-EZ non-EZ expert and or adopting-EZ
tasmim-ât-e ghryr-e kâršenâsi ke avâqeb _____ va taba'-ât-e
decision-PLU-EZ non-EZ expert that consequences and aftermath-PLU-EZ
nâxošâyand-i be donbâl mi-âvar-ad va xesârat-e sangin-i râ bâ'es
unpleasant-a to behind DUR-bring-3SG and damage-EZ heavy-a ACC cause
mi-šav-ad, jorm talaqi ne-mi-šav-ad?
DUR-be-3SG, crime consideration not-DUR-be-3SG?
Honestly, why non-expert talks and inexpert decisions which bring about unpleasant
consequences and aftermaths and cause heavy damages are not considered crime?
4. ŠOMÂ AGAR YEK ÂFTÂBE BE-DOZD-**id**, jorm ast va mojâzât mi-šav-**id**.
YOU IF ONE PITCHER SUBJ-STEAL-2PLU, crime be-3SG and persecuted DUR-become-2PLU.
IF YOU STEAL A PITCHER, it is a crime, and **you** will be prosecuted.
5. AGAR AZ DÂXEL-E MAGHÂZE-I HEZÂR TUMÂN BARDÂR-**id**, mojrem be hesâb
IF FROM INSIDE-EZ SHOP-A THOUSAND TUMAN SUBJ-TAKE-2PLU, criminal to count
mi-ây-**id**.
DUR-come-2PLU.
IF YOU STEAL A THOUSAND TUMANS FROM A SHOP, **you** will be a criminal.
6. AGAR DAST-ETÂN RÂ DAR JIB-E KASI BE-KON-ID VA AGAR REŠVE
IF HAND-YOUR ACC IN POCKET-EZ SOMEONE SUBJ-PUT-2PLU AND IF BRIBERY
BE-GIR-**id**, mojrem hast-**id**.
SUBJ-GET-2PLU, criminal be-2PLU.
IF YOU PUT YOUR HAND INSIDE SOMEONE'S POCKET AND IF YOU GET BRIBERY, **you** will be a
criminal.
7. AMÂ AGAR MASALAN RA'IS-E YEK ŠERKAT-E DOLATI BÂŠ-**id** VA TASMIM-HÂ-YE
BUT IF FOR EXAMPLE MANAGER-EZ ONE COMPANY-EZ STATE BE-2PLU AND DECISION-PLU-EZ
GHALAT-I BE-GIR-**id**, mojrem be hesâb ne-mi-ây-**id**
WRONG-SOME SUBJ-TAKE-2PLU, criminal to count not-DUR-come-2PLU
8. va albatte dorost ham hamin ast.
and certainly right also this be-3SG.
7-8:
BUT IF YOU WERE THE MANAGER OF A STATE COMPANY AND MADE WRONG DECISIONS, **you**
wouldn't be a criminal. Certainly this is right.
9. čon masalan niyyat-e dozdi na-dašt-**id** va dar amal ham niyyat
because for example intention-EZ stealing not-have-2PLU and in action also intention
mohem ast!
important be-3SG!

Because **you** didn't intend to steal and in action intention is important!

10. **AGAR ŠOMÂ VAZIR BÂŠ-ID VA NATIJE-YE TASMIM-ÂT-E GHALAT-E**
IF YOU MINISTER BE-2PLU AND CONSEQUENCE-EZ DECISION-PLU-EZ WRONG-EZ

MODIRIYATI-E ŠOMÂ XESÂRAT-I ČAND HEZÂR MILYÂRD TUMANI BÂŠ-AD VA YÂ DAR
MANAGEMENT-EZ YOU DAMAGE-A SOME THOUSAND MILLIARD TUMAN be-3SG AND OR IN

ANDÂXTAN-E BAXŠ-I AZ JÂME'E DAR MORDÂB-E MOŠKEL-ÂT-E ÂN HOZE-YE
ENGAGING-EZ SECTION-A OF SOCIETY IN LAGOON-EZ PROBLEM-PLU-EZ THAT AREA-EZ

xÂS, bâz ham mojrem n-ist-id,
SPECIAL, again also criminal not-be-2PLU,

11. **amâ asar-e su'e modiriyat-e šomâ** be marâteb dah-hâ va sad-hâ va
but effect-EZ bad-EZ management-EZ **you** to degrees ten-PLU and hundred-PLU and

hezâr-hâ bâr bištar az xesârat-i ast ke yek dozđ yâ mortaši dar yek edâre
thousand-PLU times more than damage-a be-3SG that one robber or briber in a office

be bar mi-âvar-ad.
to fruit DUR-bring-3SG.

10-11:

IF YOU WERE A MINISTER AND THE RESULTS OF YOUR WRONG MANAGEMENT CAUSED A DAMAGE OF
SEVERAL MILLIARD TUMANS OR ENGAGED ONE PART OF THE SOCIETY IN THE PROBLEMS OF THAT
SPECIAL AREA, you wouldn't be criminal. But the results of **your** bad management are tens
or hundreds or thousands times more than the damage a robber or a briber causes in an
office.

12. **amâ dar injâ mohâkeme ne-mi-šav-id,**
but in here prosecuted not-DUR-be-2PLU,

13. **mojrem be hesâb ne-mi-ây-id,**
criminal to count not-DUR-come-2PLU,

14. **MOMKEN AST** ba'daz etmâm-e dore-ye modiriyat-e **šomâ** čand nafar-i
POSSIBLE BE-3SG after finishing-EZ period-EZ management-EZ **you** some person-some

be-guy-and "ân ham barâye qazâvat dar târix" ke folâni modiriat-e xub-i
SUBJ-say-3PLU "it also for judging in history" that such management-EZ good-a

na-dašt va dar dorân-e modiriyat-aš folân qadr xesârat be bâr
not-have-PAST-3SG and in period-EZ management-him/her such amount damage to fruit

âvard, **hamin.**
cause-PAST-3SG, **this.**

12-14:

But here **you** are not prosecuted. **You** are not criminal. **POSSIBLY** after finishing **your**
management period, some people will say, "leave it for the history to judge" that such and
such a person wasn't a good manager and caused such and such an amount of damage.
That's all.

15. **vâqe'iyat-aš râ be-xâh-id** in aslan ensâf n-ist,
reality-its ACC SUBJ-want-3PLU this at all fair not-be-3SG,

16. **bâyad** barâye su'e modiriyat hesâb va ketâb-i gozâšt.
must for bad management account and book-a put-3SG.

15-16:

To tell you the truth, this is not at all fair. Mismanagement **must** be analysed.

17. **lâzem ast** ke afrâd-e mo'asser-e syâsi va yâ šaxsiyyat-hâ-ye bânofuz
necessary be-3SG that individuals-EZ effective-EZ political and or character-PLU-EZ influential

ham be-dân-and ke harf va tasmim-ešân ta'sirgozâr ast.
also SUBJ-know-3PLU that talk and decision-their effective be-3SG.

It is necessary for politically influential people and characters to know that their speech and decisions have effects.

18. gâhi vaqt-hâ ta'sir-e besyâr mo'asser-i ham mi-gozâr-ad.
sometime-PLU effect-EZ very effective-a also DUR-put-3SG.
It sometimes has huge effects.
19. yek vaqt ta'sir-e kalâm va tasmim-e yek nafar tanhâ atrâfi-ân-e u
one time effect-EZ speech and decision-EZ one individual only companion-PLU him/her
râ šâmel mi-šav-ad
ACC include DUR-be-3SG
20. va gâh faqat a'zâ-ye xânevâde-ye u râ va gâh ham had aksar
and sometimes only members-EZ family-EZ him/her ACC and sometimes also at most
yek jam'-e mahdud râ dar bar mi-gir-ad,
one society-EZ limited ACC in inclusion DUR-take-3SG,
21. amâ masalan tasmim-ât-e yek vazir yâ yek ra'is jomhur jâme'e-i râ
but for example decision-PLU-EZ one minister or one president society-a ACC
mota'asser mi-kon-ad.
affect DUR-do-3SG
19-21:
Some times the effect of someone's speech and decision only affects his/her companions,
sometimes it only includes his/her family members or at most a limited society. But a
minister or a president's decision for example affects the whole society.
22. hamin tor tasmim-ât-i ke majles mi-gir-ad dastur-e kâr mi-šav-ad
this way decision-PLU-some that parliament DUR-take3SG order-EZ work DUR-become-3SG
23. va moqaddar-ât-e yek kešvar râ ta'yin mi-kon-ad.
and destiny-PLU-EZ one country ACC determined DUR-do-3SG.
22-23:
Also the decisions made by the parliament are put into practice and determine the destiny
of a country.
24. lezâ yek nemâyande-ye majles, yek vazir, yek sâheb mansab, yek masul-e
therefore one member-EZ parliament, one minister, one official, one official-EZ
eqtesâdi va hattâ modir âmel-e yek šerkat-e bozorg **NE-MI-TAVÂN-AND**
economical and even director managing-EZ one company-EZ big **NOT-DUR-CAN-3PLU**
nesbat be avâqeb-e su'-e modiriyat-e xod bimas'uliyat bâš-and.
towards consequences bad-EZ management-EZ self irresponsible be-3PLU
Therefore, a parliament member, a minister, an official, an economics official and even the
managing director of a big company **CANNOT** be irresponsible towards the consequences of
their mismanagement.
25. dartul-e sâl-hâ-ye pasaz enqelâb az in nomune-hâ ziâd did-e **im**.
during-EZ year-PLU-EZ after revolution from this example-PLU many see-PART-**1PLU**.
After the revolution **we** have seen a lot of these examples.
26. natije-ye tasmim-ât-e ghalat va kâršenâsi na-šode xesâr-ât-e qâbel-e
result-EZ decision-PLU-EZ wrong and expert not-become-PART damage-PLU able-EZ
tavajoh-i râ motavajeh-e na tanhâ eqtesâd, balke axlâg va farhang-e jâme'e
considerable-a ACC towards-EZ not only economy, but morality and culture-EZ society

ham kard-e ast,
also do-PART be-3SG,

27. amâ bâ in vojud hič zemânat-e ejrâyi-e mohkam-i barâye moâxeze-ye kasâni
but with this existence no guarantee-EZ executive-EZ strong-a for rebuke-EZ people

ke tasmim-ât-e ghalat mi-gir-and yâ harf-hâ-ye ghalat mi-zan-and, sâmân
that decision-PLU-EZ wrong DUR-take-3PLU or talk-PLU-EZ wrong DUR-say-3PLU, order

na-dad-e-*im*
not-give-PART-1PLU

28. va be hamin xâter ast ke ešebâh-ât-e bozorg tekrâr šod-e-and
and to this sake be-3SG that mistake-PLU-EZ big repeat becomePART-3PLU

29. va xesâr-ât-e bozorgtar be bâr âmad-e-and.
and damage-PLU-EZ bigger to fruit come-PART-3PLU.

26-29:

The results of the wrong and inexpert decisions have had noticeable effects on not only the economy, but the morality and culture of the society. However, **we** have not made any strong practical guarantee to call to account the people who have made wrong decisions or have given wrong talks. That's why the big mistakes have been repeated and bigger damages have been made.

30. *man* faqat be yek nomune ešâre mi-kon-am,
I only to one example point DUR-do-1SG,

31. yâd-emân na-raft-e ast ke dolat-e mohtaram va nemâyande-gan-e
memory-our not-go-PART be-3SG that government-EZ respectable and member-PLU-EZ

mohtaram ke ham su bâ gerâyeš-ât-e fekri-e dolat bud-e-and,
respectable that same direction with tendency-PLU-EZ opinion-EZ government be-PART-3PLU,

dar mored-e tarh-e tasbit-e qeimat-hâ dar se sâl piš, če esrâr va
in about-EZ plan-EZ stabilising-EZ price-PLU in three year ago, what insistence and

lejâi-i bexarj dâd-and
obstinacy-a spent give-3PLU

32. va dar majles mosavvab kard-and ke dah kâlâ va xedmat-e dolati
and in parliament passed do-PAST-3PLU that ten goods and service-EZ government

barâye moqâbele bâ tavarrom sâbet be-mân-ad.
for counter with inflation stable SUBJ-keep-3SG.

30-32:

I only point out one case. **We** have not forgotten how insistent and obstinate were the respectable government and the respectable parliament members with the same opinion tendencies of the government three years ago over stabilising the prices. They passed a bill in the parliament that ten state goods and services should be kept stable in order to counter inflation.

33. dar hamân hengâm aksar-e kâršenâs-ân-e eqtesâdi yâ **behtar ast** **be-guy-am**
in same time most-EZ experts economics or **better** **be-3SG SUBJ-say-1SG**

TAQRIBAN hame-ye kâršenâs-ân-e delsuz-e eqtesâdi hošdâr dâd-and ke
ALMOST all-EZ expert-PLU-EZ passionate-EZ economics warning give-PAST-3PLU that

čenin eqdâm-i na tanhâ zedd-e tavarromi n-ist, balke mojob-e kasri-e
this action-a not only counter-EZ inflation not-be-3SG, but cause-EZ shortage-EZ

budje-ye šadid-e dolat, vâbastegi-e bištar be darâmâ-hâ-ye naft va
budget-EZ severe-EZ government, dependence-EZ more to income-PLU-EZ oil and

dar nahâyat afzâyeš-e tavarrom xâh-ad šod.
 finally increasing-EZ inflation will-3SG become.
 Meanwhile, most experts, or **better to say ALMOST** all passionate economics experts warned that this wasn't counter inflation, but would lead to severe shortage in government's budget, more dependence on oil incomes, and would finally increase inflation.

34. bâz yâd-emân na-raft-e ast ke dolat-e mohtaram bâ çe
 again memory-our not-go-PART be-3SG that government-EZ respectable with what
 esrâr-i dar mored-e sâbet mândan-e qeimat-e hâmel-hâ-ye eneržy va azjomle
 insistence-a in about-EZ stable keeping-EZ price-EZ carrier-PLU-EZ energy and especially
 benzin va gâzo'il pâfešâri kard-e ast,
 gas and gasoil insistence do-PART be-3SG,
35. amâ hâl pasaz gozašt-e se sâl avâqe'b-e vaxim-e ân tasmim-ât
 but now after passing-EZ three year consequences-EZ horrible-EZ that decision-PLU
 ru-ye xod râ nešân dâd
 face-EZ self ACC show give-PAST-3SG
36. va beyekbâre dolat va majles râ nagozir kard ke bâ šetâb-i
 and suddenly government and parliament ACC hopeless makePAST-3SG that with pace-a
 tond eštebâh-e xod râ eslâh kon-and
 fast mistake-EZ self ACC correct SUBJ-make-3PLU
37. va hâmel-hâ-ye eneržy râ be qeimat-hâ-ye beinalmelali arze namây-and.
 and carrier-PLU-EZ energy ACC to price-PLU-EZ international supply SUBJ-do-PLU.
 34-37:
We have not still forgotten what insistence the respectable government had over stabilising prices of energy carriers, especially gas and gasoline. After three years the horrible consequences of those decisions are showing and have made the government and parliament to correct their mistake with a fast speed and supply energy carriers with international prices.
38. ân ham dar šarâyet-i ke motavasset-e tavarrom dar šarâyet-e rokud-e
 it also in circumstances-a that average-EZ inflation in circumstances-EZ recession-EZ
 tavarromi raqam-e gheyr-e qâbel-e tojih-i bud-e ast.
 inflation figure-EZ non-EZ able-EZ explanation-a be-PART be-3SG .
 And this has been in a situation that the average inflation rate has been invincible.
39. dolat dar lâyehe-ye budje-ye emsâl 34 hezâr milyârd Tumân darâmad az
 government in bill-EZ budget-EZ this year 34 thousand milliard Tuman income of
 mahall-e hadafmand kardan-e yârâne-hâ pišbini kard-e bud,
 place-EZ goal oriented making-EZ subsidy-PLU prediction make-PART be-PAST-3SG,
40. bâ in taqsim bandi ke 60 dar sad-e in mablagh râ bâz tozi' kon-ad,
 with this division making that 60 per cent-EZ this amount ACC again spread SUBJ-do-3SG,
41. ya'ni be haft dahak-e kam darâmad-e jâme'e yârâne-ye naqdi be-dah-ad
 that is to seven tenth-EZ low incomeEZ society subsidy-EZ cash SUBJ-give-3SG
42. va az mahall-e 40 dar sad-e baqye, 25 dar sad-e ân râ be hesâb-e xazâne
 and from place-EZ 40 per cent-EZ rest, 25 per cent-EZ it ACC to account-EZ treasury
 vâriz konad
 sent SUBJ-do-3SG

43. va 15 dar sad râ ham be vâhed-hâ-ye toliidi be-baxš-ad.
and 15 per cent ACC also to unit-PLU-EZ production SUBJ-donate-3SG.
39-43:
The government had predicted 34 thousand milliard Tumans income in its budget bill this year by making subsidies goal-oriented. It intended to spread 60 percent of the amount. That is, it would give subsidy to seven tenth of the low income part of the society, and from the 40 percent left 25 percent would be sent to treasury.
44. dar komision talfiq-e in raqam be 20 hezâr milâyrd Tumân kâheš
in commission composing-EZ this figure to 20 thousand milliard Tuman reduction
yâft,
find-PAST-3SG,
45. amâ kâmelan peidâ-st ke ta'min-e 20 hezâr milyârd Tumân çe balâ-yi
but completely clear-be-3SG that providing-EZ 20 thousand milliard Tuman what problem-a
bar sar-e qeimat-hâ xâh-ad âvard
to head-EZ price-PLU will-3SG bring
46. va az hamaknun MI-TAVÂN HADS ZAD ke AGAR DOLAT BE-XÂH-AD HATTÂ BE
and from now DUR-CAN GUESS that IF GOVERNMENT SUBJ-WANT-3SG EVEN TO
**HAMIN RAQAM-E 20 HEZÂR MILYÂRD TUMAN BE-RES-AD, nâçar ast
THIS FIGURE-EZ 20 THOUSAND BILLION TUMAN SUBJ-REACH-3SG, unavoidable be-3SG**
kâlâ-hâ va xadam-ât-e xod râ be çe bahâ-yi arze konad.
goods-PLU and service-PLU-EZ self ACC to what price-a present SUBJ-do-3SG.
44-46:
In composing commission this figure was reduced to 20 milliard Tumans. It is completely clear that what will happen to prices by providing 20 thousand milliard Tumans. **IT CAN BE ESTIMATED that IF THE GOVERNMENT EVEN INTENDED TO REACH THE FIGURE OF 20 MILLIARD TUMANS, it would have to sell its goods and services to what prices..**
47. AGAR DAR NAZAR BE-GIR-IM KE 70 MILIYON LITR BENZIN DAR RUZ DAR KEŠVAR
IF IN EYE SUBJ-TAKE-1PLU THAT 70 MILLION LITRE GAS IN DAY IN COUNTRY
**TOZI MI-ŠAV-AD VA DOLAT BE-XÂH-AD NIM-I AZ ÂN RÂ BEDUN-E
DISTRIBUTED DUR-BE-3SG AND GOVERNMENT SUBJ-WANT-3SG HALF-A OF IT ACC WITHOUT-EZ
SAHMIE TOZI' KON-AD, ÂN HAM BÂ QEIMAT-E 400 TUMAN, raqam-i ke be
RATION DISTRIBUTED SUBJ-DO-3SG, IT ALSO WITH PRICE-EZ 400 TUMAN, figure-a that to
dast mi-ây-ad çe mablagh-i xâh-ad bud?
hand DUR-come-3SG what amount-a will-3SG be?
IF WE CONSIDER THAT 70 MILLION LITRE GAS IS DISTRIBUTED IN THE COUNTRY EVERY DAY AND THE
GOVERNMENT DISTRIBUTES HALF OF IT WITHOUT RATIONING FOR 400 TUMANS, what will be the
figure?**
48. zemn-e in ke dar hâle hâzer yârâne-ye naft (gâzoil) be marâteb bištar az benzin ast
added-EZ this that at present subsidy-EZ oil (gasoil) to degrees more than gas be-3SG
49. VA AGAR BAHÂ-YE 165 RIÂL-E FE'LI BE 50 TUMAN AFZÂYEŠ PEIDÂ KON-AD VA
AND IF PRICE-EZ 165 RIAL-EZ PRESENT TO 50 TUMAN INCREASE FIND SUBJ-DO-3SG AND
**IN TAFÂVOT-E BAHÂ RÂ DAR 80 MILYON LITR MASRAF-E RUZÂNE-YE
THIS DIFFERENCE-EZ PRICE ACC IN 80 MILLION LITRE CONSUMPTION-EZ DAILY-EZ
MAHSUL ZARB KON-IM, çe raqam-i râ taškil xâhad dad?
PRODUCT MULTIPLY SUBJ-DO-1PLU, what figure-a ACC make will-3SG give?**
48-49:
In addition, at present oil (gasoline) subsidy is much more than gas. **IF THE PRESENT PRICE OF 165 RIALS INCREASES TO 50 TUMANS, AND IF WE MULTIPLY THE PRICE DIFFERNCE 80 MILLION LITRE DAILY CONSUMPTION, what will be the figure?**

50. **jâleb ast be-dân-id** ke dar in surat darâmâd-e dolat az mahall-e **interesting be-3SG SUBJ-know-2PLU** that in this case income-EZ government from place-EZ vâqe'i kardan-e qeimat-e benzin andak-i biš az 3700 milyârd Tumân dar sâl va realistic making-EZ price-EZ gas little-a more than 3700 milliard Tumans in year and afzâyeš-e qeimat-e gasoil **HODUD-E** hezâr milyârd Tumân darâmâd ijâd xâh-ad increase-EZ price-EZ gasoil **ABOUT-EZ** thousand milliard Tumans income creation will-3SG kard make
51. va jam'-e in raqam bexubi nešân mi-dah-ad ke çe fâsele-i and addition-EZ this figure well indication DUR-give-3SG that what gap-a tâ 20 hezâr milyârd Tumân-e pišnahâdi dâr-ad to 20 thousand milliard Tumans-EZ proposed have-3SG
52. va se çâhârom-e baqye-ye in mablagh **EHEMÂLAN** qarâr ast az and three fourths-EZ remaining-EZ this amount **PROBABLY** established be-3SG from mahall-e afzâyeš-e bahâ-ye âb va barq va gâz ta'min gard-ad place-EZ increasing-EZ price-EZ water and electricity and gas provided SUBJ-be-3SG
53. va bâz mi-dân-**im** ke **HODUD-E** nim-i az masraf-e gâz-e kešvar marbut and again DUR-know-**1PLU** that **ABOUT-EZ** half-a of consumption-EZ gas-EZ country related be nirugâh-hâ-yi ast ke barq tolid mi-kon-ad to power plant-PLU-some be-3SG that electricity production DUR-do-3SG
54. va dolat **NE-MI-TAVÂN-AD** darâmâd-e çandâni az ân dašt-e bâš-ad, and government **NOT-DUR-CAN-3SG** income-EZ much from it have-PART be-3SG,
55. ya'ni masraf-e ân dâxeli ast that is consumption-EZ it internal be-3SG
56. va ba'id be nazar miresad ke be-tavân in raqam-e garden koloft râ and far to eye DUR-come-3SG that SUBJ-can this figure-EZ neck thick ACC az in do se qalam kâlâ va xadamât be dast âvard. from this two three item goods and service-PLU to hand bring. 50-56:
It is interesting for you to know that in this case the government's income from realising the price of gas will be a little more than 3700 milliard Tumans every year. Increasing the price of gasoline will make **ABOUT** a thousand milliard Tumans income for the government. Adding those shows what a gap there is to reach the proposed 20 thousand milliard Tumans. **PROBABLY** the remaining three fourth of this amount is to be provided by increasing the prices of water, electricity and gas. **We** already know that **ABOUT** half of the gas consumption in the country is related to power plants which produce electricity and the government **CANNOT** have much income from it; that is, its consumption is internal. It seems improbable to provide this huge amount from two or three items and services.
57. zemn-e in ke dolat banâ dâr-ad az mahall-e 20 hezâr milyârd Tumân adding this that government intend-3SG from place-EZ 20 thousand milliard Tuman **HODUD-E** 12 hezâr milyârd Tumân râ be surat-e naqdi bâz pardaxt namây-ad **ABOUT-EZ** 12 thousand milliard Tuman ACC in face-EZ cash again payment SUBJ-do-3SG
58. ke **ma'lum n-ist** asar-ât-e ân çe bâr-e tavarromi râ be hamrâh that **clear not-be-3SG** effect-PLU-EZ it what burden-EZ inflation ACC to accompany

bi-âvar-ad.
SUBJ-bring-3SG.
57-58:

In addition, the government intends to pay back **ABOUT** 12 thousand Tumans of the amount of 20 thousand Tumans. **It is not clear** what will be its impact on inflation.

59. **bande bešexse** az sâl-hâ piš movâfeq-e hazf-e yârâne-hâ,
I personally from year-PLU ago agreeing-EZ omitting-EZ subsidy-PLU,

beviže dar mored-e benzin va gâzoil bud-e-am
especially in case-EZ gas and gasoil be-PART-1SG

60. va lezâ dar hâle hâzer **ne-mi-tavân-am moxalef-e ân bâš-am**
and therefore in present **not-DUR-can-1SG opposite-EZ it be-1SG**

61. va in eqdâm râ dar har surat mofid **mi-dân-am**,
and this action ACC in any case useful **DUR-know-1SG**,

62. amâ hamvâre va dartul-e tamâm-e in sâl-hâ **dar yâddâšt-hâ-yam ešâre**
but always and during-EZ all-EZ this year-PLU in **note-PLU-my pointed**

kard-e-am ke bâz TOZI'-E YÂRÂNE AGAR QARÂR AST SURAT
do-PART-1SG that again **DISTRIBUTING SUBSIDY IF ESTABLISHED BE-3SG FACE**

GIR-AD, gozineši **na-bâyad** bâš-ad.
SUBJ-GET-3SG, selective **not-must** SUBJ-be-3SG.

59-62:

I have always agreed with cutting subsidies, particularly gas and gasoline, for many years. Therefore, **I can't disagree** at present and **I believe** it is useful anyway. But all these years **I have pointed out in my notes** that **IF DISTRIBUTING SUBSIDY IS GOING TO HAPPEN**, it **must not** be selective.

63. zemnan az čand sâl-e piš **goft-e-am** ke **behtar ast** in harakat
in addition from some year-EZ ago **tell-PART-1SG** that **better be-3SG** this movement

betarij surat be-gir-ad,
gradually face SUBJ-take-3SG,

64. na ân ke se sâl dar eqdâm-i lajujane va gheyr-e kâršenâsi qeimat-hâ râ sâbet
not it that three year in action-a obstinate and non-EZ expert price-PLU ACC stable

negâh dâr-**im**
keep have-**1PLU**

65. va hâl beyekbâre be-xâh-**im** enfejâr-e qeimat ijâd kon-**im**.
and now suddenly SUBJ-want-**1PLU** explosion-EZ price creation SUBJ-make-**1PLU**.

63-65

In addition, **I have told** in the past that **it is better** for this movement to be gradual, not that in an obstinate and non-expert action **we** keep the prices stable for three years and then suddenly [**we**] decide that **we** cause a price explosion.

66. nokte-ye ba'di in ke dar hâle hâzer dolat hamčenân be lejâjat edâme
point-EZ next this that at present government still to obstinacy continuation

mi-dah-ad, beviže dar mored-e qeimat-e arz.
DUR-give-3SG, especially in case-EZ price-EZ foreign currency.

The next point is at present the government still continues with its obstinacy, especially about the price of foreign currency.

67. hame mi-dân-im ke sâbet mândan-e qeimat-e arz dar panj sâl-e
all DUR-know-1PLU that stable remaining-EZ price-EZ foreign currency in five year-EZ

axir če latam-ât-e jobrân napazir-i râ bar servat-e melli va tolid-e
recent what damage-PLU-EZ irreparable-some ACC to rich-EZ national and production-EZ

dâxeli vâred âvard-e ast
internal entrance bring-PART be-3SG

68. va dar eqdâm-i šegeft dolat va majles esrâr dâr-and ke be-guy-and
and in action-a surprising government and parliament insist have-3PLU that SUBJ-tell-3PLU

qeimat-e arz dar Irân sâbet mând-e ast, be tor-e motavasset
price-EZ foreign currency in Iran stable remain-PART be-3SG, to way-EZ average

69. bedun-e ân ke tozih be-dah-and čegune **MOMKEN AST mâ** dar kešvar
without-EZ it that explanation SUBJ-give-3PLU how **POSSIBLE BE-3SG we** in country

tavarrom-i **HODUD-E** 20 dar sad dâšt-e bâš-im, ânvaqt qeimat-e arz dar
inflation-a **ABOUT-EZ** 20 per cent have-PART be-1PLU, then price-EZ foreign currency in

in kešvar sâbet bâš-ad?
this country stable be-3SG?³²

67-69:

All of us know what irreparable damages the stable price of foreign currency has had on our national riches and home production in the past five years. In a surprising action the government and parliament insist that the price of foreign currency has remained stable without explaining how **IT IS POSSIBLE** to [we] have an inflation of **ABOUT** 20 percent on average in the country but the price of foreign currency remain stable.

70. **ŠÂYAD** nemâyande-gan-i az čin va kore va ettehâdie-ye orupa va ...
POSSIBLY representative-PLU-some from China and Korea and Union-EZ Europe and ...

verd-i xând-e-and
spell-a read-PART-3PLU

71. tâ majles va dolat barâye foruše bištar-e kâlâ-hâ-ye ânâ dar Irân dast
so parliament and government for sale-EZ more-EZ goods-PLU-EZ them in Iran hand

be čenin eqdâm-i be-zan-and.
to this action-a SUBJ-hit-3PLU.

70-71:

POSSIBLY some representatives from China, Korea, European Union and ... have casted a spell so that the government and parliament sell more of their goods in Iran.

72. be har hâl bâz ham **mi-guy-am** sâbet negâh daštan-e qeimat-e arz ham
any way again also **DUR-say-1SG** stable keeping having-EZ price-EZ foreign currency also

az jomle eqdâm-ât-i ast ke čon hič tojih-i na-dâr-ad dar âyande-i
one of action-PLU-some be-3SG that because no explanation-a not-have-3SG in future-a

nazdik be sarnevešt-e vâqe'i kardan-e qeimat-e suxt xâh-ad anjâm-id,
near to fate-EZ realistic making-EZ price-EZ fuel will-3SG lead-3SG,

73. montahâ bâ šetâb-i ke digar qâbel-e kontrol na-xâh-ad bud.
but with speed-a that other able-EZ control not-will-3SG be.

72-73:

Any way, **I say** it again that keeping the price of foreign currency stable is an action that has no explanation and in near future it will have a similar fate to realising the fuel price, but with an uncontrollable speed.

74. be xâter-e hamin ast ke **mi-guy-am čerâ na-bâyad hesâb va ketâb-i barâye**
to sake-EZ this be-SG that **DUR-say-1SG why not-must account and book-a for**

³² The question is not directed to the readers.

*arzyâbi-e tasmim-ât-e modir-ân va mas'ul-an va šaxsiyyat-hâ-ye
evaluation-EZ decision-PLU-EZ manager-PLU and official-PLU and character-PLU-EZ*

*ta'sir gozâr vojüd dašt-e bâš-ad?
influential existence have-PART be-3SG?*

*That is why I say why there must not be someone to evaluate the decisions of
managers, officials and influential characters?*

75. *čerâ kasi na-bâyad ânân râ be xâter-e harf-hâ-ye ghalat-i ke zad-e-and va
why one not-must them ACC to sake-EZ speech-PLU-EZ wrong-a that hit-PART-3PLU and*

*tasmim-ât-e ghalat-i ke gereft-e-and be mohâkeme be-kešan-and?
decision-PLU-EZ wrong-a that take-PART-3PLU to prosecution SUBJ-pull-3PLU?
Why mustn't someone prosecute them for the wrong speeches and wrong decisions
they have made?*

76. *qâedatan AGAR ČENIN VÂHEME-I VOJÜD DÂŠT-E BÂŠ-AD zarib-e xatâ dar
basically IF THIS FEAR-A EXISTENCE HAVE-PART be-3SG coefficient-EZ error in*

*mian-e mas'ul-ân va motavalli-ân va majlesi-ân va
among-EZ official-PLU and administrator-PLU and parliament member-PLU and*

*dolati-ân har ruz kam va kamtar mi-šav-ad.
governor-PLU every day less and less DUR-become-3SG.
Basically, IF THEE WERE THIS FEAR, error coefficient among officials, administrators,
parliament members and governors would have been less and less.*

77. *hamiše ke na-bâyad montazer-e qazâvat-e târix bud.
always that not-must waiting-EZ judgement-EZ history be.
We mustn't always wait for history to judge.*

78. *kutâh-e soxan ân ke; hame-ye ânân dar soxanrâni-hâ-ye poršur-e zemestân-e
short-EZ speech it that; all-EZ them in speech-PLU-EZ enthusiastic-EZ winter-EZ*

*sâl-e 84 dar majles va dolat sohbat az zarutat-e tasbit-e
year-EZ 84 in parliament and government speech from necessity-EZ stabilising-EZ*

*qeimat-e kâlâ-hâ va xadam-ât-e dolat mi-kard-and
price-EZ goods-PLU and service-PLU-EZ government DUR-make-3PLU*

79. *va moxâlef-e afzâyeš-e qeimat-e benzin va gâzoil va hâmel-hâ-ye eneržy
and opposite-EZ increase-EZ price-EZ gas and gasoil and carrier-PLU-EZ energy*

*bud-and
be-PAST-3SG*

80. *va bâ sedâ-ye boland janjâl be pâ kard-e bud-and ke qeimat-e benzin hattâ
and with voice-EZ loud row to up make-PART be-3PLU that price-EZ gas even*

*bâ 80 Tumân ham gerân ast
with 80 Tuman also expensive be-3SG*

81. *va be madrom ejhâf mi-šav-ad
and to people overcharging DUR-become-3SG*

82. *va hâl dar dolat va majles sokut piše kard-e-and,
and now in government and parliament silence front make-PART-3PLU,*

83. *hâl kojây-and
now where-be-3PLU*

84. *va bâ vojđân-e xod čegune kenâr mi-ây-and?*
and with conscience-EZ self how along DUR-come-3PLU?

77-84:

In short, all those who made enthusiastic speeches in the parliament in the winter 1384 (2006) on the necessity of stabilising the price of the government's goods and services, opposed increasing the price of gas, gasoil and carriers of energy. They made a row that even if the price of gas were 80 Tumans, it would be expensive and people would be overcharged. They are silent now. *Where are they? How do they get along with their conscience?*

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
4		If you steal a pitcher	
5		If you steal a thousand Tumans from a shop	
6		If you put your hand in someone's pocket and if you get bribery	
7		But if you were the manager of a state company and made wrong decisions	
10		If you were a minister ... that special area	
14	possibly		
24	cannot		
33	almost		
46	it can be estimated	if government even intended to reach the figure of 20 milliard tumans	
47		If we consider that ... without rationing	
49		If the present price of 165 Rials increases to ... consumption	
50	about		
52	probably		
53	about		
54	cannot		
57	about		
62		if distribution of subsidy is to happen	
69	it is possible		
69	about		
70	possibly		
76		If there were his fear	
	12	10	0

Table A2.31 Uncertainty markers in text No. 27

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
3		consequences and aftermaths	
8	certainly		
31	we have not forgotten	insistence and obstinacy	
34	we have not forgotten		
45	it is completely clear		
56	it seems improbable		
67	all of us know		
	6	2	0

Table A2.32 Certainty markers in text No. 27

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
1	must be		
2		honestly	
3		honestly	
8		this is right	
14		that's all	
15		to tell the truth	
15		this is not at all fair	
16	must		
17	it is necessary		
33		better to say	
46	has to		
50		It is interesting to know	
58		it is not clear	
59		I have always agreed	
60		I can't disagree	
61		I believe	
62		I have pointed out in my notes	
62	must not		
63	it is better	I have told	
72		I say	
74		I say	
74	must not		
75	must not		
77	must not		
	9	16	0

Table A2.33 Attitudinal markers in text No. 27

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
2				Honestly, why mismanagement isn't a crime?		
3				Honestly, why non-expert talks and non-expert decisions ... are not considered crime?		
4			you			
4			you			
5			you			
5			you			
6			you			
6			your			
6			you			
6			you			
7			you			
7			you			
7			you			
9			you			
10			you			
10			your			
10			you			
11			your			
12			you			
13			you			
14			your			
15			you			
25	we					
27	we					
30		I				
31	we					
34	we					
47	we			what will be the figure		
49	we			what will be the figure?		
50			you			
53	we					
67	we					
69	we					
74				why there must not be someone to evaluate the decisions of managers, officials and ...?		
75				Why mustn't someone prosecute them for the wrong speeches and wrong decisions they have made?		
83				where are they now		
84				how do they come along with their conscience?		
	9	1	21	8	0	0

Table A2.34 Engagement markers in text No. 27

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
64	we
65	we
65	we
	3

Table A2.35 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 27

Text No. 28

Gozaresh No. 195, Esfand 1386 (Feb - Mar 2008)

by Abulqasem Golbaf

Number of Words: 1276

1. **az ranj-i ke mi-bar-im va az ganj-i ke ne-mi-bar-im**
from pain-a that DUR-take-1PLU and from treasure-a that not-take-1PLU
The pain we take the gain we don't take
2. 70 milyun nafar jam'iyat,
70 million person population,
3. **NAZDIK BE** 40 million javân-e Irâni bâ andiše-ye bartar va barande-gân-e
NEAR TO 40 milyun young_EZ Iranian with thought_EZ superior and winner-PLU-EZ

olampiâd-hâ va âzmun-hâ,
olympiad-EZ and exam-EZ,
4. **HODUD-E** 140 milyârd dolâr darâmad-e hâsel az sâderât-e nafti, gheyr-e nafti
ABOUT-EZ 140 milliard dollar income-EZ produced from export-PLU oil, non-EZ oil

va masraf-e dâxeli-ye naft,
and consumption-EZ internal-EZ oil,
5. biš az 100 milyun ton toolid-e mavâd-e ghazâyi va mahsul-ât-e
more than 100 million ton manufacturing-EZ materials-EZ food and product-PLU-EZ

kešâvarzi,
agricultural,
6. yek milyârd va 648 milyun kilometr-e morabba' arâzi,
one milliard and 648 million kilometre-EZ square lands,
7. ma'âden-e ghani-e naft va gâz va sad-hâ no' kâni-hâ-ye felezi va gheyr-e
mines-EZ rich oil and gas and hundred-PLU kinds mineral-PLU metal and non-EZ

felezi-e monhaser be fard,
metal-EZ exceptional,
8. hezâr-ân ruxâne-ye bozorg va kučak,
thousand-PLU river-EZ big and small,
9. čâhâr fasl-e qâbel-e fa'âliat va bahrebardâri dar čâhâr noqte-ye Irân-e bozorg,
four season-EZ capable-EZ activity and exploit in four spot-EZ Iran big,
10. va dastrasi be âb-hâ-ye garm-e donyâ,
and access to water-PLU-EZ warm-EZ world,
11. âsâr-e bâstâni va târixi-ye čand-in hazâr sâle,
relics-EZ ancient and historical-EZ several-PLU thousand year,
12. manâteq-e didani-ye tabi'i, rustâyi va ...
areas-EZ spectacular-EZ natural, rural and ...
13. hame va hame amâ, mojab ne-mi-šav-ad tâ az emkân-ât-e mojud be
all and all but, entail not-DUR-become-3SG so from facility-PLU-EZ available to

behtarin nahv bahrebardâri-e behine kon-im
best kind exploit-EZ best SUBJ-do-1PLU
14. va az hâsel-e talâš-**emân (na be onvân-e ranj-e kâr)** lezat be-bar-**im**.
and from product-EZ effort-**our (not to title-EZ pain-EZ work)** enjoy SUBJ-take-**1PLU**.

2-14:

A population of 70 million, **NEARLY** 40 million young Iranians with superior thoughts and winners of Olympiads and exams, **ABOUT** 140 milliard dollars of oil and non-oil income and internal oil consumption, more than 100 million tons of food and agricultural productions, one milliard and 648 million square kilometre of land, rich oil and gas mines and hundreds of exceptional metal and non-metal minerals, thousands of big and small rivers, four seasons of work and exploit in all parts of Iran, access to the warm waters of the world, thousands-year-old ancient and historical monuments, spectacular natural and rural areas and ... all and all, but this does not entail the fact that we exploit the best from the facilities at best and **we** enjoy the result of **our** efforts (**not as pain**).

15. dar in sarmaqâle be čand mored be onvan-e nemune ešare mi-šav-ad:
in this editorial to some instance to title-EZ example point DUR-become-3SG:
In this editorial some of the issues are indicated as examples:

16. be dalil-e âmuzeš na-didan-e sâheb-ân-e xodro-ha (**be serf-e dâštan-e**
to reason-EZ training not-seeing-EZ owner-PLU-EZ vehicle-PLU (**to only-EZ having-EZ**

yek gavâhinâme)
one licence)

17. sâlâne čand-in hezar milyârd *Riâl* talaf-ât-e sarmâye dar asar-e
annually some-PLU thousand milliard Rial loss-PLU-EZ asset in effect-EZ

taxalof-ât-e rânandegi va tasâdof-ât va čand dah hezâr talaf-ât-e
violation-PLU-EZ driving and accident-PLU and several ten thousand loss-PLU-EZ

ensâni dar asar-e in mo'zal dar kešvar be voqu mi-peivand-ad.
human in effect-EZ this problem in country to happening DUR-join-3SD.

16-17:

Because vehicle owners have not been trained (**only because they have a licence**) thousands milliard Rials of assets is lost in this country annually because of accidents and violating driving regulations; and thousands of people die as a result.

18. molaheze kon-**id**
notice IMP-do-2PLU

19. na Râhnamayi Rânandegi az mahal-e jarime-hâ-yi ke jabri va
not Motoring and Driving Office from place-EZ fine-PLU-ones that compulsory and

bâ ta'yin-e tedâd-e barg-e jarime barâye ma'mur-ân axz mi-kon-ad
with assigning-EZ number-EZ sheet-EZ fine for officer-PLU get DUR-do-3SG

va na dolat az mahal-e avârez va mâliât âmuzeš-e sahih va
and not government from place-EZ toll and tax training-EZ proper and

jâme' barâye mardom anjâm ne-mi-dah-and
comprehensive for people do not-DUR-give-3PLU

20. tâ xatar-ât-e tasâdof be hadaqal-e qabel-e qabul be-res-ad.
till danger-PLU-EZ accident to minimum--EZ able-EZ acceptable SUBJ-reach-3SG.
18-20:

[**You**] notice that **neither Motoring and Driving Office out of the income of the compulsory fines that assigns to officers to collect based on the number of fining sheets, nor the government from the income of toll and tax, give people proper and comprehensive training** to decrease the dangers of accidents to an acceptable minimum.

21. dar in râbete sarbâz-ân-e vazife-ye âmuzeš na-did-e dar lebâs-e jarime
in this connection soldier-PLU-EZ duty-EZ trained not-see-PART in clothes-EZ fine

konande niz mazid bar ellat mi-šav-and.
doer also extra to reason DUR-become-3PLU.

In this connection the untrained duty soldiers also add to the problem.

22. ruzâne sad-hâ hezâr dastgâh-e elektroniki va barqi (az kâmputer daily hundred-PLU thousand gadget-EZ electronic and electric (from computer gereft-e tâ soti tasviri, kontroli va hatâ asbâbbâzi, âmuzeši, va ...) be get-PART to sonic pictorial, controlled and even toy, educational, and ...) to kešvar vâred yâ tolid va xarid va foruš mi-šav-ad. country imported or produced and bought and sold DUR-become-3SG. Thousands of electric and electronic gadgets (computers, hi fi, TV, gadgets with remote control and even toys, educational gadgets, and ...) are imported, produced and merchandised in this country every day.
23. dar tamâm-e donyâ tolidkonande-gân ya vâredkonande-gân movazaf mi-šav-and in all-EZ world producer-PLU or importer-PLU bound DUR-become-3PLU
24. brušur-e tarz-e kâr yâ râhandâzi va estefâde az dastgâh va negahdâri-e booklet-EZ way-EZ work or set up and use from gadget and maintenance-EZ ân râ be zabân-e rasmi-ye ân kešvar hamrâh bâ kâlâ arze kon-and. it ACC to language-EZ official-EZ that country accompanied with article supply SUBJ-do-3PLU. 23-24: All around the world producers and importers are bound to supply the manual of how to use or set up and use the gadget in the official language of that country.
25. amâ dar Irân bâ hojum-e kâlâ-hâ-ye Āini ke xod be xod (zâtan) but in Iran with swarm-EZ goods-PLU-EZ Chinese that self to self (inherently) namarghub hast-and poor quality be-3PLU
26. va aksaran brušur be zabân-e fârsi ham na-dar-and and mostly booklet to language-EZ Farsi also not-have-3PLU
27. va sâyer-e dastgâh-hâ-ye bedun-e ketâbče-ye âmuzeši and other-EZ gadget-PLU-EZ without-EZ booklet-EZ educational
28. **(jâleb ast dar barxi az brušur-ha tozih-at be 10 zabân-e donyâ (interesting be-3SG in some of booklet-PLU content-PLU to 10 language-EZ world ham âvard-e šod-e amâ az zabân-e Fârsi xabar-i n-ist) also bring-PART be-PART but from language-EZ Farsi news-a not-be-3SG)**
29. dar har lahze az nasb ya kârbari emkân-e xarâbi, estehlâk-e in every second from set up or use possibility-EZ breakage, depreciation-EZ ziâd va taxrib-e nâgahâni vojûd dâr-ad. excessive and breakage-EZ sudden existence have-3SG. 25-29: But in Iran with the swarm of Chinese goods which are essentially (inherently) of poor quality and mostly without a Farsi manual, and other gadgets without a manual (**it is interesting that some booklets are in 10 languages of the world but not Farsi**), there is the possibility of breakage, excessive depreciation and sudden breakage at any time during the set up and usage.
30. in sarmâye dar asar-e adam-e âmuzeš az tariq-e etelâresâni az dast-e this asset in effect-EZ not-EZ training from way-EZ informing from hand-EZ melat-e Irân birun mi-rav-ad. nation-EZ Iran out DUR-go-3SG. People of Iran lose this asset as a result of not having been informed properly.

31. besyâri az kešvar-ha eftexâr mi-kon-and salane milyârd-hâ dolâr az mahal-e many from country-PLU proud DUR-do-3PLU annually milliard-PLU dollar from place-EZ
- gardešgari (bâzdid, xadam-at) daramad-e arzi dâr-and.
tourism (visit, service-PLU) income-EZ currency have-3PLU.
Many countries take pride in the milliards of dollars they earn annually through tourism (visits, services).
32. **vâqe-e amr in ast** ke tavânâyi-ye jazb-e darâmad-e Irân az mahall-e **fact-EZ issue this be-3SG** that capability-EZ attracting-EZ income-EZ Iran from place-EZ
- gardešgari **MI-TAVÂN-AD** be 100 milyârd dolâr bâlegh šav-ad
tourism **DUR-CAN-3SG** to 100 milliard dollar amount become-3SG
33. **amâ čegune ast ke in darâmad besyâr nâčiz ast**
but how be-3SG that this income very trivial be-3SG
34. dar hâli ke yek âmuzeš be afrâd va modir-ân-e marbute dar mored-e in situation that one training to people and manager-PLU-EZ related in about
- nahve-ye barxord bâ gardešgar-an-e xâreji va dâxeli va ehterâm be mihmân way-EZ approach with tourist-PLU-EZ foreigner and indoor and respect to guest
35. va albatte tose'e-ye zirsâxt-hâ-ye haml va naql-e havâ-yi, reil-i, and of course developing-EZ foundation-PLU-EZ transportation-EZ air-by, train-by,
- daryâ-yi va zamin-i va hoteldâri va takrim-e gardešgar-ân va
sea-by and land-by and hotel keeping and respecting-EZ tourist-PLU and
- hefz-e hormat-e ânân **MI-TAVÂN-AD** čehre-ye Irân râ be onvân-e pazirâ-ye maintaining respect-EZ them **DUR-CAN-3SG** face-EZ Iran ACC to title-EZ receiver-EZ
- gardešgar-ân degargun kon-ad.
tourist-PLU transformation SUBJ-do-3SG.
- 32-35:
The fact is Iran's income through tourism **COULD** amount to 100 milliard dollars, **but how is it that this income is so trivial**; however, training people and the related managers about approaching foreign and Iranian tourists and respecting them and maintaining their respect, developing air, train and land routes, managing hotels and honouring tourists **COULD** change Iran's picture as a tourist receiving country.
36. **mota'assefâne** rustâ-hâ-ye **mâ**, ke **MI-TAVÂN-AD** behtarin mahal-e rustâgardi va **unfortunately** village-PLU-EZ **we**, that **DUR-CAN-3SG** best place-EZ village touring and
- tabi'atgardi bâšad har ruz bištar xâli az sakane mi-šav-ad
nature touring SUBJ-be-3SG every day more empty from residence DUR-become-3SG.
Unfortunately, our villages which **COULD** be the best place for touring and strolling in nature are becoming more deserted every day.
37. be onvân-e nomune az bâlâ-ye qolle-ye Točal ke be rustâ-ye Šahrestânak dar for title-EZ example from above-EZ top-EZ Tochal that to village-EZ Shahrestanak in
- dâmane-ye Alborz-e jonubi va jâde-ye Čalus mi-negar-**id**
hillside-EZ Alborz-EZ southern and road-EZ Chalus DUR-look-**2PLU**
38. biš az 1000 bab xâne, do madrese-ye 20-25 kelâse, darmângâh-e bozorg va ... more than 1000 number house, two school-EZ 20-25 class, clinic-EZ big and ...
39. va alâve bar ânhâ xâne-ye Nâsereddin Šâh râ ke mahal-e gardešgari-ye ma'ruf-i and plus to them house-EZ Nâsereddin Shah ACC that place-EZ tourism-EZ famous-a

ast mošâhede mi-kon-**id**
be-3SG observe DUR-do-**2PLU**

40. âmâ be dâxel-e rustâ ke qadam migozar-**id**
but to inside-EZ village that foot DUR-set-**2PLU**
41. bâ madâres-e xâli (hame-ye bačče-hâ dar hame-ye maqâte' dar yek otâq tahsil
with schools-EZ empty (all-EZ child-PLU in all-EZ sections in one room study
mi-kon-and) dah-hâ negâh-e xâli va xâne-hâ-ye xâli az sakane (nahâyatan
DUR-do-3PLU) ten-PLU look-EZ empty and house-PLU-EZ empty from residence (at most

30 xânevâr sokunat-e dâ'em dâr-and) **movâjeh mi-šav-id.**
30 family inhabit-EZ permanent have-3PLU) **encounter DUR-become-2PLU.**
37-41:

For example, **you** are looking from the top of Tochal down to Shahrestanak village on the hillside of southern Alborz and Chalus road. More than 1000 houses, two schools with 20-25 classes, a big clinic and ...; moreover, **you** can see Nasereddin Shah's famous house, a famous resort for tourists, but when **you** set foot in the village, **you** encounter empty schools (all the children in all classes study in one room), many blank looks and empty houses (at most 30 families are permanent residents).

42. xarid va foruš, tamlik va tamallok va aqd-e qarârdâd-hâ-ye beyn-e
buying and selling, ownership and ownership and making-EZ contract-PLU-EZ between-EZ
afrâd dar aksar-e mavared be dalil-e nââgâhi be moqarrar-at va gavânin
people in many-EZ cases to reason-EZ unawareness to precept-PLU and regulations

mojeb-e dabe kardan, zarar va ziân va xesârat mi-šav-ad
cause-EZ renege doing, loss, and damage and wreckage DUR-become-3SG

43. ke **mota'assefâne** dar mavared-i be qatl yâ tabâni-hâ-ye jobrânnâpazir yâ
that **unfortunately** in cases-a to murder or collusion-PLU-EZ irredeemable or

fasx-e qarârdâd (ke ba'zan nâbudi-ye mâli, e'tebâri-ye yeki
cancellation-EZ contract (that sometimes devastation-EZ financial reputational-EZ one

az tarafeyn ra be hamrâh dar-ad) mi-anjâm-ad.
of two parties ACC to accompany have—3SG) DUR-lead-3SG.

42-43:

In many cases, business, ownership and making contracts among people lead to renege, loss and damage and wreckage because of unawareness of precepts and regulations and, **unfortunately**, lead to murder, irredeemable collusions or cancellation of contract (that sometimes bring about financial and reputational devastation to one of the two parties).

44. **BE NAZAR MI-RES-AD**
TO IDEA DUR-COME-3SG

45. bâ âmuzeš-e sahih-e mardom va tašviq va targhib-e ânân be
with training-EZ proper-EZ people and encouraging and encouraging-EZ them to

dâštan-e vakil va bargozâri-ye âmuzeš-ha-ye monazzam barâye motâle'e kardan-e
having-EZ lawyer and setting up-EZ training-PLU-EZ regular for study doing-EZ

mardom dar agd-e garârdâd hengâm-e xarid-e xâne, otomobil, lavâzem va ...
people in making contract while buying-EZ house, car, gadgets and ...

46. **MI-TAVÂN-AD** besyâr-i az ranj-hâ va âlâm-e mardom-e Irân râ kêheš dâd
DUR-CAN-3SG many-a of pain-PLU and troubles-EZ people-EZ Iran ACC decrease give

47. va nezâ' va dargiri-hâ va dâdgâh-hâ va mahkumiat-hâ-ye monjar be in amr
and fight and quarrel-PLU and courts-PLU and conviction-PLU-EZ leading to this situation

râ az miân bardâr-ad.
ACC from among take-3SG.

44-47:

IT SEEMS with proper training, encouraging [and encouraging] people to having lawyers and giving regular trainings to people on studying about making contracts when they buy a house, a car, gadgets and ... could relieve many of the troubles and pains of the people of Iran and put an end to fight, quarrels, courts and convictions that cause this situation.

48. *râsti čerâ darsad-e bâlâ-yi az ezdevâj-hâ be šekast mi-anjam-ad?*
truly why percent-EZ high-a from marriage-PLU to failure DUR-lead-3SG?
Truly, why do a high percentage of marriages fail?

49. *âyâ serfan bo'd-e mâli-e mard-e xânevâde čenin sarnevešt-i râ raqam*
whether only aspect-EZ financial-EZ man-EZ family this destiny-a ACC figure

mi-zan-ad?

DUR-hit-3SG?

Does only the financial aspect of the husband bring about this destiny?

50. *baddbaxtâne badi-e vaz'iyat-e mâli-ye xânevâde-hâ va adam-e âmuzeš*
unfortunately badness-EZ situation-EZ financial-EZ family-PLU and not-EZ training

dar mored-e entexâb-e hamsar, nââgâhi dar ravâbet-e zanâšuyi, entezâr-ât
in case-EZ choosing-EZ spouse, unawareness in relationships-EZ marriage, hope-PLU

va tavaqo'-ât-e tarafein va ... mojob mi-šav-ad
and expectation-PLU-EZ both parties and ...reason DUR-become-3SG

51. *tâ belâfâsele pas az zendegi dar zir-e yek saqf barâye te'dâdi zojein*
until immediately after from living in under-EZ one roof for some couples

52. *(ke âmâr-e vaqei-ye anhâ niz dar dast n-ist)*
(that statistics-EZ real-EZ them also in hand not-be-3SG)

53. *tanaffor, duri kardan, talâq va ... be vojud ây-ad.*
hatred, avoidance, divorce and ... to appearance SUBJ-come-3SG.

50-53:

Unfortunately, the bad financial situation of the spouse, lack of education in choosing a spouse, unawareness of relationships in marriage, and hopes and expectations of both parties and ... in case of some couples lead to hatred, avoidance, divorce and ... (the real number of which is not available) immediately after starting the new life together.

54. *ruzâne milyun-hâ safar bâ metro, qatâr va otobus anjâm mi-gir-ad;*
daily million-PLU travel with metro, train and bus do DUR-get-3SG;

55. *mosâfer-in dar ayâm-e taraddod ke az nim tâ 12 sâ'at va bištar be tul*
passenger-PLU in time-EZ traffic that from half to 12 hour and more to long

mi-anjam-ad

DUR-take-3SG

56. *yâ mi-tavan-and be guše-i xire šav-and yâ xâb rav-and*
or DUR-can-3PLU to corner-a stare SUBJ-become-3PLU or sleep SUBJ-go-3SG

57. *dar hâli ke bâ yek âmuzeš-e monâseb va tarvij-e farhangi*
in situation that with one training-EZ proper and promotion-EZ cultural

58. *(kâri ke Qâlibâf dar metro va otobus kard-e ast)*
(work that Qalibaf in underground and bus do-PART be-3SG)

59. *mi-tavân ketâb xândan, ruznâme xândan va motâle'e râ dar safar-hâ bab kard*
DUR-can book reading, newspaper reading and reading ACC in journey-PLU door do

60. tâ sarâne-ye motâle'e dar kešvar afzâyeš yâb-ad
till capitation-EZ reading in country increase SUBJ-find-3SG
61. va farhang niz erteqâ peidâ konad.
and culture also advancement find SUBJ-do-3SG .
54-61:
Millions of travels by underground, train and bus take place every day; passengers while in traffic, which takes half an hour to 12 hours and more, can either stare at a corner or go to sleep; however, with proper training and cultural promotion (**what Qalibaf has started in undergrounds and buses**) book reading and newspaper reading and reading could be introduced in journeys so that the capitation of reading in the country increases and the level of culture also advances.
62. qânun-e kâr va kârgar, râbete-ye kârgari va kârfarmâyi hame va hame
regulation-EZ work and worker, relationship-EZ labourer and employer all and all

bištar dar penhânxâne-ye ketâb-hâ va komod-hâ va âršiv-hâ barâye
more in hiding place-EZ book--PLU and cupboard-PLU and archive-PLU for

morâje'e-ye hoquqdân-hâ-st.
reference-EZ jurisconsult-PLU-be-3SG.
Employment regulations, the relation between employer and employee, all and all are holed up in books, cupboards and archives for the reference of jurisconsults.
63. **Čera bâyad³³ jang va da'vâ piš bi-ây-ad**
why must fight and quarrel front SUBJ-come-3SG
64. tâ polis va dâdgâh-hâ fa'âl šav-and
till police and court-PLU active SUBJ-become-3PLU
65. va tamâmi-ye inhâ hazine-ye gazâf bar system-e edâri-ye kešvar tahmil konad
and all-EZ these expense-EZ large to system-EZ official-EZ country impose SUBJ-do-3SG
66. va mahkum va mottaham va tanbih va ... ta'riff va mošaxas gard-ad.
and culprit and convict and punishment and ... defined and specified SUBJ-be-3SG.
63-66:
Why should quarrels and fights start and then police and courts get to work and culprit, convict and punishment be defined and specified. All these impose large expenses on the official system of the country.
67. dar hâli ke âmuzeš va negâh-e âmuzeši be in kâr mojob mi-šav-ad
while training and look-EZ educational to this work reason DUR-become-3SG
68. tâ har fard piš az hamkâri yâ qarârdâd be tamâm-e mafâd va
till every individual before from cooperation or contract to all-EZ content and

mohtavi-ât-e qânun-e kâr âšna va sepas eqdâm namây-ad.
content-PLU-EZ regulation-EZ work familiar and then proceed SUBJ-do-3SG.
67-68:
While training and an educational look at this issue can make everyone familiar with employment regulations and all its content [and content] before making any contracts; and then decide to proceed.
69. be nazar-e kâršenâs-ân
to idea-EZ expert-PLU
70. hattâ besyâri az post-hâ-ye aršad-e dolati, modir-e koli, mo'âven-e
even many of post-PLU-EZ senior-EZ governmental, manager general, secretary-EZ

³³ 'bâyad' does not convey obligation here.

vaziri, vezârat, namâyandegi-ye majles va ra'is jomhuri
minister, ministry, member-EZ parliament and presidential

71. **mi-tavân-ad** qabl az mo'arefi va mo'ârefe, bâ yek seri
DUR-can-3SG before from introduction and being introduced, with a series
âdâb va sonan, osul-e kâr, tašrif-ât-e edâri va âmuzeši
formalities and rituals, principles-EZ work, ceremony-PLU-EZ official and educational
hamrâh bâš-ad,
accompany be-3SG,
72. didâr bâ magâm-ât-e hamsath-e beinalmelali, hozur dar mozâker-ât,
meeting with official-PLU-EZ counterpart-PLU-EZ international, presence in negotiation-PLU,
tašrif-ât, bâzdid-hâ va hattâ lahn-e mozâker-ât va diplomâsi va ...
ritual-PLU, visit-PLU and even tone-EZ negotiation-PLU and diplomacy and ...
73. har kodâm be nobe-ye xod alâve bar behbudi-ye ravâbet **MI-TAVÂN-AD** dar
every one to return-EZ self addition to improving-EZ relations **DUR-can-3SG** in
kâheš-e hazine-hâ-ye mâdi va ma'navi naqš dâšt-e bâš-ad.
decreasing-EZ expense-PLU-EZ material and intellectual part have-PART be-3SG.
69-73:
According to experts, prior to official introduction and being introduced, even many of the
senior governmental posts, general managerial, secretarial of minister, ministry,
membership of parliament and presidency can be acquainted with a series of formalities
and rituals, principles of work, official ceremonies and education, meeting with international
counterparts, being present in negotiations, official ceremonies, visits and even the tone of
negotiation and diplomacy, each of which, apart from improving relations, **COULD** be
important in decreasing material and intellectual expenses.
74. bahs va jadal-hâ-ye ziâdi dar mored-e hoquq-e šahrivandi va syasi
discussion and argument-PLU-EZ many in about-EZ rights-EZ citizenship and political
kardan-e in mozu surat gereft-e ast
making-EZ this topic face have-PART be-3SG
75. amâ **berâsti had va hodud-e in hoquq-e šahrivandi čist?**
but **truly boundary and boundaries-EZ this right-EZ citizenship what is?**
74-75:
There have been a lot of discussions about the rights of citizenship but truly **what are the
boundaries of the rights of citizenship?**
76. mardom dar qebâl-e avârez va mâliât-i ke pardâxt mi-kon-and
people in exchange-EZ charges and tax-a that payment DUR-do-3PLU
77. **âyâ** mi-dân-and va mottale' šod-e-and **bâyad če motâleb-ât-i**
whether DUR-know-3PLU and informed become-PART-PLU **should what claim-PLU-a**
az dolat dâšte-bâš-and?
from government have-become-3PLU?
76-77:
Do people know and have they been informed that in exchange for the tax and charges
they pay what they should expect from the government?
78. **qosur-e dolat, šahrdâri-hâ, bimârestân-hâ va ... čegune qâbel-e**
deficiency-EZ government, municipality-PLU, hospital-PLU and ... how able-EZ

jobrân ast
compensation be-3SG

79. **va nahve-ye eterâz-e mardom va âgahi az hoquq-e xod čist?**
and kind-EZ objection-EZ people and information from rights-EZ self what is?
78-79:
How can deficiency of government, municipalities, hospitals and ... be compensated
and how should people make objections and be informed about their rights?
80. bime-ye xodro (šaxs-e sâles, badane va ...) bime-ye modiriyyat
insurance-EZ car (person-EZ third, frame, and ...) insurance-EZ management
- bime-ye âtašsuzi, moqarrar-ât, qavânin va mafâd-i dâr-ad
insurance-EZ fire, regulation-PLU, precepts and implications have-3SG
81. ke adam-e âmuzeš va nââgâhi nesbat be ânâ, sarnevešt-e bimegozar ra
that not-EZ training and ignorence connection to them, fate-EZ insured ACC
- taghyir mi-dah-ad,
change DUR-give-3SG,
82. albatte dar form-hâ-ye qarârdâd niz bâ horuf-e riz, hame-ye ânâ negašt-e
of course in form-PLU-EZ contract also with letters-EZ tiny, all-EZ them write-PART
- šod-e ast,
become-PART be-3SG,
83. amâ vaqti be afrâd âmuzeš dâd-e ne-mi-šav-ad
but when to people training give-PART not-DUR-become-3SG
84. ke emzâ-ye qarârdâd bedun-e motale'e **MI-TAVÂN-AD** avâqeb-e
that signing-EZ contract without-EZ studying **DUR-CAN-3SG** results-EZ
- jobrânnâpazir dâšt-e bâš-ad,
irreparable have-PART be-3SG
85. emzâkonande dar nââgâhi-e kâmel čenin mi-kon-ad
signer in ignorance-EZ utter this DUR-do-3SG
86. va hengâm-e morâje'e barâye ta'yin yâ daryâft-e xesârat,
and time-EZ reference for determining or receiving-EZ loss,
87. tanhâ bitavajjohi be tarix-e morâje'e yâ taghyir-e yek band yâ ... bâ mo'zal-ât-e
only inattention to date-EZ reference or change-EZ one item or ... with problem-PLU-EZ
- zyâd-i movâjeh mi-šav-ad.
many-a encounter DUR-become-3SG.
80-87:
Car insurance (third party, damage cover and ...), management insurance and fire insurance have regulations, precepts, and implications ignorance of which changes the fate of the insured. Of course, they have been written in tiny letters in contracts but people have not been informed that signing a contract without reading can have irreparable consequences. The person signs it in utter ignorance and encounters many problems when s/he refers to the agency to determine or receive the loss only because of inattention to the date of claim or changes in one part of the contract and ...
88. qâedatan dar barxhi az mavâred amuzeš-hâ-ye moxtasar va nâkârâmad vojud
basically in some of cases training-PLU-EZ brief and inefficient existence

dâr-ad
have-3SG

89. amâ âmâr-hâ-ye tasadof-ât, xarâbi-hâ-ye nâši az kârkard-e ghalat bâ
but statistic-PLU-EZ accident-PLU, wreckage-PLU-EZ coming from operation-EZ wrong with

mâšinâlât, zarb va jarh va qatl-e hâsel šode dar asar-e adam-e
machinery, fight and injury and murder-EZ production become-PART in effect-EZ not-EZ

anjâm-e ta'ahod-ât-e šafâhi, kâheš-e darâmad-hâ-ye arzi-e kešvar,
doing-EZ agreement-PLU-EZ verbal, decrease-EZ income-PLU-EZ currency-EZ country,
na-bud-e refâh va âsâyeš, qarârdâd-hâ-ye nâqes va ...
not-be-EZ welfare and peace of mind, contracts-PLU-EZ incomplete and ...

90. nešân mi-dah-ad **AGAR HAM ÂMUZEŠ-I BARÂYE BA'ZI MASÂ'EL VOJUD DÂR-AD,**
point DUR-give-3SG IF **ALSO EDUCATION-A FOR SOME ISSUES EXIST HAVE-3SG,**

kâfi n-ist.
enough not-be-3SG.

88-90:

Basically, there are some brief and inefficient trainings in some cases, but the rate of accidents, wreckages as a result of improper use of machinery, fights and crimes because of not abiding to verbal agreements, decrease in the country's income, lack of welfare, incomplete contracts and ... indicate that **EVEN IF THERE IS SOME EDUCATION**, it is not enough.

91. sâl-e no sâl-i ast ke **mi-tavân-ad** be qânunmadâri va âmuzeš-e bištar
year-EZ new year-a be-3SG that **DUR-could-3SG** to law abiding and education-EZ more

va behtar-e mardom barâye âšnâyi be hoquq-e xod, âmuzeš-e modir-ân-e
and better-EZ people for familiarity to rights-EZ self, training-EZ manager-PLU-EZ

kešvar va mojri-yân be-yanjâm-ad.
country and governor-PLU SUBJ-lead-3SG.

The new year is the time that could lead to law abiding, better and more education of people in order to familiarise them with their rights and education of the country's managers and governors.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
3	nearly		
4	about		
32	could		
35	could		
36	could be		
44	It seems		
46	could reduce		
73	could		
84	could		
90		even if there is any education	
	9	1	0

Table A2.36 Uncertainty markers in text No. 28

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
11		ancient and historical monuments	
13		exploit the best from the facilities at best	
22		electronic and electric	
24		how to use or set up and use the gadget	
25		essentially (inherently)	
29		breakage, excessive depreciation and sudden breakage	
35	indeed	respecting tourists and maintaining their respect	
42		loss and damage and wreckage	
45		encouraging and encouraging	
46		pains and troubles	
47		fight and quarrels	
50		hopes and expectations	
59		book reading, newspaper reading and reading	
68		content and content	
69			according to experts
71		introduction and being introduced	
77		know and have they been informed	
82	of course		
	2	16	1

Table A2.37 Certainty markers in text No. 28

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
19			Neither Motoring and Driving Office from the income of ..., nor the government from the income of ... give people proper and comprehensive training
28		it is interesting	
32		the fact is	
36		unfortunately	
43		unfortunately	
48		truly	
50		unfortunately	
59	could		
71	can		
75		truly	
77	must		
	3	7	1

Table A2.38 Attitudinal markers in text No. 28

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	AS
1	we					The pain we take, the gain we don't take
1	we					
13	we					
14	our					
14	we				(not as pain)	
16					(only because they have a license)	
18			you			
28					(it is interesting that ... but not Farsi)	
33				but how is it that this income is s so trivial		
36	our					
37			you			
39			you			
40			you			
41			you			
48				why do a high percentage of marriages fail?		
49				Does only the financial aspect... destiny?		
58					(what Galibaf has started in undergrounds and buses)	
63				Why should quarrels and fights start		
75				what is the boundary of citizenship rights?		
77				do people know and have they been informed that ... government?		
78				How can deficiency of ... be compensated		
79				and how should people ... their rights?		
	6	0	5	8	4	1

Table A2.39 Engagement markers in text No. 28

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A2.40 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 28

Text No. 29

Gozaresh, No. 203, Azar 1387 (Nov.-Dec. 2008)

by Abulqasem Golbaf

Number of Words: 622

xerâdvarzi-ye barxi az modir-ân-e aršad-e kešvar
wisdom-EZ some of manager-PLU-EZ senior-EZ country
Wisdom of some of the senior managers of the country

1. 2 sâl-i ast ke barxi az sohbat-hâ -ye mahfeli va ezhâr nazar-hâ -ye
2 year-**ABOUT** be-3SG that some of talk-PLU-EZ gathering and statement opinions-PLU-EZ

xodemani va kod dâdan-hâ -ye tedâdi az mas'ul-ân-e âli maqâm,
informal and code giving-PLU-EZ some of post holder-PLU-EZ high position

sahvan yâ amdan be birun az mahâfel **DARZ PEIDÂ KARD-E**
unintentionally or intentionally to out of gatherings **HOLE FIND HAVE-PART**

2. va be onvân-e mostanad-ât yâ nazar-ât-e badane-i az majmu'e dar râ sâne-hâ
and to title-EZ document-PLU or opinion-PLU-EZ body-a of system in media

mon'akes šod-e ast.
reflection become-PART be-3SG.

1-2:

It is **ABOUT** two years that some of the intimate talks and informal opinion statements and disclosures of some senior officials, intentionally or unintentionally **HAVE LEAKED OUT** and have been stated in the media as documents or opinions of the body of the system.

3. ezhâr nazar-e Doktor Mohsen Rezâ'i dar mored-e pâyân-e jang-e tahmili-ye
statement opinion-EZ Doctor Mohsen Rezai in about-EZ end-EZ war-EZ imposed-EZ

Erâq-e Saddâm Hosein bâ Jomhuri-ye Eslami-ye Irân,
Irâ q-EZ Saddam Hussein with Republic-EZ Islamic-EZ Irâ n,

4. nazar-ât-e Doktor Tavakkoli dar mored-e ettela'-at-e tahsili va
opinion-PLU-EZ Doctor Tavakoli in about-EZ information-PLU-EZ educational and

amalkard-e vazir-e 90 ruze (Kordân),
operâ tion-EZ minister-EZ 90 day (Kordan),

5. matrâ h šodan-e nâme-ye marhum Mohandes Bâzargan be Šâh va nagd-e
indication become-EZ letter-EZ late Mohandes Bazargan to Shah and critique-EZ

Massoud Behnud va Aškuri dar mored-e ân,
Massoud Behnud and Ahkuri in about-EZ it,

6. ebrâz-e nazar-e Mohandes Bâhonar, nâyeb rais-e Majles-e šorâ -ye
statement opinion-EZ Mohandes Bahonar, assistant president-EZ Majlis-EZ Consultative-EZ

Eslâmi dar mored-e sanduq-e zaxire-ye arzi va ruz-e ma-bâdâ,
Islamic in about-EZ box-EZ reserve-EZ Exchange and day-EZ not-having

7. ezhâr-e nazar-e Hazrat-e Ayatollâh Hâšemi Rafsanjâni dar mored-e ravâyat-e
statement opinion-EZ Hazrat-e Ayatollah Hashemi Rafsanjani in about-EZ story-EZ

vaqt-e tasxir-e sefârat-e Amrikâ dar sâl-hâ -ye aval-e enqelâb va alâve
time-EZ invasion-EZ embassy-EZ America in year-PLU-EZ first-EZ revolution and plus

bar ân hošdâr-e išân dar yek forsât-e digar dar mored-e avageb-e mahdud
to it warning-EZ him in one opportunity-EZ other in about-EZ results-EZ limiting

kardan-e rasâne-hâ
doing-EZ media-PLU

8. va ezhâr-e nazar-e kâršenâsi-ye Mohandes Nabavi, modir-e mas'ul-e
and statement-EZ opinion-EZ expert-EZ Mohandes Nabavi, manager-EZ head

ruz-nâme-ye Resâlat mabni bar in ke tarh-e tahavvol-e eqtesâdi-e dolat
newspaper-EZ Resalat based on this that plan-EZ change-EZ economical-EZ government

60 darsad bar tavarrom-e mojud mi-afzây-ad
60 percent to inflation-EZ present DUR-increase-3SG

9. va erâ'e-ye didgâh-hâ -ye barxi vozarâ-ye barkenâršod-e tâ mosta'fi-e
and giving-EZ viewpoint-PLU-EZ some ministers-EZ dismiss-PART to resigned-EZ

dolat-e nohom darbâre-ye eqtesâd, syâsat, amniyat va ...
government-EZ ninth about-EZ economy, policy, security and ...

10. omdatan matâleb-i ast ke **AGAR 10-15 SÂL PIŠ TAVASSOT-E YEK RASÂNE**
mainly subjects-some be-3SG that IF 10-15 YAER AGO BY-EZ ONE MEDIA

MATRAH MI-ŠOD, hesâb-aš bâ kerâmol-kâtebin bud
POSED DUR-BECOME-PAST-3SG, account-his/her with God be-PAST-3SG

11. va emruz rasâne-hâ šâhed-and ke nazar-ât-ešân yâ tahlil-hâ -ye rasânei-ye
and today media-PLU witness-be-3SG that opinion-PLU-them or analyses-PLU-EZ media-EZ

10-15 sâl qabl-e ânhâ , az zabân-e tedadi az masul-an matrah mi-šav-ad
10-15 year ago-EZ them, from tongue-EZ some of official-PLU indicate DUR-become-3SG.
3-11:

The opinion statement of Dr Mohsen Rezai about the end of the imposed war of Saddam Hussein in Iraq against the Islamic Republic of Iran; Dr Tavakoli's opinion about the educational information and the operation of the 90-day minister (Kordan); setting forth the letter of the late Mohandes Bazargan to Shah and the critique of Massoud Behnud and Ashkuri; the opinion statement of Mohandes Bahonar, the first deputy speaker of the parliament about the Foreign Exchange Reserve and saving; the opinion statement of Mr Rafsanjani about the time of taking over the American embassy in the early years of Revolution, and (in another opportunity) his warning about the results of the media repression; the opinion statement of Mohandes Nabavi, the manager of Resalat newspaper, that the government's plan of the economical change increases inflation up to 60 percent; and the viewpoints of some dismissed or resigned ministers of the 9th government about economy, policy, security and ... mainly are the subjects that **IF POSED BY THE MEDIA 10-15 YEARS AGO**, God knows what would have happened.

12. **Če etefâg-i oftâd-e ast ke dar sâl-e pâyâni-ye dolat-e nohom**
What incident-a fall-PART be-3SG that in year-EZ end-EZ government-EZ ninth

in sohbât-hâ šeddat gereft-e va bozorg-an va oqalâ-ye qom, bi
this talk-PLU intense get-PART and grown up-PLU and wise men-EZ tribe, without

mahâba va be surat-e alani be tarh-e nazar-ât-e xod va be noi
fear and to face-EZ public to indication opinion-PLU-EZ self and to kind

ta'yid-e matbu'-at mi-pardaz-and?
confirmation media-PLU DUR-proceed-3PLU?

What has happened that in the last year of the 9th government these talks have been intensified and the country's wise men state their opinion bravely and somehow confirm the media?

13. va pasaz en'ekâs, be takzib-e ân eqdâm ne-mi-kon-and.
and after reflection, to denial-EZ it action not-DUR-do-3PLU.
And after the reflection of their opinion, they do not deny it.

14. šarâyet-e jâme'e, kešvar va jahân va negah-hâ-ye majâme-e beinalmelali
condition-EZ society, country and world and look-PLU-EZ association-EZ international
- va kešvar-hâ-ye hâkem bar sarnevešt-e eqtesâdi-ye donyâ be Irân va
and country-PLU-EZ ruling to fate-EZ economical-EZ world to Iran and
- boruz-e nešâne-hâ-yi az bohrân-e eqtesâdi-e kešvar-**eman**
appearance symptom-PLU-some of crisis-EZ financial-EZ country-**our**
- (beviže omur-e zirbanâyi, omrâni)
(especially issues-EZ infrastructure, reconstruction)
15. hekâyat az ân dâr-ad ke zarurat-e naqd-e amalkard-e dolat va
story from it have-3SG that necessity-EZ critique-EZ function-EZ government and
- tazakkor va hošdar va erâ'e-ye râhkar biš az piš ehsâs mi-šav-ad.
reminding and warning and giving-EZ solution more of before feeling DUR-become-3SG.
14-15:
The condition of the society, country and the views of the international associations and the
countries ruling over the economical fate of the world and the signs of economical crisis in
our country (especially the infrastructure and reconstruction) necessitates critique of the
government's function and reminding, warning and providing solution is felt more than ever.
16. vaqe'e-ye digar in ke negah-hâ, e'lâmye-hâ va šo'ar-hâ -ye xošbinâne ke
happening-EZ other this that look-PLU, statement-PLU and motto-PLU-EZ optimistic that
- kešvar va eqtesad va zendegi-e mardom dar šarâyet-e ide'âl va xub jarayân
country and economy and life-EZ people in condition-EZ ideal and good running
- dâr-ad
have-3SG
17. ya, mâ nosxe-hâ-ye šafâbaxš barâye nejât-e eqtesad-e donyâ va
or, we prescription-PLU-EZ healing for saving-EZ economy-EZ world and
- kešvar-hâ va obur-e ânhâ az bohrân erâ'e mi-dah-im,
country-PLU and passing-EZ them from crisis indication DUR-give-1PLU
18. emruz be qazâvat-e andišmand-ân va sâhebnazar-ân gozâšt-e šod-e
today to judgement-EZ intellectual-PLU and scholar-PLU put-PART be-PART
19. va aksol'amal-e ân daste az modir-ân-e aršad râ be hamrâh dâšt-e
and reaction-EZ that group of manager-PLU-EZ senior ACC to accompany have-PART
- ast ke dar har kuy o barzan bar zabân-e mardom jâri ast.
be-3SG that in every corner on tongue-EZ people flowing be-3SG.
16-19:
Another point is the optimistic looks, statements and mottos that the country, its economy
and people are in ideal and good condition; or the statement that we have good solutions to
save the world and countries economy and help countries overcome the crisis. These have
been put to the judgement of scholars and intellectuals and have had the reaction of the
senior managers and are discussed everywhere.
20. mardom, kâršenâs-ân, barnameriz-ân va eqtesâddân-ân dar entezâr bud-and
people, expert-PLU, planner-PLU and economist-PLU in waiting be-PAST-3PLU
- dolat gozâreš-e jâme' va šafâf az no'-e pasandâz va zaxire
government report-EZ comprehensive and clear from type-EZ saving and saving
- kardan-e arz dar ayâm-e šokufâyi-ye qeymat-e naft-e boške-i 120 dolâr
doing-EZ foreign exchange in days-EZ blooming price-EZ oil-EZ barrel-a 120 dollar

va nahve-ye hazine kardan-e ân erâ'e dah-ad.

and way-EZ spending doing-EZ it indication give-EZ.

People, experts, planners and economists expected the government to give a comprehensive and clear report of how it had economised, reserved and spent when the oil prices had risen to 120 dollars a barrel.

21. **bevaqe** AGAR DOLAT ARZ-E EZÂFI VA BIŞ AZ PIŞBINI DAR
in fact IF GOVERNMENT FOREIGN EXCHANGE-EZ EXTRA AND MORE THAN PREDICTION IN

BARNÂME (HÂSEL AZ FORUŞ-E NAFT) RÂ ZAXIRE KARD-E BÂŞ-AD mesl-e barxi
PLAN (PRODUCED FROM SALE-EZ OIL), ACC RESERVE HAVE-PART BE-3SG like-EZ some

az keşvar-hâ-ye foruşande-ye naft, emruz ke qeimat-hâ payin amad-e
of country-PLU-EZ trader-EZ oil, today that price-PLU down come-PART

mi-tavân-ad bâ miângin-e majmu'-e bahâ-ye naft-e boške-i 35 dolâr va 120
DUR-can-3SG with average-EZ total-EZ price-EZ oil-EZ barrel-a 35 dollar and 120

dolâr mohâsebe-ye boške-i 70-80 dolâr râ barâye xod raqam be-zan-ad
dollar calculation-EZ barrel-a 70-80 dollar ACC for self figure SUBJ-hit-3SG

22. va tarh-hâ-ye omrâni eqtesâdi râ piş bord-e, barnâme-ye sâl-e
and plan-PLU-EZ construction economical ACC front take-PART, plan-EZ year-EZ

âyande râ niz erâ'e dah-ad.

next ACC also indication SUBJ-give-3SG.

21-22:

In fact, IF THE GOVERNMENT HAD RESERVED THE EXTRA UNPREDICTED FOREIGN EXCHANGE (EARNED FROM OIL SALE), like some other oil traders, today that the prices have fallen down, it could figure up 70-80 dollars per barrel based on the total average of 35 and 120 dollars oil prices; and it could advance the construction and economical plans and forward the next year's plan, as well.

23. na in ke **xodâ-ye na-kard-e** syâsat-e afzâyeş-e qeimat-e naft va betaba'-e ân
not this that **God-EZ not-do-PART** policy-EZ rising-EZ price-EZ oil and followed-EZ it

afzâyeş-e qeimat-e aqlâm-e vâredâti, **mâ** râ dar masir-e ejbâri va
rising-EZ price-EZ product-EZ imported, **us** ACC in path-EZ compulsory and

nâxodâgâh-e kâheş-e qeimat-e naft va sâbet mândan-e (tavarrom) qeimat-e aqlâm-e
involuntary-EZ fall of price-EZ oil and fixed being-EZ (inflation) price-EZ products-EZ

vâredâti qarâr dah-ad
imported putting give-3SG

24. tâ harânçe gharb mi-xâh-ad bâ **mâ** va naft va eqtesâd-**emân** anjâm dah-ad.
so everything west DUR-want-3SG with **us** and oil and economy-**our** doing SUBJ-give-3SG
23-24:

Not that, **God forbid** the policy of increase in oil prices followed by the increase in the imported goods (inflation) put **us** in an inevitable and involuntary situation that leads to a decrease in oil prices and the fixed price of imported products, so that the West can do whatever it likes with **us, our** oil and economy.

25. **arjah va aslah in ast** ke majles yek komite az nemâyande-gân
preferable and better this be-3SG that parliament one committee of deputy-PLU

râ barâye mostanadsâzi va barrasi-ye nazar-ât-e axir-e maqâm-at-e arşad-e
ACC for documentation and studying opinion-PLU-EZ recent official-PLU-EZ senior-EZ

keşvar va bâ ozviat-e vozarâ-ye marbut-e va eqtesâddân-an-e barjaste
country and with membership-EZ minsters-EZ related and economist-PLU-EZ outstanding

ke xâhân-e eslâh-e omur va erâ'e dahande-ye râhkâr hast-and,
that want-EZ improving-EZ conditions and indication giver-EZ solution be-3PLU,

ma'mur namây-ad
sponsible SUBJ-do-3SG

26. va yâfte-hâ-ye ânân dar majles **matrah šav-ad** tâ dolat va
and finding-PLU-EZ them in parliament **proposed SUBJ-become-3SG** till government and

majles be-tavân-and az hošdâr-hâ-ye sâheb-nazar-ân va maqâm-ât-e âlie
parliament SUBJ-can-3PLU from warning-PLU-EZ expert-PLU and official-PLU-EZ senior

be surat-e sahih bahremand šav-and
to face-EZ proper benefit SUBJ-become-3PLU

27. va barname-hâ bâ xerad-e jam'i nevešt-e, e'lâm va ejrâ
and plan-PLU with thought-EZ team write-PART, announced and executed

šavad.
SUBJ-become-3SG.

25-27:

The best and most preferable thing to do is that the parliament appoints a committee of deputies to document and study the latest opinion of the country's senior officials by involving the related ministers and outstanding economists interested in improving the condition and suggesting solutions. Then, it **should pose** their findings in the parliament so that the government and parliament can profit from the warnings of the senior officials and experts properly and the plans can be written, announced and executed with consensus.

28. vassalam
finished
Finished.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
1	about		has leaked
10		if posed by the media 10-15 years ago	
21		if the government had reserved the extra and unpredicted foreign exchange (earned from oil sale)	
	1	2	1

Table A2.41 Uncertainty markers in text No. 29

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
15		reminding and warning	
16		ideal and good	
17		the world and countries	
18		scholars and intellectuals	
20		economised and reserved	
25		the best and most preferable	
	0	6	0

Table A2.42 Certainty markers in text No. 29

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
21		in fact	
23		God forbid	
25	It is preferable and better		
26	should pose		
	2	2	0

Table A2.43 Attitudinal markers in text No. 29

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
12				What has happened that in the last year of the 9th government ... the media?		
14	our					
23	us					
24	us					
24	our					
	4	0	0	1	0	0

Table A2.44 Engagement markers in text No. 29

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A2.45 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 29

Text No. 30

Gozarsh No. 201, Mehr 1387 (Sep.-Oct. 2008)

by Abulqasem Golbaf

Number of Words: 593

- Hošdâr!** Mâšin-e masrafgarâyi tormoz borid-e ast
Beware! Machine-EZ consumerism brake cut-PART be-3SG
Beware! Consumerism has gone out of control.
- čand sâl-i ast "va lâ tosrefu" dar jam'-e arze
several year-some be-3SG "and don't be wasteful" in company-EZ presentation

konande-gan-e tolid va xâdam-ât farâmuš šode ast.
doer-PLU- EZ production and service-PLU forgotten become-PART be-3SG.
In the past few years "don't be wasteful" has been forgotten among producers and service providers.
- robb-e goje farangi, čây, berenj, pudr-hâ-ye osâre-ye morgh, gušt, pâstel va ...
sauce-EZ tomato, tea, rice, powder-PLU-EZ extract-EZ chicken, meat, pastel and...

hattâ pudr-e raxtšuyi va mâye'-e zarfšuyi va ... ke ma'mulan yek sarâne-ye
even powder-EZ washing and liquid-EZ dish washing and...that normally one per head-EZ

masrâf-e mo'ayyan va tebq-e sonnat va šarâyet-e mantaqe va
consumption-EZ fixed and according-EZ custom and circumstances-EZ area and

mahall-e zendegi, be mizân-e mošaxxas-i masraf dâr-ad
place-EZ living, to amount-EZ definite-a consumption have-3SG
- dastxoš-e bombârân va hojum-e tablighâti-e râdio va televizion, matbu'-at
subject-EZ bombardment and swarm-EZ advertising-EZ radio and television, press-EZ

va sâyer-e rasâne-hâ mabni bar in ke bištar masraf kon-**id** ta jâyeze
and other-EZ media-PLU based on this that more consume IMP-do-**2PLU** till prize

be-gir-**id** šod-e
SUBJ-get-**2PLU** become-PART
- va in amr mojeb mi-šav-ad tâ barxi az xânevâde-hâ hengâm-e xarid,
and this issue lead DUR-become-3SG till some of family-PLU when-EZ shopping,

tahyij šav-and
encouraged SUBJ-become-3PLU

6. va be omid-e barande šodan-e milyun-hâ Toman pul-e naqd, sekke,
and to hope-EZ winning become-EZ million-PLU Toman money-EZ cash, gold coin,

xodro, xâne safar-e xârej va ... dar kesvat-e mâl bâxt-e eqdâm be
car, house, journey-EZ abroad and ... in clothes-EZ property lost-EZ act to

xarid-e biš az niâz-e xod be-namay-and.
buying-EZ more than necessary-EZ self SUBJ-do-3PLU.
3-6:
Tomato sauce, tea, rice, chicken extracts, meat, pastel and ... even washing liquid and
washing powder and ... which normally have a fixed amount of consumption depending on
the customs and circumstances of the area, have been subject to bombardment and swarm
of radio, television, the press and other media advertisements encouraging **you** to consume
more so **you** win a prize. This makes some families buy more than necessary, like wrecks;
hoping to win millions of cash, gold coins, car, house, travelling abroad and ...
7. axiran tašviq-e mardom be masraf-e gheyr-e zaruri va ezâfi hattâ be
recently encouraging-EZ people to consume-EZ not-EZ necessary and extra even to

lavâzem-e soti, tasviri va šabake-hâ-ye telefon-e hamrâh niz resid-e ast
gadgets-EZ audio, visual and net-PLU-EZ phone-EZ mobile also reach-PART be-3SG
8. tâ bištar SIM kârt be-xar-and, bištar sms be-zan-and va bištar telefon
so more SIM card SUBJ-buy-3PLU, more sms SUBJ-send-3PLU and more phone

kon-and tâ dar ezâ-ye farzye-ye bord-e âyande, bâxt-e fe'li râ
SUBJ-do-3PLU so in exchange-EZ theory-EZ winning-EZ future, loss-EZ present ACC

tarjih dah-and.
preference SUBJ-give-3PLU.
7-8:
Recently, encouraging people to consume unnecessarily more has even spread into audio
and visual gadgets and mobile phones asking them to buy more SIM cards, send more
sms's and make more calls to lose now for the possibility of winning in the future.
9. mosalaman avalin zarar-e in eqdâm, be kešvar va manâbe-e ân vâred
certainly first damage-EZ this action, to country and resources-EZ it enter;

mi-šav-ad;
DUR-become-3SG
10. zirâ mardom-e jâme'e tašviq be xarid-e mâzâd, anbâr kardan-e ân va
because people-EZ society encouraged to buying-EZ extra, storing doing-EZ it and

nâxâste dâman zadan be tavarrom va ehtekâr mi-šav-and.
unintentionally increasing to inflation and hoarding DUR-become-3PLU.
9-10:
Certainly its first damage is imposed on the country and its resources because people are
encouraged to buy more than necessary, store it and unintentionally increase inflation and
hoarding.
11. dar barxi mavâred niz (be viže dar mored-e aqlâm-e xorâki) emkân-e fâsed
in some cases also (especially in case-EZ articles-EZ food) possibility-EZ rotten

šodan va rixt o paš vojud dâr-ad.
become and waste existence have-3SG.
In some cases (especially in case of food articles) there is also the possibility of the food
become rotten and therefore wasted.
12. alâve bar in hengâmi ke kâlâ-yi be mizân-e ziâd vojud dâr-ad,
plus on this when that article-a to amount-EZ more existence have-3SG,

13. alâge be ziâd masraf kardan niz dar pey-e ân nahoft-e ast.
interest to more consumption doing also in behind-EZ that lying-PART be-3SG.
12-13:
Moreover, when there is a large amount of an article, people are interested to consume more.
14. zarar-e dovvom entexâb-e kammiyyat be ja-ye keifiyyat va dar mavâred-i
damage-EZ second choice quantity to place-EZ quality and in cases-some

no'-i reyb dar mo'âmele ast
kind-a fraud in business be-3SG
15. çerâ ke mahsul-i ke keifiyyat va e'tabâr-e xod râ be hamrâh dâr-d,
because that product-a that quality and approval-EZ self ACC to accompany have-3SG,

hâzer n-ist dar bâzi-hâ-ye bord va bâxt šerkat kon-ad.
ready not-be3SG in game-PLU-EZ winning and losing part SUBJ-do-3SG.
14-15:
The second damage is choosing quantity over quality. In some cases there is a kind of fraud in the business because a product that is well known for good quality, does not want to take part in the game of winning and losing.
16. amâ **IN GAMÂN MI-RAV-AD** ânâ ke keifiyyat-ešân dastxoš-e talâtom ast,
but **THIS ASSUMPTION DUR-GO-3SG** those that quality-their subject-EZ storm be-3SG,
17. bâ eghvâgari sa'y mi-kon-and mahsul râ be xord-e mellat be-dah-and
with cheating try DUR-do-3PLU product ACC to eating-EZ people SUBJ-give-3PLU
18. va dar in râh be har raveš-i dast mi-zan-and.
and in this way to every way-a hand DUR-hit-3PLU.
16-18:
IT IS ASSUMED that the producers of poor-quality goods are trying to cheat people to buy the products and do everything to achieve this purpose.
19. zarar-e sevvom afzâyeš-e qeimat-e in gune mahsul-ât ast,
damage-EZ third increasing-EZ price-EZ this kind product-PLU be-3SG,
20. zirâ tabligh-ât-e milyârde va hazine-hâ-ye jânebi-e ân, ruye qeimat-e
because advertising-PLU-EZ milliard and expense-PLU-EZ side-EZ it, over price-EZ

tamâm šod-e-ye mahsul, saršekan mi-šav-ad
finished become-EZ product, distributed DUR-become-3SG
21. va **dar haqiqat** masrafkonande hazine-ye tabligh-ât va ma'ruf šodan-e
and **in fact** consumer expense-EZ advertising-PLU and famous become-EZ

yek brand, ârm va nâm râ niz mi-pardaz-and.
one brand, label and name ACC also DUR-pay-3PLU.
19-21:
The third damage is increasing the price of these products because advertising and its other expenses is distributed on the final price of the product. **In fact**, consumers pay the price of advertising and making a brand, label and name famous.
22. bahs-e ba'di omdatan šâmel-e bie'tebâri-ye mahsul-at-e Irâni
discussion-EZ next mainly including-EZ unreliability-EZ product-PLU-EZ Iranian

mi-šav-ad;
DUR-become-3SG;
23. çerâke pasaz šoru' be tabligh-e masraf-e bištar barâye xârid-e yek
because after starting to advertising-EZ consuming-EZ more for buying-EZ a

mahsul, rogabâ-ye ân senf barâye aqab na-mândan az qafele, vâred-e tabligh
product, rivalseZ that trade for behind not-leave of caravan, enter-EZ advertising

va masâ'el-e hâšye'i mi-šav-and.
and issues-EZ marginal DUR-become-3PLU.
22-23:

The next discussion is the unreliability of the Iranian products. After starting advertising a product, the rivals begin advertisement and the related issues in order to catch up on the business.

24. kâfi ast yek yâ jam'-i az in tolidkonande-gân yâ xadam-ât dahande-gân
enough be-3SG one or group-a of this producer-PLU or service-PLU giver-PLU

az marghubiyyat-e jens kam kon-and
from good quality-EZ product little do-3PLU

25. tâ ân senf va zaham-ât-e kârâfarin-ân az çešm-e masraf konande be-yoft-ad
till that trade and effort-PLU-EZ job provider-PLU from eye-EZ consumer SUBJ-fall-3SG

26. va dar surat-e emkân tabaq-ât-i ke qodrat-e xarid dâr-and, be no'-e
and in case-EZ possible group-PLU-some that ability-EZ purchase have-3PLU, to kind

vâredâti ruy âvar-and.
imported face bring-3PLU

24-26:

When a producer or a group of them decrease the quality of an article, then consumers detest that trade and their efforts in creating jobs. Then, if possible, people that have the purchasing power buy imported articles.

27. injâ-st ke ešteghâl-e pâidâr niz xadšedâr mi-šav-ad.
here-is that employment-EZ stable also scratched DUR-become-3SG.
Here it is that having a job stability is questioned.

28. az hame-ye inhâ ke be-gozar-*im*,
from all-EZ these that SUBJ-pass-1PLU,

29. so'âl in ast ke čegune dolat, qovve-ye Qazâiyye va sâyer-e
question this be-3SG that how government, authority-EZ Judicial and other-EZ

orgân-hâ-ye mas'ul, nezârat-e jâme' va kâmel bar
organization-PLU-EZ responsible, supervision-EZ comprehensive and complete to

čenin eqdâm-ât-i dâr-and
such action-PLU-some have-3PLU

30. tâ masalan yek tolidkonande-ye robb ke faqat yek jâyeze-aš 200
so for example one producer-EZ tomato sauce that only one prize-his/her 200

milyun Tomân e'lâm mi-šav-ad
million Toman announced DUR-become-3SG

31. yâ yek šerkat-e xadam-at-e telefon-e hamrâh ke milyârd-hâ jayeze râ
and one company-EZ service-PLU-EZ phone-EZ mobile that milliard-PLU prize ACC

ta'ahod-e pardâxt mi-kon-ad
responsibility-EZ payment DUR-do-3SG

32. yâ hedye kardan-e SIM kârt-hâ-ye ezâfi ke be dast-e xeili-hâ ne-mi-res-ad
or gift doing-EZ SIM card-PLU-EZ extra that to hand-EZ many-PLU no-DUR-reach-3SG

33. yâ yek kârxâne-ye tolid-e pudr-e ghazâyi ke mâšin-e Benz-e čand dah
or one factory-EZ production-EZ powder-EZ food that car-EZ Benz-EZ several ten

milyuni jâyeze mi-dah-ad,
million prize DUR-give-3SG.

34. *čeqadr be ta'ahod-at-e xod pâyband hast-and,*
how much to promise-PLU-EZ self responsible be-3PLU,

35. *girande-gan yâ asâmi-ye barande šod-e-hâ az če vaqe'iyat-i*
gainer-PLU or names-EZ winner become-PART-PLU of which reality-a

barxordâr-and va ...
benefit-3PLU and ...

28-35:

If we pass from this [apart from this], the question is how the government, Judicial authority, and other related organisations have a comprehensive and complete supervision over these actions. For example, a tomato sauce producer announces 200 million Tomans as one of its prizes, a mobile company promises to give away milliards of prizes or gives an extra SIM card, not many people get them, or a food extract producer gives away a very expensive Benz as prize. How much do they feel responsible to do their promises? How real are the winners or receivers of these prizes and ...

36. *âyâ vâqe'an yek quti robb yâ yek SIM kârt yâ pâstel čeqadr*
whether really a can tomato sauce or a SIM card or pastel how much

sudâvari dâr-ad ke mellat dar yek baxtâzmâyi dargir šav-and va
benefit have-3SG that nation in a lottery involved become-3PLU and

xarid-e keifi na-dašt-e baš-and.
shopping-EZ quality not-have-PART have-3PLU.

How much benefit does a can of tomato sauce, SIM card or pastel has that people are involved in a lottery and do not do quality shopping.

37. *če MI-TAVÂN kard tâ mardom be jâ-ye anbâšt-e sarmaye-hâ-ye xod dar bank-hâ*
what DUR-CAN do till people to place-EZ storing-EZ wealthPLU-EZ self in bank-PLU

be omid-e šerkat dar qor'ekeši-hâ-ye bank-hâ va barande šodan,
to hope-EZ participament in prize drawing-PLU-EZ bank-PLU and winner become,

mošavere-hâ-ye sarmayegozari be-gir-and va dar ijâd-e eštoghâl va
consultPLU-EZ investment SUBJ-get-3PLU and in creating-EZ employment and

kârâfarini va tolid-e naqš-i sâzande be ohde be-gir-and.
job creating and production-EZ role-a constructive to responsibility SUBJ-take-3PLU.

What could be done to encourage people to get investment councillors and have a more constructive role in creating employment and job creating, and production instead of piling their money in banks with the hope of winning prizes?

38. *bi-ây-im râh-i bi-yâb-im tâ mardom be masraf-e esrâf kârâne*
IMP-come-1PLU way-a SUBJ-find-1PLU till people to consumption-EZ wasteful

targhib na-šav-and.
encouraged not-become-3PLU.

Let's [we] find a way not to encourage people to be wasteful.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
16	it is assumed		
37	could		
	2	0	0

Table A2.46 Uncertainty markers in text No. 30

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
4		bombardment and swarm	
9	certainly		
21		brand, label and name	
29		comprehensive and complete	
37		creating employment and job creating	
	1	4	0

Table A2.47 Certainty markers in text No. 30

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
1	be ware		
21		in fact	
38	let's find		
	2	1	0

Table A2.48 Attitudinal markers in text No. 30

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
1			be ware			
4			you			
4			you			
28	we					
29				the question is how the government, Judicial authority ... over these actions?		
36				How much benefit does a can of tomato, ... has that people are involved in a lottery and do not do quality shopping?		
37				What can be done to encourage people to get ... with the hope of winning prizes?		
38	Let's					
38	we					
	3	0	3	3	0	0

Table A2.49 Engagement markers in text No. 30

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A2.50 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 30

Text No. 31

Gozarsh, No. 196, Farvardin 1387 (March-April 2008)

Number of Words: 544

- âqâ-yân! **dast negah dâr-id. lotfan naft râ na-foruš-id**
gentleman-PLU! **hand hold have-2PLU. please oil ACC not-sell-2PLU**
Gentlemen! **Hold on. Please do no sell oil.**
- dar sâl-e gozašte mahnamah-ye Gozâreš matlab-i kutâh va be naql az
in year-EZ last monthly-EZ Gozarsh subject-a short and to quotation from

Mohandes Gharazi, vazir-e naft-e sâl-hâ-ye dahe-ye 60 taht-e onvân-e
Mohandes Gharazi, minister-EZ oil-EZ year-PLU-EZ decade-EZ 60 under-EZ title-EZ

"naft-e Irân boškei 1000 dolâr" nevešt
"oil-EZ Iran barrel-a 1000 dollar" write-PAST-3SG

3. mozu'-e ân matlab be farâmuši sepord-e šod tâ avâxer-e sal-e
 subject-EZ that subject to forgetfulness give-PART become-PAST-3SG till ends-EZ year-EZ
 gozašte va emsâl ke šuxi šuxi, qeimat-e naft be tor-e jeddi seir-e
 last and this year that joking joking, price-EZ oil to way-EZ serious movement-EZ
- tasâ'odi peimud.
 increasing travel-PAST-3SG.
 2-3:
 Last year Gozaresh Monthly wrote a short article "Iranian oil 1000 dollars a barrel" by
 Mohandes Gharazi, the oil minister of 60s. Its subject was forgotten until late last year. And
 this year the price of oil seriously increased.
4. 70-90-100-120-125 va inak pišbini barâye šeš mâh-e âyande residan be qeimat-e
 70-90-100-120-125 and now prediction for six month-EZ next reaching to price-EZ
- 200 dolâr va bištar dar har boške ast.
 200 dollar and more in every barrel be-3SG.
 70-90-100-120-125 and now it is predicted that in the next 6 months it will reach up to 200
 dollars and more a barrel.
5. ma'mul ast ke har zamân harakat-e soudi-ye qeimat dar har zamine
 normal be-3SG that every time movement-EZ increasing-EZ price in every aspect
- âghâz mi-šav-ad,
 start DUR-become-3SG,
6. forušande-gân barâye pišgiri az zarar, dast az foruš mi-keš-and
 seller-PLU for prevention of loss, hand from sale DUR-take-3PLU
7. va be entezâr-e âyande mi-nešin-and tâ qeimat-ha sobât yâb-ad
 and to waiting-EZ future DUR-sit-3PLU till price-PLU stability find-3SG
8. va dar ezâ-ye foruš-e mahsul-e xod be-tavân-and mâ be ezâ-ye
 and in exchange-EZ sale-EZ product-EZ self SUBJ-can-3PLU what to exchange-EZ
- monâseb-i tadârok be-bin-and.
 suitable-a preparation SUBJ-see-3PLU
 5-8:
 Normally when prices increase in any aspect, traders stop selling in order to prevent loss;
 and wait for the prices to be stabilized in order to gain a reasonable exchange for their
 product.
9. šâhed-e in mozu', afzâyeš-e pey dar pey-e qeimat-e maskan dar Tehrân dar
 witness-Ez this matter, increasing-ez continual-EZ price-EZ housing in Tehran in
- mâh-hâ-ye pâyâni-ye sâl-e gozašte bud
 month-PLU-EZ ending-EZ year-EZ last be-PAST-3SG
10. ke sâheb-e melk, zamin va âpârtemân az tars-e in ke mabada farda
 that owner-EZ property, land and apartment from fear-EZ this that lest tomorrow
- qeimat afzâyeš yâb-ad,
 price increase find-3SG,
11. kamtar râzi be foruš-e arâzi va amlâk va âpârtemân, mi-šod-and
 less willing to sell-EZ lands and properties and apartment, DUR-become-3SG
12. va barxi az forušande-gân pasaz foruš, sa'y dar anjâm na-dâdan-e ta'ahod-ât-e
 and some of seller-PLU after selling, effort in doing not-giving-EZ promise-PLU-EZ
- xod (dabbe kardan) dâšt-and
 itself (denying doing) have-PAST-3PLU

13. čerâke yek šabe 10 elâ 20 darsad va tey-e do se hafte yâ mâh tâ 40-50
because one night 10 to 20 percent and during two three week or month till 40-50
- darsad afzâyeš-e qeimat be vojud âmad.
percent increase-EZ price to existence come-PAST-3SG.
9-13:
For example, when the housing prices in Tehran increased in the last months of the last year, flat and land owners were rarely willing to sell their property, land and flat for fear of the next day's price increase. Some of the traders tried not to do their promises (denying) because the prices increased 10 to 20 percent over night and 40-50 per cent in a week or month.
14. yâd-emân na-râft-e zamân-i naft 7 dolâr va 10 dolâr va 20 dolâr va ... be
memory-our not-go-PART time-a oil 7 dollar and 10 dollar and 20 dollar and ... to
- foruš mi-râft, ham jang edâre mi-šod ham berenj va
sale DUR-go-PAST-3SG, also war managed DUR-become-PAST-3SG also rice and
- va roghan va šekar ba qeimat-e mosavvab-e dolati va be vofur yâft
and oil and sugar to price-EZ approved-EZ government and to abundance found
- mi-šod va zendegi berâhati-e bištari mi-gozašt;
DUR-become-PAST-3SG and life conveniently-EZ more DUR-pass-PAST-3SG;
15. amâ alân ke naft be 120 dolâr resid-e ast,
but now that oil to 120 dollar reach-PART be-3SG,
16. berenj va nân va maskan-e mardom be in vaz'iyat dočar šod-e ast.
rice and bread and house-EZ people to this situation encounter become-PART be-3SG
14-16:
We have not forgotten that once oil was 7 dollars, 10 dollars and 20 dollars and War was managed and rice, oil and sugar were abundant with the approved price of the government and people had a more convenient life. But now that the oil price has reached 120 dollars, rice, bread and housing of the people is in this situation.
17. alâve bar arzâg-e omumi, tajhiz-ât va lavâzem va âhanâlât be qeimat-e
addition to food stuff general, equipment and necessities and ironware to price-EZ
- sarsâmâvari resid-e,
astronomical reach-PART,
18. bikâri šeddat yâft-e va kamtar kasi zendegi-e matlub-e hâsel
unemployment intensification find-EZ and less person life-EZ desirable-EZ produced
- az foruš-e naft râ dâr-d.
from sale-EZ oil ACC have-3SG.
17-18:
Apart from food stuff, equipment and ironware have had soaring prices, unemployment has increased and few people have a desirable life as a result of oil sale.
19. sâhebnazar-ân mo'taged-and in seir-e soudi-ye qeimat-e naft va eštêhâ-ye
expert-PLU believe-3PLU this increasing-EZ price-EZ oil and hunger
- sirinâpazir-e kešvar-ha-ye metropol mabni bar hefz-e zaxâyer-e xod
unsatisfied-EZ country-PLU-EZ metropolitan based on maintenance-EZ resources-EZ self
- va xarid-e naft va xâli kardan-e manâbe'-e esterâtežik-e kešvar hattâ be
and purchasing-EZ oil and empty making-EZ resources-EZ strategic-EZ country even to
- qeimat-e tasâ'odi nešân mi-dah-ad ke qeimat-e naft be bâlâtâr az 200 dolâr
price-EZ astronomical show DUR-give-3SG that price-EZ oil to higher of 200 dollar

ham xâh-ad resid,
also will-3SG reach,

20. pas hâlâ ke az in afzâyêš-e qeimat tarfi ne-mi-band-**im** va na tanhâ
so now that from this increase-EZ price benefit not-DUR-tie-**1PLU** and not only

nasl-e ba'di ke hamin nasl ham dar yeki do dahe-ye âyande majbur be
generation-EZ next that this generation also in one two decade-EZ future have to

vâred-ât-e naft va ayzan moštaq-ât-e ân xâh-ad šod,
import-PLU-EZ oil and also product-PLU-EZ it will-3SG become'

21. **če behtar** ke šir-ha-ye naft râ be ru-ye Ćini-ye doraâng va sâyer-e
what better that tap-PLU-EZ oil ACC to face-EZ Chinese-EZ two-faced and other-EZ

xaridâr-ân be-band-**im**
buyers-PLU SUBJ-close-**1PLU**

22. tâ ruz-i ke qeimat-e ân tasbit šav-ad, yâ in ke mo'âdel-e yek boške
so day-a that price-EZ it stabilized become-3SG, or this that equivalent-EZ one barrel

naft va bâ ehtesâb-e kârmozd va kasr-e ân egdâm be tahâtor
oil and with calculating-EZ commission and deducting-EZ it step to exchange

(daryâft-e farâvarde-hâ va moštaq-at-e ân) **be-kon-im**.
(receiving-EZ production-PLU and production-PLU it) **SUBJ-do-1PLU**.

19-22:

Experts believe the soaring price of oil and the unsatisfied desire of the metropolitan countries to preserve their own resources and buy oil and empty the strategic resources of the country, even for high prices, indicate that oil price will get up to 200 dollars. Therefore, now that **we** do not benefit from this price increase, and not only the next generation but the present generation will have to import oil and its products, **it is better** to close oil taps to two-faced Chinese and other buyers until the prices are stabilized; or **exchange** every barrel of oil with oil products calculating and deducting its commission.

23. qâ'edatan mas'ul-ân-e delšuz va vatanparast âgâh-and in manâbe'-e
basically governor-PLU-EZ compassionate and patriotic know-3PLU this sources-EZ

tajdidnâpazir va gheir-e qâbel-e ehyâ **AGAR TABDIL BE AHSAN NA-ŠAV-AND**
non-renewable and non-EZ able-EZ renewed **IF CHANGE TO BEST NOT-BECOME-3PLU**

YÂ HADAQAL ARZEŠ-E AFZUDE-YE ÂN NASIB-E KEŠVAR-EMÂN NA-ŠAV-AD, tavasot-e
OR AT LEAST VALUE-EZ ADDED-EZ IT TO-EZ COUNTRY-OUR NOT-BECOME-3SG,by-EZ

bigâne-gân čapu mi-šav-ad va sar-e mellat-e Irân bi-kolah mi-man-ad.
foreigners stolen DUR-become-3SG and head-EZ nation-EZ Iran no-hat DUR-stay-3SG.
Basically, the compassionate and patriotic governors are aware that these resources are non-renewable [and non-renewable] and cannot be renewed. **IF THESE RESOURCES ARE NOT EXCHANGED FOR GOOD OR AT LEAST THEIR ADDED VALUE DOES NOT BENEFIT OUR COUNTRY,** Iranians will be cheated and they will be stolen by foreigners.

24. gerâni-e naft agar âmel-e refâh-e eqtesâdi-ye mellat va harbe-ye
expensiveness-EZ oil if cause-EZ comfort-EZ economical-EZ nation and weapon-EZ

pišbord-e ahdâf-e syâsi-ye kešvar va daryâft-e tajhiz-ât va
developing-EZ aims-EZ political-EZ country and receiving-EZ equipment-PLU and

dâneš-e fani-ye ruz na-šav-ad va tanhâ âyedi gerâni-e
knowledge-EZ technical-EZ day not-become3SG and only profit expensiveness-EZ

mâ-yahtaj-e mardom-e dast be dahân bâš-ad, **če sud?**
what-needed-EZ people-EZ hand to mouth become-3SG, **what benefit?**

What is the benefit of expensive oil price, if it only leads to soaring prices of goods and is not a means of economical comfort, development of the political goals of the country and gaining equipment and modern technical knowledge?

25. negâh-i be âmâr va arqâm-e 20 sâl-e gozašte va emruz va tahlil-e glimpse-a to statistics and figures-EZ 20 year-EZ last and today and analysis-EZ

kâršenâsâne-ye tolid, estextrâj (**ke mota'assefâne dar in zamine niz** expert-EZ production, extraction **(that unfortunately in this area also**

vaz'-e mâ matlub n-ist) va foruš-e fe'li-e naft, rahnemud-i mabni **situation-EZ we desirable not-be-EZ)** and sale-EZ present-EZ oil, guidance-a based

bar kâheš-e sodur (agar na tavaqof-e foruš) erâe mi-kon-ad. on decreasing-EZ export (if not halt-EZ sale) indication DUR-do-3SG.

A glimpse at the statistics and figures of the last 20 years and today and the expert analysis of production, extraction (**our circumstances in which is not desirable unfortunately**) and the present oil sale indicates that oil sale should be reduced (if not stopped).

26. âyâ šâhed-e sodur-e bastan-e šir-e naft va gâz be ru-ye **whether witness-EZ announcement-EZ closing-EZ tap-EZ oil and gas to face-EZ**

xârej-yân xâh-im bud?

Foreigner-PLU will-1PLU be?

Will we witness the announcement of closing oil and gas taps to foreigners?

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
23		If they are not exchanged for good or at least their added value does not benefit the country	
	0	1	0

Table A2.51 Uncertainty markers in text No. 31

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
14	we have not forgotten		
19			experts believe
23		non-renewable and non-renewable	
	1	1	1

Table A2.52 Certainty markers in text No. 31

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
1	Hold on		
1	Please do not sell oil		
21	it is better		
22	exchange		
25		unfortunately	
	4	1	0

Table A2.53 Attitudinal markers in text No. 31

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	AS
14	our					
20	we					
23	our					
24				what is the profit		
25	our				(our circumstances in which is not desirable unfortunately)	
26	we			Will we witness closing oil and gas taps to foreigners?		
	5	0	0	2	1	0

Table A2.54 Engagement markers in text No. 31

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
21	we
22	we

Table A2.55 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 31

Text No. 32

Gozaresh, No. 205, Jan – Feb 2009

By: Abolhasan Golbaf

Number of Words: 1652

- hattâ 'Change' ham mašmul-e 'Change' mi-šav-ad.
even 'Change' also included-EZ 'Change' DUR-become-3SG.
Even 'Change' 'changes'.
- osulan dar har entexâb-ât-i a'am az ejtemâ'i va syâsi, nâmzad-hâ bâ
basically in very election-PLU-a including social and political, candidate-PLU with

barnâme-hâ-ye tajdid-e nazaxâhi va va'de-hâ-ye taghyir va tahavol
plan-PLU-EZ renewing-EZ polls and promise-PLU-EZ change and transformation

be meidân mi-ây-and.
to field DUR-come-3PLU
Basically in every election, social or political, candidates give promises of change and
renewing.
- Bârâk Hussein Obâmâ ham MI-TAVÂN-EST yek nâmzad-e entexâb-ât-i az
Barak Hussein Obama also DUR-CAN-PAST-3SG a candidate-EZ election-PLU-a from

su-ye hezb-e Demokrât, yâ hattâ Jomhurixâh, Mohâfezekâr yâ Eslâhtatalab, Tondro
side-EZ party-EZ Democrat, or even Republican, Conservative or Reformist, Radical

yâ Miyânero va ... bâš-ad bâ šo'âr-e taghyir va tahavvol;
or Moderate and ...be-3SG with motto-EZ change and transformation;
- amâ, na râng-e pust va mazlumiyyat-e ajdâd-e rangin pust-e u ke
but, not colour-EZ skin and oppression-EZ ancestors-EZ coloured skin-EZ him that

kâx-e sefid va kâx-e farâ'ene va ahrâm-e mesr bar duš-e ânhâ banâ
castle-EZ white and castle pharaohs and pyramids-EZ Egypt on shoulder-EZ them built

šod-e bud va na mohâjer budan-e pedar-aš va na xaste šodan-e
become-PART be-PAST-3SG and not immigrant be-EZ father-his and not tired become-EZ

mardom az syâsat-hâ-ye Bush, âmel-e asli-e tasâhob-e onvan-e mard-e
people of policy-PLU-EZ Bush, factor-EZ main-EZ possession-EZ title-EZ man-EZ

aval-e Ámrikâ tavasot-e u na-bud.
first-EZ America by-EZ him not-be-3SG.
3-4:

Barak Hussein Obama **COULD** be a candidate of Democrat or even Republican Party, Conservative or Reformist, Radical or Moderate with the motto of change. But neither his colour and his ancestors' oppression on which the White House and the castles and pyramids of Egypt have been built on, nor his father's being immigrant and people's being fed up from Bush's policies were the main factors in his being America's number one man.

5. *čerâ šo'âr-e 'change' –e Obâmâ bâ negâh-e montazer-e mardom-e Ámrikâ va why motto-EZ 'change'-EZ Obama with look-EZ waiting-EZ people-EZ America and*

hamrâhi-ye hâkemiyyati-e besyâri az noq-ât-e jahân ru be ru accompanying-EZ authoritative-EZ many of spot-PLU-EZ world face to face

šod?

become-PAST-3SG

Why was Obama's motto of 'change' welcomed by Americans and an authoritative support from many parts of the world?

6. *čerâ šoâr-e 'change' dar Šuravi va Čin va hattâ Cuba va Libi va ... why motto-EZ 'change' in Russia and China and even Cuba and Libya and ...*

ham bâ esteqbâl ru be ru šod?

also with welcome face to face become-PAST-3SG?

Why was the motto of 'change' welcomed in Russia, China and even Cuba, Libya and ...?

7. **BE NAZAR MI-RES-AD** in modir-e dore dide va ma'mur-e mojarrab šoâr-e **TO IDEA DUR-COME-3SG** this manager-EZ expert and official-EZ skilful motto-EZ

'change' râ manut be Ámrikâ ne-mi-dân-ad,
'change' ACC dependent to America not-DUR-know-3SG,

8. *čerâ ke Ámrikâ hadaqaqal yek dahe ast be in natije resid-e ke because that America at least one decade be-3SG to this conclusion reach-PART that*

system-e tak qotbi dar donyâ qâbel-e edâme n-ist system-EZ monopolistic in world able-EZ continue not-be-3SG

9. *va syâsat-hâ-ye qalat va por sarosedâ-ye dor-e dovvom-e hokumat-e Bush and policy-PLU-EZ wrong and full noise-EZ round-EZ second-EZ government-EZ Bush*

niz ru be ezmehlâl râftan-e system-e tak qotbi râ tasri kard. also face to overthrow going-EZ system-EZ monopolistic ACC accelerated do-PAST-3SG. 7-9:

IT SEEMS this expert and skilful manager does not limit the motto of 'change' to America because it has been a decade America has arrived at the conclusion that a monopolistic system cannot be continued in the world; and Bush's wrong policies have accelerated the overthrow of the monopolistic system.

10. *biš az nim qarn ast ke donyâ va dar ra's-e ân Ámrikâ system-hâ-ye more than half century be-3SG that world and on head-EZ it America system-PLU-EZ*

do qotbi va tak qotbi râ tajrobe kard-e bipolar and monopolistic ACC experienced do-PART

11. *va nosxe-hâ-ye ân râ šafâbaxš yâ hadaqaqal qâbel-e estemrâr na-yâft-e and prescription-PLU-EZ it ACC healing or at least able-EZ continuation not-find-PART*

ast. be-3SG.

10-11:

For more than half a century the world and above all America have experienced bipolar and monopolistic systems and they have not found them useful or at least continuable.

12. ârşiv-e târix-e donyâ şâhed ast ba'daz jang-e jahâni-e dovvom, va archive-EZ history-EZ world witness be-3SG after war-EZ world-EZ second, and

hâkemiyyat-e çand dahe system-e do qotbi bar donyâ Âmrikâ az ân tarfi authority-EZ several decade system-EZ bipolar to world America of it profit

na-bast-e bud
not-tie-PART be-PAST-3SG

13. va nahâyatan Reagân ma'mur-e barandâzi-ye system-e do qotbi šod
and finally Reagan official-EZ overthrowing-EZ system-EZ bipolar become-PAST-3SG

14. va Brezhnev qorbani-e piš-e pâ-ye tak qotbi šodan-e donyâ be rahbari-e
and Brezhnev sacrificed-EZ front-EZ foot-EZ monopoly becoming-EZ world to leading-EZ
Âmrikâ gašt.
America become-PAST-3SG.

12-14:

The world's historical archive witnesses that after the Second World War, America didn't make any benefits from decades of the authority of bipolar system in the world. Finally, Reagan was to overthrow the system and Brezhnev became the sacrifice for the world's becoming monopolist lead by America.

15. **vâqe'iyat in ast** ke dar in asr, donyâ faqat donyâ-ye Âmrikâ n-ist çerâke:
reality it be-3SG that in this era, world only world-EZ America not-be-3SG since:
The reality is that in this era the world is not specific to America because:

16. – qâre-ye Orupâ va kešvar-hâ-ye moštarâkolmanâfe' va emruz etehâdiyye-ye
- continent Europe and country-PLU-EZ commonwealth and today community-EZ

Orupâ, digar šarq va gharb na-dâra-d
Europe, anymore east and west not-have-3SG

17. va pul-e vâhed, marz-e vâhed va qodrat-e vâhed-e in majmu'e-ye
and money-EZ one, borderline-EZ one and power-EZ one-EZ this community-EZ

bozorg ke ettefâqan pâšne-ye Ašil-hâ-ye hayâtgir va hayât baxš dâr-ad,
big that accidentally heel-EZ Achilles-PLU life-taking and life-giving have-3SG,

18. sâheb-e manâfe'-i ast ke hâzer n-ist hame-ye ânhâ râ dar pâ-ye
possession-EZ benefits-some be-3SG that ready not-be-3SG all-EZ them ACC in foot

eqtedar-e Âmrikâ fadâ kon-ad.
Authority-EZ America sacrificed SUBJ-do-3SG.

16-18:

- Europe and commonwealth countries and now the European community do not have east and west anymore. They have one currency and one borderline. The power of this big community that in fact has life-giving and life-taking Achilles heel, possesses some profits and does not want to sacrifice them to the American authority.

19. - Rusiyye pasaz forupâši (do dahe qabl) inak beno'-i xod râ bâzsâzi
- Russia after overthrow (two decade ago) now somehow self ACC reconstruction

kard-e
do-PART

20. va bâ harakat-e siyâsi va ba'zan eqtesâdi, mojjaddadan sahm xâhi
and with movement-EZ political and sometimes economical, again share wanting

- mi-kon-ad.
 DUR-do-3SG.
 19-20:
 - Russia, after being overthrown (two decades ago), has somehow reconstructed itself and with political and at times economical policies claims shares.
21. – Ásiâ-ye jonub-e šargi va mošaxxasan emperâtori-ye bozorg-e Ćin ke az
 - Asia-EZ south-EZ eastern and specifically empire-EZ big-EZ Ćina that from
 qarn piš dar ketâb-hâ-ye tahlilgar-ân-e jahân “qodrât-e bozorg-e fardâ”
 century ago in books analysts world “power big-EZ tomorrow”
 namide mi-šod
 called be-PAST-3SG
22. va qablaz forupâši-e Šuravi be onvân-e motavâzenkonande-ye qodrat
 and before overthrow-EZ Soviet Union to title-EZ harmoniser-EZ power
 bein-e šarq va gharb galamdâd mi-gašt,
 between-EZ east and west figured DUR-become-3SG,
23. axiran dar sahne-hâ-ye eqtesâdi va dar tasmingiri-hâ-ye siyâsi-e jahân
 recently in scene-PLU-EZ economical and in decision-making-PLU-EZ political-EZ world
 qad alam kard-e ast
 height raised do-PART do-3SG
24. va hattâ Ámrikâ ham **NE-MI-TAVÂN-AD** ân râ na-did-e be-gir-ad.
 and even America also **NOT-CAN-3SG** it ACC not-see-PART SUBJ-take-3SG.
 21-24:
 - South-eastern Asia, specifically the great empire of China which analysts called “the great power of future” half a century ago and which before the overthrow of Russia was figured as the harmoniser of power between east and west, has recently gained a status in economical and political decision-makings of the world that even America **CANNOT** ignore it.
25. -Ámrikâ-ye Lâtin, ba harakat-hâ-ye namâdin, qodrat xahi mi-kon-ad
 - America-EZ Latin, with movement-PLU-EZ symbolic, power wanting DUR-do-3SG
26. ke garče parâkande ast, amâ **HIĀ TAZMIN-I VOJUD NA-DÂR-AD** dar
 that although dispersed be-3SG, but **NO GUARANTEE-A EXISTENCE NOT-HAVE-3SG** in
 ayande-ye nazdik ânâ niz ettehâdiyye-i az no'-e Orupâ taškil na-dah-and.
 future-EZ near they also community-a of kind-EZ Europe form not-give-3PLU.
 25-26:
 - Latin America with symbolic movements claims power. Although dispersed, **THERE IS NO GUARANTEE THAT** in near future it will not form a community like Europe.
27. –... va **KASI ĀE MI-DÂN-AD** ke hend-e yek milyârde emruz, fardâ Āe
 - ... and **ONE WHAT DUR-KNOW-3SG** that India-EZ one milliard-EZ today, tomorrow what
 xah-ad kard.
 Will-3SG do.
 And **WHO KNOWS** what India with a population of one milliard will do in future.
28. in tozih-ât-e moxtasar barâye ân galami šod ke
 this explanation-PLU-EZ brief for that written become-PAST-3SG that
 be-pazir-**im** tasmimsâzi va taqsim-sâzi ba'daz jang-e jahâni-e dovvom,
 SUBJ-accept-**1PLU** decision and division after war-EZ world-EZ second,

marz-hâ-ye tahmili-e ijad šod-e, tasis-e boluk-hâ va
borderline-PLU-EZ imposed-EZ formed become-PART, setting up-EZ block-PLU and

nâmgozâri-e ânâ va ehdâs-e divâr-hâ va ... digar javâbgu n-ist.
Naming-EZ they and building-EZ wall-PLU and ... other responsive not-be-3SG
This brief explanation was given so that **we** accept after the Second World War decisions
and divisions, the imposed borderlines, setting up blocks and naming them and building
walls do not respond anymore.

29. yek ruz Šuravi yekketâz-e âzâdsâzi dar Afghânistân bud tâ âzâdi-e
one day Soviet Union champion-EZ liberating in Afghanistan be-3SG so freedom-EZ

komonisti be mardom-e mosalman-e Afghân hedye dah-ad
communist to people-EZ Muslim-EZ Afghan present SUBJ-give-3SG

30. va na-tavân-est mândegâr šavad, hame čiz râ hefz kon-ad
and not-can-3SG staying SUBJ-become -3SG, every thing ACC maintenance SUBJ-do-3SG

31. va emruz Âmrikâ hamin ehsâs râ albatte az no'-e sarmâyedâri-e ân dâr-ad.
and today America same feeling ACC indeed from kind-EZ capitalist-EZ it have-3SG.
29-31:

Once Soviet Union was the champion of liberating Afghanistan and wanted to bring Afghan
Muslims communist freedom. It couldn't stay there forever and keep everything. Today
America has the same feeling but a capitalist one instead.

32. amâ hâlâ digar donyâ nezâm va taqsimbandi-e jaded-i râ mi-talab-ad
but now then world system-EZ and division-EZ new-a ACC DUR-want-3SG

33. vali barâye in kâr dar avvalin qadam noq-ât-e taqâbol **az miyân**
but for this task in first step point-PLU-EZ contradiction **of between**

bardâšt-e šav-ad
eliminated SUBJ-become-3SG

34. tâ emkân-e mas'ale xizi az miyân be-rav-ad yâ be had aqal be-res-ad.
so possibility-EZ problem-making of between SUBJ-go-3SG or to minimum SUBJ-reach-3SG.
32-34:

But now the world needs a new system and a new division. For this purpose, the first step
must be eliminating contradictions in order to remove or reduce the problems to minimum.

35. **râsti** AGAR BARDÂŠTAN-E NOQÂT-E TAQÂBOL DAR DASTUR-E KÂR
honestly IF ELIMINATING-EZ POINT-PLU-EZ CONTRADICTION IN PLAN-EZ WORK

QARÂR GIR-AD, **taklif-e xâvar miâne-ye Mosalmân** **če xâh-ad šod?**
ESTABLISHED SUBJ-GET-3SG, **duty Middle East-EZ Muslim** **what will-SG be?**
Honestly, IF ELIMINATING CONTRADICTIONS IS PUT IN ACTION, what will happen to the
Muslim Middle East?

36. AGAR TANEŠ-HÂ-YE XÂVAR MIÂNE VA TAZÂD-HÂYE IN MANTAQE HAL
IF TENSION-PLU MIDDLE EAST AND CONTRADICTION-PLU-EZ THIS AREA SOLVED

NAŠAV-AD **če xâh-ad šod?**
NOT-BECOME-3SG **what will-3SG become?**

What will happen IF TE TENSIONS AND CONTRADICTIONS IN TE MIDDLE EAST ARE NOT
RESOLVED?

37. **dar nazm-e jadid va xâvar miane-ye Mosalmân va mo'taqed, vasle-ye**
in system-EZ new and Middle East-EZ Muslim and believing, patch-EZ

nâhamgun, gheyr-e Mosalmân va nefâq afkan-e Isrâel ke hâla digar (dar
ill-matched, non-EZ Muslim and hypocrite maker-EZ Israel that now other (in

*syâsat-e nazm-e jadid-e beinolmelali, asar-e vojudi-aš râ az dast
policy-EZ system-EZ new-EZ international, effect-EZ existence-its ACC from hand*

*dâd-e ast) ĉe jâigâh-i dâr-ad?
give-PART be-3SG) what place-a have-3SG?*

*In the new system and in the Muslim and believing Middle East what is the place of
the ill-matched patch, non-Muslim and hypocrite Israel who has now (in the new
international system) lost its influence.*

38. *âyâ hanuz ham MI-TAVÂN FEKR KARD sarmâyedâr-ân-e sahyunist
whether still also DUR-CAN THINKING DO-3SG capitalist-PLU-EZ Zionist*

*hokumat-hâ-ye donyâ râ modiriyyat mi-kon-and va ânhâ hâmi-ân-e
government-PLU-EZ world ACC direct DUR-do-3SG and they supporter-PLU-EZ*

Isrâel hast-and?

Israel be-3PLU?

*CAN IT STILL BE CONSIDERED that the Zionist capitalists are directing the governments of
the world and support Israel?*

39. *magar na in ke dar hamin kešvar-hâ-ye gharbi dâdgâh-hâ ettehâm-ât-e
whether not this that in this country-PLU-EZ western court-PLU accusation-PLU-EZ*

*jenâyat-e jangi be Isrâel vâred mi-kon-and,
crime-EZ war to Israel enter, DUR-do-3SG*

40. *magar na in ke donyâ, Isrâel râ had aqal barande-ye jang-e Ghaze
whether not this that world, Israel ACC at least winner-EZ war-EZ Gaza*

ne-mi-dân-ad?

not-DUR-know-3SG?

39-40:

*Isn't it that courts in western countries accuse Israel for war crimes? Isn't it that the
world does not know Israel the winner of the Gaza war at least?*

41. *hâlâ digar sarmâyedâr-ân-e sahyunist yâ sponser-hâ va hâmiy-ân-e Isrâel
now anymore capitalist-PLU-EZ Zionist or sponsor-PLU and supporter-PLU-EZ Israel*

*ham dar hâl-e vaqegarâ šodan hast-and.
also in situation-EZ realist becoming be-3PLU.*

*Now the Zionist capitalists and sponsors and supporters of Israel are becoming more
realistic.*

42. *donyâ-ye gharb-e dahe-ye haftom-e qarn-e bistom na-xâst yâ na-tavân-est
world-EZ west-EZ decade-EZ seventh-EZ century-EZ twentieth not-want3SG or not-can-3SG*

*enqelâb-e Irân râ ke bar mabnâ-ye vaqeiyyât-hâ rox dâd-e bud
revolution-EZ Iran ACC that on basis-EZ reality-PLU happening give-PART be-PAST-3SG*

be-pazir-ad

ACC-accept-3SG

43. *va jomhuri-e eslâmi-ye Irân se dahe talâš kard enqelâb-e aqidati
and Republic Islamic-EZ Iran three decades trying do-PAST-3SG revolution-EZ opinion*

râ estemrâr baxš-ad

ACC continuation SUBJ-give-3SG

44. *va donyâ-ye gharb va motahedanaš niz say dar tazif, tard, tahrîm
and world west and allies (its) also tried in weakening, rejecting, sanction*

va hattâ mahv kardan-e engelab yâ ideology-e on daštand,
and even elimination revolution or ideology its had,

45. ghâfel az in ke **AGAR ELLAT-E VOJUDI-E ENQELÂB (AQIDE) MAHV**
unaware of this that **IF REASON-EZ EXISTENCE-EZ REVOLUTION 9BELIEF) DISAPPEAR**

ŠAV-AD, enqelâb mafhum-i na-xâh-ad dâšt
BE-3SG, revolution meaning-a not-will-3SG have

46. va in ârezu-ye mahâl, barâye gharb amali na-šod.
and this wish-EZ impossible, for west practical not-become-3SG.
42-46:

The west didn't want or couldn't accept the Iranian revolution which was based on reality in the seventh decade of the twenties century. Islamic Republic of Iran tried to continue opinion revolution for three decades but west and its allies tried to reject, weaken, put sanctions and even eliminate the revolution or its ideology, unaware that **IF THE EXISTENCE REASON OF THE REVOLUTION (BELIEF) DISAPPEARS**, revolution will have no meaning. West's impossible wish was not granted.

47. dar in se dahe Âmrikâ amâ dar in miyân garče dark kard-e
in this three decade America but in this between although realisation make-PART

bud ke xâvar miâne va mantaqe bedun-e Irân yâ dahân kaji kardan be Irân râh
be-3SG that Middle East and area without-EZ Iran or grimace making to Iran way

be jây-i ne-mi-bar-ad, vali bein-e syâsat-e ta'yid va takzib,
to somewhere-a not-DUR-take-3SG, but between-EZ policy-EZ acceptance and denying,

taz'if va momâšât mând-e bud;
weakening and tolerance stay-PART be-3SG

48. in bud ke barxi tahlilgar-ân-e beinolmelali, Âmrikâ va Irân râ do kešvar-e
this was that some analyst-PLU-EZ international, America and Iran ACC two country-EZ

moštârâkolmanâfe' va moxtalefolmavaze' mi-danest-and,
commonwealth and different approaches DUR-know-3PLU,

49. čerâke **TAQRIBAN** harakat-hâ-ye Âmrikâ dar mantaqe (nabudi-e Tâliban-e
because **ALMOST** movement-PLU-EZ America in area (destruction-EZ Taliban-EZ)

zed-e šî'e dar Afghânistân, nabudi va e'dâm-e Saddâm, došman-e dirine-ye
anti-EZ Shiite in Afghanistan, destruction and execution-EZ Saddam, enemy-EZ old-EZ

Irân va Irâni va tahmil konande-ye jang-e 8 sâle be Irân-e Eslâmi, taz'if
Iran and Iranian and imposition doer-EZ war-EZ 8 year to Iran-EZ Islamic, weakening

kardan-e harak-ât-e kord-hâ bâ hemâyat az hamal-ât-e Torkie be kord-hâ
making-EZ movement-PLU-EZ Kurd-PLU with backing of attack-PLU Turkey to Kurds

va ... axiran momâne'at az be voqu' peivastan-e šo'âr-hâ-ye hamle-ye Isrâel
and ...recently prohibiting from to happening joining-EZ motto-PLU-EZ attack-EZ Israel

be ta'sis-ât-e hastei-ye Irân) be naf'-e Irân tamâm šod-e ast.
to plant-PLU-EZ nuclear-EZ Iran) to benefit-EZ Iran finished become-PART be-3SG.

47-49:

During these three decades although America realised that the Middle East without Iran or making grimaces to Iran will not help, it hesitated between acceptance or rejection, weakening or tolerance. Therefore, some analysts considered Iran and America as two commonwealth countries but with two different approaches because America's movements in the area (destruction of anti-Shiite Taliban in Afghanistan, destruction and execution of Saddam, Iran and Iranian's old enemy and the imposer of eight years of war to the Islamic

Iran, weakening Kurds' movements by backing Turkey's attacks to Kurds and ... recently prohibiting Israel's mottoes of attacking to Iran's nuclear plants) have **ALMOST** benefited Iran.

50. **dar bazi-e jadid-e syâsat va tasmimsâzi dar kešvar-e Irâq-e Arab in game-EZ new-EZ political and decision-making in country-EZ Iraq-EZ Arab**

hokumat dar Irâq be čekasâni dâd-e xâh-ad šod?
government in Iraq to who give-PART will-3SG become?
In the new political game and decision-making in the Arabian Iraq who the government will be given to?

51. mosallaman be goruh-hâ-ye šie'e ke bâ Irân xosumat-i na-dâr-and;
certainly to group-PLU-EZ Shiite that with Iran enmity-a not-have-3PLU;

52. **taklif-e hâkemiyyat-e Afghânistân če xâh-ad šod?**
Duty-EZ governance-EZ Afghanistan what will-3SG become?

51-52:

Certainly **the Shiites who are not enemies with Iran. What will happen to the government in Afghanistan?**

53. qâ'edatan dar ânja niz goruh-hâ-yi be hokumat-e pâidâr mi-res-and ke
basically in there also group-PLU-some to governance-EZ stable DUR-reach-3PLU that

bištar be Irân ettekâ dašt-e bâš-and tâ be Pakistân-e por tazâd va dar
more to Iran reliance have-PART be-3PLU rather to Pakistan full contradiction and in

hâl-e rizeš.

situation-EZ overthrowing.

Basically those groups will have a stable government in Afghanistan that rely more on Iran rather than Pakistan which is full of contradiction and is in a state of being overthrown.

54. amâ az taraf-i vojud va hozur-e yek barhamzanande-ye nazm-e jahâni be
but from side-a existence and presence-EZ one muddler-EZ order-EZ world to

nâm-e Isrâel mojob šod-e tâ in do kešvar moxtalefolmavâze'
name-EZ Israel cause become-PART till this two country different approaches

šav-and,

SUBJ-become-3PLU,

55. **čerâke kutâh âmadan-e Irân dar mas'ale-ye Isrâel (hattâ sokut dar moqâbel-e**
because lower coming-EZ Iran in issue-EZ Israel (even silence in opposite-EZ

ân) **xadše be mavâze'-e enqelâb-e Irân ast**
it) scratch to positions-EZ revolution-EZ Iran be-3SG

56. va **Âmrikâ niz tâ konun sarnevešt-e xod râ barâye hokumat kardan dar xâvar**
and America also to now fate-EZ self ACC for governing doing in Middle

miâne be tazmin-e hayât-e Isrâel peivand zad-e bud.

East to guarantee-EZ life-EZ Israel bound hit-PART be-3SG.

54-56:

On the other hand, the existence and presence of Israel which disturbs the world order, makes these two countries to become of different approaches because failing of Iran on the issue of Israel (even its silence) is opposed to the position of the Iranian revolution; while America has bounded its fate of governing the Middle East to the existence of Israel.

57. **pas če bâyâd kard?**
so what must do-3SG?
So what must be done?

58. dar edâme-ye in syâsat mottahed- ân-e Âmrikâ dar mantaqe be viže a'râb dar in continuation this policy ally-PLU-EZ America in area specially Arabs in
- se dahe-ye gozašte çe dar jang-e tahmili-e Irâq alayh-e Irân va çe three decade-EZ past either in war-EZ imposed-EZ Iraq against-EZ Iran and either
- dar majâme-e beinalmaleli be no'i dar yek hamgarâyi va hamafzâyi ba Isrâel in societies-EZ international to sort-a in one convergence and confluence with Israel
- dar moqâbel-e Irân istâd-and ama azpas-e Irân bar na-yâmad-and. In against-EZ Iran stand-PAST-3PLU but overcoming-EZ Iran up not-come-3PLU. Following this policy, in the past three decades America's allies in the area especially the Arabs were in a sort of convergence and confluence with Israel against Iran either in the war imposed by Iraq or in the international societies, but they didn't overcome Iran.
59. dar tajâvoz-e Isrâel be Ghaze, harakat-e haq talabâne-ye Irân mored-e in violation-EZ Israel to Gaza, movement-EZ justice seeking-EZ Iran subject-EZ
- esteqbâl-e hiç kešvar-e Arab-i qarâr na-gereft welcome-EZ no country-EZ Arabic-a place not-get-3SG
60. va hattâ Irân dar ejlâs-e "Sharm-el Sheikh" va "Kuwait" ke hampeimân-an-e and even Iran in gathering-EZ "Sharm-el Sheikh" and "Kuwait" that ally-PLU-EZ
- bozorg-e Âmrikâ bud-and da'vat na-šod, vali dar ruz-hâ-ye ta'yin-e big-EZ America be-PAST-3PLU invitation not-become-3SG, but in day-PLU determining-EZ
- sarnevêšt-e Qatar-e kuçak ke garçe hampeimân-e Âmrikâ bud va qablaz destiny-EZ Qatar-EZ small that although ally-EZ America be-PAST-3SG and before
- sâyer-e A'râb bâ Isrâel ravâbet-e syâsi va diplomatik barqarâr kard-e other-EZ Arabs with Israel relations-EZ political and diplomatic setting do-PART
- bud va be andâze-ye Kuwait va Dubai ham barâye Âmrikâ ahamiyat be-PAST-3SG and to amount-3SG Kuwait and Dubai also for America importance
- na-dašt, Irân râ be ejlâs-e Qatar da'vat kard not-have-PAST-3SG, Iran ACC to gathering-EZ Qatar invitation do-PAST-3SG
61. va az Isrâel xâst-e šod sarian âtašbas e'lâm kon-ad and from Isrâel wanting become-PAST immediately ceasefire announcement SUBJ-do-3SG
62. va çenin ham šod. and this also become-PAST-3SG.
- 62-66:
In Israel's attack to Gaza, Iran's justice-seeking movement was not welcomed by any Arab country and Iran was not even invited to "Sharm el Sheikh" and "Kuwait" gatherings who were America's big allies. But during the days of determining small Qatar's destiny, although it was America's ally, it had started political and diplomatic relations with Israel before any other Arab country, and wasn't as important as Kuwait and Dubai for America, it invited Iran to Qatar gathering and Israel was asked to cease fire immediately and that was done.
63. dar in miân tazâhor-ât-e 2 milyuni dar Torkie niz hamrâh ba Irân in this between demonstration-PLU-EZ 2 million in Turkey also accompanied with Iran
- dar moqâbel-e Isrâel istâd. in against-EZ Israel stand-PAST-3SG.
- Meanwhile, the demonstration of 2 million people in Turkey and Iran was meant to stand against Israel.

64. va dar pâyân, jahân xâste yâ naxâste šâhed-e tahaqqq yâftan-e
and in end, world intentionally or unintentionally witness-EZ proof finding-EZ
- pišbini-e jomhuri-e Eslâmi-e Iran va xoruj-e Isrâel az Ghaze va negâh-e
prediction-EZ Republic-EZ Islamic-EZ Irân and exiting-EZ Isrâel from Gaza and look
- nefratangiz-e mardom va besyâri az dolat-hâ be in vasle-ye nâjur dar
hateful-EZ people and many of government-PLU to this patch-EZ inappropriate in
- bein-e Moslem-in bud-and.
Among-EZ Muslim-PLU be-PAST-3PLU.
In the end the world, intentionally or not, witnessed coming true of Iran's prediction based
on withdrawing Israel from Gaza and the hateful look of people and many governments at
this inappropriate patch among Muslims.
65. hâlâ digar na faqat Obâmâ ke oqalâ-ye syâsat saz paziroft-e bud-and
now other not only Obama but wise people-EZ policy maker accept-PART be-PAST-3PLU
Now not only Obama but the wise policy makers had accepted that:
66. – ke dargiri-e šadid yâ jang alayh-e Irân-e bozorg ke namâz jom'e-hâ va
- that conflict-EZ strong or war against-EZ Iran-EZ big that prayer Friday-PLU and
- tazâhor-ât-aš nešân mi-dah-ad paigâh-e mardomi-aš râ az dast
demonstration-PLU-its indication DUR-give-3SG base-EZ people-its ACC from hand
- na-dad-e,
not-give-PART.
67. tanhâ be bisobâti-e bištar dar mantaqe-ye kam sobât-e xâvar miâne va
only to instability-EZ more in area-EZ little stabilitye-EZ Middle East and
- tose'e-ye ân mi-anjam-ad.
development-EZ it DUR-lead to-3SG.
66-67:
- Strong conflict or war with the big Iran whose Friday Prayers and demonstrations indicate
it has not lost its base in people, will only lead to more instability in the unstable Middle
East and its development.
68. - nâbudi-e hokomat-e Irân (bar farz-e mahâl) mojab-e
- overthrowing-EZ government-EZ Iran (to supposition-EZ impossible) cause-EZ
- ijad-e xala'-e bištar dar mantaqe mi-šav-ad ke jobrân-e ân momken
creating-EZ gap-EZ more in area DUR-become-3SG that compensation-EZ it possible
- n-ist.
isn't.
- Overthrowing Iran's government (which is impossible) will cause more gaps in the area
which will be impossible to compensate.
69. az taraf-i Âmrikâ va Englis pasaz sâxt-e Isrâel tâ konun mosamam
from side-a America and England after making-EZ Israel to now decisive
- bud-and,
be-PAST-3PLU
70. bâ hemâyat va taqviat-e ân va hozur-e âzâr dahande-aš, mantaqe
with supporting and strengthening-EZ it and presence-EZ troublesome-its, area
- râ dar extiâr dâšt-e baš-and
ACC in control have-PART be-3PLU

71. ke hâlâ digar gheyr-e momken šod-e ast.
that now other not-EZ possible become-PART be-3SG.
69-71:
On the other hand, after creating Israel, America and England had decided to keep the area in control by supporting and strengthening it and its troublesome presence which has become impossible now.
72. Ámrikâ ke mo'taqed ast barxi az osul-aš dar mored-e xâvar miâne gheyr-e
America that believing be-3SG some of principles-its in about Middle East not-EZ

gabel-e taghyir ast,
able-EZ change be-3SG,
73. bâ Arabestân-e Sa'udi va Mesr ham na-tavân-est xâvar Miâne râ negah
with Saudi Arabia and Egypt also not-can-PAST-3SG Middle East ACC keep

dâr-ad
have-3SG
74. (zirâ Arabestân-e Saudi râ dar ejlâs-e "goruh-e 20" da'vat kard
(because Saudi Arabia ACC in gathering-EZ "Group-EZ 20" invitation do-PAST-3SG

amâ Arabestân nešan dâd vaqti zarfiyyat-e syâsi na-dâšt-e
but Saudi Arabia indication give-PAST-3SG when potential-EZ political not-have-PART,

bâš-ad, dâštan-e servat barây-aš jâigâh ne-mi-âvar-ad)
have-3SG, having-EZ rich for-it place not-DUR-bring-3SG)
72-74:
America believes some of its principles in the Middle East cannot be changed and couldn't keep Middle East with the help of Saudi Arabia and Egypt (because it invited Saudi Arabia to "Group 20" gathering but Saudi Arabia showed when it doesn't have political potential, being rich doesn't bring status).
75. masale-ye digar in ast ke A'râb va Isrâel paziroft-e-and Irân, syâsat-e Irân
issue-EZ other this be-3SG that Arabs and Israel accept-PART-3PLU Iran, policy-EZ Iran

va qodrat-e farâ mantaqei-e Jomhuri-e Eslâmi hazf šodani n-ist, amâ
and power-EZ over area-EZ Republic-EZ Islamic omission able not-be-3SG, but

hâzer n-ist-and zir-e solte-ye Irân bâš-and.
ready not-be-3PLU under-EZ rule-EZ Iran be-3PLU.
The other issue is that Arabs and Israel have accepted that Iran, its policy and its authority cannot be omitted, but do not want to be under its authority.
76. emruze, Ámrikâ, Ettehâdiye-ye Orupâ, Šuravi va Ćin motavajeh šode-and
today, America, Union-EZ Europe, Russia, and China realisation become-3PLU

tanhâ vâse-ye nâjur dar xâvar miâne Isrâel ast ke eneržy va
only patch-EZ inappropriate in Middle East Israel be-3SG that energy and

âberu-ye gharb râ hadar dad-e ast.
reputation-EZ west ACC wasted give-PART be-3SG.
Today, America, European Union, Russia and China have realised that Israel is the only inappropriate patch in the Middle East which has wasted west's energy and reputation.
77. **vâqe'iyyat in ast** ke Irân zarfiyyat dâr-ad tâ qodrat-e avval-e xavar miane
reality this be-3SG that Iran potential have-3SG so power-EZ first-3SG Middle East

baš-ad.
SUBJ-be-3SG.
The reality is Iran has the potential to be the first power in the Middle East.

78. 10000 sâl sâbeqe, târix, tajrobe-ye kešvar dâri, hokumat bar donyâ-ye
10000 year past, history, experience-EZ country keeping, governing to world-EZ
šarq va gharb va ...
east and west and ...
10000 years past, history, experience in governing, authority over east and west and ...
79. amâ hemâyat-hâ-ye nâšiâne-ye gharb az Isrâel va duri az Irân va
but support-PLU-EZ inexperienced-EZ west from Israel and distance from Iran and
ettehâd-e A'râb va Isrâel tâ konun sa'y dâšt-e ast az in harakat
unity-EZ Arabs and Israel to now effort have-PART be-3SG from this movement
jelogiri konad.
prevention SUBJ-do-3SG.
But west's inexperienced support of Israel, ignoring Iran, and the unity of Arabs and Israel
have prevented this movement.
80. vali **BE NAZAR MI-RES-ad** râh-e hal-e nahâyi paziroftan-e Irân dar syâsat-e
but **TO IDEA DUR-COME-3SG** way solution-EZ final accepting-EZ Iran in policy-EZ
taghyir va in ke Irân dar nazm-e jadid-e jahâni had aqal **bâyad** aqa-ye
change and this that Iran in system-EZ new-EZ world at least **must** master-EZ
xâvar miâne baš-ad.
Middle East SUBJ-be-3SG.
But **IT SEEMS** the final solution is accepting Iran in the policy of change and that Iran **must**
be the master of at least the Middle East in the new system of the world.
81. solh-e jahâni bâ hozur-e Irân qat'iyyat mi-yâb-ad.
Peace-EZ world with presence-EZ Iran certainty DUR-find-3SG.
World peace will be certain with the presence of Iran.
82. hamângune ke xâste-hâ-ye Irân dar mantaqe amali mi-šav-ad
same that wish-PLU-EZ Iran in area practical DUR-become-3SG
83. (yek nomune-ye ettela' resâni-e Irân dar mored-e koštâr-e Ghaze va
(one example-EZ information giving-EZ Iran in about-EZ massacre-EZ Gaza and
taghyir-e nagâh-e jahân be Isrâel bud)
change-EZ look-EZ world to Israel be-PAST-3SG)
84. xâvar miâne va sâxtâr-e farhang va ideoloži-ye ân nešân mi-dah-ad yek
Middle East and structure-EZ culture and ideology-EZ it indication DUR-give-3SG one
mantaqe-ye EIslâmi yek noqte-ye gheyr-e Eslâmi râ tahammol ne-mi-kon-ad.
area-EZ Islamic one point-EZ non-EZ Islamic ACC toleration not-DUR-do-3SG.
82-84:
As Iran's wishes in the area are realised (Iran's revelation on the massacre in Gaza and the
change in the world's attitude to Israel was one of them), Middle East and its cultural
structure and ideology shows that an Islamic area does not tolerate a non-Islamic point.
85. dar in taqsim va nazm-e jadid, kešvar-hâ-ye Asiâ-ye miâne ke na tarfi az
in this division and system-EZ new, country-PLU-EZ Asia-EZ middle that not benefit from
Rusiye bast-e-and va na be daryâ-ye azad râh dâr-and, **MI-TAVÂN-AND** dar
Russia tie-PART-3PLU and not to sea-EZ open way have-3PLU, **DUR-CAN-3PLU** in
hite-ye moštarak-e Irân va Rusiye qarâr gir-and.
Range-EZ specific-EZ Iran and Russia established SUBJ-get-3PLU.

In this new system and division, the middle Asian countries that have not benefited from Russia and do not have access to the open sea, **COULD** be shared between Iran and Russia.

86. albatte donyâ-ye gharb entezâr dâr-ad Irân ba Rusiyye moštarakolmanâfe'
indeed world-EZ west expectation have-3SG Iran with Russia commonwealth

na-šav-ad
not-become-3SG

87. va Rusiyye be ab-hâ-ye âzâd râh na-yâb-ad va mottahed-i be nâm-e Irân
and Russia to water-PLU-EZ open way not-find-3SG and ally-a to name-EZ Iran

na-dašt-e bašad.
not-have-PART be-3SG

86-87:

Indeed, west does not expect Iran and Russia to become commonwealth; and Russia to have access to the open sea and have Iran as an ally.

88. Âmrikâ dar in mantaqe tanhâ bâ ehdâs-e pâigâh va hazine-hâ-ye milyârdi
America in this area only with building-EZ base and expense-PLU-EZ milliard

tavânest-e ast kešvar-hâ-ye âsiâ-ye miâne râ tâ hodud-i az Rusiyye dur
able-PART be-3SG country-PLU-EZ Asia-EZ middle ACC to limitation-a from Russia away

negah dâr-ad,
keep have-3SG,

89. amâ hengami ke Rusiyye be-xâh-ad, hattâ Gorjestân ham foru mi-riz-ad.
but when that Russia SUBJ-want-3SG, even Georgia also down DUR-fall-3SG.

88-89:

America has only been able to distance Middle Asian countries from Russia to some degree by building bases and spending milliards of dollars. But if Russia wants, even Georgia will be overthrown.

90. hâl **bayâd** ejmâ'-e jahâni be in tafakor-e manteqi be-res-ad ke noq-ât-e
now **must** gathering world to this thought-EZ rational SUBJ-reach-3SG that point-PLU-EZ

taqâbol-e jadid šenâsâyi va az mian bardašt-e šav-ad
opposition-EZ new identified and from between remove-PART IMP-become-3SG

91. hamântor ke noqte-ye taqâbol-e qadim bein-e šarq va gharb va do qotbi
as that point-EZ opposition-EZ old between-EZ east and west and bipolar

budan-e donyâ bud.
Being-EZ world be-PAST-3SG.

90-91:

Now the whole world **must** come to the rational opinion of identifying the new opposition points and removing them, just as the opposition points between east and west and the world's bipolarity were removed in the past.

Cl. No	EU	Con	I&RS
3	could		
7	It seems		
24	cannot		
26	there is no guarantee		
27	who knows		
35		if eliminating contradictions is put in action	
36		if the tensions and contradictions in the Middle East are not resolved	
38	can it still be considered		
45		If the existence reason of the revolution (belief) disappears	
49	almost		
80	it seems		
85	could		
	9	3	0

Table A2.56 Uncertainty markers in text No. 32

Cl. No	EC	R	Att
12	The world's historical archive witnesses		
51	certainly		
58		convergence and confluence	
68	which is impossible		
70		supporting and strengthening	
72			America believes
86	indeed		
	4	2	1

Table A2.57 Certainty markers in text No. 32

Cl. No	EO	EA	N
15		The reality is	
33	must be		
35		truly	
57	must		
77		The reality is	
80	must		
90	must		
	4	3	0

Table A2.58 Attitudinal markers in text No. 32

Cl. No	IE	P	RA	Q	A	A&S
5				Why was Obama's motto of 'change' welcomed ... from many parts of the world?		
6				Why was the motto of 'change' welcomed in Russia, China and even Cuba, Libya and ...?		
28	we					
35				if eliminating contradictions is put in action, what will happen to the Muslim Middle East?		
36				What will happen if the tensions and contradictions in the Middle East are not solved?		
37				In the new system and in the Muslim and believing Middle East what is the place of ... ?		
38				Can it still be considered that Zionist capitalists are directing the governments of the world and support Israel?		
39				Isn't it that courts in western countries accuse Israel for war crimes?		
40				Isn't it that the world does not know Israel at least the winner of the Gaza war?		
50				In the new political game and decision-making in the Arabian Iraq who will the government be given?		
52				what will happen to the government in Afghanistan?		
57				So what must be done?		
	1	0	0	11	0	0

Table A2.59 Engagement markers in text No. 32

Cl. No	'we' expressing third parties
	0

Table A2.60 'we' expressing third parties in text No. 32